



Deposited in Lib. of Congress at Dep. State Oct 5. 1838

FRENCH

see vol. 12, page 407

PRACTICAL TEACHER.

7/12

B. F. Bugard

A COMPLETE GRAMMAR

Shelton & Sons

OF

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE

Deposited at Dep. State Oct 5. 1838
ON THE PROGRESSIVE SYSTEM;

BY WHICH THE ACQUISITION OF WRITING AND SPEAKING FRENCH
IS MADE EASY;

COMPRISING 244 EXERCISES,
MOSTLY WRITTEN IN THE STYLE OF CONVERSATION;
AND A VOCABULARY.

BY MONS. B. F. BUGARD,
AUTHOR OF THE FRENCH PRACTICAL TRANSLATOR.

“Fabricando fit faber.”



BOSTON : JOSEPH H. FRANCIS, 123 WASHINGTON-STREET.

NEW-YORK : C. S. FRANCIS, 252 BROADWAY.

PHILADELPHIA : THOMAS, COWPERTHWAIT & CO. MARKET-ST.

1838.

PC 2109
B84

3329

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1838,

By B. F. BUGARD,

in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the District of Massachusetts.

FROM THE PRESS OF
MUNROE & FRANCIS.

TO
HENRY W. LONGFELLOW,
PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE,
IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY,
THIS WORK
IS MOST RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED,
BY
THE AUTHOR.



P R E F A C E.

THERE are so many good grammars of the French language, commonly used in this country, that the publication of a new one will perhaps appear the result of injudicious presumption. But the experience of several years, employed in instruction, has afforded the author of this grammar an opportunity of noticing that improvements in many respects could still be made, and he has thought he might render himself useful, if he could prepare a book by which the progress of the student would be promoted, and his task diminished or made easy. It is with this view that he has published the present work, calculated to teach how to translate English into French; or, in other words, to teach American or English students how to write and speak the French language.

THE FRENCH PRACTICAL Teacher is rather a work of compilation, than of composition; for the materials of which the best and most recent English and French authorities have been consulted.

The plan of the book differs from all grammars hitherto published, especially in the order of the rules and composition of the exercises, in which not a single part of speech is employed until its use has been fully stated and illustrated. As the rules are numbered, and the words of the exercises have over them the numbers to be referred to for their translation, they afford to the student a constant, sure, and easy guide. In his progress through the exercises, thus prepared, he is so often reminded of

what is to be done, that he must as necessarily and practically learn and retain the rules, without the tedious operation of committing them to memory, as if he were to recite them verbatim to an instructor.

To attain this most desirable object, the author was obliged to adopt a new classification of certain words, which, in most grammars, are called Adjective-Pronouns, but which in this work are classed among the Articles. In justification of this course, it may not be amiss to make a few remarks.

The words alluded to are in English MY, THY, HIS, &c. THIS, THAT, THESE, &c. ; and, in French, *mon, ma, mes, ton, &c. ce, cet, cette, ces, &c.* ; whose name, Adjective-Pronoun, is more calculated to mislead than assist, and to which many of the errors most generally committed by students may be attributed. These are prevented by treating them as Articles. The error consists in using these words as pronouns, that is, instead of nouns ; when they can never be employed without a noun after them. This reason might be sufficient to justify the new classification ; but a further consideration of the nature of these words will show, that, according to the definitions of any grammar, they are neither adjectives nor pronouns, but articles.

They are not adjectives, because they never express any quality whatever of the substantive with which they are used. They are not pronouns, because, at least in French, they are never employed without a noun. They then are articles, because they determine the extent of the signification of the noun to which they are prefixed, MY, *mon, ma, mes*, doing it in a possessive personal sense ; THIS, *ce, cet, cette, ces*, in a demonstrative sense, &c. ; and because they all follow the same rules, namely, They must never be employed without a noun that is expressed : They must all agree in gender and number with the noun to which they are prefixed : They must all be repeated before every noun, when several nouns are together the nominatives or objects of the same verb or preposition.

During the eight years that the author has been engaged in teaching the French language, he has had ample opportunities to notice the advantageous effects of this method ; in following

which, students have generally acquired, in a shorter time, and with more ease than with other grammars, a clear and distinct idea of the proper use of the parts of speech.

Not to interfere with the knowledge of English grammar, which students generally possess when they commence the study of the French language, the classification in the Vocabulary of the English words of the exercises, which is at the end of the Grammar, is the same as that followed in Webster's English Dictionary; and, for the use of the corresponding words in French, references to the appropriate rules of the Grammar are constantly given.

To use this Grammar to the best advantage, students should be made familiar with the contents of the first and second chapters before passing to the third. Then the third should be undertaken, and verbs written first without interrogation or negation; then with interrogation; then with negation; and then with interrogation and negation together. This should be done, not taking exclusively for guide the given models, but also and especially the formation of tenses. This being accomplished, the translation of the Exercises should be commenced, and one or more be written for every lesson, with at least one conjugation, until the eighth chapter, when the writing of the verbs might be omitted. In translating the exercises, the student should faithfully refer to the Grammar, as often as indicated by the figures placed over the words, unless he be perfectly acquainted with the rules which he has to follow. It would be also of great advantage to him if at every lesson he were to translate into French, out of the Grammar, the exercises that were translated at the previous lesson, without looking at any note or translation.

To persons who are influenced by the size of an elementary book, it will perhaps be proper to observe, that the FRENCH PRACTICAL TEACHER contains not only all the rules that are necessary for the use of the parts of speech, but also explanations of the examples given for their illustration, not to be found in any other grammar. It contains also two hundred and forty-four exercises; which constitute a

considerable part of the book. It contains several tables of verbs and adjectives, which are not in other grammars; and finally the Vocabulary of the Words of the Exercises, which will amply supply the want of a dictionary; thus including a grammar, frequent explanations, constant references, numerous exercises, and a vocabulary; that is, at least, three books in one.

Almost all grammars contain A TREATISE ON FRENCH PRONUNCIATION, and if there be none in this, it is because there is a complete one in the FRENCH PRACTICAL TRANSLATOR; a book published by the author of this work, for the special purpose of translating and reading French, and which thus far has met with the approbation of numerous and experienced instructors who use it in their schools, and whose recommendations, together with those of distinguished scholars, are annexed to the present volume.

It may not be amiss to say here, that, with the FRENCH PRACTICAL TRANSLATOR and the FRENCH PRACTICAL TEACHER, students may go through a regular course of French elementary studies, without the necessity of referring to any dictionary, since both these works are provided with vocabularies of the words of the exercises they contain.

The publication of this work, as one may perceive, must have required much time, and labour, and knowledge of the English language; and the author feels that, in this last particular, his ability would certainly have proved inadequate to the undertaking, had he not been most generously assisted by some of his pupils, and by a friend, a gentleman of the bar, for whose services he most sincerely tenders his grateful thanks.

AUGUST, 1838.

CONTENTS.

NOTE. Should any difficulty be experienced in finding a rule in the Contents, it will easily be removed by looking in the Vocabulary at the end of the book for the English word to be translated.

ADJECTIVES,	No. 62, 63, 71—80, 542—570. <i>page</i> 83
comparatives with Nouns	No. 103
“ of equality	No. 111
“ of inequality	No. 112
“ of superiority	No. 113
“ of inferiority	No. 114
“ irregular	No. 115
degrees of signification	No. 116—118
their gender	No. 64—73
their place	No. 75—81
their plural	No. 74
their object	No. 567, 568
their different meaning, when before or after a noun	No. 78
used as Adverbs	No. 706
with the preposition they require before their object	No. 569
ADVERBS,	No. 82, 92, 94, 95, 116, 117, 705 and fol. <i>p.</i> 26
Numeral	No. 5
ARTICLES,	<i>p.</i> 63
and Pronouns compared	<i>p.</i> 320—322
Collective	No. 43
Definite	No. 35—40, 81, 491—531
Demonstrative	No. 55, 56
Distributive	No. 59
Indefinite	No. 41, 42, 119, 495, 676
Interrogative	No. 57, 58, 405, 407, 416
Negative	No. 60, 61, 138
Partitive	No. 44, 94, 497
Possessive Personal	No. 45—53, 85, 532—537, 782
Table of	<i>p.</i> 82
CONJUGATION of Verbs	<i>p.</i> 29
CONJUNCTIONS,	No. 707, 762—782. <i>p.</i> 27

COMPARISONS, Nouns	No. 103	
Degrees of Signification	No. 116—118	
with adjectives of equality	No. 111	
“ “ inequality	No. 112	
“ “ superiority	No. 113	
“ “ inferiority	No. 114	
“ “ irregular	No. 115	
DEFINITIONS,		<i>p. 13</i>
ELLIPSIS,	No. 786, 787	
EXCLUSIVE AFFIRMATION, <i>but</i> or <i>only</i> after a verb	No. 26, 27	
FIGURES, Grammatical construction of	No. 785	
INTERROGATION,	No. 19, 27, 134, 135, 136	
INTERROGATION WITH NEGATION,	No. 25, 27, 134—136	
INTERJECTIONS,	No. 557, 783, 784	
INVERSION	No. 790	
MOODS AND TENSES,	No. 644—653.	<i>p. 383</i>
Imperative	No. 120	
Indicative, present tense	No. 96, 97, 133—136, 645—657	
“ conditional present	No. 102, 148, 149, 661, 662	
“ conditional past	No. 108, 662	
“ imperfect	No. 98, 139—142, 658	
“ future anterior	No. 107, 703	
“ future	No. 101, 146, 147, 656, 659, 661, 667, 703	
“ preterite definite	No. 99, 143, 144, 704	
“ preterite indefinite	No. 104, 659, 660	
“ preterite anterior	No. 106	
“ pluperfect	No. 105, 660	
Infinitive, present participle	No. 123—130, 156, 663	
“ past participle	No. 131, 132, 156, 179, 192, 201—203, 409, 664—666	
Subjunctive, present	No. 109, 110, 150, 644—653	
“ imperfect	No. 110, 153	
“ preterite	No. 154	
“ pluperfect	No. 155	
NEGATION,	No. 22—24, 27, 137, 138, 720—733	
NOUNS, plural of	No. 476—490	<i>p. 54</i>
gender of	No. 460—475	<i>p. 58</i>
NUMBERS, Cardinal and Ordinal	No. 1—4, 9—12, 560—566.	<i>p. 20</i>
Collective	No. 7	
Fractional	No. 8	
Multiplicative	No. 6	

PLEONASM,	No. 788
PRONOUNS, Substantive Personal	No. 83, 84, 168—186, 571—594
Active, or Nominative Verbal	No. 87, 88, 90, 391—394, 426, 427, 574—578
Compared with articles	p. 320, 322
Compound Personal, <i>myself</i> , &c.	No. 86, 190
Demonstrative	No. 383—394, 595—599. p. 317
Distributive	No. 428, 604—606. p. 318
Demonstrative and Relative used together	No. 418— 425
Indefinite, Collective, Negative	No. 429—459, 607—610. p. 319
Interrogative	No. 395—407. p. 318
<i>It</i>	No. 87, 391, 393, 595, 596, 598, 599, 774, 775
Passive Verbal	No. 168—186, 201, 202, 203, 579; 580—593
Possessive Personal	No. 372—381, 600, 782
Relative	No. 407—417, 601, 602, 603. p. 318
PREPOSITIONS,	No. 31, 36, 100, 124, 734—761. p. 27
REMARKS on the use of certain verbs, see also VERBS	p. 391
SYLLEPSIS,	No. 789
TABLE, of Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers	p. 20
Comparative of Articles and Pronouns	p. 320
of Adverbs	p. 26
of Adjectives having a different meaning	No. 78
of Adjectives, with the preposition they require be- fore their indirect object	No. 569
of Articles	p. 82
of Conjunctions	p. 27
of Prepositions	p. 27
of Demonstrative Pronouns	p. 317
of Distributive Pronouns	p. 318
of Indefinite, Collective, and Negative Pronouns	p. 319
of Interrogative Pronouns	p. 318
of Personal Pronouns	p. 316
of Possessive Pronouns	p. 31
of Relative Pronouns	p. 318
of English verbs and expressions rendered by <i>faire</i>	No. 699
of Neuter Verbs, that are conjugated with <i>être</i>	No. 163
of Verbs, with the preposition they require before their indirect object	No. 125
of the Terminations of Verbs	p. 47

TABLE of Expressions with <i>Faire</i>	No. 696	
of the Names of different periods of time		p. 28
of Sea Terms	No. 698	
of the different combinations of the Passive Verbal		
Pronouns	No. 180	
TENSES, formation of		p. 43
TENSES, see Moods.		
VERBS, conjugation of		p. 29
“ the auxiliary <i>avoir</i>		p. 31
“ “ “ <i>être</i>		p. 33
On their object	No. 121, 122, 626—633	
Active	No. 121	
Passive	No. 158, 159, 318, 475, 594	
Neuter	No. 160—165	
Reflective and Reciprocal	No. 187—192, 592	
Unipersonal	No. 166	
Defective and Irregular, 1st conjugation	p. 185—191, 703	
“ “ 2d conjugation	p. 191—212, 704	
“ “ 3d conjugation	p. 212—233	
“ “ 4th conjugation	p. 234—276	
First conjugation, <i>er</i> ,	No. 13—18	p. 35
Second conjugation, <i>ir</i>		p. 37
Third conjugation, <i>avoir</i>		p. 39
Fourth conjugation, <i>re</i>		p. 41
Auxiliary <i>avoir</i>	No. 162, 167, 182, 634—641, 668—675	
<i>Avoir</i>	No. 669—674	
Can, could	No. 676, 702	
<i>Être</i>	No. 667, 668, 774	
<i>Faire</i> , for to inure	No. 685	
“ to do nothing but	No. 686	
“ to have just	No. 687	
“ used in different senses	No. 688—700	
Substantive and auxiliary <i>être</i>	No. 158, 162, 167, 192, 667—683, 774	
There to be, <i>y avoir</i>	No. 167, 649, 671, 672	
To have just	No. 675, 687, 704	
To desire	No. 678, 679	
To order, to command	No. 680, 681	
To be rendered by <i>Faire</i>	No. 682, 683	
Nominative and agreement of	No. 611—625, 774	
Remarks on the use of certain verbs		p. 391

FRENCH PRACTICAL TEACHER.

INTRODUCTION TO THE SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

DEFINITIONS.

THE words, used to express our thoughts, are called PARTS OF SPEECH. They are divided into SUBSTANTIVES *or* NOUNS, *substantifs ou noms* ; ARTICLES, *articles* ; ADJECTIVES, *adjectifs* ; PRONOUNS, *pronoms* ; VERBS, *verbes* ; ADVERBS, *adverbes* ; PREPOSITIONS, *prépositions* ; CONJUNCTIONS, *conjonctions* ; INTERJECTIONS, *interjections*.

Le substantif ou nom, THE SUBSTANTIVE *or* NOUN is used to represent things, either physical or metaphysical.*

L'article, THE ARTICLE is a word employed to determine the extent of the signification of the noun to which it is prefixed, or to which it relates ; or is placed before nouns whose signification is determined by some other word or words.

L'adjectif, THE ADJECTIVE serves to express the quality of persons or things.

Le pronom, THE PRONOUN is employed to take the place of the noun, and to represent it.

Le verbe, THE VERB expresses the existence or action of beings.

* We understand by a *physical thing* that which exists in nature, under any form of matter ; as WOOD, *bois* ; WATER, *eau* ; EARTH, *terre* ; &c.

By a *metaphysical thing*, that which exists independently of matter ; as HONOUR, *honneur* ; GLORY, *gloire* ; KNOWLEDGE, *connaissances* ; &c.

L'adverbe, THE ADVERB is a word employed in connection with the verb or adjective, and sometimes with another adverb, to express some particular circumstance or quality.

La préposition, THE PREPOSITION shows the relation that exists between words, and sometimes between phrases.

La conjonction, THE CONJUNCTION is used to connect words or phrases.

L'interjection, THE INTERJECTION is a word, or rather a mere cry or sound, expressing some emotion of the speaker.

The parts of speech or words are divided into VARIABLE, *variables*, and INVARIABLE, *et invariables*.

Les mots variables, THE VARIABLE WORDS are those whose termination changes ; as, the NOUN, the ARTICLE, the ADJECTIVE, the PRONOUN, and the VERB.

Les mots invariables, THE INVARIABLE WORDS are those whose termination does not change ; as, the ADVERB, the PREPOSITION, the CONJUNCTION, and the INTERJECTION.

There are three kinds of Nouns, THE PROPER, *le propre* ; THE COMMON, *le commun* ; and THE COLLECTIVE, *et le collectif*.

Le nom propre, THE PROPER NOUN OR NAME is that which represents a particular person or thing ; as, *Boston, France, Joseph, Joséphine*.

Le nom commun, THE COMMON NOUN is that which represents a whole class of individuals or things ; as, HOUSE, *maison* ; TOWN, *ville* ; MAN, *homme*.

Le nom collectif, THE COLLECTIVE NOUN is that which represents a collection of several individuals or objects ; as, MULTITUDE, *multitude* ; ARMY, *armée* ; CROWD, *foule*.

There are only two genders in French, THE MASCULINE, *le masculin* ; and THE FEMININE, *et le féminin*.

Le genre masculin, THE MASCULINE GENDER is applied to males.

Le genre féminin, THE FEMININE GENDER is applied to females.

As there is no NEUTER gender in French, nouns representing inanimate beings are either MASCULINE or FEMININE.

There are two numbers, THE SINGULAR, *le singulier* ; and THE PLURAL, *et le pluriel*.

Le singulier, THE SINGULAR number is used to represent but one object.

Le pluriel, THE PLURAL number is used to represent more than one object.

According to the opinion of most French grammarians, there are only three kinds of Articles, THE DEFINITE, *le défini* ; THE INDEFINITE, *l'indéfini* ; and THE PARTITIVE, *et le partitif*. But in this grammar we make the distinction of COLLECTIVE ARTICLES, *d'articles collectifs* ; of POSSESSIVE PERSONAL ARTICLES, *d'articles possessifs personnels* ; of DEMONSTRATIVE ARTICLES, *d'articles démonstratifs* ; of INTERROGATIVE ARTICLES, *d'articles interrogatifs* ; of DISTRIBUTIVE ARTICLES, *d'articles distributifs* ; and of NEGATIVE ARTICLES, *et d'articles négatifs*.

L'article défini, THE DEFINITE ARTICLE is that which is used before nouns whose signification is determined by some other word or circumstance.

L'article indéfini, THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE is that which is used before a common noun, to determine the extent of its signification in an indefinite manner ; that is, by restraining that signification to an object or to objects, without pointing out or indicating any one in particular.

L'article partitif, THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE is that which is used when only a part of the thing or things represented by the noun is to be expressed.

L'article collectif, THE COLLECTIVE ARTICLE is that which determines the extent of the signification of the noun in a collective sense, by restraining it to a number or collection of individuals or objects.

L'article possessif personnel, THE POSSESSIVE PERSONAL ARTICLE is that which is prefixed to the noun to determine the extent of its signification in a possessive personal manner ; that is, implying possession, and expressing to what person the possessed object belongs ; whether to the 1st, 2d, or 3d person.

L'article démonstratif, THE DEMONSTRATIVE ARTICLE is that

which is prefixed to the substantive to determine the extent of its signification in a demonstrative sense, that is, in pointing it out.

L'article interrogatif, THE INTERROGATIVE ARTICLE is that which is used before nouns, or the verb *être*, TO BE, in interrogative sentences.

L'article distributif, THE DISTRIBUTIVE ARTICLE is that which, being prefixed to the noun, whilst it brings to the mind the idea of several objects or individuals, determines or limits the extent of its signification to a single one.

L'article négatif, THE NEGATIVE ARTICLE is that which determines the extent of the signification of the noun in a negative sense.

There are seven kinds of Pronouns ; THE PERSONAL, *les personnels* ; THE POSSESSIVE, *les possessifs* ; THE DEMONSTRATIVE, *les démonstratifs* ; THE INTERROGATIVE OR RELATIVE, *les interrogatifs ou relatifs* ; THE INDEFINITE, *les indéfinis* ; THE DISTRIBUTIVE, *les distributifs* ; and THE NEGATIVE, *et les négatifs*.

Les pronoms personnels, THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS are those that refer to persons.

There are three different persons ; THE FIRST, *la première* ; THE SECOND, *la seconde* ; and THE THIRD, *et la troisième*.

La première personne, THE FIRST PERSON is he or she who is speaking.

La seconde personne, THE SECOND PERSON is he or she who is spoken to.

La troisième personne, THE THIRD PERSON is he or she who is spoken of.

Les pronoms démonstratifs, THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS are those that represent the thing spoken of, by pointing it out in a precise manner.

Les pronoms possessifs personnels, THE POSSESSIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS are those that represent the thing spoken of, implying possession, and expressing to what person the object belongs.

Les pronoms interrogatifs, THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS are those that are used in asking questions, without the noun which is the object of inquiry being expressed.

Les pronoms relatifs, THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS are the same as the interrogative; but they are used after nouns or pronouns to represent them as nominatives or objects to a following verb.

Les pronoms indéfinis, THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are those that are used to represent persons or things, without relating to any particular thing.

Les pronoms distributifs, THE DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS are those that represent but a single object or individual, whilst they bring to the mind the idea of several objects or individuals.

Les pronoms négatifs, THE NEGATIVE PRONOUNS are those that represent the noun in a negative sense.

Les pronoms collectifs, THE COLLECTIVE PRONOUNS are those that represent a number or a collection of individuals or objects.

The Verb, having been defined “*a word that expresses the existence or action of beings*,” this action necessarily supposes some person or thing that performs it, and some person or thing upon which it is performed.

The person or thing that performs the action is called THE NOMINATIVE OF THE VERB, *le nominatif du verbe*.

The person or thing, upon which the action expressed by the verb is performed, is called in English THE OBJECT OF THE VERB, in French *le régime du verbe*.

There are two kinds of objects, THE DIRECT OR ACCUSATIVE, *le direct ou l'accusatif*; and THE INDIRECT, *et l'indirect*.

Le régime direct, THE DIRECT OBJECT is that to which the action of the verb passes without the assistance of any preposition.

Le régime indirect, THE INDIRECT OBJECT is that to which the action of the verb passes with the assistance of a preposition.

Although in fact there is but one verb, THE SUBSTANTIVE TO BE, *être*, French grammarians distinguish several kinds; THE AUXILIARY, *l'auxiliaire*; THE SUBSTANTIVE, *le substantif*; THE ACTIVE, *l'actif*; THE PASSIVE, *le passif*; THE NEUTER, *le neutre*; THE REFLECTIVE, *le réfléchi*; THE UNIPERSONAL, *l'unipersonnel*; and THE DEFECTIVE, *et le défectueux*.

Le verbe auxiliaire, THE AUXILIARY VERB is that which is used in the formation of the compound tenses. In English it is TO HAVE ; in French, *avoir*.

Le verbe substantif, THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB is that which expresses existence ; it is, in English, TO BE ; and in French, *être*.

Le verbe actif, THE ACTIVE VERB is that which expresses an action done or exercised by the nominative, or by the person or thing which is the cause of that action, passing over to an object or a person or thing upon which that action is done or exercised, without the means of a preposition ; as, TO LOVE, *aimer* ; TO CUT, *couper*.

Le verbe passif, THE PASSIVE VERB expresses an action received or suffered by the nominative. Properly speaking, there is no passive verb in English or in French ; for that which is called a passive verb is merely the substantive verb TO BE, *être* conjugated with the past participle of an active verb ; as, TO BE ENCOURAGED, *être encouragé*.

Le verbe neutre, THE NEUTER VERB is that which expresses an action confined within the nominative, which cannot pass over to an object without the use of a preposition ; as, TO GO, *aller* ; TO TRAVEL, *voyager*.

Le verbe réfléchi, THE REFLECTIVE VERB is that which is always conjugated with a passive verbal pronoun of the same number and person as its nominative ; both the nominative and object expressing the same person or thing, though represented by different words ; as, TO REPENT, *se repentir* ; TO WALK, *se promener*.

Le verbe unipersonnel, THE UNIPERSONAL VERB is that which is only used in the third person singular of its tenses ; as, TO RAIN, *pleuvoir* ; TO FREEZE, *geler*.

Le verbe défectueux, THE DEFECTIVE VERB is that which wants some person, tense or mood in its conjugation.

To conjugate a verb is to write or recite it through all the different forms which it takes according to MOOD, *mode* ; TENSE, *temps* ; NUMBER, *nombre* ; and PERSON, *et personne*, after given models.

Le mode, THE MOOD is the particular and precise manner of expressing the existence or action of a person or thing.

There are four moods ; THE INFINITIVE, *l'infinitif* ; THE INDICATIVE, *l'indicatif* ; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, *le subjonctif* ; and THE IMPERATIVE, *et l'impératif*.

L'infinitif, THE INFINITIVE expresses indefinitely the meaning of the verb, without a personal nominative.

L'indicatif, THE INDICATIVE is used with a personal nominative, and simply expresses the action of the verb, in whatever time, without being the consequence of any WISH, COMMAND, SUPPOSITION, OR DOUBT.

Le subjonctif, THE SUBJUNCTIVE is a mood, used with a personal nominative, after a CONDITION, WISH, SUPPOSITION, FEAR, OR DOUBT, expressed or understood.

L'impératif, THE IMPERATIVE is a mood used with a personal nominative, either expressed or understood, TO EXHORT, COMMAND, INTREAT OR PERMIT.

The time of the existence or action of persons or things is expressed by TENSES, *des temps*.

There are three general tenses, THE PRESENT, *le présent* ; THE PAST, *le passé* ; and THE FUTURE, *le futur*.

Le présent, THE PRESENT expresses that a person or thing is NOW EXISTING OR ACTING.

Le passé, THE PAST expresses that a thing was existing or happened BEFORE THE PRESENT TIME.

Le futur, THE FUTURE expresses that a thing will exist or happen HEREAFTER.

But these three tenses are subject to particular distinctions and divisions, which will be considered in treating of the conjugation of verbs. They are expressed sometimes by simple forms, called SIMPLE TENSES, *temps simples* ; and sometimes by compound forms, called COMPOUND TENSES, *temps composés*.

Les temps simples, THE SIMPLE TENSES are those that are conjugated without the assistance of either TO HAVE, *avoir* ; or TO BE, *être*.

Les temps composés, THE COMPOUND TENSES are those that are

conjugated with some of the tenses of either TO HAVE, *avoir* ; or TO BE, *être* ; or even with both.

Les temps d'un verbe, THE TENSES OF A VERB are composed of six persons ; three singular, and three plural.

Verbs, whose forms do not differ in any particular from the given models, are called REGULAR VERBS, *verbes réguliers*.

Verbs, whose forms differ in any particular from the given models, are called IRREGULAR VERBS, *verbes irréguliers*.

CHAPTER II.

INVARIABLE WORDS.

NUMBERS.

1. The numerals, generally called NUMBERS, *nombres*, are of three classes ; those that are used in counting, called CARDINAL NUMBERS, *nombres cardinaux* ; those that express order, relating to place or rank, called ORDINAL NUMBERS, *nombres ordinaux* ; those that express order, relating to time, called NUMERAL ADVERBS, *adverbes numéraux*.

THE CARDINAL *Les nombres cardinaux sont :*
NUMBERS are :

1	<i>un</i> , with a masc. noun
1	<i>une</i> , with a fem. noun
2	<i>deux</i>
3	<i>trois</i>
4	<i>quatre</i>
5	<i>cinq</i>
6	<i>six</i>
7	<i>sept</i>
8	<i>huit</i>
9	<i>neuf</i>
10	<i>dix</i>
11	<i>onze</i>
12	<i>douze</i>
13	<i>treize</i>
14	<i>quatorze</i>
15	<i>quinze</i>

THE ORDINAL *Les nombres ordinaux sont :*
NUMBERS are :

1st	<i>premier</i> , with mas. noun
1st	<i>première</i> , with fem. „
2d	<i>second</i> , m. <i>seconde</i> , fem.
3d	<i>troisième</i>
4th	<i>quatrième</i>
5th	<i>cinquième</i>
6th	<i>sixième</i>
7th	<i>septième</i>
8th	<i>huitième</i>
9th	<i>neuvième</i>
10th	<i>dixième</i>
11th	<i>onzième</i>
12th	<i>douzième</i>
13th	<i>treizième</i>
14th	<i>quatorzième</i>
15th	<i>quinzième</i>

16	<i>seize</i>	16th	<i>seizième</i>
17	<i>dix-sept</i>	17th	<i>dix-septième</i>
18	<i>dix-huit</i>	18th	<i>dix-huitième</i>
19	<i>dix-neuf</i>	19th	<i>dix-neuvième</i>
20	<i>vingt</i>	20th	<i>vingtième</i>
21	<i>vingt et un, or une</i>	21st	<i>vingt et unième</i>
22	<i>vingt-deux</i>	22d	<i>vingt-deuxième</i>
23	<i>vingt-trois</i>	23d	<i>vingt-troisième</i>
24	<i>vingt-quatre</i>	24th	<i>vingt-quatrième</i>
25	<i>vingt-cinq</i>	25th	<i>vingt-cinquième</i>
26	<i>vingt-six</i>	26th	<i>vingt-sixième</i>
27	<i>vingt-sept</i>	27th	<i>vingt-septième</i>
28	<i>vingt-huit</i>	28th	<i>vingt-huitième</i>
29	<i>vingt-neuf</i>	29th	<i>vingt-neuvième</i>
30	<i>trente</i>	30th	<i>trentième</i>
31	<i>trente et un or une</i>	31st	<i>trente et unième</i>
32	<i>trente-deux</i>	32d	<i>trente-deuxième</i>
40	<i>quarante</i>	40th	<i>quarantième</i>
41	<i>quarante et un or une</i>	41st	<i>quarante et unième</i>
42	<i>quarante-deux</i>	42d	<i>quarante-deuxième</i>
43	<i>quarante-trois</i>	43d	<i>quarante-troisième</i>
50	<i>cinquante</i>	50th	<i>cinquantième</i>
51	<i>cinquante et un or une</i>	51st	<i>cinquante et unième</i>
52	<i>cinquante-deux</i>	52d	<i>cinquante-deuxième</i>
53	<i>cinquante-trois</i>	53d	<i>cinquante-troisième</i>
60	<i>soixante</i>	60th	<i>soixantième</i>
61	<i>soixante et un or une</i>	61st	<i>soixante et unième</i>
62	<i>soixante-deux</i>	62d	<i>soixante-deuxième</i>
70	<i>soixante et dix</i>	70th	<i>soixante et dixième</i>
71	<i>soixante et onze</i>	71st	<i>soixante et onzième</i>
72	<i>soixante et douze</i>	72d	<i>soixante et douzième</i>
73	<i>soixante et treize</i>	73d	<i>soixante et treizième</i>
74	<i>soixante et quatorze</i>	74th	<i>soixante et quatorzième</i>
75	<i>soixante et quinze</i>	75th	<i>soixante et quinzième</i>
76	<i>soixante et seize</i>	76th	<i>soixante et seizième</i>
77	<i>soixante et dix-sept</i>	77th	<i>soixante et dix-septième</i>
78	<i>soixante et dix-huit</i>	78th	<i>soixante et dix-huitième</i>
79	<i>soixante et dix-neuf</i>	79th	<i>soixante et dix-neuvième</i>

80	<i>quatre-vingts</i>	80th	<i>quatre-vingtième</i>
81	<i>quatre-vingt-un</i>	81st	<i>quatre-vingt-unième</i>
82	<i>quatre-vingt-deux</i>	82d	<i>quatre-vingt-deuxième</i>
90	<i>quatre-vingt-dix</i>	90th	<i>quatre-vingt-dixième</i>
91	<i>quatre-vingt-onze</i>	91st	<i>quatre-vingt-onzième</i>
92	<i>quatre-vingt-douze</i>	92d	<i>quatre-vingt-douzième</i>
93	<i>quatre-vingt-treize</i>	93d	<i>quatre-vingt-treizième</i>
94	<i>quatre-vingt-quatorze</i>	94th	<i>quatre-vingt-quatorzième</i>
95	<i>quatre-vingt-quinze</i>	95th	<i>quatre-vingt-quinzième</i>
96	<i>quatre-vingt-seize</i>	96th	<i>quatre-vingt-seizième</i>
97	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-sept</i>	97th	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-septième</i>
98	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-huit</i>	98th	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-huitième</i>
99	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-neuf</i>	99th	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième</i>
100	<i>cent</i>	100th	<i>centième</i>
101	<i>cent un</i>	101st	<i>cent unième</i>
102	<i>cent deux</i>	102d	<i>cent deuxième</i>
103	<i>cent trois</i>	103d	<i>cent troisième</i>
200	<i>deux cents</i>	200th	<i>deux centième</i>
300	<i>trois cents</i>	300th	<i>trois centième</i>
400	<i>quatre cents</i>	400th	<i>quatre centième</i>
1000	<i>mille</i>	1000th	<i>millième</i>
1001	<i>mille-un</i>	1001st	<i>mille-unième</i>
1002	<i>mille-deux</i>	1002d	<i>mille-deuxième</i>
1003	<i>mille-trois</i>	1003d	<i>mille-troisième</i>
2000	<i>deux mille</i>	2000th	<i>deux millième</i>
3000	<i>trois mille</i>	3000th	<i>trois millième</i>
4000	<i>quatre mille</i>	4000th	<i>quatre millième</i>
2001	<i>deux mille un</i>	2001st	<i>deux mille unième</i>
2002	<i>deux mille deux</i>	2002d	<i>deux mille deuxième</i>
2003	<i>deux mille trois</i>	2003d	<i>deux mille troisième</i>
10000	<i>dix mille</i>	10000th	<i>dix millième</i>

100000 <i>cent mille</i>	100000th <i>cent millième</i>
100001 <i>cent mille un</i>	100001st <i>cent mille unième</i>
100002 <i>cent mille deux</i>	100002d <i>cent mille deuxième</i>
999999 <i>neuf cent quatre-vingt-dix-neuf mille neuf cent quatre-vingt-dix-neuf</i>	999999th <i>neuf cent quatre-vingt-dix-neuf mille neuf cent quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième</i>
1000000 <i>million</i>	1000000th <i>millionième</i>
123.456.789 <i>cent vingt-trois million quatre cent cinquante-six mille sept cent quatre-vingt-neuf.</i>	123.456.789th <i>cent vingt-trois million quatre cent cinquante-six mille sept cent quatre-vingt-neuvième</i>

2. From the preceding table, it may be noticed, 1st, That the ORDINAL NUMBERS are formed from the CARDINAL, by adding *ième* to the termination of those that end with a consonant ; and by changing the *e* of those that end in *e* into the same termination *ième* ; as, *unième*, from *un* ; *deuxième*, from *deux* ; *troisième*, from *trois* ; *quatrième*, from *quatre* ; &c.

3. 2d, That the only exceptions are *premier*, *première*, *second*, *seconde*, which have no corresponding root among the cardinal numbers ; *cinquième*, which takes a *u* between the final *q* of the cardinal and the termination *ième* ; and *neuvième*, in which the final *f* of the cardinal is changed into *v*.

4. 3d, That *premier* and *second* are not used when preceded by a numeral ; thus, instead of *vingt et premier*, *trente-second*, &c. we must use *vingt et unième*, *trente deuxième*, &c.

5. *Les adverbess numéraux*, THE NUMERAL ADVERBS, are formed by adding *ment* to the termination of the ORDINAL NUMBERS ; as, *troisièmement*, thirdly, from *troisième* ; *quatrièmement*, fourthly, from *quatrième*, &c. ; except *premièrement*, firstly, and *secondement*, secondly, which are formed by adding *ment* to the feminine of the corresponding ordinal numbers *première*, *seconde*.

6. There are three other kinds of numbers ; THE MULTIPLICATIVE NUMBERS, *les nombres multiplicatifs* ; THE COLLECTIVE, *les collectifs* ; and THE FRACTIONAL, *et les fractionnaires*.

Les nombres multiplicatifs, THE MULTIPLICATIVE NUMBERS are those that express the result of a multiplication. They are,

IN ENGLISH.					IN FRENCH.
DOUBLE,	-	-	-	-	<i>double.</i>
TRIPLE,	-	-	-	-	<i>triple.</i>
QUADRUPLE,	-	-	-	-	<i>quadruple.</i>
QUINTUPLE,	-	-	-	-	<i>quintuple.</i>
SEXTUPLE,	-	-	-	-	<i>sextuple.</i>
SEPTUPLE,	-	-	-	-	<i>septuple.</i>
DECUPLE,	-	-	-	-	<i>décuple.</i>
CENTUPLE,	-	-	-	-	<i>centuple.</i>

7. *Les nombres collectifs*, THE COLLECTIVE NUMBERS, are nouns which express a collection of objects. They are formed from the CARDINAL NUMBERS, from which they are derived, by adding *aine* to the termination of those ending with a consonant, and by substituting it for the final *e* in those ending with *e*. They are,

IN FRENCH.				IN ENGLISH.
<i>douzaine,</i>	-	-	-	DOZEN, or about twelve.
<i>quinzaine,</i>	-	-	-	FIFTEEN, or about fifteen.
<i>vingtaine,</i>	-	-	-	TWENTY, or about twenty.
<i>trentaine,</i>	-	-	-	THIRTY, or about thirty.
<i>quarantaine,</i>	-	-	-	FORTY, or about forty.
<i>cinquaintaine,</i>	-	-	-	FIFTY, or about fifty.
<i>soixantaine,</i>	-	-	-	SIXTY, or about sixty.
<i>centaine,</i>	-	-	-	HUNDRED, or about 100.

8. *Les nombres fractionnaires*, THE FRACTIONAL NUMBERS, are nouns that express a determined part or fraction of objects.

In English and in French they are the same as the ORDINAL NUMBERS ; except

HALF, which is	-	-	-	<i>moitié</i> in French.
THIRD, “	-	-	-	<i>tiers</i> “
FOURTH, “	-	-	-	<i>quart</i> “

9. The number ONE, which is generally used in English before HUNDRED and THOUSAND, is never translated or expressed in French before *cent et mille* ;

ONE hundred men,	<i>Cent hommes.</i>
ONE thousand men,	<i>Mille hommes.</i>

10. In the reckoning of years the French use *mil* instead of *mille*, for ONE THOUSAND.

For the year <i>one thousand eight</i>	<i>Pour l'an mil huit cent trente-</i>
<i>hundred and thirty-seven.</i>	<i>sept.</i>

11. The numbers *vingt*, TWENTY, *cent*, HUNDRED, *million*, MILLION, and *billion*, BILLION, are the only ones that change for the plural, by taking an *s*, when they are preceded or multiplied by another number, provided they are not followed by any number ; for, if they are followed by another number, they do not take the *s* ; as,

Two <i>hundred</i> soldiers,	<i>Deux cents soldats.</i>
Two <i>hundred and twenty</i> soldiers,	<i>Deux cent vingt soldats.</i>
<i>Eighty</i> houses,	<i>Quatre-vingts maisons.</i>
<i>Eighty-five</i> houses,	<i>Quatre-vingt-cinq maisons.</i>

12. The conjunction AND, which is often used between two numbers in English, is never rendered in French ; for examples of which, the preceding table of numbers may be consulted.

Note. FOUR AND TWENTY, FIVE AND THIRTY, &c. are rendered, in French, by *vingt-quatre*, *trente-cinq*, but never by *quatre et vingt*, *cinq et trente* ; the number expressing the tens being always placed before that which expresses the units.

ADVERBS.

There are several kinds of adverbs, to express the modifications of the action of the verb, or that of the quality of adjectives. Those most commonly used are the following :

Agreeably,	<i>Agréablement.</i>	Now,	<i>Actuellement.</i>
Afterwards,	<i>Après, ensuite.</i>	Now,	<i>Maintenant.</i>
At first,	<i>D'abord.</i>	No,	<i>Non.</i>
Always,	<i>Toujours.</i>	No, or not,	<i>Ne . . . pas.*</i>
A few,	<i>Peu de.</i>	Not at all,	<i>Point du tout.</i>
As,	<i>Comme.</i>	Nothing,	<i>Rien.</i>
As much,	<i>Autant.</i>	Opposite,	<i>Vis-à-vis.</i>
Already,	<i>Déjà.</i>	Often,	<i>Souvent.</i>
At present,	<i>À présent.</i>	Politely,	<i>Poliment.</i>
Before,	<i>Auparavant.</i>	Perhaps,	<i>Peut-être.</i>
Certainly,	<i>Certainement.</i>	Somewhere,	<i>Quelque part.</i>
Every where,	<i>Partout.</i>	Seldom,	<i>Rarement.</i>
Early,	<i>De bonne heure.</i>	Soon,	<i>Bientôt.</i>
Enough,	<i>Assez.</i>	Suitably,	<i>Convenablement.</i>
Entirely,	<i>Entièrement.</i>	Strongly,	<i>Fortement.</i>
Far,	<i>Loin.</i>	Then,	<i>Alors, ensuite.</i>
Formerly,	<i>Autrefois.</i>	To-day,	<i>Aujourd'hui.</i>
Greatly,	<i>Grandement.</i>	To-morrow,	<i>Demain.</i>
Here,	<i>Ici.</i>	Too, too much	<i>Trop.</i>
Henceforth,	<i>Désormais.</i>	Thus,	<i>Ainsi.</i>
Hereafter,	<i>Dorénavant.</i>	There,	<i>Là.</i>
How,	<i>Comment.</i>	Truly,	<i>Vraiment.</i>
How much,	<i>Combien.</i>	Very,	<i>Bien, très, fort.</i>
Ill,	<i>Mal.</i>	Yesterday,	<i>Hier.</i>
Immediately,	<i>Immédiatement.</i>	Yes,	<i>Oui.</i>
Immediately,	<i>Aussitôt.</i>	Well,	<i>Bien.</i>
Less,	<i>Moins.</i>	Wisely,	<i>Sagement.</i>
Little,	<i>Peu.</i>	Where,	<i>Où.</i>
Indeed,	<i>En vérité.</i>	Within,	<i>Dedans.</i>
More,	<i>Plus.</i>	Without,	<i>Dehors.</i>
Much,	<i>Beaucoup.</i>	Why,	<i>Pourquoi.</i>
Nigh,	<i>Proche.</i>	When,	<i>Quand.</i>
Never,	<i>Jamais.</i>	Whence,	<i>D'où.†</i>

* This negation is never used in French, except with a verb, *ne* being placed immediately before it, and *pas* after it, in phrases that are not interrogative ; and, in those that are interrogative, *pas* is placed after the nominative pronoun.

† This list is far from being complete ; but those adverbs of the Exercises that are not mentioned in it will be found in the Vocabulary. So it will likewise be with the prepositions and conjunctions.

CHIEF PREPOSITIONS.

According to,	<i>Selon.</i>	In,	<i>En, dans.</i>
About,	<i>Environ.</i>	Into,	<i>Dans, en.</i>
After,	<i>Après.</i>	In spite of,	<i>Malgré.</i>
Against,	<i>Contre.</i>	Near,	<i>Près de.</i>
Among,	<i>Parmi.</i>	Notwithstanding,	<i>Malgré.</i>
At,	<i>A.</i>	Opposite,	<i>Vis-à-vis de.</i>
At(one's house)	<i>Chez.</i>	On,	<i>Sur.</i>
Before,	<i>Avant, devant.*</i>	Over,	<i>Sur, par-dessus.</i>
Behind,	<i>Derrière.</i>	Over,	<i>Au-dessus de.</i>
Behold,	<i>Voici, voilà.</i>	Round,	<i>Autour de.</i>
Besides,	<i>Outre.</i>	Since,	<i>Depuis.</i>
Between,	<i>Entre.</i>	Through,	<i>Par.</i>
By,	<i>Par.</i>	To,	<i>À.</i>
Concerning,	<i>Touchant, concernant.</i>	Towards,	<i>Vers, envers.†</i>
During,	<i>Pendant, durant.</i>	With,	<i>Avec.</i>
Except,	<i>Hors, hormis.</i>	Within,	<i>Dans.</i>
For,	<i>Pour.</i>	Without,	<i>Sans, hors.</i>
From,	<i>De, d',‡ dès.</i>		

CHIEF CONJUNCTIONS.

Also,	<i>Aussi.</i>	For,	<i>Car.</i>
Although,	<i>Quoique.</i>	However,	<i>Cependant.</i>
And,	<i>Et.</i>	If,	<i>Si.</i>
As,	<i>Comme, que.</i>	Lest,	<i>De peur que.</i>
As soon as,	<i>Dès que.</i>	Meanwhile,	<i>Cependant.</i>
Because,	<i>Parce que.</i>	Moreover,	<i>D'ailleurs.</i>
Besides,	<i>De plus.</i>	Neither,	<i>Ni.</i>
But,	<i>Mais.</i>	Nor,	<i>Ni.</i>
Either,	<i>Soit, ou.</i>	Notwithstanding,	<i>Néanmoins.</i>
Else,	<i>Ou bien.</i>	Or,	<i>Ou.</i>
Even as,	<i>Ainsi que.</i>		

* BEFORE is translated by *avant* when relating to time, and by *devant* when relating to place ; as in If you walk before me, you will arrive before me.
Si vous marchez devant moi, vous arriverez avant moi.

† De must be used before a consonant, and d' before a vowel or silent h.

‡ TOWARDS is translated by *envers*, when used in expressing the disposition of one person towards another ; and by *vers* when it has for an object a name of place or time, or when used with a verb expressing motion ; as in

To be charitable towards the poor, *Être charitable envers les pauvres.*
 To go towards a place, *Aller vers un endroit.*

Save,	<i>Sinon.</i>	Than,	<i>Que.</i>
Since,	<i>Puisque.</i>	That,	<i>Que, afin que.</i>
Suppose that,	<i>Supposé que.</i>	The same as,	<i>De même que.</i>
Provided that,	<i>Pourvu que.</i>	When,	<i>Quand, lorsque.</i>
So that,	<i>Afin que.</i>	Whilst,	<i>Tandis que.</i>

NAMES OF THE PERIODS OF TIME.

NOMS DES PÉRIODES DU TEMPS.

An age,	<i>Un siècle.</i>	A day,	<i>Un jour.</i>
A year,	<i>Un an.</i>	An hour,	<i>Une heure.</i>
A month,	<i>Un mois.</i>	A minute,	<i>Une minute.</i>

NAMES OF THE SEASONS.

Noms des saisons.

The winter,	<i>L'hiver.</i>	The summer,	<i>L'été.</i>
The spring,	<i>Le printemps.</i>	The autumn,	<i>L'automne.</i>

NAMES OF THE MONTHS.

Noms des mois.

January,	<i>Janvier.</i>	July,	<i>Juillet.</i>
February,	<i>Février.</i>	August,	<i>Abut.</i>
March,	<i>Mars.</i>	September,	<i>Septembre.</i>
April,	<i>Avril.</i>	October,	<i>Octobre.</i>
May,	<i>Mai.</i>	November,	<i>Novembre.</i>
June,	<i>Juin.</i>	December,	<i>Décembre.</i>

NAMES OF THE DAYS OF THE WEEK.

Noms des jours de la semaine.

Monday,	<i>Lundi.</i>	Friday,	<i>Vendredi.</i>
Tuesday,	<i>Mardi.</i>	Saturday,	<i>Samedi.</i>
Wednesday,	<i>Mercredi.</i>	Sunday,	<i>Dimanche.</i>
Thursday,	<i>Jeudi.</i>		

CHAPTER III.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

One can never be too familiar with the construction or conjugation of verbs ; therefore the models and rules for conjugating them are here given, that students may practise them while writing the exercises, in which they are not yet employed. At every lesson they should be required to write or recite one or several of them ; and, when a few regular ones have been correctly written or recited, the irregular verbs should be undertaken, especially pointing out where the irregularities are, and in what they consist.

Properly speaking, there is but one verb, that which expresses existence ; viz. TO BE, *être* ; for all the others may be considered a representation of that auxiliary and an adjective ; as, I SPEAK, *je parle*, is the same as I AM SPEAKING, *je suis parlant* ; THOU SINGEST, *tu chantes* ; as, THOU ART SINGING, *tu es chantant* ; HE RECEIVES, *il reçoit* ; as, HE IS RECEIVING, *il est recevant* ; &c. But the present state of the language demands the distinction of the following verbs : THE AUXILIARY, *l'auxiliaire* ; THE SUBSTANTIVE, *le substantif* ; THE ACTIVE, *les actifs* ; THE PASSIVE, *les passifs* ; THE NEUTER, *les neutres* ; THE REFLECTIVE, *les réfléchis* ; THE UNIPERSONAL, *les unipersonnels* ; and THE DEFECTIVE, *les défectueux*.

AUXILIARY VERB TO HAVE, *AVOIR*.

Le verbe auxiliaire Avoir, THE VERB TO HAVE, *avoir*, is called AUXILIARY, because, with a few exceptions, it is used in the formation of the compound tenses of the other verbs. Those compound tenses, which are formed with the past participle of any verb preceded by the tenses of TO HAVE, *avoir*, always relate to a time previous to that expressed by the simple tenses.

In French, as in English, the compound tenses of the auxilia-

ry are formed with itself, by prefixing its own simple tenses to its own past participle.

The word or words given with each tense show the sense in which that tense must be employed.

INFINITIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INFINITIF.*

SIMPLE TENSES, <i>Temps Simples.</i>		COMPOUND TENSES, <i>Temps composés.</i>	
PRESENT.	<i>Présent.</i>	PRETERITE,	<i>Prétérit.</i>
To have,	<i>Avoir.</i>	To have had,	<i>Avoir eu.</i>
PRESENT PARTICIPLE,	<i>Participe présent.</i>	PRETERITE ANTERIOR,	<i>Prétérit antérieur.</i>
Having,	<i>Ayant.</i>	Having had,	<i>Ayant eu.</i>
PAST PARTICIPLE,	<i>Participe passé.</i>		
Had,	<i>Eu, mas, Eue, fem.</i>		

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INDICATIF.*

SIMPLE TENSES, <i>Temps simples.</i>		COMPOUND TENSES, <i>Temps composés.</i>	
PRESENT,	<i>Présent.</i>	PRETERITE INDEFINITE, <i>Prétérit indéfini.</i>	
Now,	<i>Maintenant.</i>	I do not know when, <i>Je ne sais quand.</i>	
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier,</i>	SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
1st, I have,	1re, <i>*J'ai.</i>	I have had,	<i>*J'ai eu.</i>
2d, Thou hast,	2de, <i>Tu as.</i>	Thou hast had,	<i>Tu as eu.</i>
3d, { He } has,	3me, { Il } a.	He } has had,	{ Il } a eu.
{ She } has,	{ Elle } a.	She } has had,	{ Elle } a eu.
{ One } has,	{ On } a.	One } has had,	{ On } a eu.
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>	PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
1st, We have,	1re, <i>Nous avons.</i>	We have had,	<i>Nous avons eu.</i>
2d, You have,	2de, <i>Vous avez.</i>	You have had,	<i>Vous avez eu.</i>
3d, They have,	3me, <i>Ils ont.</i>	They have had,	<i>Ils ont eu.</i>
3d, They have,	3me, <i>Elles ont.</i>	They have had,	<i>Elles ont eu.</i>
IMPERFECT,	<i>Imparfait.</i>	PLUPERFECT,	<i>Plus-que-parfait.</i>
Constantly,	<i>Constamment.</i>	Before that time,	<i>Avant ce temps-là.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>	SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
1st, I had,	1re, <i>*J'avais†.</i>	I had had,	<i>*J'avais †eu.</i>
2d, Thou hadst,	2de, <i>Tu avais.</i>	Thou hadst had,	<i>Tu avais eu.</i>
3d, { He } had,	3me, { Il } avait.	He } had had,	{ Il } avait eu.
{ She } had,	{ Elle } avait.	She } had had,	{ Elle } avait eu.
{ One } had,	{ On } avait.	One } had had,	{ On } avait eu.
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>	PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
1st, We had,	1re, <i>Nous avions.</i>	We had had,	<i>Nous avions eu.</i>
2d, You had,	2de, <i>Vous aviez.</i>	You had had,	<i>Vous aviez eu.</i>
3d, They had,	3me, <i>Ils avaient.</i>	They had had,	<i>Ils avaient eu.</i>
3d, They had,	3me, <i>Elles avaient.</i>	They had had,	<i>Elles avaient eu.</i>

* I is in French *Je* before a consonant, and *J'* before a vowel or a silent *h*, when it precedes the verb ; but, when used after the verb it is always *Je* ; as, I have, *J'ai* ; have I ? *ai-je* ?

† Some books and grammars, published before 1835, have the terminations of the imperfect indicative and conditional, in the three persons singular and the third person plural, written with an *o* instead of an *a* ; thus, *ois, ois, oit, oient* ; *rois, rois, roit, roient* ; but that manner of spelling those terminations has been rejected by the French Academy, which has adopted *ai*, instead of *oi*, in all the words in which *oi* were pronounced like a grave *e*.

SIMPLE TENSES, *Temps simples.*

PRETERITE DEFINITE, *Prétérit défini.*

Last week, *La semaine dernière.*

SINGULAR.

Singulier.

1st, I had, 1re, *J'eus.*

2d, Thou hadst, 2de, *Tu eus.*

3d, { He } had, 3me, { *Il* } eut.
 { She } had, { *Elle* } eut.
 { One } had, { *On* } eut.

PLURAL.

Pluriel.

1st, We had, 1re, *Nous eûmes.*

2d, You had, 2de, *Vous eûtes.*

3d, They had, 3me, *Ils eurent.*

3d, They had, 3me, *Elles eurent.*

FUTURE,

Futur.

To-morrow, *Demain.*

SINGULAR,

Singulier.

1st, I shall or will have, 1re, *J'aurai.*

2d, Thou shalt or wilt have, 2de, *Tu auras.*

3d, { He } shall or will have, 3me, { *Il* } aura.
 { She } shall or will have, { *Elle* } aura.
 { One } shall or will have, { *On* } aura.

PLURAL,

Pluriel.

1st, We shall or will have, 1re, *Nous aurons.*

2d, You shall or will have, 2de, *Vous aurez.*

3d, They shall or will have, 3me, *Ils auront.*

3d, They shall or will have, 3me, *Elles auront.*

CONDITIONAL PRESENT, *Conditionnel présent.*

ENT,

If I could, *Si je pouvais.*

SINGULAR,

Singulier.

1st, I would† have, 1re, *J'aurais.*

2d, Thou wouldst have, 2de, *Tu aurais.*

3d, { He } would have, 3me, { *Il* } aurait.
 { She } would have, { *Elle* } aurait.
 { One } would have, { *On* } aurait.

PLURAL,

Pluriel.

1st, We would have, 1re, *Nous aurions.*

2d, You would have, 2de, *Vous auriez.*

3d, They would have, 3me, *Ils auraient.*

3d, They would have, 3me, *Elles auraient.*

COMPOUND TENSES, *Temps composés.*

PRETERITE ANTERIOR, *Prétérit antérieur.*

After, *Après que.**

SINGULAR,

Singulier.

I had had, *J'eus eu.*

Thou hadst had, *Tu eus eu.*

He } had had, *Il* } eut eu.
 { She } had had, { *Elle* } eut eu.
 { One } had had, { *On* } eut eu.

PLURAL.

Pluriel.

We had had, *Nous eûmes eu.*

You had had, *Vous eûtes eu.*

They had had, *Ils eurent eu.*

They had had, *Elles eurent eu.*

FUTURE ANTERIOR, *Futur antérieur.*

Before to-morrow, *Avant demain.*

SINGULAR,

Singulier.

I shall have had, *J'aurai eu.*

Thou wilt have had, *Tu auras eu.*

He } will have had, *Il* } aura eu.
 { She } will have had, { *Elle* } aura eu.
 { One } will have had, { *On* } aura eu.

PLURAL,

Pluriel.

We shall have had, *Nous aurons eu.*

You shall have had, *Vous aurez eu.*

They shall have had, *Ils auront eu.*

They shall have had, *Elles auront eu.*

PAST CONDITIONAL, *Conditionnel passé.*

If I had won, *Si j'avais gagné.*

SINGULAR.

Singulier.

I would† have had, *J'aurais eu.*

Thou wouldst have had, *Tu aurais eu.*

He } would have had, *Il* } aurait eu.
 { She } would have had, { *Elle* } aurait eu.
 { One } would have had, { *On* } aurait eu.

PLURAL,

Pluriel.

We would have had, *Nous aurions eu.*

You would have had, *Vous auriez eu.*

They would have had, *Ils auraient eu.*

They would have had, *Elles auraient eu.*

* *Que* becomes *qu'* before *il, elle, on* *ils, and elles.*

† The sign of the conditional tense is not always *would*, it is sometimes *could*, *should*, or *might*; but, whatever it may be in English, it never changes in French.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—*MODE DU SUBJONCTIF.*

SIMPLE TENSES, <i>Temps simples.</i>		COMPOUND TENSES, <i>Temps composés.</i>	
PRESENT OR FUTURE, <i>Présent ou Futur.</i>		PRETERITE, <i>Prétérit.</i>	
To the end <i>Afin</i>		Although <i>Quoique</i>	
SINGULAR, <i>Singulier.</i>		SINGULAR, <i>Singulier.</i>	
1st, That I may have, <i>1re, Que j'aie.</i>		†I may have had, <i>†J'aie eu.</i>	
2d, That thou mayst have, <i>2de, Que tu aies.</i>		Thou mayst have had, <i>Tu aies eu.</i>	
3d, { That he } may have, <i>3me, { Qu'il } ait.</i>		He } may have had, <i>Il } ait eu.</i>	
{ That she } have, <i>{ Qu'elle } ait.</i>		She } may have had, <i>Elle } ait eu.</i>	
{ That one } have, <i>{ Qu'on } ait.</i>		One } may have had, <i>On } ait eu.</i>	
PLURAL, <i>Pluriel.</i>		PLURAL, <i>Pluriel.</i>	
1st, That we may have, <i>1re, Que nous ayons.</i>		We may have had, <i>Nous ayons eu.</i>	
2d, That you may have, <i>2de, Que vous ayez.</i>		You may have had, <i>Vous ayez eu.</i>	
3d, That they may have, <i>3me, Qu'ils aient.</i>		They may have had, <i>Ils aient eu.</i>	
3d, That they may have, <i>3me, Qu'elles aient.</i>		They may have had, <i>Elles aient eu.</i>	
IMPERFECT, <i>Imparfait.</i>		PLUPERFECT, <i>Plus-que-parfait</i>	
Provided <i>Pourvu</i>		Although <i>Quoique</i>	
SINGULAR, <i>Singulier.</i>		SINGULAR, <i>Singulier.</i>	
1st, That I might have, <i>1re, Que j'eusse.</i>		I might have had, <i>†J'eusse eu.</i>	
2d, That thou mightst have, <i>2de, Que tu eusses.</i>		Thou mightst have had, <i>Tu eusses eu.</i>	
3d, { That he } might have, <i>3me, { Qu'il } eût.</i>		He } might have had, <i>Il } eût eu.</i>	
{ That she } have, <i>{ Qu'elle } eût.</i>		She } might have had, <i>Elle } eût eu.</i>	
{ That one } have, <i>{ Qu'on } eût.</i>		One } might have had, <i>On } eût eu.</i>	
PLURAL, <i>Pluriel.</i>		PLURAL, <i>Pluriel.</i>	
1st, That we might have, <i>1re, Que nous eussions.</i>		We might have had, <i>Nous eussions eu.</i>	
2d, That you might have, <i>2de, Que vous eussiez.</i>		You might have had, <i>Vous eussiez eu.</i>	
3d, That they might have, <i>3me, Qu'ils eussent.</i>		They might have had, <i>Ils eussent eu.</i>	
That they might have, <i>Qu'elles eussent.</i>		They might have had, <i>Elles eussent eu.</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'IMPÉRATIF.*

SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
1st, ———	<i>1re, ———</i>
2d, Have thou,	<i>2de, Aie.</i>
3d, Let him have,	<i>3me, Qu'il ait.</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
1st, Let us have,	<i>1re, Ayons.</i>
2d, Have ye or you,	<i>2de, Ayez.</i>
3d, Let them have,	<i>3me, Qu'ils aient.</i>
Let them have,	<i>Qu'elles aient.</i>

† In English, the subjunctive mood has not always before it the conjunction **THAT** ; but in French it must always be preceded by *que*, or by a conjunction ending in *que*, the final *e* of which is supplied by an apostrophe before *il*, *elle*, *on*, *ils*, or *elles*.

SUBSTANTIVE VERB TO BE, ÊTRE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.—MODE DE L'INFINITIF.

SIMPLE TENSES, *Temps simples.*

PRESENT,	<i>Présent.</i>
To be,	<i>Être.</i>
PRESENT PARTICIPLE,	<i>Participe présent.</i>
Being,	<i>Êtant.</i>
PAST PARTICIPLE,	<i>Participe passé,</i>
Been,	<i>Été.</i>

COMPOUND TENSES, *Temps composés.*

PRETERITE,	<i>Prétérit.</i>
To have been,	<i>Avoir été.</i>
PRETERITE ANTERIOR,	<i>Prétérit antérieur.</i>
Having been,	<i>Ayant été.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.—MODE DE L'INDICATIF.

SIMPLE TENSES, *Temps simples.*

PRESENT,	<i>Présent.</i>
Now,	<i>Maintenant.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
1st, I am,	1re, <i>Je suis.</i>
2d, Thou art,	2de, <i>Tu es.</i>
3d, { He } is,	3me, { <i>Il</i> } <i>est.</i>
{ She } is,	{ <i>Elle</i> }
{ One }	{ <i>On</i> }
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
1st, We are,	1re, <i>Nous sommes.</i>
2d, You are,	2de, <i>Vous êtes.</i>
3d, They are,	3me, <i>Ils sont.</i>
They are,	<i>Elles sont.</i>

IMPERFECT,	<i>Imparfait.</i>
Constantly,	<i>Constamment.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
1st, I was,	1re, <i>J'étais.</i>
2d, Thou wast,	2de, <i>Tu étais.</i>
3d, { He } was,	3me, { <i>Il</i> } <i>était.</i>
{ She }	{ <i>Elle</i> }
{ One }	{ <i>On</i> }
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
1st, We were,	1re, <i>Nous étions.</i>
2d, You were,	2de, <i>Vous étiez.</i>
3d, They were,	3me, <i>Ils étaient.</i>
They were,	<i>Elles étaient.</i>

PRETERITE DEFINITE, *Prétérit défini.*

Last month,	<i>Le mois dernier.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
1st, I was,	1re, <i>Je fus.</i>
2d, Thou wast,	2de, <i>Tu fus.</i>
3d, { He } was,	3me, { <i>Il</i> } <i>fut.</i>
{ She }	{ <i>Elle</i> }
{ One }	{ <i>On</i> }
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
1st, We were,	1re, <i>Nous fûmes.</i>
2d, You were,	2de, <i>Vous fûtes.</i>
3d, They were,	3me, <i>Ils furent.</i>
They were,	<i>Elles furent.</i>

COMPOUND TENSES, *Temps composés.*

PRETERITE INDEFINITE, *Prétérit indéfini.*

I do not know when, *Je ne sais quand.*

SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I have been,	<i>J'ai été.</i>
Thou hast been,	<i>Tu as été.</i>
He } has been,	<i>Il</i> }
She }	<i>Elle</i> }
One }	<i>On</i> }

PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
We have been,	<i>Nous avons été.</i>
You have been,	<i>Vous avez été.</i>
They have been,	<i>Ils ont été.</i>
They have been,	<i>Elles ont été.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *Plus-que-parfait.*

Before that time, *Avant ce temps-là.*

SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I had been,	<i>J'avais été.</i>
Thou hadst been,	<i>Tu avais été.</i>
He } had been,	<i>Il</i> }
She }	<i>Elle</i> }
One }	<i>On</i> }

PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
We had been,	<i>Nous avions été.</i>
You had been,	<i>Vous aviez été.</i>
They had been,	<i>Ils avaient été.</i>
They had been,	<i>Elles avaient été.</i>

PRETERITE ANTERIOR, *Prétérit antérieur.*

As soon as, *Dès que.*

SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I had been,	<i>J'eus été.</i>
Thou hadst been,	<i>Tu eus été.</i>
He } had been,	<i>Il</i> }
She }	<i>Elle</i> }
One }	<i>On</i> }

PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
We had been,	<i>Nous eûmes été.</i>
You had been,	<i>Vous eûtes été.</i>
They had been,	<i>Ils eurent été.</i>
They had been,	<i>Elles eurent été.</i>

SIMPLE TENSES, *Temps simples.*

FUTURE,	FUTUR.
To-morrow,	<i>Demain.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
1st, I shall be,	1re, <i>Je serai.</i>
2d, Thou wilt be,	2de, <i>Tu seras.</i>
3d, { He } will be,	3me, { Il } sera.
{ She } will be,	{ Elle } sera.
{ One }	{ On }
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
1st, We will be,	1re, <i>Nous serons.</i>
2d, You will be,	2de, <i>Vous serez.</i>
3d, They will be,	3me, <i>Ils seront.</i>
They will be,	<i>Elles seront.</i>

CONDITIONAL PRESENT, *Conditionnel présent.*

If I could,	<i>Si je pouvais.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
1st, I would be,	1re, <i>Je serais.</i>
2d, Thou wouldst be,	2de, <i>Tu serais.</i>
3d, { He } would be,	3me, { Il } serait.
{ She } would be,	{ Elle } serait.
{ One }	{ On }
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
1st, We would be,	1re, <i>Nous serions.</i>
2d, You would be,	2de, <i>Vous seriez.</i>
3d, They would be,	3me, <i>Ils seraient.</i>
They would be,	<i>Elles seraient.</i>

COMPOUND TENSES, *Temps composés.*

FUTURE ANTERIOR,	Futur antérieur.
Before to-morrow,	<i>Avant demain.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I shall have been,	<i>J'aurai été.</i>
Thou shalt have been,	<i>Tu auras été.</i>
He } will have been,	Il } aura été.
She } will have been,	Elle } aura été.
One }	On }
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
We shall have been,	<i>Nous aurons été.</i>
You will have been,	<i>Vous aurez été.</i>
They will have been,	<i>Ils auront été.</i>
They will have been,	<i>Elles auront été.</i>

PAST CONDITIONAL, *Conditionnel passé.*

If I had studied,	<i>Si j'avais étudié.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I would have been,	<i>J'aurais été.</i>
Thou wouldst have been,	<i>Tu aurais été.</i>
He } would have been,	Il } aurait été.
She } would have been,	Elle } aurait été.
One }	On }
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
We would have been,	<i>Nous aurions été.</i>
You would have been,	<i>Vous auriez été.</i>
They would have been,	<i>Ils auraient été.</i>
They would have been,	<i>Elles auraient été.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—*MODE DU SUBJONCTIF.*SIMPLE TENSES, *Temps simples.*

PRESENT OF FUTURE,	Présent ou Futur.
To the end	<i>Afin</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
1, That I may be,	1, <i>Que je sois.</i>
2, That thou mayst be,	2, <i>Que tu sois.</i>
3, { That he } may be,	3, { Qu'il } soit.
{ That she } may be,	{ Qu'elle } soit.
{ That one }	{ Qu'on }
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
1, That we may be,	1, <i>Que nous soyons.</i>
2, That you may be,	2, <i>Que vous soyez.</i>
3, That they may be,	3, <i>Qu'ils soient.</i>
That they may be,	<i>Qu'elles soient.</i>

IMPERFECT,	Imparfait.
Provided,	<i>Pourvu.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
1, That I might be,	1, <i>Que je fusse.</i>
2, That thou mightest be,	2, <i>Que tu fusses.</i>
3, { That he } might be,	3, { Qu'il } fût.
{ That she } might be,	{ Qu'elle } fût.
{ That one }	{ Qu'on }

COMPOUND TENSES, *Temps composés.*

PRETERITE,	Prétérit.
Although,	<i>Quoique.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I may have been,	<i>J'aie été.</i>
Thou mayst have been,	<i>Tu aies été.</i>
He } may have been,	Il } ait été.
She } may have been,	Elle } ait été.
One }	On }
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
We may have been,	<i>Nous ayons été.</i>
You may have been,	<i>Vous ayez été.</i>
They may have been,	<i>Ils aient été.</i>
They may have been,	<i>Elles aient été.</i>

PLUPERFECT,	Plus-que-parfait.
Although	<i>Quoique.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I might have been,	<i>J'eusse été.</i>
Thou mightst have been,	<i>Tu eusses été.</i>
He } might have been,	Il } eût été.
She } might have been,	Elle } eût été.
One }	On }

PLURAL,	Pluriel.	PLURAL,	Pluriel.
1, That we might be,	1, <i>Que nous fussions.</i>	We might have been,	<i>Nous eussions été.</i>
2, That you might be,	2, <i>Que vous fussiez.</i>	You might have been,	<i>Vous eussiez été.</i>
3, That they might be,	3, <i>Qu'ils fussent.</i>	They might have been,	<i>Ils eussent été.</i>
That they might be,	<i>Qu'elles fussent.</i>	They might have been,	<i>Elles eussent été.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'IMPÉRATIF.*

SINGULAR,	Singulier.
1st, ———	1re, ———
2d, Be thou,	2de, Sois.
3d, { Let him } { Let her } be, { Let one }	3me, { Qu'il } { Qu'elle } soit. { Qu'on }
PLURAL,	Pluriel.
1st, Let us be,	1re, Soyons.
2d, Be ye or you,	2de, Soyez.
3d, Let them be, Let them be,	3me, Qu'ils soient. Qu'elles soient.

FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

MODEL FOR THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ENDING IN *ER*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INFINITIF.*

PRESENT TENSE.	Présent.
To carry,	Porter.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE,	Participe présent.
Carrying,	Portant.
PAST PARTICIPLE,	Participe passé.
Carried,	Porté. m. ée, f.

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INDICATIF.*

PRESENT TENSE,	Présent.	IMPERFECT,	Imparfait.
Now,	Maintenant.	Usually,	Ordinairement.
SINGULAR,	Singulier.	SINGULAR,	Singulier.
I carry, or do* carry, or am carrying,	<i>Je porte.</i>	I was carrying,	<i>Je portais.</i>
Thou carriest, or dost carry, or art carrying,	<i>Tu portes.</i>	Thou wast carry- ing,	<i>Tu portais.</i>
He } carries, or does She } carry, or is One } carrying,	<i>Il } Elle } porte. On }</i>	He } She } was carrying. One }	<i>Il } Elle } portait. On }</i>
PLURAL,	Pluriel.	PLURAL,	Pluriel.
We carry, or do carry, or are carrying,	<i>Nous portons.</i>	We were carrying,	<i>Nous portions.</i>
You carry, or do carry, or are carrying,	<i>Vous portez.</i>	Ye, you were car- rying,	<i>Vous portiez.</i>
They carry, or do carry, or are carrying,	<i>Ils } Elles } portent.</i>	They were carry- ing,	<i>{ Ils } { Elles } portaient.</i>

* When to do or any other word is used, not to express an action, but merely as the sign of the tense of the verb with which it is employed, it is never rendered in French.

DEFINITE PRETERITE TENSE,	Prétérit défini.	PLURAL,	Pluriel.
Last month, last year,	<i>Le mois dernier, l'année dernière.</i>	We shall or will carry,	<i>Nous porterons.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>	Ye, you shall or will carry,	<i>Vous porterez.</i>
I carried, or did carry,	<i>Je portai.</i>	They shall or will carry,	<i>Ils } porteront. Elles }</i>
Thou carriedst, or didst carry,	<i>Tu portas.</i>		
He } carried, or	<i>Il } porta.</i>	CONDITIONAL PRESENT TENSE,	<i>Conditionnel présent.</i>
She } did carry,	<i>Elle } porta.</i>	If I could	<i>Si je pouvais.</i>
One }	<i>On }</i>		
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>	SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
We carried, or did carry,	<i>Nous portâmes.</i>	I should or would carry,	<i>Je porterais.</i>
Ye, you carried, or did carry,	<i>Vous portâtes.</i>	Thou wouldst or shouldst carry,	<i>Tu porterais.</i>
They carried, or did carry,	<i>Ils } portèrent. Elles }</i>	He } would or should	<i>Il } porterait.</i>
		She } carry,	<i>Elle } porterait.</i>
		One }	<i>On }</i>
FUTURE TENSE,	<i>Futur.</i>	PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
To-morrow	<i>Demain</i>	We would or should carry,	<i>Nous porterions.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>	Ye, you would or should carry,	<i>Vous porteriez.</i>
I shall or will carry,	<i>Je porterai.</i>	They would or should carry,	<i>Ils } porteraient. Elles }</i>
Thou shalt or wilt carry,	<i>Tu porteras.</i>		
He } shall or will	<i>Il } portera.</i>		
She } carry,	<i>Elle } portera.</i>		
One }	<i>On }</i>		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—MODE DU SUBJONCTIF.

PRESENT OR FUTURE TENSE,	Présent ou Futur.	IMPERFECT TENSE,	Imparfait.
To the end that	<i>Afinque</i>	Provided that	<i>Pourvu que</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>	SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
*— I may carry,	<i>— je porte.</i>	*— I might carry,	<i>— je portasse.</i>
— thou mayst carry,	<i>— tu portes.</i>	— thou mightest carry,	<i>— tu portasses.</i>
— he } may carry,	<i>— il } porte.</i>	— he } might carry,	<i>— il } portât.</i>
— she } may carry,	<i>— elle } porte.</i>	— she } might carry,	<i>— elle } portât.</i>
— one }	<i>— on }</i>	— one }	<i>— on }</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>	PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
— we may carry,	<i>— nous portions.</i>	— we might carry,	<i>— nous portassions.</i>
— ye or you may carry,	<i>— vous portiez.</i>	— ye or you might carry,	<i>— vous portassiez.</i>
— they may carry,	<i>— ils } portent.</i>	— they might carry,	<i>— ils } portassent.</i>
			<i>— elles } sent.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.—MODE DE L'IMPÉRATIF.

SINGULAR.	<i>Singulier.</i>
Carry thou,	<i>Porte.</i>
Let him }	<i>Qu'il }</i>
Let her } carry,	<i>Qu'e/le } porte.</i>
Let one }	<i>Qu'on }</i>

* The dash in the English is for *that* ; and in the French for *que* before a consonant, and for *qu'* before *il, elle, on, ils, elles*.

PLURAL.	Pluriel.
Let us carry,	<i>Portons.</i>
Carry ye. or you,	<i>Portez.</i>
Let them carry,	<i>Qu'ils } portent.</i> <i>Qu'elles }</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.—*TEMPS COMPOSÉS.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INFINITIF.*

PRETERITE,	<i>Prétérít.</i>	PRETERITE ANTERIOR,	<i>Prétérít antérieur.</i>
To have carried,	<i>Avoir porté.</i>	Having carried,	<i>Ayant porté.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INDICATIF.*

PRETERITE INDEFINITE, <i>Prétérít indéfini.</i>	I had carried, &c. <i>J'eus porté, &c.</i>
I do not know when <i>Je ne sais quand</i>	FUTURE ANTERIOR, <i>Futur antérieur.</i>
I have carried, &c. <i>J'ai porté, &c.</i>	Before to-morrow <i>Avant demain</i>
PLUPERFECT, <i>Plus-que-parfait.</i>	I shall have carried, &c. <i>J'aurai porté, &c.</i>
Before that time <i>Avant ce temps-là</i>	PAST CONDITIONAL, <i>Conditionnel passé.</i>
I had carried, &c. <i>J'avais porté, &c.</i>	If I had won, <i>Si j'avais gagné.</i>
PRETERITE ANTERIOR, <i>Prétérít antérieur.</i>	I would have carried, <i>J'aurais porté, &c.</i>
When or after <i>Lorsque ou après que</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—*MODE DU SUBJONCTIF.*

PRETERITE,	<i>Prétérít.</i>	PLUPERFECT,	<i>Plus-que-parfait.</i>
Although	<i>Quoique</i>	Although	<i>Quoique</i>
— I may have carried, &c.	<i>— J'aie porté, &c.</i>	— I might have carried, &c.	<i>— J'eusse porté, &c.</i>

MODEL FOR THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ENDING IN *IR.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INFINITIF.*

PRESENT TENSE,	<i>Présent.</i>
To finish,	<i>Finir.</i>
PRESENT PARTICIPLE,	<i>Participe présent.</i>
Finishing,	<i>Finissant.</i>
PAST PARTICIPLE,	<i>Participe passé.</i>
Finished,	<i>Finí, m. ie, f.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INDICATIF.*

PRESENT TENSE,	<i>Présent.</i>	He } finishes, or does	<i>Il }</i>
Now	<i>Maintenant</i>	She } finish, or is	<i>Elle }</i>
		One } finishing,	<i>On }</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>	PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
I finish, do finish, or am finishing,	<i>Je finis.</i>	We finish, or do finish, or are finishing,	<i>Nous finissons.</i>
Thou finishest, dost finish, or art finishing,	<i>Tu finis.</i>	You finish, or do finish, or are finishing,	<i>Vous finissez.</i>
		They finish, or do finish, or are finishing,	<i>Ils } finissent.</i> <i>Elles }</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE, <i>Imparfait.</i>		FUTURE TENSE, <i>Futur.</i>	
Usually	<i>Ordinairement</i>	On the next day after to-morrow	<i>Après demain</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>	SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I was finishing,	<i>Je finissais.</i>	I shall or will finish,	<i>Je finirai.</i>
Thou wast finishing,	<i>Tu finissais.</i>	Thou shalt or wilt finish,	<i>Tu finiras.</i>
He } was finishing,	<i>Il } finissait.</i>	He } will finish,	<i>Il } finira.</i>
She } was finishing,	<i>Elle } finissait.</i>	She } will finish,	<i>Elle } finira.</i>
One } was finishing,	<i>On } finissait.</i>	One } will finish,	<i>On } finira.</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>	PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
We were finishing,	<i>Nous finissions.</i>	We shall or will finish,	<i>Nous finirons.</i>
You were finishing,	<i>Vous finissiez.</i>	Ye or you shall or will finish,	<i>Vous finirez.</i>
They were finishing,	<i>Ils } finissaient.</i>	They shall or will finish,	<i>Ils } finiront.</i>
	<i>Elles } finissaient.</i>		<i>Elles } finiront.</i>
PRÆTERITE DEFINITE TENSE,	<i>Prétérit défini.</i>	PRESENT CONDITIONAL TENSE,	<i>Conditionnel présent.</i>
Last week	<i>La semaine dernière</i>	If I could	<i>Si je pouvais</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>	SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I finished, or did finish,	<i>Je finis.</i>	I would or should finish,	<i>Je finirais.</i>
Thou finishest, or didst finish,	<i>Tu finis.</i>	Thou wouldst or shouldst finish,	<i>Tu finirais.</i>
He } finished, or did finish,	<i>Il } finit.</i>	He } would or should finish,	<i>Il } finirait.</i>
She } finished, or did finish,	<i>Elle } finit.</i>	She } would or should finish,	<i>Elle } finirait.</i>
One } finished, or did finish,	<i>On } finit.</i>	One } would or should finish,	<i>On } finirait.</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>	PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
We finished, or did finish,	<i>Nous finîmes.</i>	We would or should finish,	<i>Nous finirions.</i>
You finished, or did finish,	<i>Vous finîtes.</i>	Ye or you would or should finish,	<i>Vous finiriez.</i>
They finished, or did finish,	<i>Ils } finirent.</i>	They would or should finish,	<i>Ils } finiraient.</i>
	<i>Elles } finirent.</i>		<i>Elles } finiraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—MODE DU SUBJONCTIF.

PRESENT OR FUTURE TENSE,		IMPERFECT TENSE, <i>Imparfait.</i>	
To the end that	<i>Afinque</i>	Provided that	<i>Pourvu que</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>	SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I may finish,	<i>je finisse.</i>	I might finish,	<i>je finisse.</i>
thou mayst finish,	<i>tu finisses.</i>	thou mightest finish,	<i>tu finisses.</i>
he } may finish,	<i>il } finisse.</i>	he } might finish,	<i>il } finisse.</i>
she } may finish,	<i>elle } finisse.</i>	she } might finish,	<i>elle } finisse.</i>
one } may finish,	<i>on } finisse.</i>	one } might finish,	<i>on } finisse.</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>	PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
we may finish,	<i>nous finissions.</i>	we might finish,	<i>nous finissions.</i>
ye or you may finish,	<i>vous finissiez.</i>	ye or you might finish,	<i>vous finissiez.</i>
they may finish,	<i>ils } finissent.</i>	they might finish,	<i>ils } finissent.</i>
	<i>elles } finissent.</i>		<i>elles } finissent.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.—MODE DE L'IMPÉRATIF.

SINGULAR,		<i>Singulier.</i>
Finish thou,		<i>Finis.</i>
Let him } finish,		<i>Qu'il } finisse.</i>
Let her } finish,		<i>Qu'elle } finisse.</i>
Let one } finish,		<i>Qu'on } finisse.</i>
PLURAL,		<i>Pluriel.</i>
Let us finish,		<i>Finissons.</i>
Finish ye or you,		<i>Finissez.</i>
Let them finish,		<i>Qu'ils } finissent.</i>
		<i>Qu'elles } finissent.</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.—*TEMPS COMPOSÉS.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INFINITIF.*

PRETERITE,	<i>Prétérit.</i>	PRETERITE ANTERIOR,	<i>Prétérit antérieur.</i>
To have finished,	<i>Avoir fini.</i>	Having finished,	<i>Ayant fini,</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INDICATIF.*

PRETERITE INDEFINITE, <i>Prétérit indéfini.</i>	FUTURE ANTERIOR, <i>Fatur antérieur.</i>
I do not know when <i>Je ne sais quand</i>	Before to-morrow <i>Avant demain.</i>
I have finished, &c. <i>J'ai fini, &c.</i>	I shall have finished, &c. <i>J'aurai fini, &c.</i>
PLUPERFECT, <i>Plus-que-parfait.</i>	PAST CONDITIONAL, <i>Conditionnel passé,</i>
Before that time <i>Avant ce temps-là</i>	If I had won <i>Si j'avais gagné</i>
I had finished, &c. <i>J'avais fini, &c.</i>	I would have finished, <i>J'aurais fini, &c.</i>
PRETERITE ANTERIOR, <i>Prétérit antérieur.</i>	&c.
When or after <i>Lorsque ou après que</i>	
I had finished, &c. <i>J'eus fini, &c.</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—*MODE DU SUBJONCTIF.*

PRETERITE,	<i>Prétérit.</i>	PLUPERFECT,	<i>Plus-que-parfait.</i>
Although	<i>Quoique</i>	Although	<i>Quoique</i>
— I may have finished, &c.	<i>J'aie fini, &c.</i>	— I might have finished, &c.	<i>J'eusse fini, &c.</i>

MODEL FOR THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ENDING IN *EVOIR.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INFINITIF.*

PRESENT TENSE.	<i>Présent.</i>
To receive,	<i>Recevoir.</i>
PRESENT PARTICIPLE,	<i>Participe présent.</i>
Receiving,	<i>Recevant.</i>
PAST PARTICIPLE,	<i>Participe passé.</i>
Received,	<i>Reçu, m. ue, f.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INDICATIF.*

PRESENT TENSE,	<i>Présent.</i>	IMPERFECT TENSE,	<i>Imparfait.</i>
Now	<i>à présent</i>	Generally	<i>Généralement</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>	SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I receive, or do receive,	<i>Je reçois.</i>	I was receiving,	<i>Je recevais.</i>
or am receiving,		Thou wast receiving,	<i>Tu recevais.</i>
Thou receivest, or dost	<i>Tu reçois.</i>	He } was receiving,	<i>Il } recevait.</i>
receive, or art receiving,		She } was receiving,	<i>Elle } recevait.</i>
He } receives, or does	<i>Il } reçoit.</i>	One } was receiving,	<i>On } recevait.</i>
She } receive, or is	<i>Elle } reçoit.</i>		
One } receiving,		PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>	We were receiving,	<i>Nous recevions.</i>
We receive, or do receive, or are receiving,	<i>Nous recevons.</i>	Ye or you were receiving,	<i>Vous receviez.</i>
Ye or you receive, or do receive, or are receiving,	<i>Vous recevez.</i>	They were receiving,	<i>Ils } recevaient.</i>
They receive, or do receive, or are receiving,	<i>Ils } reçoivent.</i>		<i>Elles } vent.</i>

PRETERITE DEFINITE TENSE.	<i>Prétérit défini.</i>	PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
Last year	<i>L'année dernière</i>	We shall or will receive,	<i>Nous recevrons.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>	Ye or you shall or will receive,	<i>Vous recevrez.</i>
I received, or did receive,	<i>Je reçus.</i>	They shall or will receive,	<i>Ils } recevront. Elles }</i>
Thou receivedst, or didst receive,	<i>Tu reçus.</i>		
He } received, or did She } receive, One }	<i>Il } reçut. Elle } On }</i>	PRESENT CONDITIONAL TENSE,	<i>Conditionnel présent.</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>	If I could	<i>Si je pouvais</i>
We received, or did receive,	<i>Nous reçûmes.</i>	SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
Ye received, or did receive,	<i>Vous reçûtes.</i>	I would or should receive,	<i>Je recevrais.</i>
They received, or did receive,	<i>Ils } reçurent. Elles }</i>	Thou wouldst or shouldst receive,	<i>Tu recevrais.</i>
FUTURE TENSE,	<i>Futur.</i>	He } would or should She } receive, One }	<i>Il } recevrait. Elle } On }</i>
Next week	<i>La semaine prochaine</i>	PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>	We would or should receive,	<i>Nous recevriions.</i>
I shall or will receive,	<i>Je recevrai.</i>	Ye, you would or should receive,	<i>Vous recevriez.</i>
Thou shalt or wilt receive,	<i>Tu recevras.</i>	They would or should receive,	<i>Ils } recevraient Elles }</i>
He } shall or will She } receive, One }	<i>Il } recevra. Elle } On }</i>		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—*MODE DU SUBJONCTIF.*

PRESENT OR FUTURE TENSE,	<i>Présent ou Futur.</i>	IMPERFECT TENSE,	<i>Imparfait.</i>
To the end that	<i>Afin que*</i>	Provided that	<i>Pourvu que*</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>	SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
— I may receive,	<i>— je reçoive.</i>	— I might receive,	<i>— je reçusse.</i>
— thou mayst receive,	<i>— tu reçoives.</i>	— thou mightest receive,	<i>— tu reçusses.</i>
— he } may receive, — she } — one }	<i>— il } — elle } reçoive. — on }</i>	— he } might receive, — she } — one }	<i>— il } — elle } reçût. — on }</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>	PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
— we may receive,	<i>— nous recevions.</i>	— we might receive,	<i>— nous reçussions.</i>
— ye or you may receive,	<i>— vous receviez.</i>	— ye or you might receive,	<i>— vous reçussiez.</i>
— they may receive,	<i>— ils } recoivent. — elles }</i>	— they might receive,	<i>— ils } reçussent. — elles }</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'IMPÉRATIF.*

SINGULAR.	<i>Singulier.</i>
Receive thou,	<i>Reçois.</i>
Let him } Let her } receive, Let one }	<i>Qu'il } Qu'elle } reçoive. Qu'on }</i>

* *Que* becomes *qu'* before *il, elle, on, ils, elles.*

PLURAL,	Pluriel.
Let us receive,	<i>Recevons.</i>
Receive ye or you,	<i>Recevez.</i>
Let them receive,	<i>Qu'ils } reçoivent.</i> <i>Qu'elles }</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.—*TEMPS COMPOSÉS.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INFINITIF.*

PRETERITE,	<i>Prétérit.</i>	PRETERITE ANTERIOR,	<i>Prétérit antérieur.</i>
To have received,	<i>Avoir reçu.</i>	Having received,	<i>Ayant reçu.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INDICATIF.*

PRETERITE INDEFINITE, <i>Prétérit indéfini.</i>	I had received, &c. <i>J'eus reçu, &c.</i>
I do not know when <i>Je ne sais quand</i>	FUTURE ANTERIOR, <i>Futur antérieur.</i>
I have received, &c. <i>J'ai reçu, &c.</i>	Before this evening <i>Avant ce soir</i>
PLUPERFECT, <i>Plus-que-parfait.</i>	I shall have received, &c. <i>J'aurai reçu, &c.</i>
Before that time <i>Avant ce temps-là</i>	PAST CONDITIONAL, <i>Conditionnel passé.</i>
I had received, &c. <i>J'avais reçu, &c.</i>	If I had studied, <i>Si j'avais étudié.</i>
PRETERITE ANTERIOR, <i>Prétérit antérieur.</i>	I would have received, <i>J'aurais reçu, &c.</i>
When or after <i>Lorsque ou après que</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—*MODE DU SUBJONCTIF.*

PRETERITE, <i>Prétérit.</i>	PLUPERFECT, <i>Plus-que-parfait.</i>
Although <i>Quoique</i>	Although <i>Quoique</i>
— I may have received, &c. <i>— J'aie reçu, &c.</i>	— I might have received, &c. <i>— J'eusse reçu, &c.</i>

MODEL FOR THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ENDING IN RE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INFINITIF.*

PRESENT TENSE,	<i>Présent.</i>
To sell,	<i>Vendre.</i>
PRESENT PARTICIPLE,	<i>Participe présent.</i>
Selling,	<i>Vendant.</i>
PAST PARTICIPLE,	<i>Participe passé.</i>
Sold,	<i>Vendu, m. ue, f.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INDICATIF.*

PRESENT TENSE,	<i>Présent.</i>	PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
At present,	<i>à présent.</i>		
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>		
I sell, or do sell,	<i>Je vends.</i>	We sell, or do sell,	<i>Nous vendons.</i>
or am selling,		or are selling,	
Thou sellest, or dost	<i>Tu vends.</i>	Ye or you sell, or do	<i>Vous vendez.</i>
sell, or art selling,		sell, or are selling,	
He } sells, or does	<i>Il</i>	They sell, or do sell,	<i>Ils</i>
She } sell, or is	<i>Elle } vend,</i>	or are selling,	<i>Elles } vendent.</i>
One } selling,	<i>On }</i>		

IMPERFECT TENSE, Usually	<i>Imparfait. Ordinairement</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I was selling,	<i>Je vendais.</i>
Thou wast selling,	<i>Tu vendais.</i>
He	<i>Il</i>
She } was selling,	<i>Elle } vendait.</i>
One } was selling,	<i>On } vendait.</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
We were selling,	<i>Nous vendions.</i>
Ye or you were selling,	<i>Vous vendiez.</i>
They were selling,	<i>Ils } vendaient. Elles }</i>
PRETERITE DEFINITE TENSE,	<i>Prétérit défini.</i>
The day before yesterday	<i>Avant hier</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I sold, or did sell,	<i>Je vendis.</i>
Thou soldest, or didst sell,	<i>Tu vendis.</i>
He	<i>Il</i>
She } sold, or did	<i>Elle } vendit.</i>
One } sell,	<i>On } vendit.</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
We sold, or did sell,	<i>Nous vendîmes.</i>
Ye or you sold, or did sell,	<i>Vous vendîtes.</i>
They sold, or did sell,	<i>Ils } vendi- Elles } rent.</i>

FUTURE TENSE,	<i>Futur.</i>
Next month	<i>Le mois prochain</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I shall or will sell,	<i>Je vendrai.</i>
Thou shalt or wilt sell,	<i>Tu vendras.</i>
He	<i>Il</i>
She } will sell,	<i>Elle } vendra.</i>
One } will sell,	<i>On } vendra.</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
We shall or will sell,	<i>Nous vendrons.</i>
Ye or you shall or will sell,	<i>Vous vendrez.</i>
They shall or will sell,	<i>Ils } vendront. Elles }</i>
PRESENT CONDITION- AL TENSE,	<i>Conditionnel présent.</i>
If I could	<i>Si je pouvais</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
I would or should sell,	<i>Je vendrais.</i>
Thou wouldst or shouldst sell,	<i>Tu vendrais.</i>
He	<i>Il</i>
She } would or	<i>Elle } vendrait.</i>
One } should sell,	<i>On } vendrait.</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
We would or should sell,	<i>Nous vendrions.</i>
Ye or you would or should sell,	<i>Vous vendriez.</i>
They would or should sell,	<i>Ils } vendraient. Elles }</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—*MODE DU SUBJONCTIF.*

PRESENT OR FUTURE TENSE,	<i>Présent ou Futur.</i>
To the end that	<i>Afin que</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
— I may sell,	<i>— je vende.</i>
— thou mayst sell,	<i>— tu vendes.</i>
— he	<i>— il</i>
— she } may sell,	<i>— elle } vende.</i>
— one }	<i>— on }</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
— we may sell,	<i>— nous vendions.</i>
— ye or you may sell,	<i>— vous vendiez.</i>
— they may sell,	<i>— ils } vendent. — elles }</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE,	<i>Imparfait.</i>
Provided that	<i>Pourvu que</i>
SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
— I might sell,	<i>— je vendisse.</i>
— thou mightest sell,	<i>— tu vendisses.</i>
— he	<i>— il</i>
— she } might	<i>— elle } vendît.</i>
— one } sell,	<i>— on }</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
— we might sell,	<i>— nous vendissions.</i>
— ye or you might sell,	<i>— vous vendissiez.</i>
— they might sell,	<i>— ils } vendis- — elles } sent.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'IMPÉRATIF.*

SINGULAR,	<i>Singulier.</i>
Sell thou,	<i>Vends.</i>
Let him	<i>Qu'il</i>
Let her } sell,	<i>Qu'elle } vende.</i>
Let one }	<i>Qu'on }</i>
PLURAL,	<i>Pluriel.</i>
Let us sell,	<i>Vendons.</i>
Sell ye or you,	<i>Vendez.</i>
Let them sell,	<i>Qu'ils } vendent. Qu'elles }</i>

COMPOUND TENSES.—*TEMPS COMPOSÉS.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INFINITIF.*

PRETERITE, To have sold,	Prétérít. <i>Avoir vendu.</i>	PRETERITE ANTERIOR, Having sold,	Prétérít antérieur. <i>Ayant vendu.</i>
-----------------------------	----------------------------------	-------------------------------------	--

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INDICATIF.*

PRETERITE INDEFINITE, <i>Prétérít indéfini.</i>	FUTURE ANTERIOR, <i>Futur antérieur.</i>
I do not know when <i>Je ne sais quand</i>	Before next week <i>Avant la semaine prochaine</i>
I have sold, &c. <i>J'ai vendu, &c.</i>	I shall have sold, &c. <i>J'aurai vendu, &c.</i>
PLUPERFECT, <i>Plus-que-parfait.</i>	PAST CONDITIONAL, <i>Conditionnel passé.</i>
Before that time <i>Avant ce temps-là</i>	If I had received <i>Si j'avais reçu</i>
I had sold, &c. <i>J'avais vendu, &c.</i>	I would have sold, <i>J'aurais vendu.</i>
PRETERITE ANTERIOR, <i>Prétérít antérieur.</i>	&c. <i>&c.</i>
When or after <i>Lorsque ou après que</i>	
I had sold, &c. <i>J'eus vendu, &c.</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—*MODE DU SUBJONCTIF.*

PRETERITE, <i>Prétérít.</i>	PLUPERFECT, <i>Plus-que-parfait.</i>
Although <i>Quoique</i>	Although <i>Quoique</i>
— I may have sold, &c. <i>J'aie vendu, &c.</i>	— I might have sold, &c. <i>J'eusse vendu, &c.</i>

FORMATION OF TENSES.

Two parts must be distinguished in a French verb; THE RADICAL LETTERS, *les lettres radicales*, and THE TERMINATION, *et la terminaison*.

La terminaison, THE TERMINATION, is that part which changes according to MOOD, TENSE, NUMBER, and PERSON.

Les lettres radicales, THE RADICAL LETTERS, are those that precede the termination, and which never change in a regular verb.

All regular verbs, in English, have but one model or form; but in French, they have four: because they are conjugated according to the termination of their present infinitive, which is either *er*, *ir*, *oir*, or *re*.

Those, whose present infinitive ends in *er*, are said to be of THE FIRST CONJUGATION, and have *porter* for their model.

Those, whose present infinitive ends in *ir*, are said to be of THE SECOND CONJUGATION, and have *finir* for their model.

Those, whose present infinitive ends in *oir*, are said to be of THE THIRD CONJUGATION; and only those that end in *evoir* are regular, and have *recevoir* for their model.

Those, whose present infinitive ends in *re*, are said to be of THE FOURTH CONJUGATION, and have *vendre* for their model.

The four models *porter*, *finir*, *recevoir*, and *vendre*, are given in the preceding pages. In reciting them, it might be perhaps of some advantage to the pupil to repeat, before every person of each tense, the word or phrase that is placed at its head ; that word or phrase being intended to illustrate the particular circumstance in which tenses should be employed. In studying those models, or in writing verbs after them, the student should use the rules hereafter given for the formation of tenses ; since they will familiarise him with the mechanism of their construction, and thus not only render the task much easier, but almost annihilate the difficulties attached to the irregular verbs ; for it is by these rules that their irregularities will be accounted for.

It has already been seen that there are simple and compound tenses.

The simple tenses are divided into PRIMITIVE, *primitifs*, and DERIVATIVE, *dérivés*.

Les temps primitifs, THE PRIMITIVE TENSES, are those from which the others are derived or formed.

Les temps dérivés, THE DERIVATIVE TENSES, are those that are formed or derived from the primitive tenses.

The primitive tenses are

THE PRESENT INFINITIVE,	-	<i>Le présent de l'infinitif.</i>
THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE,	-	<i>Le participe présent.</i>
THE PAST PARTICIPLE,	-	<i>Le participe passé.</i>
THE PRESENT INDICATIVE,	-	<i>Le présent de l'indicatif.</i>
THE PRETERITE DEFINITE,	-	<i>Le prétérit défini.</i>

Le présent de l'infinitif, THE PRESENT INFINITIVE, forms two tenses.

1°. The FUTURE, by changing *r*, *oir*, or *re*, into *rai*, *ras*, *ra*, *rons*, *rez*, *rout*. Therefore the futures

of	<i>porter</i> ,	<i>finir</i> ,	<i>recevoir</i> ,	<i>vendre</i> ,
are	<i>porterai</i> , &c.	<i>finirai</i> , &c.	<i>recevrai</i> , &c.	<i>vendrai</i> , &c.

2°. The CONDITIONAL, by changing *r*, *oir*, or *re*, into *rais*,* *rais*, *rait*, *rions*, *riez*, *raient*. Therefore the conditionals

of	<i>porter</i> ,	<i>finir</i> ,	<i>recevoir</i> ,	<i>vendre</i> .
are	<i>porterais</i> , &c.	<i>finirais</i> , &c.	<i>recevrais</i> , &c.	<i>vendrais</i> , &c.

Le participe présent, THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE, forms two tenses and a half.

1°. It forms the PLURAL OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE, by changing *ant* into *ons*, *ez*, *ent*. Thus

from <i>portant</i> ,	<i>finissant</i> ,	<i>recevant</i> ,	<i>vendant</i> ,	those plurals
are <i>portons</i> ,	<i>finissons</i> ,	<i>recevons</i> ,	<i>vendons</i> .	
<i>portez</i> ,	<i>finissez</i> ,	<i>recevez</i> ,	<i>vendez</i> .	
<i>portent</i> ,	<i>finissent</i> ,	<i>reçoivent</i> ,	<i>vendent</i> .	

The third person plural of the third conjugation is irregular; because, instead of being formed from the PRESENT PARTICIPLE, it is formed from the THIRD PERSON SINGULAR of the same tense, by changing *t* into *vent*, thus *reçoit* becomes *reçoivent*.

2°. It forms the IMPERFECT OF THE INDICATIVE by changing *ant* into *ais*,* *ais*, *ait*, *ions*, *iez*, *aient*. Thus

from <i>portant</i> ,	<i>finissant</i> ,	<i>recevant</i> ,	<i>vendant</i> ,	those imperfects
are <i>portais</i> ,	<i>finissais</i> ,	<i>recevais</i> ,	<i>vendais</i> ,	&c.

3°. It forms the PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE by changing *ant* into *e*, *es*, *e*, *ions*, *iez*, *ent*. Thus

from <i>portant</i> ,	<i>finissant</i> ,	<i>recevant</i> ,	<i>vendant</i> ,	those presents
are <i>porte</i> ,	<i>finisse</i> ,		<i>vende</i> .	
<i>portes</i> ,	<i>finisses</i> ,		<i>vendes</i> .	
<i>porte</i> ,	<i>finisse</i> ,		<i>vende</i> .	
<i>portions</i> ,	<i>finissions</i> ,	<i>recevions</i> ,	<i>vendions</i> .	
<i>portiez</i> ,	<i>finissiez</i> ,	<i>receviez</i> ,	<i>vendiez</i> .	
<i>portent</i> ,	<i>finissent</i> ,		<i>vendent</i> .	

Except that of the third conjugation, whose first and second persons plural only are regularly formed, since they are *recevions*, *receviez*; but the others are irregular, since they are formed from the THIRD PERSON SINGULAR OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE, by changing *t* into *ve*, *ves*, *ve*, *vent*; thus from *reçoit*, are formed *reçoive*, *reçoives*, *reçoive*, *reçoivent*.

Le prétérit défini, THE PRETERITE DEFINITE forms the imperfect subjunctive, by changing the last letter of the first person singular into *sse*, *sses*, *^t*, *ssions*, *ssiez*, *ssent*, and placing a cir-

* As it has already been said, there are books in which the terminations of the conditional and imperfect are spelt in the three persons singular and the third plural with an *o* instead of an *a*; but the French Academy, in the last edition of their Dictionary, have rejected the use of the *o*, and adopted the *a*, in those terminations and in some particular words.

cumflex accent over the vowel preceding the *t* of the third person singular. Thus

from *portai*, *finis*, *reçus*, *vendis*.

the imperfects of the subjunctive are

<i>portasse</i> ,	<i>finisse</i> ,	<i>reçusse</i> ,	<i>vendisse</i> .
<i>portasses</i> ,	<i>finisses</i> ,	<i>reçusses</i> ,	<i>vendisses</i> .
<i>portût</i> ,	<i>finît</i> ,	<i>reçût</i> ,	<i>vendît</i> .
<i>portassions</i> ,	<i>finissions</i> ,	<i>reçussions</i> ,	<i>vendissions</i> .
<i>portassiez</i> ,	<i>finissiez</i> ,	<i>reçussiez</i> ,	<i>vendissiez</i> .
<i>portassent</i> ,	<i>finissent</i> ,	<i>reçussent</i> ,	<i>vendissent</i> .

L'impératif, THE IMPERATIVE, is formed by taking the second person singular of the present indicative, leaving off the pronoun and the *s* of the termination, when that *s* is preceded by an *e*, but preserving it when preceded by another letter; the third person singular and plural of the present subjunctive; and the first and second persons plural of the present indicative, leaving off the pronouns. Therefore the imperatives

of *porter*, *finir*, *recevoir*, *vendre*,
are thus formed, by taking

2d per. sin. of Pres. Ind. *porte*, *finis*, *reçois*, *vends*.

3d per. sin. of Pres. Sub. *qu'il porte*, *finisse*, *reçoive*, *vende*.

1st per. pl. of Pres. Ind. *portons*, *finissons*, *recevons*, *vendons*.

2d per. pl. of Present Ind. *portez*, *finissez*, *recevez*, *vendez*.

3d per. pl. of Pr. Sub. *qu'ils protent*, *finissent*, *reçoivent*, *vendent*.

Le participe passé, THE PAST PARTICIPLE, forms

1°. THE PRETERITE INDICATIVE

of the 1st conjugation by changing *é* into *ai*, *as*, *a*, *âmes*, *âtes*, *èrent*.

of the 2d conjuga. by adding to it *s*, *s*, *t*, *mes*, *tes*, *rent*.

of the 3d conjugation by adding to it *s*, *s*, *t*, *mes*, *tes*, *rent*.

of the 4th conjugation by changing *u* into *is*, *is*, *it*, *îmes*, *îtes*, *irent*.

but if the participle ends in *s*, that *s* is sufficient for the first and second persons singular, and it is to be changed into *t*, *mes*, *tes*, *rent*, for the others. Thus

from	<i>porté</i> ,	<i>fini</i> ,	<i>reçu</i> ,	<i>vendu</i> , those preterites
are	<i>portai</i> ,	<i>finis</i> ,	<i>reçus</i> ,	<i>vendis</i> .
	<i>portas</i> ,	<i>finis</i> ,	<i>reçus</i> ,	<i>vendis</i> .
	<i>porta</i> ,	<i>finit</i> ,	<i>reçut</i> ,	<i>vendit</i> .

<i>portâmes,</i>	<i>finîmes,</i>	<i>reçûmes,</i>	<i>vendîmes.</i>
<i>portâtes,</i>	<i>finîtes,</i>	<i>reçûtes,</i>	<i>vendîtes.</i>
<i>portèrent,</i>	<i>finirent,</i>	<i>reçurent,</i>	<i>vendirent.</i>

2°. It forms all compound tenses, whether conjugated with *avoir* or *être*; but it must be observed that when it is conjugated with *avoir*, its termination does not vary, and when conjugated with *être*, its termination varies according to the gender and number of its nominative, thus

I am <i>received</i> ,	is translated by	<i>Je suis</i> reçu, or reçue.
Thou art <i>received</i> ,	" " "	<i>Tu es</i> reçu, or reçue.
He is <i>received</i> ,	" " "	<i>Il est</i> reçu, m.
She is <i>received</i> ,	" " "	<i>Elle est</i> reçue, f.
We are <i>received</i> ,	" " "	<i>Nous sommes</i> reçus, or reçues.
You are <i>received</i> ,	" " "	<i>Vous êtes</i> reçus, or reçues.
They are <i>received</i> ,	" " "	<i>Ils sont</i> reçus, m.
They are <i>received</i> ,	" " "	<i>Elles sont</i> reçues, f.

Explanation. For the first and second persons singular and plural, the past participle is either masculine or feminine; because the pronouns *I, je, thou, tu, we, nous, you, vous*, are of neither gender by themselves, but are masculine or feminine according as they represent masculine or feminine nouns. Therefore if a man is speaking, he must say, *Je suis reçu*; if a woman, she must say, *Je suis reçue*. If a man is spoken to, we must say, *tu es reçu*; if a woman, we must say, *tu es reçue*; &c.

PARADIGM,

SHOWING THE SIMILARITY OF THE TERMINATION OF ALL REGULAR
AND ALMOST ALL IRREGULAR VERBS.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Conjugation	1st, <i>er</i> ,	2d, <i>ir</i> ,	3d, <i>avoir</i> ,	4th, <i>re</i> .
Present Participle,	<i>ant</i> , for all conjugations, without exception.			
Past Participle,	<i>é</i> , for	<i>i</i> ,	<i>u</i> ,	<i>u</i> .

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Conjugation	1st.	<i>e,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>ent,</i>
" "	2d.	<i>s,</i>	<i>s,</i>	<i>t,</i>	<i>ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>ent,</i>
" "	3d.	<i>s,</i>	<i>s,</i>	<i>t,</i>	<i>ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>ent,</i>
" "	4th.	<i>s,</i>	<i>s,</i>	<i>t,</i>	<i>ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>ent,</i>
Imperfect for all verbs.		<i>ais,</i>	<i>ais,</i>	<i>ait,</i>	<i>ions,</i>	<i>iez,</i>	<i>aient,</i>
Preterite. Conjugation	1st.	<i>ai,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>a,</i>	<i>âmes,</i>	<i>âtes,</i>	<i>aient,</i>
" "	2d, & 4th.	<i>is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>it,</i>	<i>îmes,</i>	<i>îtes,</i>	<i>irent,</i>
" "	3d.	<i>us,</i>	<i>us,</i>	<i>ut,</i>	<i>ûmes,</i>	<i>ûtes,</i>	<i>urent,</i>
Future for all verbs.		<i>rai,</i>	<i>ras,</i>	<i>ra,</i>	<i>rons,</i>	<i>rez,</i>	<i>ront,</i>
Conditional for all verbs.		<i>rais,</i>	<i>rais,</i>	<i>rait,</i>	<i>rions,</i>	<i>riez,</i>	<i>raient,</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Conj.	1st, 2d, 3d, & 4th.	<i>e,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>ions,</i>	<i>iez,</i>	<i>ent,</i>
Imperfect for all verbs.		<i>sse,</i>	<i>sses,</i>	<i>t,</i>	<i>ssions,</i>	<i>ssiez,</i>	<i>ssent,</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Conjugation	1st.	—	<i>e,</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>ent,</i>
" "	2d, 3d, 4th.	—	<i>s,</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>ons,</i>	<i>ez,</i>	<i>ent,</i>

OBSERVATIONS ON THE TERMINATIONS OF VERBS.

From the preceding PARADIGM it may be at once perceived, that, in all regular verbs,

the 1st and 2d person sing. end in <i>s</i> ;	Except the 1st of the present and preterite indicative, and the 2d of the imperative of the first conjugation ; the 1st of the fut. of pres. & imperf. subjunc.
the 3d person singular ends in <i>t</i> ;	Except that of the present indicative of the 1st conjugation which ends in <i>e</i> ; that of the same tense of the 4th which ends in <i>d</i> ; that of the preterite of the 1st which ends in <i>a</i> ; that of the future of any verb which ends also in <i>a</i> ; and that of the present subjunctive which ends in <i>e</i> .
the 1st person plural ends in <i>ons</i> ;	Except that of the preterite which ends in <i>mes</i> .
the 2d " " " <i>ez</i> ;	" " " <i>tes</i> .
the 3d " " " <i>ent</i> ;	" future " <i>ent</i> .

These terminations of the French verbs cannot be too much attended to ; since they constitute the signs by which one tense is distinguished from another tense, one person from another person. They correspond with those that are used, in English, for the same object, and which consist either in the termination of the verb, or in some word prefixed to it. For instance, the signs of the present indicative of the verb TO CARRY are, in English, merely the verb changing its termination for the second and third persons singular ; or by prefixing to it the present indicative of the verb TO DO ; or by prefixing the present indicative of the auxiliary TO BE to its present participle, CARRYING : and, in French, by adding to the radical letters *port*, which form the body of the verb *porter*, the terminations *e*, *es*, *e*, *ons*, *ez*, *ent*, which constitute the signs of that tense. The sign of the imperfect of any verb, in English, is the imperfect of the auxiliary TO BE, prefixed to the present participle of that verb : and, in French, it is the termination *ais*, *ais*, *ait*, *ions*, *iez*, or *aient*, added to the radical letters of the corresponding verb. These observations might be extended to the other tenses ; but the student may readily do it himself, without further explanation.

OBSERVATIONS

ON SOME OF THE VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

13. In those verbs whose present infinitive ends in *cer*, as the *c* in that infinitive has the soft sound of *s*, that soft sound must be preserved through all the tenses and persons of the verb to

which it belongs. Therefore when an *a*, *o*, or *u*, comes immediately after the *c*, a cedilla is to be placed under it ; as in *commencer*, TO BEGIN, the plural of the present indicative must be written *nous commençons*, *vous commencez*, *ils commencent* ; the imperfect *je commençais*, &c. This observation is applicable to any verb that has a *c* with the soft sound of *s* in its infinitive. The following verbs belong to this description,

<i>menacer</i> ,	TO THREATEN.		<i>placer</i> ,	TO PLACE.
<i>forcer</i> ,	TO FORCE.		<i>effacer</i> ,	TO EFFACE, &c.

14. In those verbs whose present infinitive ends in *ger*, as the *g* has a soft sound before *e*, like that of French *j*, or of *s* in the English word PLEASURE, to preserve that sound through all the verbs to which it belongs, a silent *e* should be written between the *g* and the termination, whenever that termination commences with an *a*, *o*, or *u* ; as in *voyager*, TO TRAVEL ; the plural of the present indicative must be written *nous voyageons*, *vous voyagez*, *ils voyagent* ; the imperfect *je voyageais*, &c. ; the preterite *je voyageai*, &c. The following verbs belong to this description.

<i>manger</i> ,	TO EAT.		<i>loger</i> ,	TO LODGE.
<i>changer</i> ,	TO CHANGE.		<i>ménager</i> ,	TO MANAGE, &c.

15. In those verbs whose present infinitive ends in *eler*, *eter*, the *e* preceding the *l* or *t* being silent or guttural, only when the *l* or *t* is followed by a silent *e*, that *l* or *t* must be doubled ; before any other letter, or even an *e* that is not guttural or silent, the *l* or *t* remain single ; as **appeler*, TO CALL ; **jeter*, TO THROW ; *projeter*, TO DESIGN ; the presents indicative are, *j'appelle*, *tu appelles*, *il appelle*, *nous appelons*, *vous appelez*, *ils appellent*, *je jette*, *tu jettes*, *il jette*, *nous jetons*, *vous jetez*, *ils jettent*, *je projette*, *tu projettes*, *il projette*, *nous projetons*, *vous projetez*, *ils projettent* ; the futures are *j'appellerai*, &c., *je jetterai*, &c., *je projetterai*, &c. ; the conditionals are *j'appellerais*, &c., *je jetterais*, &c., *je projetterais*, &c. The following verbs belong to this description.

<i>acheter,</i>	TO BUY.	<i>feuilleter,</i>	TO RUN OVER A
<i>cacheter,</i>	TO SEAL.		BOOK.
<i>décacheter,</i>	TO UNSEAL.	<i>peler,</i>	TO PEEL.
<i>épeler,</i>	TO SPELL.	<i>renouveler,</i>	TO RENEW.

16. In those verbs whose final syllable is preceded by an acute *é*, as *considérer*, TO CONSIDER, **régler*, TO REGULATE, the acute accent of the *é* must be changed into the grave, thus *è*, before a silent or guttural syllable. So the present indicative of *céler*, TO CONCEAL, is *je cèle*, *tu cèles*, *il cèle*, *nous célon*, *vous célez*, *ils cèlent*; its future is *je cèlerai*, &c.; its conditional is *je cèlerais*, &c. The following verbs belong to this description.

<i>altérer,</i>	TO ALTER.	<i>espérer,</i>	TO HOPE.
<i>céder,</i>	TO CEDE.	<i>préférer,</i>	TO PREFER.
<i>célébrer,</i>	TO CELEBRATE.	<i>persévérer,</i>	TO PERSEVERE.

17. In those verbs whose final syllable of the present infinitive is preceded by a silent or guttural *e*, not followed by an *l* or *t*, as *lever*, TO RISE; *mener*, TO CARRY; that silent *e* takes a grave accent, thus *è*, before a silent or guttural syllable. So the present indicative of *semer*, TO SOW, is *je sème*, *tu sèmes*, *il sème*, *nous semons*, *vous semez*, *ils sèment*; the future is *je sèmerai*, &c. The conditional is *je sèmerais*, &c. The following verbs belong to this description.

<i>dépecer,</i>	TO CARVE.	<i>mener,</i>	TO CARRY.
<i>lever,</i>	TO RISE.	<i>relever,</i>	TO RISE AGAIN.
<i>peser.</i>	TO WEIGH.	<i>enlever,</i>	TO CARRY AWAY.

18. In those verbs whose present infinitive ends in *yer*, the *y* must be changed into an *i*, whenever a silent *e* comes after it, as in *nettoyer*, TO CLEAN; the present indicative of which is *je nettoie*, *tu nettoies*, *il nettoie*, *nous nettoions*, *vous nettoyez*, *ils nettoient*; the future is *je nettoierai*, &c.; the conditional *je nettoierais*, &c. The following verbs are of this description.

<i>rayer,</i>	TO STREAK.	<i>employer,</i>	TO EMPLOY.
<i>ennuyer,</i>	TO ANNOY.	<i>noyer,</i>	TO DROWN.
<i>essayer,</i>	TO TRY.	<i>payer,</i>	TO PAY.

This last observation stands good for the irregular verbs, in which a *y* should, according to the formation of tenses, become *i* before a silent or guttural *e*.

INTERROGATION, NEGATION, AND INTERROGATION WITH NEGATION.

In conjugating verbs, students should do it sometimes WITH INTERROGATION, *avec interrogation* ; sometimes WITH NEGATION, *avec négation* ; and sometimes with both INTERROGATION AND NEGATION together, *avec interrogation et négation à la fois*.

19. *L'interrogation*, THE INTERROGATION with a verb is made by placing the nominative pronoun after it, and joined to it by a hyphen : as, Have I, *Ai-je?* Am I, *Suis-je?* Art thou, *Es-tu?* Is he, *Est-il?* But if the interrogation is made with a verb, and a noun as its nominative, as, Is *John* there? Are *the books* here? Will *our daughters* be here? The French place the noun before the verb, and after that verb a hyphen and a pronoun of the same gender, number and person as that noun ; as

Is <i>John</i> there?	-	-	-	Jean <i>est-il là?</i>
Are <i>the books</i> here?	-	-	-	Les livres <i>sont-ils ici?</i>
Will <i>our daughters</i> be here?	-	-	-	Nos filles <i>seront-elles ici?</i>

20. REMARK 1st. If the interrogation is made in the first person singular of the present indicative of a verb of the first conjugation, an acute accent is to be placed over the final silent *e*, which *é*, however, should be pronounced more open than the acute *é* and less than the open or grave *è* ; thus, *porté-je?* DO I CARRY? *Aimé-je?* DO I LOVE? But instead of this form it is better to say *est-ce que je porte?* IS IT THAT I CARRY? *est-ce que j'aime?* IS IT THAT I LOVE? This last form however expresses surprise or astonishment, and therefore should be used only with the verbs whose first person singular of the present indicative ends in silent *e*, when a simple interrogation is meant.

21. REMARK 2d. Whenever the third person singular ends with a vowel, a *t* between two hyphens, thus *-t-*, must be placed between the verb and the nominative pronoun ; as

Porte-t-il? Does he carry? *Portera-t-on?* Will one carry?
Porta-t-elle? Did she carry? *Chantera-t-il?* Will he sing?

22. *La négation*, THE NEGATION with a verb is made by plac-

ing *ne* between the nominative pronoun and the verb, and *pas* after it; as

I do <i>not</i> carry,	-	-	-	<i>Je ne porte pas.</i>
Thou dost <i>not</i> finish,	-	-	-	<i>Tu ne finis pas.</i>
He does <i>not</i> receive,	-	-	-	<i>Il ne reçoit pas.</i>
We will <i>not</i> sell,	-	-	-	<i>Nous ne vendrons pas.</i>

23. But if the negation in English is made with another word than *not*, *ne* is used before the verb in French, and a word corresponding to that of the English phrase is used instead of *pas*.

I am <i>never</i> sorry,	-	-	-	<i>Je ne suis jamais fâché.</i>
I am <i>no longer</i> sorry,	-	-	-	<i>Je ne suis plus fâché.</i>
I have <i>nothing</i> ,	-	-	-	<i>Je n' ai rien.</i>
I receive <i>nobody</i> ,	-	-	-	<i>Je ne reçois personne.</i>

24. Sometimes *point* is used instead of *pas*, and the difference between those words is, that *point* denies absolutely, and *pas* does not; so that the negation with *pas* might be modified by an adverb, but not so with *point*. We may translate

I have <i>not</i> money enough,	by	<i>Je n' ai pas assez d'argent.</i>
	but not by	<i>Je n' ai point assez d'argent.</i>
I have <i>not</i> entirely finished,	by	<i>Je n' ai pas entièrement fini.</i>
	but not by	<i>Je n' ai point entièrement fini.</i>

25. *L'interrogation avec négation*, THE INTERROGATION WITH NEGATION is made by giving to the verb the interrogative form and placing *ne* before it, and *pas* after the nominative pronoun.

<i>Do I not</i> carry?	-	-	-	<i>Ne porté-je pas?</i>
<i>Dost thou not</i> carry?	-	-	-	<i>Ne portes-tu pas?</i>
<i>Does he not</i> carry?	-	-	-	<i>Ne porte-t-il pas?</i>

26. *L'affirmation exclusive*, THE EXCLUSIVE AFFIRMATION, is a form of expression by which one or several things only are the object of the phrase, exclusively from all others of the same kind. It is expressed in English by *BUT* or *ONLY*, used with the verb; and in French by *ne* or *n'* before the verb, and *que* or *qu'* after it, but next to the object of the affirmation.

I have <i>but</i> one friend,	<i>Je n'ai qu'un ami.</i>
He had <i>only</i> one thousand men,	<i>Il n'avait que mille hommes.</i>
They are <i>only</i> weak,	<i>Ils ne sont que faibles.</i>
We have in our misery <i>but</i> one resource,	<i>Nous n'avons dans notre misère qu'une ressource.</i>

27. When a verb is used WITH NEGATION OR INTERROGATION, OR WITH BOTH INTERROGATION AND NEGATION TOGETHER, OR WITH AN EXCLUSIVE AFFIRMATION in a compound tense, that interrogation, negation, or interrogation and negation together, or exclusive affirmation must be made with only the auxiliary, the past participle being placed after *pas* in a negation, and after the nominative pronoun in an interrogation without negation ; as

We have <i>not</i> sold,	- -	<i>Nous n'avons pas vendu.</i>
Will <i>they not</i> have received ?	-	<i>N'auront-ils pas reçu ?</i>
Have <i>I</i> carried ?	- -	<i>Ai-je porté ?</i>
Has <i>he</i> finished ?	- - -	<i>A-t-il fini ?</i>
Have you brought <i>but</i> one loaf?		<i>N'avez-vous apporté qu'un pain ?</i>

NOTE. A verb may be conjugated throughout with negation ; but its indicative mood only can be used interrogatively. The imperative has no compound tense.

VERBS TO BE CONJUGATED.

1ST CONJUGATION.

<i>parler,</i>	to speak.	<i>*suppléer,</i>	to supply.
<i>*donner,</i>	to give.	<i>prononcer,</i>	to pronounce.
<i>travailler,</i>	to work.	<i>changer,</i>	to change.
<i>étudier,</i>	to study.	<i>nettoyer,</i>	to clean.

2D CONJUGATION.

<i>punir,</i>	to punish.	<i>unir,</i>	to unite.
<i>avertir,</i>	to warn.	<i>embellir,</i>	to embellish.
<i>*polir,</i>	to polish.	<i>adoucir,</i>	to soften.
<i>guérir,</i>	to cure.	<i>agir,</i>	to act.

3D CONJUGATION.

<i>*apercevoir,</i>	to perceive.	<i>décevoir,</i>	to deceive.
<i>concevoir,</i>	to conceive.	<i>percevoir,</i>	to receive, or perceive.
<i>devoir,</i>	to owe.	<i>redevoir,</i>	to owe still.

4TH CONJUGATION.

<i>attendre,</i>	to expect.	<i>*répondre,</i>	to answer.
<i>entendre,</i>	to hear.	<i>confondre,</i>	to confound.
<i>défendre,</i>	to forbid.	<i>prétendre,</i>	to pretend.

CHAPTER IV.

PLURAL OF NOUNS.

NOTE. The exercises of this chapter must be translated literally ; that is, word by word, unless directions are given to the contrary.

If a word be found in any exercise, where the Rule under which it is placed is not applicable, it is because some preceding Rule can be applied to it ; but in such cases reference will be given whenever deemed necessary for the improvement of the student. These references are marked by the figures of the Rules that should be consulted.

28. 1st RULE. Nouns in the singular, ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, remain the same in the plural.

<i>un héros,</i>	one hero.	<i>deux héros.</i>	two heroes.
<i>un prix,</i>	one price.	<i>deux prix,</i>	two prices.
<i>un nez,</i>	one nose.	<i>deux nez,</i>	two noses.

EXERCISE 1.

During three months. With two arms. Between four crosses. Over ten bodies. Under four canopies. In five palaces. Within fifteen paces. Among nineteen heaps of wood. Of five repasts of meat. Concerning six prizes. Without five senses. From seven countries of Europe. By nine screws. Against two bears of Russia. Towards four sons of Joseph. With three carpets from Turkey. With seventeen nuts. Concerning five heroes. After three meals. Among nineteen noses.

29. 2d RULE. Nouns not ending with *s*, *x*, or *z*, in the singular, generally take *s* for the plural.

<i>un homme,</i>	one man.	<i>trois hommes,</i>	three men.
<i>un mot,</i>	one word.	<i>quatre mots,</i>	four words.
<i>un clou,</i>	one nail.	<i>cinq clous,</i>	five nails.
<i>un portail,</i>	one gate.	<i>deux portails,</i>	two gates.

EXERCISE 2.

Of twenty books. In nineteen houses. Through nine doors. By four walls. Before two statues. Between six chairs. For seven rooms. From three beds. For two children. Behind two screens. Under five blankets. From eight hogsheads of wine. With eighteen necks of bottles. In nine plates of china. Upon two shelves. With two fans. For four bracelets and two necklaces of coral. Through three gates. With two rudders. Behind seventeen trees. From two sons and* five daughters of John.

30. 1st GENERAL EXCEPTION. Nouns in the singular, ending in *au*, *eu*, or *œu*, take *x* for the plural.

<i>un étai</i> ,	one vice.	<i>onze étaux</i> ,	eleven vices.(a smith's tool.)
<i>un cheveu</i> ,	one hair.	<i>trente cheveux</i> ,	thirty hairs.
<i>un vœu</i> ,	one vow.	<i>deux vœux</i> ,	two vows.

31. * When several nouns are the object of the prepositions *TO*, *AT*, *à* ; *OF*, *FROM*, *de*, *d'* ; *IN*, *en*, with or without an article ; that preposition is expressed but once before the first noun, in English ; but, in French, it must be repeated before every noun.

EXERCISE 3.

With five knives. After four confessions. For eleven hats. For eight pictures of David. Concerning twelve children of Jacob. According to the vows of Mary. In three places of safety. With seven pieces of wood. Between two heaps of shavings. To three fires. With seven nails. By nine lambs. In seven boats from Boston. Under two cloaks. By nineteen pails of water. In two offices. Notwithstanding four denials of James. Behold seven skins ; three of bear, and four of wolf. Among fifteen nephews. With two pieces of bread.

32. 2d GENERAL EXCEPTION. Nouns in the singular, ending in *al*, change that termination into *aux* for the plural.

<i>un mal</i> ,	one evil.	<i>deux maux</i> ,	two evils.
<i>un canal</i> ,	one canal.	<i>vingt canaux</i> ,	twenty canals.

EXERCISE 4.

By four horses. Through six canals. In two hospitals of Paris. At two menageries of two hundred animals from Africa. In five journals

from Philadelphia. Against two evils. From the arsenals of France. In nine jugs of oil. With five kinds of minerals. Between four generals and three admirals. To seventeen corporals of two regiments. Notwithstanding two capitals of money. Concerning fifteen cardinals of Italy. Against eighteen vassals of Russia. With six kinds of vegetables from Asia. Before two tribunals of France.

33. PARTICULAR EXCEPTIONS. 1st. Of nouns ending in *ou* the following take *x*.

<i>bijou</i> ,	jewel.	<i>joujou</i> ,	toy.
<i>caillou</i> ,	flint.	<i>genou</i> ,	knee.
<i>chou</i> ,	cabbage.	<i>hibou</i> ,	owl.
		<i>pou</i> ,	louse.

2d. Of nouns ending in *al* the following take *s*.

<i>bal</i> ,	ball.	<i>régal</i> ,	cheer.
<i>carnaval</i> ,	carnival.	<i>pal</i> ,	pale.

But *pal* is also *paux* in the plural.

3d. Of nouns ending in *ail*, the following change *ail* into *aux*.

<i>bail</i> ,	lease.	<i>soupirail</i> ,	vent-hole.
<i>émail</i> ,	enamel.	<i>travail</i> ,	work.
<i>corail</i> ,	coral.	<i>tramail</i> ,	drag-net.

But, when *travail* means TRAVE, it takes *s* for the plural; thus, *travails*.

4th. Of nouns ending in *nt*, the monosyllable *gent*, NATION, changes *t* into *s* for the plural; thus, *gens*; which plural does not mean NATIONS, but PEOPLE, PERSONS. Polysyllables, ending in *nt*, change the *t* into *s* for the plural, or keep the *t* and take *s* with it. Therefore it is equally proper to write

deux enfants, two children; or *deux enfans*, without the *t*.
trois agents, three agents; or *trois agens*;

but it is considered better, and is recommended by modern writers, to preserve the *t* in the plural, according to Rule, No. 29.

5th. The plural of *ciel* is *ciels*, in *ciels de lit*, TESTERS OF BEDS; *ciels de tableaux*, SKIES IN PAINTING; and *ciels de carrières*,

FIRST BANKS IN QUARRIES ; in any other circumstance it is *cieux*.

6th. The plural of *œil* is *yeux*, when it designates the EYES of the head, or the representation of that organ ; but it is *œils* in any other instance.

7th. The plural of *aïeul* is *aïeuls*, when it designates the GRANDFATHER PATERNAL, and the GRANDFATHER MATERNAL ; but is *aïeux*, meaning ANCESTORS in general.

8th. The plural of *ail*, GARLIC, is *aulx*.

EXERCISE 5.*

With two ^{exc.}jewels of Mary. Among twenty-five ^{exc.}flints. For ninety-nine ³³cabbages. From seventy-seven ^{exc.}knees of oxen. For two ²⁹dozens of owls. By two ^{exc.}leases of four ²⁹farms. In two ^{exc.}collections of enamels of Nevers. Through ninety-eight ^{exc.}vent-holes. In two ^{exc.}series of labours. From seventy-six ^{exc.}ancestors of Henry. Among seventy-two ^{exc.}eyes of birds. For two ^{exc.}skies of pictures. Through ninety-nine ^{exc.}windows. From two ^{exc.}grandfathers of William. For two ^{exc.}testers of bed for James. For two ²⁹traves. With three ²⁹necks of mutton. By four ²⁹scare-crows.

EXERCISE 6.

By two ²⁹accidents of war. With three ²⁹diamonds in form of ²⁹pentagons. In two ²⁹amusements. Notwithstanding six ²⁹judgments. By six ²⁹presents. Without ²⁹students of ²⁹mathematics. Behind two ²⁹monuments of victory. For three ²⁹men without ²⁹teeth. Towards five ²⁹beggars from Ireland. With two ²⁹pairs of ²⁹gloves. Over three ²⁹bridges of ³⁰boats. Against nine ²⁹regiments of infantry. By twenty-five ²⁹children of Boston. In two ²⁹apartments of George. With fifteen ²⁹instruments of surgery. Between two ²⁹fragments of rock. Notwithstanding two ²⁹inconveniences. In three ³⁰castles.

EXERCISE 7.

Over two ²⁸out-houses. With three ³⁰flocks of ²⁸sheep. Between two ²⁹pairs of ²⁹oxen. For one ⁹hundred ⁹hats. By three ³⁰hundred ¹¹and ¹²eighty ³⁰camels. Of two ²⁹cuckoos. In thirty ²⁹packs of ²⁹bamboos. With four ³³cabbages.

* When the letters *exc.* are over a word, they refer to the *exceptions*.

Under two ²⁹camails. In six ³²jugs. With ten ²⁸nuts of screws. For eleven ³³drag-nets. Against twelve ²⁹pickpockets. In two ²⁹seraglios. With twelve ³³jewels. From three ²⁹pages of details. For twenty-six ²⁹dozens of ²⁹halters. By two ²⁹he-cats from Africa. Upon six ¹¹hundred and ¹²fifty ³²horses. With nine ³²light-houses. Under two ²⁸heaps of ²⁹stones. By three ³²generals of division.

CHAPTER V.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

The gender of nouns is determined either by their meaning or termination. The following are MASCULINE by their meaning:

1°. The Nouns that represent Men ; as *empereur*, emperor ; *général*, general ; *avocat*, lawyer ; *notaire*, notary ; &c. Except *altesse*, highness ; *caution*, security ; *connaissance*, acquaintance ; *dupe*, dupe ; *éminence*, eminence ; *estafette*, an express ; *excellence*, excellence ; *grandeur*, grace ; *majesté*, majesty ; *partie*, client ; *sainteté*, holiness ; *seigneurie*, lordship ; *sentinelle*, sentinel ; *vedette*, sentinel on horseback.

2°. The Names of Animals, relating especially to males ; as *lion*, lion ; *cheval*, horse ; *bœuf*, ox ; *chat*, cat ; *chien*, dog ; &c. But the Names of Birds, Insects, Reptiles, Fishes, and indeed of any animals that are equally applied to the male and female, are generally determined by the termination.

3°. The Names of objects that we generally suppose or fancy as being masculine ; as *ange*, angel ; *génie*, genius ; *dieu*, god ; *démon*, demon ; *diable*, devil ; &c.

4°. The Names of the Days, Months, and Seasons.

5°. The Names of the New Decimal Nomenclature, of the Ordinal, Cardinal, Distributive, and Proportional Numbers Except *moitié*, half ; and those ending in *aine*, as *douzaine*, dozen ; *quinzaine*, fifteen ; &c.

6°. The Names of Metals and Semi-Metals ; as *cuivre*, copper ; *or*, gold ; *argent*, silver ; *bronze*, brass ; &c.

7°. The Names of Trees and Shrubs ; as *chêne*, oak ; *orme*, elm ; *laurier*, laurel ; *myrte*, myrtle ; &c. Except *aubépine*, hawthorn ; *hourdaïne*, black alder ; *épine*, thorn ; *ronce*, briar ; *vigne*, vine ; *yeuse*, holm-oak.

8°. The Names of Winds ; as *est*, east ; *ouest*, west ; *sud*, south ; *nord*, north ; &c. Except *brise*, north-east ; *tramontane*, tramontane ; *mousson*, trade-wind.

9°. The Names of Mountains ; as *Chimborazo*, *Cenis*, *Liban*, *Etna*, *Vésuve*, &c. Except *Alpes*, Alps ; *Cordilières*, Cordilleras ; *Pyrénées*, Pyrenees ; *Vosges*, Voges.

10°. The Names of Cities and Villages not ending with silent *e* or *es*. Except *Illion*, *Jérusalem*, and *Scion*. But if there were any doubt about the gender of any of them, the difficulty would be removed by putting the words *ville de*, city of, before the names of places of about or above 2000 inhabitants, and then they would become feminine ; so by placing the words *village de*, village of, before those of less than that number, they would become masculine.

11°. The Names of Empires, Kingdoms, Provinces, States, not ending with silent *e* or *es*. Except *Mexique*, Mexico, which is the only one of that termination that is masculine.

12°. All Words used as Nouns, without being such by their nature ; as, *l'utile*, the useful ; *le boire*, the drink ; &c.

13°. The Names of Idioms or Languages ; as, *le François*, the French ; *le Chinois*, the Chinese language.

14°. The Names of Colours ; as, *le rouge*, the red ; *le blanc*, the white ; *le bleu*, the blue ; &c.

The following are FEMININE by their meaning :

1°. The Nouns that represent Women ; as *impératrice*, empress ; *couturière*, seamstress ; *prêtresse*, priestess ; *modiste*, milliner ; &c.

2°. The Names of Animals that specially belong to Females ; as *lionne*, lioness ; *vache*, cow ; *jument*, mare ; *brebis*, sheep ; *biche*, hind ; &c.

3°. The Names of the Qualities or Disposition of the Mind ; as *vertu*, virtue ; *constance*, constancy ; *bonté*, goodness ; *mé-*

chanceté, wickedness ; &c. Except *courage*, courage ; *mérite*, merit ; *entêtement*, obstinacy ; &c.

GENERAL REMARKS.

1st. Diminutive nouns follow the gender of those from which they are derived, as *globule*, globule, is masculine, because it is derived from the masculine noun *globe*, globe ; *pellicule*, pellicle, is feminine, because it is derived from the feminine noun *peau*, skin ; *boulette*, little ball, is feminine, because it is derived from the feminine noun *boule*, ball.

2d. Compound nouns are generally of the gender of the principal word that enters into their composition. *Pie-grièche*, pickled-magpie, is feminine, because *pie*, the principal word, is feminine ; *pied-de-chèvre*, hand-spike, is masculine, because *pied* is masculine ; *amour-propre*, self-love, is masculine, because *amour* is masculine.

However, *après-midi*, afternoon, is feminine, though *midi* is masculine ; *tête-à-tête*, a private conversation, is masculine, though *tête* is feminine. But compound words, in the composition of which enters a verb, are masculine ; as *serre-tête*, night-cap ; *essuie-mains*, towel ; &c.

The following Nouns are MASCULINE by their termination :

All Nouns ending in *a*, *é*, *i*, *o*, and *u*. Except, of those ending in *a*, *falacca*, falaca ; *onagra*, primrose tree ; *opuntia*, nopal ; *rhodia*, rhodia ; *zopissa*, zopissa. Except, of those ending in *é*, those whose termination is *té* or *tié*, *absurdité*, absurdity ; *beauté*, beauty ; *amitié*, friendship ; *moitié*, half ; *pitié*, pity ; *santé*, health ; &c. : but *aparté*, aside ; *arrêté*, resolution ; *bénédicité*, fore-meals prayer ; *comité*, committee ; *comté*, county ; *coté*, side ; *été*, summer ; *pûté*, pie ; *thé*, tea ; *traité*, treatise ; are masculine. Except, of those ending in *i*, *fourmi*, ant ; *merci*, mercy ; *après-midi*, afternoon ; *foi*, faith ; *loi*, law ; *paroi*, partition. Except, of those ending in *o*, *albugo*, a white spot on the eye ; *quasimodo*, the next sunday after the passover. Except, of those ending in *u*, *eau*, water ; *peau*, skin ; *bru*, daughter-in-law ; *glu*, bird-lime ; *tribu*, tribe ; *vertu*, virtue. All which exceptions are feminine.

The following are also MASCULINE by their termination :

All Nouns ending in a consonant. Except, of those ending in *f*; *clef*, key; *nef*, the nave of a church; *soif*, thirst. Of those ending in *m*; *faim*, hunger. Of those ending in *n*, not preceded by *o*; *fin*, end; *main*, hand; *maman*, mother. But those ending in *on* require particular classifications; although those in *bon*, *con*, *don*, *fon*, *gnon*, *lon*, *ron*, *yon*, are masculine, without exception.

Those ending in *çon* are masculine; as *soupçon*, suspicion; *hameçon*, fish-hook; *limaçon*, snail; &c. Except *façon*, manner; *contrefaçon*, counterfeit; *malfaçon*, defect; *leçon*, lesson; *rançon*, ransom.

Those ending in *cion*, *gion*, *nion*, *sion*, *tion*, and *xion*, are feminine. Except *bastion*, bastion; *scion*, sprig.

Those whose termination *ion* is not preceded by either of the consonants *c*, *g*, *n*, *s*, *l* or *x*, are masculine; as *pion*, pawn; *million*, million; &c. Except *rébellion*, rebellion; *alluvion*, alluvion.

Those ending in *ison* are feminine; as *raison*, reason; *garnison*, garrison; *prison*, prison; *toison*, fleece; *saison*, season; &c. Except *bison*, buffalo; *oison*, gosling; *poison*, poison; *tison*, brand.

Those ending in *sson* are masculine; as *poisson*, fish; *buisson*, bush; &c. Except *boisson*, drink; *cuisson*, baking; *paisson*, mast, pasture; *moisson*, harvest; *mousson*, trade-wind; *salisson*, slut.

Those ending in *r* are masculine; as *hiver*, winter; *soir*, evening; *air*, air; *jour*, day; *soupir*, sigh; *cœur*, heart; *bonheur*, happiness; &c. Except *cuiller*, spoon; *chair*, flesh; *cour*, court; *mer*, sea; *tour*, tower: but, when *tour* does not mean tower, it is masculine. Except also of those that end in *eur*. 1st. Those that are derived from an adjective, and which in English would be neuter; as *blancheur*, whiteness, which is derived from *blanc*, white; *grandeur*, greatness, which is derived from *grand*, great; &c. 2d. Those expressing some disposition of the soul; as *candeur*, candor; *ferveur*, fervour; *rigueur*,

rigour ; *terreur*, terror ; &c. And the following : *chandelier*, candlemas ; *clameur*, clamour ; *couleur*, colour ; *douleur*, pain, grief ; *liqueur*, liquor ; *lueur*, glimmering ; *moiteur*, moisture ; *saveur*, savour ; *erreur*, error ; *fleur*, flower ; *frayeur*, fright ; *odeur*, odour ; *primeur*, first-coming ; *pudeur*, modesty ; *rumeur*, report ; *senteur*, scent ; *sœur*, sister ; *sueur*, sweat ; *teneur*, contents ; *torpeur*, numbness ; *tumeur*, tumour ; *vapeur*, vapour ; *vigueur*, vigour.

Those ending in *s* are masculine ; as *bas*, stocking ; *bois*, wood ; *excès*, excess ; *avis*, advice ; &c. Except *brebis*, sheep ; *chauve-souris*, bat ; *fleur-de-lis*, flower-de-luce ; *fois*, time ; *mœurs*, manners ; *souris*, mouse ; *vis*, screw ; *amadis*, amadis.

Those ending in *t* are masculine ; as *mot*, word ; *profit*, benefit ; *billet*, billet ; *achat*, purchase ; *but*, aim ; *talent*, talent ; &c. Except *dent*, tooth ; *gent*, nation ; *jument*, mare ; *forêt*, forest ; *nuit*, night ; *dot*, dowry ; *hart*, halter ; *part*, part ; *mort*, death ; *malemort*, fatal death.

Those ending in *x* are masculine ; as *choix*, choice ; *prix*, price ; *taux*, rate ; *flux*, tide ; *courroux*, wrath ; &c. Except *chaux*, lime ; *croix*, cross ; *faux*, scythe ; *noix*, nut ; *paix*, peace ; *perdrix*, partridge ; *poix*, pitch ; *toux*, cough ; *voix*, voice.

Those ending in *z* are masculine ; as *nez*, nose ; *riz*, rice ; *gaz*, gas ; &c.

The following are FEMININE by their termination :

Those nouns ending in silent *e* preceded by a vowel ; as *joue*, cheek ; *boue*, mud ; *vie*, life ; *ouïe*, hearing ; *soie*, silk ; *soirée*, evening ; *épée*, sword ; &c. Except, of those ending in *uie* ; *parapluie*, umbrella. Of those ending in *oie* ; *foie*, liver ; *ennoie*, two-headed serpent. Of those ending in *ie*, preceded by a consonant ; *génie*, genius ; *incendie*, conflagration ; *aphélie*, aphelion ; *parhélie*, parhelion ; *pavie*, nectarine, a kind of peach ; *périhélie*, perihelium ; *messie*, messiah. Of those ending in *ée* ; *athénée*, atheneum ; *apogée*, apogee ; *borée*, boreas ; *caducée*, caduceus ; *camée*, cameo ; *colisée*, coliseum ; *coryphée*, coryphæus ; *crustacée*, crustaceous ; *élysée*, elysium ; *empirée*, empyreal ; *gynécée*, greek lady's dressing-room ; *hyménée*, hymen ;

lycée, lyceum ; *mausolée*, mausoleum ; *miscellanée*, miscellany ; *musée*, museum ; *périgée*, perigee ; *périnée*, perineum ; *prytanée*, prytaneum ; *pygmée*, pigmy ; *scarabée*, scarab ; *spondée*, spondee ; *trophée*, trophy ; *trochée*, trochee : most of which are derived from the Latin or Greek.

As to nouns ending with silent *e*, not preceded by a vowel, it is better to depend on the dictionary than upon any thing published on this subject. The rules that have been given are too numerous, and attended with too many exceptions and errors, to be useful ; and if there is any that can be of any service it is this : Nouns ending in *ance*, *anse*, *ence*, and *ense*, are feminine. Except *silence*, silence, which is masculine.

CHAPTER VI.

OF ARTICLES.

ARTICLES are used before nouns that are taken in a DEFINITE OR DETERMINED SENSE. But as a noun may be determined in a possessive sense ; as MY HAT, *mon chapeau* ; in a demonstrative sense ; as THAT HAT, *ce chapeau* ; in an interrogative sense ; as WHAT HAT, *quel chapeau*, &c. : thence the necessity of several kinds of articles, the use of which, in French, is constantly determined by the same rules ; that is, the rules that are applicable to one of them are applicable to all the others, and therefore are general. They are the following :

34. 1st. ARTICLES are used WITH and never WITHOUT a noun.

2d. The presence of one article excludes the use of all the others. Therefore, two or several should not be employed with the same nouns.

3d. ARTICLES must agree in gender and number with the noun, the signification of which they determine ; that is, if the noun is MASCULINE SINGULAR, the article must be MASCULINE SINGULAR ; if it is FEMININE SINGULAR, the article must be FEMININE SINGULAR ; if it is PLURAL, the article must be PLURAL, masculine or feminine, according to the gender of the noun.

4th. When the signification of several nouns that are together, or joined by a conjunction, is to be determined by an article, that article must be repeated before every one of them; and if the preposition *de*, OF or FROM; or *à*, TO or AT, be used before the first, that preposition should also be repeated before all the others. There are instances in which other prepositions should also be repeated, but they will be considered in another place.

DEFINITE ARTICLES.

L'article défini, THE DEFINITE ARTICLE, in English, is used only before nouns taken in a Determined or Limited Sense.

35. The DEFINITE ARTICLE is used, in French, not only before nouns taken in a limited sense, but also before those that are taken in a GENERAL but DEFINITE sense; that is, before those that represent a PARTICULAR INDIVIDUAL or OBJECT, or a WHOLE KIND or SORT of individuals or objects.

As it is somewhat difficult to distinguish when a noun is employed in a Definite or Indefinite Sense, the following remarks are made with the hope that they will prove useful for students. A noun is said to be used in a Definite Sense, in French, when it represents a particular individual or object, or some particular individuals or objects, or when it represents a whole kind, sort, or class of individuals or objects. A noun is said to be used in an Indefinite Sense, in French, when it brings to the mind a vague, though not general, idea of an individual or object, or of some individuals or objects; very often in this last sense it is used in an adjective manner or signification, in some degree qualifying some word with which it is employed. In the phrase "Men are born good," the word *men* is used to represent all the individuals comprised in that class of beings denominated mankind, and would be said, in French, to be used in a Definite Sense; and therefore should be preceded by the article, thus: *les hommes sont nés bons*. In the phrase "A number of men," the word *men* is not intended to represent all the beings that compose mankind, but merely an indefinite portion of them; it brings to the mind a con-

fused idea, and seems to be employed here in an adjective manner, to qualify the word *number*, to distinguish it from any other number, for instance, from a number of oxen, of birds, &c. ; and would be said, in French, to be used in an Indefinite Sense, and therefore should not be preceded by the article ; thus, *un nombre d'hommes*. In the phrase "Wood is not so hard as stone," the words *wood* and *stone* represent here the whole objects that belong to those two classes of substances, denominated wood and stone, and would be said, in French, to be employed in a Definite Sense, and therefore should be preceded by the article, thus : *le bois n'est pas si dur que la pierre*. But in the phrase "A statue of stone is harder than a statue of wood," the words *stone* and *wood* present to the mind but a confused idea as regards their quality or quantity ; they are used here as adjectives, to distinguish statues of stone and wood from those made of any other material, and would be said, in French, to be used in an Indefinite Sense, and therefore should not be preceded by an article ; thus, *une statue de pierre est plus dure qu'une statue de bois*. The names of countries, provinces, rivers, seas, and mountains take the article.

36. The definite article changes, in French, because, according to the third general rule, it must agree in gender and number with the noun to which it is prefixed or refers ; and because that, according to the fourth general rule, the definite article must be repeated with agreement before every one of them, as well as the preposition *de* or *à*, if it is used with it, whether confounded with it or not.

37. The DEFINITE ARTICLE, relating to a masculine singular noun, and before a consonant, is, in French,

for THE, - - - - - *le*.

for OF OR FROM THE, - - - *du*,* instead of *de le*.

for TO OR AT THE, - - - *au*,† instead of *à le*.

The father of the governor, Le père du gouverneur.

To the son of the president, Au fils du président.

* *Du*, representing *de le*, is in fact an article and a preposition.

† *Au*, representing the words *à le*, is also an article and a preposition.

Explanation. In the first example, *le* is used, because *père* is a common noun of the masculine gender and in the singular number, and because it is placed before a consonant; *du* is used instead of *de le*, which is never employed, because *gouverneur* is a common noun of the masculine gender and in the singular number, and because it is placed before a consonant.

In the second example, *au* is used instead of *à le*, which is never said in French, and because it is placed before a consonant; *du* is used for the same reason as in the first example.

EXERCISE 8.

Under the foot of the colossus. Upon the arm. For the finger. With the elbow. Round the neck. On the forehead. From the nose. Under the chin. Against the bed. With the fist. In the wrist. At the ribbon of the hat. To the collar of the waistcoat. In the handkerchief. Upon the leather of the shoe. With the comb. To the necklace of Julia. Under the cloak. On the shawl. In the apron. Over the stocking. To the book of the christian. On the paper. To the penknife. In the drawer of the piano-forte. Behind the escritoir.

38. The DEFINITE ARTICLE, relating to a feminine singular noun, and before a consonant, is, in French,

for THE, - - - - - *la.*

for OF OR FROM THE, - - - - *de la.*

for TO OR AT THE, - - - - *à la.*

The mother of the princess, La mère de la princesse.

To the aunt of the general, À la tante du général.

Explanation. In the first example, *la* is used, because *mère* is a common noun of the feminine gender and in the singular number, and because it is placed before a consonant; *de la* is used, because *princesse* is a common noun of the feminine gender and in the singular number, and because it is placed before a consonant.

In the second example, *à la* is used, for the same reason as in the preceding, and *du* is used for the same reason as explained in No. 37.

EXERCISE 9.

Upon the head. To the skin of the arm.³⁷ The roof of the mouth.³⁷
From the flexibility of the tongue. For the throat. To the head dress.
Under the cravat. To the collar of the great coat.³⁷ With the girdle of
the gown. With the trimming of the bonnet.³⁷ From the pocket of the
apron. From the quality of the linen. By the colour of the cloth of the³⁷
cloak. Upon the chair of the master.³⁷ Round the table of the mistress.³⁷
By the door of the hall. To the face of the statue. Against the tapes-
try of the wall.³⁷ On the nape.

39. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE, relating to any singular noun, and before a vowel, or a silent *h*, is, in French,

for THE, - - - - - *l'.*

for OF OR FROM THE, - - - - - *de l'.*

for TO OR AT THE, - - - - - *à l'.*

The friend of the son, *L'ami du fils.*

From the uncle of the orator, *De l'oncle de l'orateur.*

To the history of the empress, *À l'histoire de l'impératrice.*

On the foot of the girl, *Sur le pied de la fille.*

Explanation. In the first example, *l'* is used instead of *le*, because *ami* is a masculine noun in the singular number, and because it is before a vowel; *du* is used for the same reason as explained in No. 37.

In the third example, *l'* is used instead of *la*, because *histoire* is a feminine noun in the singular number, and because a silent *h* follows it; *l'* is used instead of *la*, because *impératrice* is a common noun in the singular number, and because it is before a vowel.

In the fourth example, *le* is used before *pied*, for the same reason as explained in No. 37; and *la* before *fille*, for the same reason as explained in No. 38.

EXERCISE 10.

In ³⁸the concha of the ear. On ³⁸the pupil of the eye. To the articulation of the voice. With ³⁷the cloth of the coat. For the love of ³⁷the father. From the friendship of ³⁸the mother. From the interest of the history of Joseph. On the immortality of the soul. In the absence of ³⁸the master. Notwithstanding the ability of the lawyer. Concerning the usefulness of the study of ³⁸the science. According to the habit of the enemy. With the eloquence of the orator of Rome. To the ink of the inkstand. At the hour of the school.

40. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE, relating to any noun in the plural number, is,

for THE, - - - - - *les.*

for OF OR FROM THE, - - - - - *des*, instead of *de les*.

for TO OR AT THE, - - - - - *aux*, instead of *à les*.

The members of the administration, *Les membres de l'administration.*

To the studies of the scholars, *Aux études des écoliers.*

Explanation. In the first example, *les* is used, because *membres* is a noun in the plural number, *de l'* for the same reason as explained in No. 39.

In the second example, *aux* is used instead of *à les*, which is never said, because *études* is a noun in the plural number; *des*, instead of *de les*, which is never used in French; because *élèves* is a noun in the plural number.

EXERCISE 11.

On the sides²⁹ of the head³⁸. At the eye-lashes²⁹ of the eye-lids²⁹ of the eyes. In the corners²⁹ of the lips²⁹. At the roots²⁹ of the teeth²⁹. In the two conchas²⁹ of the ears²⁹. With the members²⁹ of the body³⁷. To the skin³⁸ of the two shoulders²⁹. In the joints²⁹ of the five fingers²⁹ of the hand³⁸. Upon the muscles²⁹ of the fore-arm³⁹. With the nails²⁹ of the ten fingers²⁹ of the two hands²⁹. On the thumbs²⁹. At the soles²⁹ of the feet²⁹. For the gums²⁹ of the teeth²⁹. From the colour³⁸ of the cheeks²⁹. According to the functions²⁹ of the nerves³⁸. On the skin³⁸ of the heels²⁹.

INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

L'article indéfini, THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE, in English, is A, or AN; A being used before a vowel, or a silent *h*; and AN before a consonant: Thus varying according to the first letter of the following word.

41. In French, the Indefinite Article does not vary according to the first letter of the following word, but according to the gender and number of the noun to which it refers, and must be repeated with agreement before every noun, when several are together. It is, in French,

for A OR AN, *un*, when relating to a masculine noun.

for A OR AN, *une*, when relating to a feminine noun.

for OF OR FROM A, OR AN, *d'un*, or *d'une*.

for TO OR AT A, OR AN, *à un*, or *à une*.

A niece of the mayor of the city, *Une nièce du maire de la ville.*

An uncle of the judge, *Un oncle du juge.*

From a notary of the country, *D'un notaire de la campagne.*

To a lady of Europe, *À une dame d'Europe.*

The numeral ONE is also rendered, in French, by *un* or *une*.
For one man and one woman, *Pour un homme et une femme.*

Explanation. In the first example, *une* is used, because *nièce* is a feminine noun in the singular number; *du*, for the reason given in No. 37; and *de la*, for the reason given in No. 38.

In the second example, *un* is used, because *oncle* is a masculine noun in the singular number.

In the third example, *d'* is used instead of *de*, because it is before a vowel.

EXERCISE 12.

Against an enemy of the nation. With about a dozen of ²⁹men. In a house of reformation. For a defender of ⁴⁰the laws of the country. Besides a man from the ⁴⁰mountains. Among a multitude of ²⁹women. From an order of the president of a university. In an edition of the ³⁷dictionary of the academy. According to a decision of ³⁷the council. Between a barn and a wall of the house. In a book of philosophy against the ²⁹principles of an author from England. Notwithstanding an admonition from the ³⁷doctor against the ³⁹use of food.

42. There is another Indefinite Article, which is, in English, SOME, or ANY and, in French,

quelque, for the singular of either gender.

quelques or *des*, for the plural of either gender.

From *some* man,

De quelque homme.

To *some* woman,

À quelque femme.

For *some* boys and girls,

Pour des garçons et des filles.

Quelques and *des* might be considered as the plural of the indefinite article *un* or *une*; *quelques* restraining the signification of the substantive to a few objects, and *des* to a greater number. Both, the same as the definite, must be repeated before every noun, when several are together.

COLLECTIVE ARTICLE.*

43. *L'Article collectif*, THE COLLECTIVE ARTICLE, in English, is, SEVERAL; and, in French, *plusieurs*, for either gender. Like the preceding, it must be repeated before every noun, when several are together.

Of *several* boys and girls,

De plusieurs garçons et de plusieurs filles.

To *several* uncles and aunts,

À plusieurs oncles et à plusieurs tantes.

EXERCISE 13.

In several ²⁹rooms of a house. With several ⁴¹scholars of a doctor. For

* Called by some grammarians, Indefinite Pronoun.

some⁴² apples²⁹ and³⁴ pears²⁹. Against⁴² some²⁹ enemies³⁷ of the government.
 Behind⁴² some²⁹ rocks³⁸ of the valley. Under⁴² some²⁹ disadvantages³⁷ of the
 body. In⁴¹ a book with some arguments⁴² on the subject³⁷ of religion.
 Before²⁹ several persons of merit. Under³⁹ the influence⁴² of some individuals²⁹.
 With³⁹ the approbation of several friends. After²⁹ some lessons⁴² of a
 professor. By³⁸ the goodness of some ladies⁴² of some villages²⁹. Notwith-
 standing³⁹ the opposition of some generals⁴². Upon³⁸ the cover of some⁴²
 books²⁹.

PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

44. When a part of a thing, or of a number of things or individuals is intended, in English, the word *SOME*, or *ANY*, is sometimes used before the noun, and often merely implied. The corresponding words are always expressed, in French, and repeated before every noun. They are *du, de la, de l', des*, used after the rules of the definite article, explained in Nos. 37, 38, 39 and 40. This *PARTITIVE ARTICLE*, being the combination of the *DEFINITE* with the preposition *de*, must be repeated before every noun with agreement, when several are together.

A box with paper, wax, ink, Une boîte avec du papier, de la
 and pens, cire, de l'encre et des plumes.
 To some bottles for wine or À des bouteilles pour du vin ou
 beer, de la bière.

Explanation. In the first example, *une* is used for the reason given in No. 41; *du*, because in the English phrase the word *SOME* is understood before the word *PAPER*, and because the word *papier* is a masculine noun in the singular number; *de la* for the implied word *SOME*, and because *cire* is a feminine noun in the singular number; *de l'* for the implied word *SOME*, and because it relates to a singular noun, and is placed before a vowel; *des* also for the implied word *SOME*, and because it relates to a noun in the plural number.

In the second example, *des* is used to translate the word *SOME*, and because it relates to a noun in the plural number; *du* is for the word *SOME* or *ANY*, implied before the word *WINE*, and because it is before a consonant and relates to a masculine noun in the singular number; *de la* are for the word *SOME* or *ANY* understood before the word *BEER*, and because it is before a consonant and relates to a feminine noun in the singular number.

EXERCISE 14.

Behold, for the breakfast of John, a table, chairs, plates, cups, sau-
 cers, tumblers, forks, knives, spoons, tea, coffee, chocolate, milk, su-
 gar, water, bread, meat, cheese, butter, and cakes; for the dinner of

⁴⁴George, ⁴⁴soup, ⁴⁴beef, ⁴⁴pork, ²⁹chickens, ⁴⁴veal, ⁴⁴mutton, ⁴⁴fish, ⁴⁴rice, ²⁹turnips, ⁴⁴potatoes, ⁴⁴wine, ⁴⁴cider, ⁴⁴beer, ⁴⁴salad with oil, ⁴⁴vinegar, ⁴⁴salt, ⁴⁴pepper, and ⁴⁴mustard; for the supper of ³⁷Joseph, ⁴⁴tea, ⁴⁴pies, ²⁹ham, ⁴⁴apples, ⁴⁴pears, ²⁹peaches, &c. Behold ⁴¹a house among ⁴⁴columns, ²⁹statues, and ⁴⁴trees. With some ⁴⁴paper of France. With ⁴⁴wind, ⁴⁴rain, ⁴⁴snow, and ⁴⁴ice.

POSSESSIVE PERSONAL ARTICLES.*

When the extent of the signification of a noun is determined in a possessive sense, the English use either of the words MY, THY, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, or THEIR, agreeing in gender, number and person, with the possessor.

45. In French, the POSSESSIVE PERSONAL ARTICLES agree, NOT IN GENDER, but in NUMBER and PERSON, with the possessor, and in GENDER and NUMBER with the possessed object.

46. These articles like the preceding must be repeated, with agreement, before every noun, when several are used together, though they are expressed but once in English. They are used according to the following rules :

47. When the possessed object belongs to the individual who is speaking, that is, to the first person singular, we must use

for MY, *mon*, when that object is masculine singular.

for MY, *ma*, when that object is feminine singular.

for MY, *mes*, when that object is plural, whatever be its gender.

With books of *my* master, *Avec des livres de mon maître.*

For *my* lesson of to-morrow, *Pour ma leçon de demain.*

Against *my* enemies, *Contre mes ennemis.*

Explanation. In the first example, *des* is used for the reason explained in No. 44: *mon*, because it determines the extent of the signification of *maître*, which is a masculine noun and in the singular number, and because the possessor is of the first person singular.

In the second example, *ma* is used because it relates to a possessor of the first person singular, and because the possessed object is feminine singular.

In the third example, *mes* is used because the possessor, to which it relates, is of the first person singular, and the possessed object is plural.

* Called by other grammarians, Possessive Adjective Pronouns.

EXERCISE 15

Among⁴⁰ the scholars²⁹ of my class. During³⁷ the time²⁹ of my lessons. In my dictionary³⁹ of the academy. Against⁴⁰ the enemies²⁹ of my country. For my relations²⁹ and friends⁴⁶. With my father²⁹, mother⁴⁶, brother⁴⁶, sister⁴⁶, uncles⁴⁶, aunts²⁹, and cousins⁴⁶. Among my papers²⁹ or books⁴⁶. In my grammar²⁹. For my friends²⁹ of Boston. Concerning my history⁴⁶, and especially my character⁴⁶, manners⁴⁶, knowledge⁴⁶, and disposition. Against my advice⁴⁶ and wishes²⁹. Without my permission. In my room. Upon my table. With my pen⁴⁶ on my paper²⁹. Under my bed⁴⁶, table⁴⁶, chairs²⁹, and carpet⁴⁶. Over my head⁴⁶, shoulders²⁹, and arms^{46 28}.

48. When the possessed object belongs to the single individual spoken to, that is, to the second person singular, we must use

for *THY, ton*, when the object is masculine singular.

for *THY, ta*, when the object is feminine singular.

for *THY, tes*, when the object is plu. whatever be its gender.

In *thy* mind,

Dans ton esprit.

With *thy* fortune,

Avec ta fortune.

Against *thy* interests,

Contre tes intérêts.

Explanation. In the 1st example, *ton* is used because it relates to a single possessor of the second person singular, and because the noun, the signification of which it determines, is a masculine noun in the singular number.

In the 2d example, *ta* is used because the possessor to which it relates is of the second person singular, and because the possessed object is feminine singular.

In the 3d example, *tes* is used because the possessor is of the 2d person singular, and the possessed object is plural.

EXERCISE 16.

For thy health⁴⁶ and happiness. From thy residence⁴⁷ to my house. Notwithstanding thy promises²⁹ and engagements⁴⁶. By thy letter²⁹ to my partner⁴⁷. After the persons⁴⁰ of thy choice²⁹. According⁴⁰ to the rules²⁹ of thy establishment⁴⁰. Against the principles²⁹ of thy religion. Among thy children²⁹ and servants⁴⁶. With thy comrades²⁹ and superiors⁴⁶. During³⁸ the sickness⁴⁶ of thy nephew⁴⁷ and neice. For my pleasure⁴⁶ and thy enjoyment. With thy knowledge⁴⁶ and constancy³⁸. Against the decision²⁹ of thy judges³⁹ and the opinion³⁹ of thy lawyer. With the in-

fluence of thy friends and the fortune of thy protector. For the execution of plans of thy officers of artillery.

49. When the possessed object belongs to the single individual spoken of, that is to the third person singular, we must use

for HIS, HER, or ITS, *son*, when that object is masc. sing.

for HIS, HER, or ITS, *sa*, when that object is fem. singular.

for HIS, HER, or ITS, *ses*, when that object is plural whatever be its gender.

For *his, her, its* work, *Pour son travail.*

With *his, her, or its* force, *Avec sa force.*

From *his, her, or its* services, *De ses services.*

Explanation. In the first example, *son* is used because it relates to a single possessor of the third person singular, without regard to his, her, or its gender, and because the possessed object is of the masculine gender and in the singular number.

In the second example, *sa* is used because the possessor is of the third person singular and the possessed object is feminine singular.

In the third example, *ses* is used because the possessor is of the third person singular, and the possessed object is plural.

EXERCISE 17.

NOTE. In this and the following exercises those nouns used in the plural number, that have no figure over them, are of those whose plural is regularly formed, that is, by adding *s* to their singular; those only, whose plural is not regularly formed, will be referred to their respective rules.

For my father and his sister. With thy mother and her brother. Before thy aunt and her parents. In his house among his children. Behold his carriage, horses, harness, saddle, whip, and bridle. From my chaise, and from one of its wheels. At the door of its chamber. Behold Miss B. with her bonnet, shawl, gown, stockings, shoes, and jewels, from France, behind her friend from Baltimore. At a breakfast under a tree, with its fruits upon a bed of its branches and foliage. For some meat from his dish with some of its juice. With her cakes, nuts, and strawberries.

50. When the possessed object belongs to several individuals who are speaking, that is to the first person plural, we must use for OUR, *notre*, when that object is sing., whatever be its gen. for OUR, *nos*, when that object is plural, whatever be its gender.

In our house,

Dans notre maison.

For our children,

Pour nos enfants.

Explanation. In the first example, *notre* is used, because it relates to several possessors of the first person plural, and because the possessed object is singular.

In the second example, *nos* is used, because the possessors are of the first person plural, and the possessed object is plural.

EXERCISE 18.

With the ³⁷testimony of our conscience. Among our papers of our law-suit. Between our boys and ⁴⁶girls. Without our consent to ⁴⁹his promotion. From our intimacy with ⁴⁹her father, since our infancy. Concerning our trade with ⁴⁸thy partner in France. During our vacations of ³⁷the month of August. With our compliments to ⁴⁸thy mother, and to her brother and ⁴⁶sister. In spite of our opposition to ⁴⁹his visit. With ⁴⁹his regards to our neighbours and ⁴⁶acquaintances. In our lesson and translation. Since our meeting at the party of our friend ³⁸Madam O. During our studies under our professor Mr. L. Notwithstanding our mistakes in our pronunciation.

51. When the possessed object belongs to several individuals spoken to, that is, to the second person plural, we must use for YOUR, *votre*, when that object is sing., whatever be its gen. for YOUR, *vos*, when that object is plu., whatever be its gender. With *your* father and mother, *Avec votre père et votre mère.* For *your* enemies and friends, *Pour vos ennemis et vos amis.*

Explanation. In the first example, *votre* is used, because the possessor is of the second person plural, and the possessed object is singular, and it is repeated according to the 4th rule given at No. 34.

In the second example, *vos* is used, because the possessor is of the second person plural, and the possessed object is plural; and it is repeated according to the 4th rule given at No. 34.

EXERCISE 19.

Behold your letters to your tenants. Concerning your principles and ⁴⁶regulations. From ⁴⁷my confidence in your reputation, and the ³⁹extent of your trade. For your fellow-citizens, and against the ⁴⁰enemies of your country. Without the reward of your troubles, ³⁸sufferings, and ⁴⁶danger; but with the opinion of your honour and glory. Between your ⁴⁶duties and ³⁹interest. Under your influence and ⁴⁶protection. From ⁵⁰our

city to the place of your birth. With my partisans and your soldiers, against his slaves. Concerning your pretensions to her property. Without her consent to your acts. From the accounts of your income, and the expenses of your house.

52. When the possessed object belongs to several individuals spoken of, that is, to the third person plural, we must use for THEIR, *leur*, when that object is sing., whatever be its gen. for THEIR, *leurs*, when that object is plu., whatever be its gen. Concerning *their* board and *Concernant leur pension et leur* rent, *loyer*. With *their* goods and credit, *Avec leurs marchandises et leur crédit*.

Explanation. In the first example, *leur* is used, because the possessor is of the third person plural, and the possessed object is singular; it is repeated according to the 4th rule given at No. 34.

In the second example, *leurs* is used, because the possessor is of the third person plural, and the possessed object is plural; it is repeated before the second noun, after the 4th rule given at No. 34; but without *s*, because that second noun is singular.

EXERCISE 20.

By their wickedness and negligence. To their indifference and ignorance of their interests. According to their views and their actions towards their minister. Before their idol, and notwithstanding the defence of their God. Concerning their want of our religion. Under the penalty of their crimes. After the rules of their society. Besides their friendship and protection. With their courage and impetuosity. Under their arms and means of defence. Within the extent of their state. From their ambition and love of distinction. During their administration over the nations of their conquests. By their obedience to their commanders, and their humanity and generosity towards their enemies.

53. EXCEPTIONAL RULE. *Mon, ton, son*, should be used, instead of *ma, ta, sa*, before a vowel or silent *h*.

With my friendship,	<i>Avec mon amitié.</i>
For thy history,	<i>Pour ton histoire.</i>
In her soul,	<i>Dans son âme.</i>

Explanation. In these examples, *mon* is used instead of *ma*, though the possessed object is feminine singular, because it is before a vowel; *son* is used instead of *sa*, for the same reason, and *ton* is used instead of *ta*, because it is before a silent *h*, though the possessed object is feminine and in the singular number.

EXERCISE 21.

With thy esteem⁴⁶ and consideration. For her wit⁴⁶ and goodness. According to my opinion of his history³⁸ of the wife of our president⁵⁰. With his approbation in my affair against his friend. For the salvation³⁷ of my soul. Besides thy intention against his ambition. From my idea of thy action for his admission into my hermitage. With her pin⁴⁶ and needle in her mouth. To thy influence and her inconstancy. To my friendship notwithstanding his enmity. After my invasion³⁷ of the territory of his empire. For his love of thy affability. With her innocence and simplicity⁴⁶. By his application and my instruction. Concerning her humility.

ENGLISH POSSESSIVE CASE.

54. To translate the English possessive case, as there is not such a one in French, it is necessary to use a different form of expression. For instance, the translation of 'my father's house,' is, in French, *la maison de mon père*, the literal English of which is 'the house of my father.' Therefore, whenever any possessive case is to be rendered, in French, it is better to change first its form into one like that of 'the house of my father,' and then translate the latter literally. Thus, to translate 'the mother's privilege,' this phrase should be changed into 'the privilege of the mother,' and translated literally thus, *le privilège de la mère*. For the children's breakfast *Pour le déjeuner et le souper* and supper, *des enfants*. By my sister's politeness and *Par la politesse et la bienveillance* benevolence, *de ma sœur*.

EXERCISE 22.*

In my friend⁵³'s copy-book³⁷. According to our superior⁵⁰'s orders⁴⁰. From his daughter's⁴⁹ journal³⁷. With your cousin's⁵¹ consent³⁷. From his scholars'⁴⁹ consideration³⁸. During thy master's⁴⁸ youth³⁸ and vigour³⁴. Against their⁵²

* The figures placed above the *s* of the possessive case, refer to the Definite Article, which should be used before the noun of the possessed object, in French; and those placed above the article that precedes the name of the possessor, should be supposed to be preceded by the preposition *of*, *de*, which must be expressed whether combined or not, with that article; as in,

⁵³ My friend's ³⁷ book,	<i>Le livre de mon ami,</i>	that is	<i>the book of my friend.</i>
⁴⁸ The city's ³⁸ property,	<i>La propriété de la ville,</i>	that is	<i>the property of the city.</i>
³⁷ The master's ³⁸ table,	<i>La table du maître,</i>	that is	<i>the table of the master.</i>

benefactor's will. Concerning my partner's interests. Under our teacher's influence. From the president's hand. By the advice of the governor's council. At their constituents' request. On the buttons of my protector's coat. Within his property's limits. Without her parents' permission. Notwithstanding her family's wants and sufferings. In the traveller's guide, or in the ladies' book. Concerning God's wisdom and glory.

NOTE. † Whenever No. 34 is referred to, the four paragraphs should be read.

DEMONSTRATIVE ARTICLES.*

When the extent of the signification of a noun is to be determined in a demonstrative sense, the word **THIS** or **THAT**, **THESE** or **THOSE**, is used before that noun, in English, whatever be its gender and number.

55. In French, the demonstrative articles must agree in gender and number with the noun whose signification they determine ; and if there are several nouns together, the demonstrative articles, like the preceding ones, must be repeated with agreement before each of them, though they are expressed but once in English. They are, in French,

for **THIS** or **THAT**, *ce*, before a consonant, } when the noun
for **THIS** or **THAT**, *cet*, before a vowel or silent *h*, } is masc. sing.
for **THIS** or **THAT**, *cette*, whenever the noun is feminine singular.
for **THESE** or **THOSE**, *ces*, when the noun is plural, whatever be
its gender.

For <i>that</i> man,	<i>Pour cet homme.</i>
With <i>that</i> friend,	<i>Avec cet ami.</i>
In <i>this</i> or <i>that</i> drawer,	<i>Dans ce tiroir.</i>
Upon <i>this</i> or <i>that</i> table,	<i>Sur cette table.</i>
From <i>these</i> or <i>those</i> books,	<i>De ces livres.</i>

Explanation. In these examples, *cet* is used, because it relates to a masculine singular noun and because it is before a silent *h*, and a vowel ; *ce*, because it relates to a masculine singular noun and is before a consonant ; *cette*, because it relates to a feminine singular noun ; *ces*, because it relates to a plural noun.

* Called by other grammarians, Demonstrative Adjective Pronouns.

EXERCISE 23.

Upon that bench or under this table. In that inkstand. From one¹ of those books. From that epoch to this time. Concerning that affair, and under those conditions. During that season. After this month. Before those two weeks. With that penknife and those scissors. For this coat and vest.³⁴ In that handkerchief. From his pocket into that bag. Between those four trees. With this cane under that arm, and that umbrella at my hand.⁴⁷ Against that animal of this country. Among those ninety-seven boys. On this subject for that object. To that hill. Towards that mountain and village.³⁴ Between those two ladies and three gentlemen.³⁴

56. The difference between *THIS* and *THAT*, or *THESE* and *THOSE*, is not expressed by the demonstrative articles *ce, cet, cette, ces*, alone ; and is never expressed, in French, unless it be absolutely necessary to avoid confusion, and then it is done by placing *-ci* preceded with a hyphen after the nearer noun, and *-là* after the more remote, as in,

From *this* place to *that* corner, *De cet endroit-ci à ce coin-là.*
 For *these* men and not for *those* women, *Pour ces hommes-ci et non pour ces femmes-là.*

Explanation. In these examples, *ci* and *là* are used after the nouns to prevent the confusion that might arise, if the objects they represent were near other objects of the same kind ; and *-ci* is used, with the nearer noun ; and *-là*, with the more remote.

EXERCISE 24.

In that drawer or in this box. Between this actor and that actress. For these stockings²⁸ and those shoes. Against the corner³⁷ of that house, and not against this post. With this carriage and those horses.³² In that time of famine. During this weather. With these things and those tools. Between those two branches. For this nosegay. For that rose-bush and this jasmine. With three or four sprigs from the myrtle, and some flowers from under this orange-tree.⁴² For the inmates⁴⁰ of that castle. From behind that hedge, and not from before this rock. With this shovel, that spade, and those two hoes.

INTERROGATIVE ARTICLES.*

When a question is asked with a noun, in English, that noun is generally preceded by the word *WHAT*, which never changes, whatever be the gender and number of the noun.

57. In French, the Interrogative Article varies according to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates; and if there are several nouns together, it must be repeated with agreement, like all the other articles, before every one of them, though it may be expressed but once in English. They are

for *WHAT*, *quel*, when the noun is masculine singular.

for *WHAT*, *quelle*, when the noun is feminine singular.

for *WHAT*, *quels*, when the noun is masculine plural.

for *WHAT*, *quelles*, when the noun is feminine plural.

This article is often used in exclamative sentences, but only with a noun.

For *what* object?

Pour quel objet?

Of *what* woman?

De quelle femme?

With *what* means?

Avec quels moyens?

By *what* laws?

Par quelles lois?

What a misfortune!

Quel malheur!

What torments!

Quels tourments?

Explanation. In these examples, *quel* is used, because *objet* is a masculine singular noun; *quelle*, because *femme* is a feminine singular noun; *quels*, because *moyens* is a masculine plural noun; *quelles*, because *lois* is a feminine plural noun.

58. As it may be noticed, the Indefinite Article *a* is not rendered, in French, in exclamative sentences. Therefore it would be wrong to say *quel un malheur*, the French idiom not permitting the use of two articles together.

EXERCISE 25.

What time? What hour? What moments? What things? What design? What enterprise? What object? From what authority? With what intention? By what order? Under what circumstances? What⁵⁸ a pleasure! After what days? Under what influence? In what

* Called by other grammarians, Interrogative Pronouns.

book of your⁵¹ library, and in what chapter? For what reasons? From what part of our father's⁵⁰ life? Before what word? In what phrase of your⁵¹ exercise? With what ladies and³⁸ gentlemen? In what house? What a⁵⁸ voice! With what materials? With what paper,³⁴ ink,³⁴ pen,³⁴ pen-knife and seal,³⁴ of our⁵⁰ uncle? What a⁵⁸ man! What a⁵⁸ woman!

DISTRIBUTIVE ARTICLE.*

There is another article called THE DISTRIBUTIVE, *le distributif*. It is, in English, EACH, EVERY, and has no plural.

59. It is, in French, *chaque* for either gender and has no plural. Like the others, when it is used with several nouns together, it must be repeated before each one.

Towards *each* man, woman and child, *Envers chaque homme, chaque femme et chaque enfant.*

EXERCISE 26.

By every scholar of my⁵³ school. At each lesson. Every morning of this⁵⁶ month. For each reason and proof. From every Miss of the soci-³⁸ety. In presence of³⁸ the mother of each pupil. Every time after the explanation of each mistake. By every citizen of America. With the approbation of each captain and³⁴ commander. In each room of³⁸ the house. According to the custom of³⁸ that people at every spring and autumn. Under the³⁸ direction of every officer of that⁵⁵ corps. Concerning each member of the family of the cashier. By the mark of each³⁷ corner of the instrument. In every circumstance.

NEGATIVE ARTICLES.*

When, in English, a noun is used in a negative sense, the word *no*, instead of any article, is prefixed to it; and, if there are several nouns together, it is expressed only before the first with *NOR*, or sometimes erroneously *OR*, before the last, without either ever varying.

* Called by other grammarians, Indefinite Pronouns.

60. In French, the Negative Articles vary according to the gender of the noun; and, if there are several nouns together, like the preceding articles, they must be repeated with agreement before every one of them, and the last must be preceded by the conjunction *ni*, which is for NOR, or OR. They are for NO, *nul* or *aucun*, when the noun is masculine singular. for NO, *nulle* or *aucune*, when the noun is feminine singular.

However, *nul* denies more strongly than *aucun*.

For no man, woman, boy, nor *Pour nul or aucun homme,*
 girl, *nulle or aucune femme, nul*
or aucun garçon, ni nulle
or ni aucune fille.

Explanation. *Nul* or *aucun* is used, because the noun to which it relates is masculine singular; and *nulle* or *aucune*, because the noun to which it relates is feminine singular.

61. The plural of these articles, which is *nuls*, *nulles*, *aucuns*, *aucunes*, is used only with nouns that have no singular; for, were no prefixed to a plural noun that has a singular number, that plural noun should be rendered by the singular, in French.

At no funerals, *À nulles or aucunes funérailles.*
 For no reasons, *Pour nulle or aucune raison.*

Explanation. In the first example, *nulles* or *aucunes* is in the plural number and feminine gender, because *funérailles* is a feminine noun that cannot be used in the singular. In the second example, *nulle* or *aucune* is in the singular feminine, because *raison* is a feminine noun that can be used in the singular.

EXERCISE 27.

In no basket, box, nor trunk, of those travellers. For no scissors nor snuffers of that merchant. To no support from his authority. By no individuals of this country. In no occasion. For no consideration nor respect of your master. In no place in the world. In no book of thy library. Over no member of the senate. In no city, village nor hamlet of the empire. For no materials of our house. Against no lady of that congregation. In favour of no person of this state nor even of this nation. For no tongs nor shovel. In presence of several ladies, but of no man nor boy. For the benefit of no christian.

TABLE OF ARTICLES.

<i>Articles définis,</i>	DEFINITE ARTICLES.
le, la, l', les, . . .	the.
du, de la, de l', des, . . .	of or from the.
au, à la, à l', aux, . . .	to or at the.
<i>Articles indéfinis,</i>	INDEFINITE ARTICLES.
un, une, . . .	a, an.
quelque, quelques, des, . . .	some.
<i>Article collectif,</i>	COLLECTIVE ARTICLE.
plusieurs, . . .	several.
<i>Articles partitifs,</i>	PARTITIVE ARTICLES.
du, de la, de l', des, . . .	some, any.
<i>Articles possessifs personnels,</i>	POSSESSIVE PERSONAL ARTICLES.
mon, ma, mes, . . .	my.
ton, ta, tes, . . .	thy.
son, sa, ses, . . .	his, her, its.
notre, nos, . . .	our.
votre, vos, . . .	your.
leur, leurs, . . .	their.
<i>Articles démonstratifs,</i>	DEMONSTRATIVE ARTICLES.
ce, cet, cette, ces, . . .	this, that, these, those.
<i>Articles interrogatifs,</i>	INTERROGATIVE ARTICLES.
quel, quelle, quels, quelles, . . .	what.
<i>Article distributif,</i>	DISTRIBUTIVE ARTICLE.
chaque, . . .	each, every.
<i>Articles négatifs,</i>	NEGATIVE ARTICLES.
nul, nulle, nuls, nulles, . . .	} no, nor.
aucun, aucune, aucuns, aucunes, . . .	

CHAPTER VII.

OF ADJECTIVES.

Les Adjectifs, ADJECTIVES, in English, never vary on account of the gender and number of the noun whose quality they express, and their place is generally after a substantive.

62. In French, adjectives vary in their termination according to the gender and number of the noun whose quality they express; that is, if the noun is masculine singular, the adjective must have a masculine singular termination; if it is feminine singular, the adjective must have a feminine singular termination; if it is plural, the adjective must have a plural termination, masculine or feminine, according to the gender of the noun; and, with the few exceptions hereafter given, adjectives are generally placed after the noun, contrary to the English practice.

A <i>learned</i> minister,	<i>Un ministre</i> savant.
A <i>learned</i> instructress,	<i>Une institutrice</i> savante.
Some <i>learned</i> professors,	<i>Des professeurs</i> savants.
Some <i>learned</i> ladies,	<i>Des dames</i> savantes.

Explanation. In the first example, the adjective *savant* has a masculine singular termination, because the noun to which it relates, *ministre*, is masculine singular. In the second example, *savante* has a feminine singular termination, because the noun to which it relates, *institutrice*, is feminine singular. In the third example, *savants* has a masculine plural termination, because the noun to which it relates, *professeurs*, is masculine plural. In the fourth example, *savantes* has a feminine plural termination, because the noun to which it relates, *dames*, is feminine plural.

63. If an adjective expresses the quality of several nouns of the same gender, it must have a plural termination, masculine if they are masculine, and feminine if they both are of the feminine gender; but if those nouns are of different genders, the masculine one must be expressed the last, and the adjective must have a masculine plural termination.

By the efforts of an <i>enterprising</i> father and son,	<i>Par les efforts d'un père et d'un fils</i> entreprenants.
For the benefit of his <i>virtuous</i> wife and daughter,	<i>Pour le profit de son épouse et de sa fille</i> vertueuses

but *complet*, complete, becomes *complète* in the feminine.
concret, concrete, becomes *concrète* in the feminine.
discret, discreet, becomes *discrète* in the feminine.
inquiet, uneasy, becomes *inquiète* in the feminine.
replet, replete, becomes *replète* in the feminine.
secret, secret, becomes *secrète* in the feminine.
mauvais, bad, becomes *mauvaise* in the feminine.
niais, silly, becomes *niaise* in the feminine.
ras, close, becomes *rase* in the feminine.
tiers, third, becomes *tierce* in the feminine.
français, french, becomes *française*, in the feminine,
and all adjectives ending in *ais* or *ois*, formed from the names of
nations, simply take *e* for their feminine.

67. 2d. Adjectives ending in *f*, change that *f* into *ve* for their feminine ; as

Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.	
<i>neuf</i> ,	<i>neuve</i> ,	new.	<i>bref</i> ,	<i>brève</i> ,	brief.
<i>vif</i> ,	<i>vive</i> ,	quick.	<i>sauf</i> ,	<i>sauve</i> ,	safe.

and those ending in *ef*, take also a grave accent over the *e* that precedes the *v*, as in *brève*.

68. 3d. Adjectives ending in *x*, change that *x* into *se* for their feminine ; as

heureux, m. hereuse, f. happy. | *jaloux*, m. jalouse, f. jealous.

but *doux*, m. sweet, becomes *douce* in the feminine.
faux, m. false, becomes *fausse* in the feminine.
préfix, m. prefixed, becomes *préfixe* in the feminine.
roux, m. red, becomes *rousse* in the feminine.
vieux, m. old, becomes *vieille* in the feminine.

69. Adjectives ending in *eur*, form their feminine by changing that termination into *euse*, *rice*, *eresse*, or merely by adding silent *e* to the masculine.

4th. Those that are derived from the present participle of a verb, by changing the termination *ant* into *eur*, change that termination *eur* into *euse*, for their feminine ; as

danseur, m. from *danser*, to dance, *danseuse*, fem. dancer.
trompeur, m. from *tromper*, to deceive, *trompeuse*, fem. deceiver

5th. Those which end in *teur*, and are not derived from the present participle of a verb, change their termination *eur* into *rice*, for their feminine ; as

<i>accusateur</i> ,	masc.	<i>accusatrice</i> ,	fem.	accuser.
<i>conducteur</i> ,	masc.	<i>conductrice</i> ,	fem.	leader.
<i>protecteur</i> ,	masc.	<i>protectrice</i> ,	fem.	protector.

But the following, though forming their feminine by changing *eur* into *rice*, are derived from present participles :

<i>débiteur</i> ,	<i>débitrice</i> ,	debtor.
<i>exécuteur</i> ,	<i>exécutrice</i> ,	executor.
<i>inspecteur</i> ,	<i>inspectrice</i> ,	inspector.
<i>inventeur</i> ,	<i>inventrice</i> ,	inventor.
<i>persécuteur</i> ,	<i>persécutrice</i>	persecutor.

6th. Those that end in *érieur*, take a silent *e* for their feminine ; as

<i>extérieur</i> ,	<i>extérieure</i> ,	exterior.
<i>supérieur</i> ,	<i>supérieure</i> ,	superior.

But the following, though not ending in *érieur*, take a silent *e* for their feminine :

<i>majeur</i> ,	<i>majeure</i> ,	major.
<i>mineur</i> ,	<i>mineure</i> ,	minor.
<i>meilleur</i> ,	<i>meilleure</i> ,	better.

Those that form their feminine by changing *eur* into *eresse*, are the following :

<i>bailleur</i> ,	<i>bailleresse</i> ,	giver.
<i>défendeur</i> ,	<i>défenderesse</i> ,	defendant.
<i>demandeur</i> ,	<i>demanderesse</i> ,	plaintiff.
<i>devineur</i> ,	<i>devineresse</i> ,	diviner.
<i>enchanteur</i> ,	<i>enchanteresse</i> ,	enchanter.
<i>chasseur</i> ,	<i>chasseresse</i> ,	hunter.
<i>pêcheur</i> ,	<i>pécheresse</i> ,	sinful.
<i>vengeur</i> ,	<i>vengeresse</i> ,	revenegful.

The following are exceptions to any of the preceding rules.

<i>ambassadeur</i> ,	<i>ambassadrice</i> ,	ambassador.
<i>gouverneur</i> ,	<i>gouvernante</i> ,	governor.
<i>serviteur</i> ,	<i>servante</i> ,	servant.

Adjectives, or rather substantives, ending in *eur*, which express a profession principally exercised by a man, do not change for their feminine; as

<i>auteur,</i>	author.
<i>professeur,</i>	professor.
<i>littérateur,</i>	person of letters.

70. The adjectives

<i>gentil,</i>	become in the feminine,	<i>gentille,</i>	gentle.
<i>paysan,</i>		<i>paysanne,</i>	peasant.
<i>sot,</i>		<i>sotte,</i>	foolish.
<i>vieillot,</i>		<i>vieillotte,</i>	oldish.
<i>jumeau,</i>	become in the feminine,	<i>jumelle,</i>	twin.
<i>beau,</i>		<i>belle,</i>	handsome.
<i>nouveau,</i>		<i>nouvelle,</i>	new.
<i>fou,</i>		<i>folle,</i>	mad.
<i>mou,</i>		<i>molle,</i>	soft.

71. The last four have another masculine, which is *bel*, *nouvel*, *fol*, *mol*, which is always placed before the substantive and used only when it begins with a vowel or silent *h*; as in

<i>Un bel oiseau,</i>	.	.	A <i>beautiful</i> or handsome bird.
<i>Ce nouvel habit,</i>	.	.	That <i>new</i> coat.
<i>D'un fol amour,</i>	.	.	Of a <i>foolish</i> love.
<i>Sous un mol édredon,</i>	.	.	Under a <i>soft</i> down blanket.

72. The adjectives

<i>blanc,</i>	become in the feminine,	<i>blanche,</i>	white.
<i>franc,</i>		<i>franche,</i>	frank.
<i>sec,</i>		<i>sèche,</i>	dry.
<i>frais,</i>		<i>fraîche,</i>	fresh.
<i>public,</i>		<i>publique,</i>	public.
<i>caduc,</i>		<i>caduque,</i>	in decay.
<i>Grec,</i>		<i>Grecque,</i>	Greek.
<i>Turc,</i>		<i>Turque,</i>	Turk.
<i>long,</i>	become in the feminine,	<i>longue,</i>	long.
<i>oblong,</i>		<i>oblongue,</i>	oblong.
<i>bénin,</i>		<i>bénigne,</i>	benign.
<i>malin,</i>		<i>maligne,</i>	malicious.
<i>favori,</i>		<i>favorite,</i>	favourite.
<i>coi,</i>		<i>coite,</i>	quiet.

73. The adjectives

<i>chatain</i> ,	chestnut colour,	} are never used in the feminine gender.
<i>dispos</i> ,	active,	
<i>fat</i> ,	coxcomb,	

PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

74. The plural of adjectives is generally formed like that of nouns :

Except *bleu*, blue, whose plural is *bleus*.
tout, all, whose plural is *tous*.

Of the adjectives ending *al*, the greater number change that termination into *aux* ; as

<i>égal</i> ,	.	<i>égaux</i> ,	.	equal.
<i>moral</i> ,	.	<i>moraux</i> ,	.	moral.

And the others by the addition of an *s* ; as

<i>fatal</i> ,	.	<i>fatals</i> ,	.	fatal.
<i>final</i> ,	.	<i>finals</i> ,	.	final.

The following adjectives are never used in the plural :

<i>bénéficial</i> ,	beneficial.	<i>médicinal</i> ,	medicinal.
<i>canonical</i> ,	canonical.	<i>mental</i> ,	mental.
<i>diagonal</i> ,	diagonal.	<i>patronal</i> ,	patronal.
<i>diamétral</i> ,	diametral.	<i>virginal</i> ,	virginal.
<i>expérimental</i> ,	experimental.	<i>vocal</i> ,	vocal.
<i>instrumental</i> ,	instrumental.	<i>zodiacal</i> ,	zodiacal.

As to the plural of the feminine of adjectives, it is always formed by the addition of *s* to the singular.

PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

There are adjectives that are indifferently placed before or after the noun ; others that are always placed after the noun ; others that are generally placed before the noun ; and others whose signification changes according as they are placed before or after the noun.

75. Those that are placed after the noun, are

1st. Those that express FORM, COLOUR, TASTE, SOUND, FEELING, &c. ; as

With my <i>red</i> coat,	<i>Avec mon habit rouge.</i>
Upon the <i>round</i> table,	<i>Sur la table ronde.</i>

For a <i>sweet</i> orange,	<i>Pour une orange douce.</i>
By the <i>harmonious</i> sound of the horn,	<i>Par le son harmonieux du cor.</i>
With a <i>rough</i> hand,	<i>Avec une main rude.</i>

2d. Those that are derived from names of nations ; as in

In several <i>French</i> books,	<i>Dans plusieurs livres Français.</i>
By every <i>American</i> journal,	<i>Par chaque journal Américain.</i>
For some <i>English</i> goods,	<i>Pour des marchandises Anglaises.</i>

3d. All participles used adjectively, and adjectives derived from them ; as

Towards every <i>devoted</i> friend,	<i>Envers chaque ami dévoué.</i>
By the <i>enchanted</i> audience of a <i>learned</i> orator.	<i>Par l'audience enchantée d'un orateur instruit.</i>

76. The adjectives that are generally placed before the noun, between the article and the noun, are

<i>beau</i> or <i>bel</i> ,	handsome.	<i>méchant</i> ,	wicked.
<i>bon</i> ,	good.	<i>mauvais</i> ,	bad.
<i>brave</i> ,	brave.	<i>meilleur</i> ,	better.
<i>cher</i> ,	dear.	<i>moindre</i> ,	less.
<i>chétif</i> ,	poor.	<i>mol</i> ,	soft.
<i>fol</i> ,	foolish.	<i>nouvel</i> ,	new.
<i>galant</i> ,	well-bred.	<i>petit</i> ,	small.
<i>grand</i> ,	great.	<i>saint</i> ,	holy.
<i>gros</i> ,	big.	<i>tel</i> ,	such.
<i>honnête</i> ,	honest.	<i>vieil</i> or <i>vieux</i> ,	old.
<i>jeune</i> ,	young.	<i>vrai</i> ,	true.
<i>joli</i> ,	pretty.	<i>tout</i> ,	all.

and the ordinal numbers ; as *premier*, *second*, &c., though they are sometimes placed after a noun, especially if it is used without any article. They are always placed after proper names, and if in this latter case the definite article is used in English, it is not in French ; thus,

Book <i>second</i> ,	.	.	.	<i>Livre second.</i>
Canto <i>first</i> ,	.	.	.	<i>Chant premier.</i>
Henry <i>the second</i> ,	.	.	.	<i>Henri second.</i>
Napoleon <i>the first</i> ,	.	.	.	<i>Napoléon premier.</i>
The <i>first</i> book,	.	.	.	<i>Le premier livre.</i>

77. As to *tout*, which should not be considered as an adjective, its place is before the article ; and if the article was combined with a preposition, it must be placed between that preposition and article ; as in

To *all the scholars*, *À tous les écoliers*, not *Aux tous écoliers*.
Of *all the world*, *De tout le monde*, not *Du tout monde*.

78. The adjectives that express a different meaning, according as they are placed before or after the noun, are in the following table with their translation :

<i>un bon homme,</i>	a simple credulous man.	<i>un homme bon,</i>	a good man.
<i>un brave homme,</i>	an honest man.	<i>un homme brave,</i>	a courageous man.
<i>une commune voix,</i>	general voice or opinion.	<i>une voix commune,</i>	an ordinary voice.
<i>un cruel homme,</i>	a tormenting man.	<i>un homme cruel,</i>	a cruel man.
<i>une fausse corde,</i>	a string out of tune.	<i>une corde faussée,</i>	a string that cannot be properly tuned.
<i>une fausse clef,</i>	a pick-lock.	<i>une clef fausse,</i>	a wrong key.
<i>une fausse porte,</i>	a back door.	<i>une porte fausse,</i>	a sham door.
<i>un galant homme,</i>	a man of honour.	<i>un homme galant,</i>	a beau.
<i>une galante femme,</i>	(is not used.)	<i>une femme galante,</i>	a coquette.
<i>la dernière année,</i>	the last year, (of any specified epoch.)	<i>l'année dernière,</i>	last year, (the year before the present.)
<i>la dernière semaine,</i>	the last week, (of any specified epoch.)	<i>la semaine dernière,</i>	last week, (the week before the present.)
<i>un grand homme,</i>	a great man.	<i>un homme grand,</i>	a tall man.
<i>une grosse femme,</i>	a big woman.	<i>une femme grosse,</i>	a woman with child.
<i>un honnête homme,</i>	an honest man.	<i>un homme honnête,</i>	a polite man.
<i>d'honnêtes gens,</i>	honest people.	<i>des gens honnêtes,</i>	polite people.
<i>un malhonnête homme,</i>	a dishonest man.	<i>un homme malhonnête,</i>	an impolite man.
<i>un nouvel habit,</i>	a new coat.	<i>un habit nouveau,</i>	a new fashioned coat.
<i>un pauvre homme,</i>	an insignificant man.	<i>un homme pauvre,</i>	a poor man, (not rich.)
<i>un plaisant homme,</i>	an odd man.	<i>un homme plaisant,</i>	a jovial man.
<i>un petit homme,</i>	a short man, (not tall.)	<i>un homme petit,</i>	a mean man.
<i>les propres termes,</i>	the same or very words.	<i>les termes propres,</i>	words properly used.
<i>un simple homme,</i>	but a man.	<i>un homme simple,</i>	a simpleton.
<i>un unique tableau,</i>	a single picture.	<i>un tableau unique,</i>	a unique picture
<i>un vilain homme,</i>	a homely man.	<i>un homme vilain,</i>	a wretch.
<i>prochain,</i>	next, with a noun expressing time ;	such as <i>semaine</i> , week ; <i>mois</i> , month ; <i>année</i> , year ; &c., is generally placed after ; as	
<i>mois,</i>	month ; <i>année</i> , year ; &c., is generally placed after ; as		

Next year, . . . *L'année prochaine*. | Next month, . . . *Le mois prochain*.

and with nouns expressing an action or an event ; such as *assemblée*, meeting ; *séance*, seating ; &c., and before such words, as *fois*, time ; *occasion*, opportunity ; &c., it is placed before ; as

The next time, *La prochaine fois*. | At the next meeting, *À la prochaine assemblée*.

As to other adjectives that are not comprised in the preceding observations their place is determined by taste and practice,

for it is equally proper to say, *une aimable personne*, an amiable person, or *une personne aimable*.

79. If several adjectives are used with the same noun, they are generally placed after it.

80. But if the qualified noun is followed by a word or words preceded by a preposition, completing an idea, or being the complement of an idea commenced by that noun, the adjective or adjectives are generally placed before it; as in

By the *happy, interesting* and *learned* wife of Mr. Henry. *Par l'heureuse, intéressante et instruite épouse de M. Henri.*

Explanation. The words *de M. Henri*, completing the idea of which *épouse* is the commencement, being therefore the complement of this word *épouse*, it is better to place the adjectives *heureuse, intéressante et instruite* before it.

81. In this and similar instances, the article might be repeated before every adjective; thus, *par l'heureuse, l'intéressante et l'instruite épouse de M. Henri.*

82. If an adverb is used with an adjective it must be placed immediately before it, and if it is *très*, in English, *VERY*, it must be joined to it by a hyphen; and if there are several adjectives together, *très* must be repeated before every one.

For a *very respectable*, but *too ambitious* citizen, *Pour un citoyen très-respectable mais trop ambitieux.*
That book is for a *very young, interesting* and *intelligent* boy, *Ce livre est pour un enfant très-jeune, très-intéressant et très-intelligent.*

EXERCISE 28.

On the adjectives whose masculine singular ends in a silent *e*.

In writing the following exercises the student should constantly have in mind, the rules explained at the Nos. 62, 63, 75 and 76.

For every amiable lady. In that very useful book. To his too vague answer. Concerning my difficult exercise and too easy lesson. With several docile children. For your very playful scholar and this too obstinate boy. Against the perfidious promises of that very hypocritical man. For several empty bottles of his immense glass-house. *With

* Translate as if the phrase were 'With the rigid master of your amiable son.'—See No. 54.

⁵¹ your ³⁷ amiable son's rigid master. According to the faithful testimony ³⁷ of a very honest witness of his poor client. By the charitable disposition ³⁸ of every peaceful citizen of our free country. For the brittle vials of two ⁴⁰ skilful doctors.

EXERCISE 29.

On the rules of the paragraphs 64 and 65.

Before writing this exercise read the paragraphs 62, 63, 75 and 76.

With a very great attention. Under the profound emotion of that ⁵⁵ eloquent discourse. By the harmonious sound of her agreeable voice. ³⁷ With the polite manner of a well-bred gentleman. At a round table ³⁸ with a gluttonous girl. Against the immediate intercession of a power- ⁴¹ ful nation. From the very interesting history of that rich lady's pretty ³⁹ niece. At the ingenuous answers of those young girls. What an aston- ⁵⁵ ishing invention! For a very tall man of that distant region. Upon ⁵⁸ the high tower of her castle. What a great enterprise for a small num- ⁴¹ ber of learned women!

EXERCISE 30.

On the rules of the paragraphs 62, 63, 64, 65 and 66.

After the criminal execution of the ministerial revenge. Under the ⁴⁰ too unconstitutional laws of that barbarous and cruel administration ⁸² against the personal liberty of the people. By a similar decision of the ⁶⁶ supreme court of the United States of America. From the rosy lips of ⁶⁴ her small and pretty mouth. Against the individual petitions of every ⁴⁹ republican member of the senate. For an Egyptian lady of a middling ⁶⁵ size. From one of our old institutions. From a coquettish wife to her ⁴⁰ dumb aunt. For my dear friend's young sister. What beautiful ⁶⁶ weather!

EXERCISE 31.

On the same rules as the preceding. See paragraphs 62, 63, 64, 65 and 66.

From the jocosé disposition of the roguish maid-servant of our agreea- ³⁸ ble boarding house. Against the strong citadel of our large city. For ⁶⁵ the cowardly garrison of that important place. In a low part of a green ³⁸

valley in the ^{40 65 & 75} Black mountains. At ^{41 76} a good dinner with ^{41 66} a fat fowl and ⁴¹ a large goose, also with ^{41 66} a thick sauce, in the company of ³⁸ a very large lady from the country. By the ^{38 82} too weak hand of ^{41 82 65} a very wearied person after a severe sickness of ^{41 64} six months. What ²⁸ a great loss of time and ³¹ money! Under the ^{39 63 & 66} continued inspection and ³⁴ observation of ⁴⁰ the vigilant and ⁶² learned officers of the ³⁷ regiment.

EXERCISE 32.

On the rules of the paragraphs 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 75, &c.

In the ^{38 67} brief peroration of his ^{49 64} energetical speech. By the ^{40 67} attractive charms of ^{57 67} what active lady? With the ^{39 68 67} happy adopted daughter of ³⁸ the very good ^{82 66} Mrs. Rolland. Among the ^{40 67 64 55} attentive young ladies of that interesting class. By ^{65 64 63} twenty-five poor women in new gowns and *bonnets. After a decisive action in the ^{41 67 39 64 49 62 62} terrible attack of his fearful and numerous enemies. With ^{41 82 67 49 68} a very excessive pain from his dangerous wound, since the ^{38 68 65} glorious but bloody battle of Eylau. Under the ^{40 64} dreadful effects of the ^{38 68 55 68 39 68} contagious disease of that unfortunate country. By the ^{41 64} delicious odour of an immense variety of flowers.

* *En* should be repeated before *bonnets*.

EXERCISE 33.

On the same rules as the preceding. See Nos. 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 75, &c.

During the ^{38 64} dreadful tempest of the ^{39 64} memorable year ^{10 10} one thousand eight hundred and twenty-three. Notwithstanding ^{38 82} the extremely advantageous proposition of his ^{68 53 64 82 68} lovely though too jealous wife. Against the ^{38 68 55 65 38 68} disdainful manners of that pretty girl. Since the famous declaration of the independence of the American nation, by the ^{39 38 65} courageous delegates of each state. With the ^{59 38 82 68 49 65} very happy disposition of his powerful mind. Against the ^{82 68 40 82 39 55} too lazy habit of the too bad scholars of the school of that indolent though very ⁸² learned professor. For the ^{40 68 52} proud women of their religious association. What ^{68 57 58 68 66} a monstrous and cruel invention!

EXERCISE 34.

On the rules of the paragraphs 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 75, &c.

With his ^{49 82 69 38 69 41} too deceitful promises to the babbler, Miss Zoé. Against an ^{82 69 55 82 38} extremely peevish woman of that very disagreeable quarter of the city.

From that too coaxing girl from the distant country of Circassia. In a current report of our lying maid. For the too quarrelsome wife of your devoted friend, Mrs. Leon. By the thievish magpie of our honest neighbour, the handsome jeweller, Mr. Joseph. In a letter from the pretty and happy Miss Adèle, the singer. With the incorrigible gamester Mrs. Paul of the Marshy Valley. By a generous action of a rich and virtuous lady of that unfortunate family.

EXERCISE 35.

On the rules of the paragraphs 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 75, &c.

Against the bad disposition of that wicked boy. From the simple countenance of your last farmer's beautiful daughter. Upon the smooth head of that aged man. In presence of a third person of his choice. After a very complete explanation of the motives of their too strange conduct. With some concrete volatile salt. After the conclusion of the secret negotiations of our government by a discreet person. In the cruel absence of his unquiet sister's good friend. For the extraordinary size of a corpulent woman of my country. Upon the sweet face of our interesting Jane, the pretty girl.

EXERCISE 36.

On the same rules as the preceding. See Nos. 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 75, &c.

With the false pretensions of that very populous city. By that prefixed syllable. With the new shoes and the old spatterdashes of an ancient soldier of the imperial guard of Napoleon. With the sweet oranges of our plantation and the white grapes of your vine. From the false opinion of our old judge. By the last syllable of that masculine noun. For the red gown of an old woman. With the very considerable payment of the old Mrs. Laurent, as the debtor of Mrs. Jacobs, the executrix of the last will of her father, and as the inventor of an excellent medicine.

EXERCISE 37.

On the same rules as the preceding, and 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, &c.

Behold the picture of a barbarous queen, the persecutor of her too peaceful people! By the too bewitching voice of his interesting sister.

From the external appearance of the superior strength of his courageous troops. At the happy marriage of my brother with the charming widow Mrs. Remi. In a better circumstance. With his revengeful hand, against a sinful woman. From the lawyer of the defendant Mrs. Bona, against Mrs. Lano the plaintiff. In presence of the ambassadress with Miss Grace, the divineress, the governess and their servants. In a letter from Mrs. Genlis, the authoress of the Rival Mothers.

EXERCISE 38.

On the same rules as the preceding.

At the small house of a gentle but too foolish peasant-woman. With the two handsome twin sisters of that pretty spouse. Against the mad enterprise of the new republic. Within the soft matter of every ripe peach. Behold my new friend with his beautiful new coat. With the hard seed of a soft apricot. Against the foolish love of that worthy young man. After the dry reply of that frank woman with a white coif. With fresh water from a public fountain. At the marriage of the Greek daughter of a declining woman from a Turkish province. By that benign influence over that malicious person.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Les pronoms personnels, PERSONAL PRONOUNS, in English, are only of two kinds, that can be called or distinguished by the names of NOMINATIVE PRONOUNS and OBJECTIVE OR PASSIVE PRONOUNS.

Les pronoms personnels nominatifs, THE NOMINATIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS, are those that are never used but as nominatives.

Les pronoms personnels passifs, THE PASSIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS, are those that are used as objects to prepositions or verbs.

There is, in French, a third kind of personal pronoun, which, for the sake of clearness, requires a particular distinction. These pronouns therefore are divided into SUBSTANTIVE PER-

SONAL PRONOUNS, *pronoms personnels substantifs*; and VERBAL PERSONAL PRONOUNS, *et pronoms personnels verbaux*.

Les pronoms personnels substantifs, THE SUBSTANTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS, in French, are those that are used as nouns, independently of any verb, but as objects to prepositions, or as independent nominatives.

Les pronoms personnels verbaux, THE VERBAL PERSONAL PRONOUNS, in French, are those that are never used without a verb, but always with it. They are of two kinds, THE NOMINATIVE OR ACTIVE, *les nominatifs ou actifs*, and THE PASSIVE, *et les passifs*.

Les pronoms actifs verbaux, THE ACTIVE OR NOMINATIVE VERBAL PRONOUNS, in French, are those that are used as nominatives or agents to a verb, and never otherwise.

Les pronoms passifs verbaux, THE PASSIVE VERBAL PRONOUNS, are those that are never used but as objects to a verb, and never to a preposition.

SUBSTANTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

83. The substantive personal pronouns, so called because they are generally used as nouns, whether as nominatives independently of any verb, or as objects to prepositions, are in French,

for me,	<i>moi.</i>	for us,	<i>nous.</i>
thee,	<i>toi.</i>	you,	<i>vous.</i>
him <i>or</i> it,	<i>lui.</i>	them,	<i>eux. masc.</i>
her <i>or</i> it,	<i>elle.</i>	them,	<i>elles. fem.</i>
one <i>or</i> one's self,	<i>soi.</i>		

84. RULE. The personal pronouns must be of the same gender and number as the noun which they represent or to which they relate. This rule is applicable to any other pronoun.

With an order from <i>him</i> ,	<i>Avec un ordre de lui.</i>
In a letter for <i>her</i> ,	<i>Dans une lettre pour elle.</i>
Against <i>them</i> ,	<i>Contre eux. masc.</i>
Before <i>them</i> ,	<i>Devant elles. fem.</i>
For <i>thee</i> ,	<i>Pour toi.</i>
By <i>me</i> ,	<i>Par moi.</i>

85. When either of the possessive articles MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR, ONE'S, preceded by either of the prepositions TO, AT, IN, &c., is employed, in English, with the word House used in the sense of Home, it is generally translated by a corresponding substantive personal pronoun preceded by the preposition *chez*, which means 'at the house of,' or, at the residence of; thus,

to, at <i>or</i> in my house,	at home	<i>chez moi.</i>
to, at <i>or</i> in thy house,	" "	<i>chez toi.</i>
to, at <i>or</i> in his house,	" "	<i>chez lui.</i>
to, at <i>or</i> in her house,	" "	<i>chez elle.</i>
to, at <i>or</i> in one's house,	" "	<i>chez soi.</i>
to, at <i>or</i> in our house,	" "	<i>chez nous.</i>
to, at <i>or</i> in your house,	" "	<i>chez vous.</i>
to, at <i>or</i> in their house,	" "	<i>chez eux or chez elles.</i>

EXERCISE 39.

With thee and thy companion against him and his journeyman.
 With a present for me from Mrs. Nada, his protector. In a serious
 affair without them or their followers. By a recommendation for her
 from one of her correspondents. In a conversation concerning you and
 every member of your family. By orders on us for a considerable sum
 of money. For the examination of a letter from me to a prisoner. In
 presence of him, her and thee. By a judgement against you. For his
 generous conduct towards us, but not only disagreeable, but even ruin-
 ous for them.

86. There is another kind of personal pronouns, which have no particular name: They are,

myself,	<i>moi-même.</i>	one's self,	<i>soi-même.</i>
thyself,	<i>toi-même.</i>	ourselves,	<i>nous-mêmes.</i>
himself,	<i>lui-même.</i>	yourselves,	<i>vous-mêmes.</i>
herself,	<i>elle-même.</i>	themselves, m.	<i>eux-mêmes.</i>
itself,	<i>lui-même. m.</i>	themselves, f.	<i>elles-mêmes.</i>
itself,	<i>elle même. f.</i>		

NOTE. These pronouns, which are a sort of compound pronouns, are formed, in English, with the possessive articles MY, THY, OUR, YOUR; the personal pronouns HIM, HER, IT, ONE'S, THEM, and the word SELF for the singular, and SELVES for the plural; but, in French, they are uniformly formed by the Substantive Pronouns, to which is joined, with

a hyphen, the word *même* for the singular, or *mêmes* for the plural. The object of this note is to guard students from translating myself by *mon-même*, thyself by *ton-même*, herself by *sa même*, ourselves by *notre-mêmes*, yourselves by *votre-mêmes*, which they are apt to do, thinking that my should be translated by *mon*, thy by *ton*, her by *sa*, our by *notre*, your by *votre*, which is very wrong.

These pronouns, like the substantive personal pronouns, must be of the same gender and number as the noun to which they relate.

EXERCISE 40.

In a small room especially for myself. Miss Judia, in one of her works concerning herself. By thy acknowledgement in favour of thy opponents and against thyself. Notwithstanding our good opinion of ourselves. For the advantage of one's self. By your observations against yourselves. In the direction of their enterprises by themselves. By a letter from himself to the directors of the public works. According to the request of those ladies for their pupils and also for themselves. By the effects of that law for the protection of our property and of ourselves.

ACTIVE VERBAL PRONOUNS.

87. The Active Verbal Pronouns, which are never used but as nominatives of verbs, are,

I,	<i>Je*</i> or <i>J'</i> .	one,	<i>on</i> .
thou,	<i>tu</i> .	we,	<i>nous</i> .
he,	<i>il</i> ,	you,	<i>vous</i> .
she,	<i>elle</i> .	they, masc.	<i>ils</i> .
it,	<i>il</i> , m. <i>elle</i> , f.	they, fem.	<i>elles</i> .

RULE. Active verbal pronouns, like the preceding, must be of the same gender and number as the noun they represent or to which they relate. And if there are several verbs together, that have for their nominative the same active verbal pronoun, though that pronoun is expressed but once, before the first, in English, it is generally repeated before every one of them, in French. But as there is NO NEUTER GENDER, in French, the neuter pronoun IT must be translated by *il* or *elle*, according to the masculine or feminine gender of the corresponding noun, in French.

88. The active verbal pronouns are never used in French, except with a verb, and can be separated from it by no other

* *Je* before a consonant, *J'* before a vowel or silent *h*.

person, whether singular or plural, that is, the several persons SPOKEN TO, the verb must be in the second person plural ; if it is THEY, *ils* or *elles*, or a plural noun, or several nouns, whether singular or plural, that is, the several persons SPOKEN OF, the verb must be in the third person plural.

I <i>have</i> several books,	<i>J'ai plusieurs livres.</i>
Mary or John <i>be</i> honest,	<i>Marie ou Jean sois honnête.</i>
He <i>will have</i> my consent,	<i>Il aura mon consentement.</i>
She <i>was</i> agreeable,	<i>Elle était agréable.</i>
My book <i>is</i> interesting,	<i>Mon livre est intéressant.</i>
We <i>have</i> two keys,	<i>Nous avons deux clefs.</i>
Joseph and I <i>have</i> three houses,	<i>Joseph et moi avons trois mai- sons.</i>
You <i>are</i> very charitable,	<i>Vous êtes très-charitables.</i>
Mr. Herman and thou <i>are</i> mu- sicians,	<i>M. Herman et toi êtes musi- ciens.</i>
They <i>have</i> his approbation,	<i>Ils or elles ont son approbation.</i>
John and Peter <i>have</i> my friend- ship,	<i>Jean et Pierre ont mon amitié.</i>
My scholars <i>are</i> young,	<i>Mes écoliers sont jeunes.</i>

Explanation. In the first example, *ai* is in the first person singular, because its nominative is *je*. In the second, *sois* is in the second person singular, because its nominative is either *Marie* or *Jean*, a noun in the singular number used in a vocative sense. In the third, fourth and fifth, *aura*, *était* and *est*, are in the third person singular, because their nominatives *il*, *elle* and *mon livre*, are in the singular number. In the sixth, *avons* is in the first person plural, because its nominative is *nous*. In the seventh, *avons* is in the first person plural, because its nominative is *Joseph* and *moi*, that is, a noun used with a pronoun of the first person. In the eighth, *êtes* is in the second person plural because its nominative is *vous*. In the ninth, *êtes* is in the second person plural, because its nominative is *M. Herman* and *toi*, that is, a noun used with a pronoun in the second person. In the tenth, *ont* is in the third person plural, because its nominative is *ils* or *elles*. In the eleventh, *ont* is in the third person plural, because it has several nouns for nominatives, *Jean* and *Pierre*. In the twelfth, *sont* is in the third person plural, because its nominative is *mes écoliers*, a plural noun.

It may be noticed, that in the seventh example, the active or nominative pronoun *I* is rendered, in French, by the substantive pronoun *moi* ; and in the ninth, thou is rendered by *toi*, instead of *tu* ; it is according to the following rule.

90. When several nominative or active verbal pronouns, in English, are together the nominative of the same verb, they must be translated into French, by the substantive personal pronouns, and placed thus : the pronouns of the second person must be before that of the third or the first ; that of the third

person, before that of the first, so that the pronoun of the first person is the last, and the verb must be in the plural in the person that has the priority ; the first having the priority over the second, and the second over the third.

<i>I, thou and he, are of the same opinion,</i>	<i>Toi, lui et moi, sommes de la même opinion.</i>
<i>John and myself have had an audience,</i>	<i>Jean et moi avons eu une audience.</i>
<i>He and thou are friends,</i>	<i>Toi et lui êtes amis.</i>
<i>Paul and thou have enemies,</i>	<i>Paul et toi avez des ennemis.</i>
<i>I and thou will be present,</i>	<i>Toi et moi serons présents</i>

Explanation. In the first example, *toi, lui et moi* are used, instead of *tu, il et je*, because they form together the nominative of *sommes* ; and *sommes* is in the plural, because it has several pronouns for its nominative ; it is in the first person, because the pronoun of the first person *moi* has the priority over *toi* and *lui*, although in the arrangement of the phrase it is placed the last. In the second example, *moi* is used instead of *je* or *moi-même*, because, with the noun *Jean*, it forms the nominative of *avons*, which is in the plural because it has for its nominative a noun, *Jean*, and a pronoun, *moi* ; it is in the first person, because *moi*, the pronoun, being of the first person, has the priority over the noun. In the third example, *toi* and *lui* are used instead of *tu* and *il*, for the same reasons as given for the first example. The reasons for the fourth and fifth, are the same as those of the preceding.

In the *Grammaire des Grammaires* it is said that the verb should be preceded by a personal pronoun as its nominative. Therefore the preceding examples should be

Toi, lui et moi nous sommes de la même opinion.

Jean et moi nous avons eu une audience.

Toi et lui vous êtes amis.

Paul et toi vous avez des ennemis.

Toi et moi nous serons présents.

But Noël and Chapsal do not say it is necessary, and have no regard to that rule ; from which it is evident that either way is proper.

91. As to nouns used in a vocative sense, they take no article before them ; however, in addressing relations and friends, such as father, mother, son, daughter, &c., the French use the possessive article *mon, ma, mes*, before them ; thus, *mon père*,

ma mère, mon fils, mes filles, &c., though MY is not expressed in English ; as in

<i>Father</i> , what have you there ?	Mon père, <i>qu'avez-vous là ?</i>
<i>Mother</i> , have you your handkerchief ?	Ma mère, <i>avez-vous votre mouchoir ?</i>
<i>Daughters</i> , when will you have your books ?	Mes filles, <i>quand aurez-vous vos livres ?</i>

92. Sometimes when an adverb is used with a verb, in English, it is placed between that verb and its nominative ; as in I *often* have ; I *always* had ; James *already* had, &c. ; but this must be very carefully avoided in French, for it would be very improper to say, *Je souvent ai ; Je toujours avais ; Jacques déjà avait ;* because, in French, although adverbs are sometimes placed before the nominative of the verb, they are generally immediately after the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and past participle in compound tenses. Therefore, instead of saying, *je souvent ai ; je toujours avais ; Jacques déjà avait :* say, *souvent j'ai ; toujours j'avais ; déjà Jacques avait :* or rather, *j'ai souvent ; j'avais toujours ; Jacques avait déjà ;* and with compound tenses, *j'ai souvent eu ; j'avais toujours eu ; Jacques avait déjà eu.*

93. The nominative and the direct object of a verb, when a common noun, must, in French, always be used in a definite sense, that is, the extent of its signification must be determined by a cardinal number or an article, which article is selected according to the sense in which the noun is employed ; and if the English noun has no article, the French corresponding noun must be preceded by the definite article, if it is the nominative, and by the partitive article if it is the object : (See No. 44.) as,

Virtue has charms,	<i>La vertu a des charmes.</i>
Men have ambition,	<i>Les hommes ont de l'ambition.</i>
Good citizens have respect for the laws of their country,	<i>Les bons citoyens ont du respect pour les lois de leur pays.</i>
Two hands have twenty fingers,	<i>Deux mains ont vingt doigts.</i>

Explanation. In the first example, *la* is used before *vertu*, because it is the nominative of *a* ; and *des* is used before *charmes*, because it is the direct object of *a*, and is used in a partitive sense : See No. 44. In the second, *les* is used before *hommes*, because it is the nominative of

ent, and also because it is used in a definite sense, representing all men; *de l'* is used before *ambition*, because it is the direct object of *ont*, and is used in a partitive sense. In the third, *les* and *du* are used before *bons citoyens* and *respect*, for the same reason as for the second example. For the explanation of the partitive articles see No. 44. In the fourth, *mains* and *doigts* are without articles, because the extent of their signification is determined by cardinal numbers.

94. But if the noun, used in a partitive sense, is preceded by an adjective, the preposition *de*, without the definite article, is only expressed. And when a noun is also preceded by an adverb of quantity, a collective noun, or a noun expressing quantity, measure, capacity or weight, the preposition *de* is placed between them, without an article, unless there is one expressed in English; and, if there were several nouns together, the preposition *de* should be repeated before every one of them.

We have good pens,	<i>Nous avons de bonnes plumes.</i>
You had much power,	<i>Vous aviez beaucoup de pouvoir.</i>
They were in a crowd of people,	<i>Ils étaient dans une foule de gens</i>
He had <i>two</i> yards of cloth,	<i>Il avait deux aunes de drap.</i>
I had excellent apples,	<i>J'avais des pommes excellents.</i>
They had <i>two</i> glasses or bottles of wine,	<i>Ils avaient deux verres ou deux bouteilles de vin.</i>
You have <i>one hundred</i> pounds of sugar,	<i>Vous avez cent livres de sucre.</i>
We had two piles of wood and coal,	<i>Nous avions deux piles de bois et de charbon.</i>

Explanation. In the first example, *plumes*, being used in a partitive sense, that is, for *SOME PENS*, it should be preceded by the plural partitive article *des*, which is composed of *de* and *les*; but, as the adjective *bonnes* intervenes between the article and the noun, the definite article *les* is omitted, and the preposition *de* only is used. In the second, *pouvoir* is used with the preposition *de* without article, because an adverb of quantity, *beaucoup*, precedes it. In the third, *gens* is used with the preposition *de* without article, because it is preceded by a collective noun. In the fourth, *drap* is used with the preposition *de* without article, because it is preceded by a noun expressing measure. In the fifth, *pommes* is preceded by the partitive article *des*, which is for *de les*, because it is used in a partitive sense, and there is no adjective before it; for, were the adjective before it, the phrase should be *J'avais d' excellentes pommes*, without the definite article. In the sixth, *vin* is used without the article, because it is preceded by a noun expressing capacity, which requires the preposition *de* without article before the next noun. In the seventh, *sucre* is used with the preposition *de* without article, because it is preceded by the word *livres*, expressing weight. In the eighth, *bois* is used with the preposition *de* without article, because it is preceded by the word *piles*, expressing quantity.

95. However, after the adverb *bien*, much, many, the article is used with the preposition *de*. The article is used also when the signification of the noun is determined by some circumstance or some particular article.

If you had three gallons of the oil that I have, *Si vous aviez trois gallons de l'huile que j'ai.*
 I have one thousand yards of that ribbon, *J'ai mille aunes de ce ruban.*
 Thou hadst many friends, *Tu avais bien des amis.*

Explanation. In the first, *huile* is preceded by the preposition and article, because the extent of its signification is determined by the words *que j'ai*. In the second, *ruban* is used with the article *ce*, because the extent of its signification is determined in a demonstrative sense. In the last example, *amis* is preceded by *des*, because *bien* is before it, which is the only adverb of quantity that requires the preposition *de* with the definite article after it.

EXERCISES ON VERBS.

AUXILIARY VERB *AVOIR*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'INDICATIF*.

96. *Le mode de l'indicatif*, THE INDICATIVE MOOD, is used to express the action of the verb, with or without interrogation, in whatever time, without being the consequence of any WISH, COMMAND, SUPPOSITION OR DOUBT.

PRESENT TENSE.

97. *Le présent de l'indicatif*, THE INDICATIVE PRESENT, is used to express that a thing is, or is happening habitually, daily, or in the same moment one speaks; as Now I have, *J'ai maintenant*.

EXERCISE 41.

Now I have some bread. To day thou hast some wine. At present he has beer. She always has interesting books. William often has apples. Julia has almost constantly pretty flowers. You have often fowls for dinner. Generally we have meat. Mr. and Mrs. George have a great number of friends, without doubt because they have an immense fortune.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

98. *L'imparfait de l'indicatif*, THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE is used to describe, and to relate an action as taking place in a past time; it expresses neither the beginning nor the end of that action, but its existence, its continuation in a past time. It ex-

presses also the habitual existence of the action in a past time. It is used also after *si*, *if*, in a conditional phrase.

Last year we *had* frequent visits, *L'année dernière nous avions de fréquentes visites.*

Explanation. In this example, *HAD* is translated by the imperfect, because it expresses the habit ; for by *WE HAD* is meant here, not *WE DID HAVE*, but *WE USED TO HAVE*.

EXERCISE 42.

Yesterday I ^{89 93}had oranges. At ten o'clock thou ^{89 93}hadst company. Before ⁵⁵that time he ^{89 93}had ⁴⁹grapes on his ⁵⁵vine. This ^{89 93}morning Miss Ellen ^{89 94}had less ³⁵pain, but after breakfast she ^{89 38}had the ³⁵fever. Before ^{89 43}supper Mr. Thomas ⁴⁹had several friends in his house. We ^{92 89 41 82 76}always ^{89 82 62 93}had a very good table. Very often you ^{89 52}had very rare ⁵⁹dishes. Sometimes they ^{89 93}had pigeons. Our sailors ^{89 52}had their pay ⁵⁹every Saturday evening.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

99. *Le prétérit défini*, THE PRETERITE DEFINITE, expresses an action, not as taking place like the imperfect, but as having taken place in an entirely elapsed epoch, which epoch must be specified, or at least clearly implied ; it expresses also that a thing was completed at the time to which one refers ; as
Last Friday I *had* a visit, *Vendredi dernier j'eus une visite.*

Explanation. In this example, *HAD* is translated by the preterite definite, because it is not intended to express either use, habit, or continuity of action, but the whole action as having taken place at a definite and entirely elapsed time.

100. RULE. When the preposition *ON* is used before a word expressing time or an epoch, it is never translated into French.
On next Saturday, *Samedi prochain*, not Sur *Samedi prochain*.
On the first of May, *Le premier de Mai*, not Sur *le premier de Mai*.

EXERCISE 43.

Last week I ^{89 41 76}had a great misfortune. The day before yesterday thou ⁴¹hadst a severe reprimand. ^{100 78}On last Saturday he ^{89 41}had a fit of madness. ^{100 37 76}On the first day of this ⁵⁵month she ^{89 41}had a visit from her brother. ^{100 37 1}On the second Thursday of ^{35 78}last month we ^{89 41}had a meeting of the ⁴⁰members of the society. ³⁸On last Wednesday evening you ^{100 78}had a party. ^{89 41}During the month of January they ³⁷had three concerts.

FUTURE TENSE.

101. *Le futur*, THE FUTURE, is used to express an action in a time yet to come.

I *shall* soon have a new coat, *J'aurai bientôt un habit neuf.*

EXERCISE 44.

To-morrow I shall have ^{89 93} apples. The next day after to-morrow thou wilt have many ^{89 94} pears. He will soon have good ^{92 89 94} peaches. Hereafter she will have ^{89 93} cherries in her ⁴⁹ garden. We shall soon have a ^{92 89 41} great quantity of ³⁵ strawberries. Next month you will have ⁸⁹ Mr. Paul's ⁵⁴ daughter's ⁵⁴ visit. ³⁵ Next year Mr. and Mrs. Noël will have ⁸⁹ many ⁹⁴ figs from their ⁵² fig-tree, and ⁴⁴ grapes from their ⁵² vine.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

102. *Le conditionnel présent*, THE PRESENT CONDITIONAL, expresses that an action would take place, or a thing would be, under a certain condition ; which condition is expressed, in English, by the imperfect tense, or the conditional ; but, in French, it is expressed by the imperfect, or its compound the pluperfect. By the imperfect tense, when it is understood that the action should be present ; by the pluperfect, if it is understood that that action should be past.

If Mr. B. *had* talents, he *Si M. B. avait des talents il*
would have scholars, *aurait des élèves.*

If Mr. C. *had had* goods last *Si M. C. avait eu des mar-*
month, he *would have* more *chandises le mois passé, il*
customers, *aurait plus de pratiques.*

Explanation. In the first example, the condition is expressed by the imperfect, because it relates to the present time ; it is the same as if it were " if Mr. B. had talents now," &c. In the second, the condition is expressed by the pluperfect, because it relates to a past time.

103. When comparisons are made in English with substantives, the adverbs that are used with them are translated into French

As much, *or* as many, by *Autant de** or *d'*.
Not so much, not as much, by *Ne...pas autant de* or *d'*.
not so many, not as many,

* *De* before a consonant, and *d'* before a vowel or silent *h*.

More, by *Plus de* or *d'*.

Less, fewer, by *Moins de* or *d'*.

and the following conjunction,

As or than, by *Que* or *qu'.**

But *THAN* is not translated, or rather is rendered by *de*, if after it follow a cardinal number ; as,

I have more *than one thousand* *J'ai plus de mille livres.*
books,

The dots that are betwixt *ne* and *pas autant de* show the place of the verb ; *ne* being placed between the nominative and the verb, and *pas autant de* immediately after it. It may be proper to observe, that the preposition *de* is required after these adverbs the same as after any adverbs of quantity.

I have *as much* land *as* you, *J'ai autant de terre que vous*, et
and *as many* horses *as* your autant de *chevaux* que *votre*
father, père.

You had *not so much* or *as* *Vous n'aviez pas autant de*
much credit *as* my brother, crédit que *mon frère*.

She had *not so many* or *as* *Elle n'avait pas autant d'admi-*
many admirers *as* her rateurs que *sa cousine*.
cousin,

We have *more* business *than* *Nous avons plus d'affaires que*
those merchants, ces *négociants*.

They had *less* power *than* *Ils avaient moins de pouvoir*
their predecessors, que *leurs prédécesseurs*.

EXERCISE 45.

If I had much money, I should have a great number of friends.
If thou hadst as much courage as thy colonel, thou wouldst have a
regiment. If he had more knowledge than his friend, he would have
many admirers. If she had less amiability, she would not have a hus-
band. If we had more patience, we should have more prudence. If
you had not so much ambition, you would have more success. If they
had great talents, they would have more encouragement.

* *Que* before a consonant, and *qu'* before a vowel or a silent *h*.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE TENSE.

104. *Le prétérit indéfini, ou le composé du présent de l'indicatif*, THE PRETERITE INDEFINITE, OR THE COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT INDICATIVE, is used to express that an action has taken place at a past but not specified time, or within an epoch not yet elapsed. Though this tense is generally expressed in English by a simple tense, in French it is expressed by the compound of the present indicative.

I have had that honour, J'ai eu cet honneur.
 This year, this month, this Cette année-ci, ce mois-ci, cette
 week, I had a bad fever, semaine-ci, j'ai eu une mau-
 vaise fièvre.

Explanation. In the first example, the preterite indefinite is used, because the time is not specified, for it is not known or said, when that honour was obtained or received. In the second, HAD is rendered by the preterite indefinite, because it does not express habit, and because the epoch in which the 'bad fever' was got, is not entirely elapsed, since something remains of the year, month, or week, mentioned.

EXERCISE 46.

I have had as much pleasure from his visit, as from his present.
 Since the commencement of this month thou hast had more letters than
 thy sister. To-day she had less fever than yesterday. During the
 course of this year, William has not had so many bad notes as in the
 last month of December. This season we have not had as many great
 actors as last winter. This year you have had more revolutions in your
 country than in all the nations of Europe. I had in my life very extra-
 ordinary adventures.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

105. *Le plus-que-parfait, ou le composé de l'imparfait*, THE PLUPERFECT OR THE COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT, is used to express an action not only passed in itself, but also as prior to some past time or event, whether specified, or merely implied or understood. The time expressed by this tense does not always require a compound tense in English, but it always does in French; as

When you had the visit of Mrs. Quand vous eûtes la visite de
 D., I had had the notice of Madame D., j'avais eu la
 her arrival, notice de son arrivée.

John *had* an explanation with *Jean avait eu une explication*
 James before he *had* his con- *avec Jacques avant qu'il eût*
 sent, *son consentement.*

Explanation. In the first example, *j'avais eu* is in the pluperfect, because it relates to a time prior to that of 'the visit of Mrs. D.' In the second, *HAD* is translated by the pluperfect *avait eu*, because it relates to a time prior to that of 'his consent.'

EXERCISE 47.

Before your arrival I had had several invitations. At the time of thy
 departure, thou hadst had many more visits than Paul. When Joseph
 had a quarrel with James, he had some previous provocations. Before
 that accident, we had not as many indications of our misfortune as our
 brother. You had had more troubles before his return from the country.
 Mr. and Mrs. Noel had had their share of their uncle's property, even
 before his death. The president had a conversation with the professors
 before the admission of that young man.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

106. *Le prétérit antérieur, ou le composé du prétérit défini*, THE PRETERITE ANTERIOR, OR THE COMPOUND OF THE PRETERITE DEFINITE, is used to express that an action was done before another, which had taken place in an epoch specified and entirely elapsed. It is generally expressed, in English, by the simple tense, the imperfect indicative; and, in French, it is seldom used, except after the conjunctions

as soon as,	<i>aussitôt que.</i>	when,	<i>lorsque.</i>
after,	<i>après que.</i>	when,	<i>quand.</i>
as soon as,	<i>dès que.</i>		

As the verb *avoir* is not properly used in this tense, the exercise is omitted here.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

107. *Le futur antérieur, ou le composé du futur*, THE FUTURE ANTERIOR, OR THE COMPOUND OF THE FUTURE, is used to express that an action or thing will have taken place before a time yet to come.

To-morrow, when I *shall have* *Demain quand j'aurai eu son*
had his advice, I *shall have* *avis j'aurai plus d'espoir.*
 more hope,

Explanation. The compound of the future *j'aurai eu* is used here to express that the time of the advice, though yet to come, will be past at the time when I SHALL HAVE MORE HOPE.

EXERCISE 48.

On next Sunday, I shall have had his permission. Before his return, thou wilt have had several letters from him. Then he will have had an agreeable spectacle in the reception of his friend in this country. Next month we shall have had our part of the income from the property of the family. When you shall have had your black coat, Mr. Lewis will have his white vest. After the first day of the year, they will have had many presents from their numerous relations. I shall have an assistant as soon as I shall have had their consent.

PAST CONDITIONAL.

108. *Le conditionnel passé ou le composé du conditionnel présent*, THE PAST CONDITIONAL OR THE COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT CONDITIONAL, is used to express that a thing would have happened in a past time, had certain conditions been fulfilled.

I would have had more confidence in him if he had had a partner, *J'aurais eu plus de confiance en lui s'il avait eu un associé.*

EXERCISE 49.

If I had had more goods, I should have had more business. If thou hadst had patience, thou wouldst have had a part of our profits. If Mr. Williams had had fewer workmen, he would have had less expense. If Miss Louisa had had less wit, she would have had fewer admirers. If we had had more perseverance, we should have had more success. If you had had many scholars, you would have had more trouble. If they had had a good teacher, they would have had more knowledge.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—*MODE DU SUBJONCTIF.*

109. *Le mode du subjonctif*, THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, is used after impersonal verbs, after verbs expressing WISH, WILL, DOUBT, FEAR, COMMAND, NECESSITY; and after the following conjunctions, all ending in *que*:

on condition that, *d condition que.*
 God forbid, *d Dieu ne plaise que.*
 that, to the end that, *afin que.*
 unless, *d moins que...ne.*

although, yet, *encore que.*
 far from, *loin que.*
 provided that, *moyennant que.*
 God grant, *plaise d Dieu que.*

before,	<i>avant que.</i>	to the end that,	<i>pour que.</i>
in case,	<i>au cas que.</i>	provided that,	<i>pourvu que.</i>
tho', although,	<i>bien que.</i>	although,	<i>quoique.</i>
for fear,	<i>de crainte que...*ne.</i>	without,	<i>sans que.</i>
for fear, lest,	<i>de peur que...*ne.</i>	whether,	<i>soit que.</i>
God grant,	<i>Dieu veuille que.</i>	suppose that,	<i>supposé que.</i>
in case if,	<i>en cas que.</i>		

110. The tenses of the subjunctive mood are used in French, viz: the present for the present indicative or the future of the English, and the imperfect for the past or conditional tenses.

Although *I have* one hundred thousand dollars, I have not as much money as he. *Quoique j'aie cent mille dollars, je n'ai pas autant d'argent que lui.*

On condition that *they shall have* more rooms, *À condition qu'ils aient plus de chambres.*

Unless *he had* courage, *À moins qu'il n'eût du courage.*

In case *he should have* some partizans, *En cas qu'il eût des partisans.*

Explanation. In the first example, *aie* is in the present subjunctive, because it is preceded by the conjunction *quoique*, and the corresponding verb in English is in the present tense. In the second, *aient* is in the subjunctive mood, because it is preceded by the conjunction *à condition que*, and in the present tense, because the corresponding verb in English is in the future tense. In the third, *eût* is in the subjunctive mood, because it is preceded by the conjunction *à moins que*, and in the imperfect, because the corresponding verb in English is in a past tense, and *n'* is before *eût*, between the nominative and the verb. In the fourth, *eût* is in the subjunctive mood, because it is preceded by the conjunction *en cas que*, and in the imperfect, because the corresponding verb in English is in the conditional.

EXERCISE 50.

On the present subjunctive.

On condition that I shall have that privilege. To the end that thou mayest have a good income from thy property. Before he has the necessary money for the expenses of his journey. In case we have fine weather on the first of july. Although you have many advantages in your new situation. God grant that they may have an experienced captain and a short passage from Calais to Dover, and from Liverpool to Boston. Suppose that we have more than one hundred and ninety-nine passengers. Provided that she had the permission of her aunt.

* The nominative of the verb must be placed instead of the dots, and the *ne*, before that verb.

EXERCISE 51.

On the imperfect subjunctive.

¹⁰⁹ In ¹¹⁰ case ⁹⁴ I ⁷⁶ had ⁴⁷ bad news from my friends of France. ¹⁰⁹ Although ¹¹⁰ thou ⁴¹ mightest ⁷⁶ have ³⁸ a great knowledge ⁵⁶ of the geography of that country. ¹⁰⁹ Provided ¹¹⁰ that ⁴⁰ he ¹¹ had ⁵⁵ the two hundred ninety-nine thousand dollars, ¹⁰⁹ necessary ³⁹ for the purchase of that domain. ¹¹⁰ Suppose ¹⁰⁹ that ¹¹⁰ we ⁵⁵ should ^{62 & 75} have ¹⁰⁹ that ¹¹⁰ marshy ⁴¹ land. ⁷⁶ Though ¹⁰⁹ you ¹¹⁰ had ⁴¹ a fine ⁷⁶ prospect. ¹⁰⁹ On ¹¹⁰ condition ⁴¹ that ⁷⁵ they ¹¹⁰ should ⁴⁰ have ⁵⁵ the necessary books for a complete course of the studies of that class. ¹⁰⁹ Although ¹¹⁰ Mr. Muro ⁴¹ had ⁷⁶ an immense fortune, ¹⁰⁹ a beautiful house, ⁷⁶ horses ⁴⁴ and ⁴⁴ carriages, ⁹⁸ he ¹⁰³ had ¹⁰³ fewer friends than you.

Exercises for the compound tenses of the subjunctive mood, the imperative, and infinitive, will be found, with the necessary rules, among those on the substantive verb *être*, and of the regular conjugations, and in the syntax.

SUBSTANTIVE AND AUXILIARY VERB *ÊTRE*.

Le verbe être, THE VERB *être*, TO BE, is often used with adjectives to express the modifications or qualities of the substantives to which it relates; in such instances, those adjectives must agree in gender and number with their nominative, whether it be a noun or a pronoun, or several nouns or pronouns. For this agreement see the rules on adjectives, commencing at No. 62.

It is necessary to consider, in adjectives, degrees of signification and comparison.

Les degrés de comparaison, THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON, are THE COMPARATIVE OF EQUALITY, *le comparatif d'égalité*; THE COMPARATIVE OF INEQUALITY, *le comparatif d'inégalité*; THE COMPARATIVE OF SUPERIORITY, *le comparatif de supériorité*; and THE COMPARATIVE OF INFERIORITY, *et le comparatif d'infériorité*.

111. *Le comparatif d'égalité*, THE COMPARATIVE OF EQUALITY, is expressed, in English, by AS before the adjective, and AS after

it, before the compared object ; and, in French, by *aussi* before the adjective, and *que* after it, before the compared object.

The tulip is *as* beautiful *as* the rose, *La tulipe est aussi belle que la rose.*

112. *Le comparatif d'inégalité*, THE COMPARATIVE OF INEQUALITY, is expressed in English by NOT SO, NOT AS, before the adjective, and AS after it, before the compared object ; and in French by *ne....pas si*, *ne....pas aussi*, before the adjective, *ne* being placed before the verb and *pas si* or *pas aussi* after it, and *que* after it, before the compared object.

The violet is *not so* beautiful as the carnation, *La violette n'est pas si (ou pas aussi) belle que l'œillet.*

113. *Le comparatif de supériorité*, THE COMPARATIVE OF SUPERIORITY, is expressed in English by placing MORE before the adjective, or by a change in its termination, and THAN after it ; and in French by placing *plus* before the adjective and *que* after it, before the compared object ; and, if after the conjunction THAN in English, or *que* in French, follows a verb, the French verb must be preceded by the words *ne*, or *n'*, and, if the word *so* is expressed or understood, by *ne le*, or *ne l'* ; but *le* is not expressed if the verb has not for its object some preceding word or object.

Virtue is *more* useful than science, La vertu est plus utile que la science.

Milton is greater *than* Pope. *Milton est plus grand que Pope.*

My friend is *more* punctual *Mon ami est plus ponctuel* que
than I have been, *je ne l'ai été.*

Explanation. In the last example, *ne* is used after *que*, because the word following that, *que*, is a verb; and *le* is expressed, because the word *punctuel*, expressed before, is understood after *ai été*. This *le* is used in such phrases to translate the word *so*, whether expressed or understood. In this phrase it is evidently understood.

114. *Le comparatif d'infériorité*, THE COMPARATIVE OF INFERIORITY, is expressed, in English, by placing LESS before the adjective, and THAN after it, before the compared object ; and, in

French, by placing *moins* before the adjective, and *que* after it, before the compared object ; and if a verb follows, the same as in rule 113, it should be preceded by *ne* or *ne le*.

Alexander was less prudent *Alexandre était moins prudent*
than Cæsar, *que César.*

115. There are three adjectives in French, that are comparatives by themselves. They are,

for better, *meilleur*, instead of *plus bon*, which is never used.
less, *moindre*, instead of *plus petit*, which however is
sometimes properly used.
worse, *pire*, instead of *plus mauvais*, which is also
properly used.

My cloak is better than my coat, *Mon manteau est meilleur que mon habit.*

The means of that man are less than his debts, *Les moyens de cet homme sont moindres que ses dettes.*

Our administrator is now worse than ever, *Notre administrateur est maintenant pire que jamais.*

With the exception of *mieux*, BETTER ; *moins*, LESS ; *pis*, WORSE, adverbs form their comparatives in the same manner as adjectives.

116. *Les degrés de signification*, THE DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION, are infinite in number. They are expressed by placing before adjectives such adverbs as will modify their signification, according to the greater or less quality of the objects represented by the nouns or pronouns to which they relate ; and whatever be the place of these adverbs in English, they are always before the adjective in French.

A strong man,	.	.	<i>Un homme fort.</i>
A tolerably strong man,	.	.	<i>Un homme médiocrement fort.</i>
A man strong enough,	.	.	<i>Un homme assez fort.</i>
A very strong man,	.	.	<i>Un homme très-fort.</i>
An extremely strong man,	.	.	<i>Un homme extrêmement fort.</i>
An extraordinary strong man,	.	.	<i>Un homme extraordinairement fort.</i>
A prodigiously strong man,	.	.	<i>Un homme prodigieusement fort.</i>

These examples show the different degrees of signification of the adjective *fort* ; among which that of VERY STRONG, *très-fort*, is certainly far from being the highest, and on that account should not be called by grammarians the superlative degree, since it is inferior to many others.

117. It should be particularly noticed and remembered, that, in the third example, the adverb ENOUGH is placed after the adjective in English, but that its corresponding adverb *assez*, in French, is, as it should always be, placed like all the other adverbs, before the adjective.

118. *Le superlatif*, THE SUPERLATIVE degree of signification, is a true comparative, by which the quality of one or several objects of the same kind is compared with that of all the objects of the same kind, or with that of all those of the same time and place, or even with that of a single one. It is expressed, in English, by placing either of the definite or possessive articles, without any word, before the comparative of the adjective, when the comparison is definite, that is, when it is restricted to a certain number of objects or individuals, and with the word MOST before the adjective, or without MOST before the adjective whose termination has been changed into EST, when the comparison is general. But, in French, it is always expressed by simply placing either of the definite or possessive articles before the comparative of the adjective ; and, whatever be the preposition used in English before the next noun of the comparison, the corresponding preposition in French is always *de* or *d'*.

My book is the <i>larger of the</i> <i>two,</i>	<i>Mon livre est le plus gros des</i> <i>deux.</i>
Your father is <i>the most affable</i> <i>among men,</i>	<i>Votre père est le plus affable</i> <i>des hommes.</i>
Mr. L. is <i>the best doctor in the</i> <i>city,</i>	<i>M. L. est le meilleur docteur</i> <i>de la ville.</i>
<i>The most successful war is the</i> <i>greatest curse of nations ;</i> <i>and an unjust war is the</i> <i>greatest crime of kings,</i>	<i>La guerre la plus heureuse est</i> <i>le plus grand fléau des peu-</i> <i>ples ; et une guerre injuste est</i> <i>le plus grand crime des rois.</i>

Exp'lation. In the first example, *le* is used before the comparative *plus gros*, to express that the quality of my book is in the superlative degree compared with the other. In the

second, *le* is used before the comparative *plus affable*, to express that the quality of *your FATHER*, *votre père*, is in the superlative degree compared with that of all men; *AMONG* is rendered by *de*, because, whatever be the preposition that follows the superlative adjective in English, it is always *de* in French; and *hommes* is used with the definite article *les* included in *des*, since *des* is for *de les*, because it represents a whole class of beings, according to the rule of paragraph 35. In the third, *le* is used before the comparative adjective *meilleur*, for the same reason as in the preceding example; and *IN* is rendered by *de*, for the reason given for the translation of *AMONG* by *de*, also in the preceding example. In the fourth, the definite article *la* is used before *guerre*, because it is the nominative of *est*, see rule No. 93; *la* is used before the comparative adjective *plus heureuse*, for the same reason as in the preceding examples, so is *le* before *plus grand*; *peuples* is preceded by the definite article *les* included in *des*, according to rule 35, so it is with *rois*, which is preceded also by the definite article.

119. When a noun follows after the verb *TO BE*, expressing a trade or profession, preceded by the indefinite article *A* or *AN*, that definite article is not expressed, in French, unless the noun be qualified by an adjective; as in

That man is <i>a</i> lawyer,	<i>Cet homme est avocat.</i>
That woman is <i>a</i> milliner,	<i>Cette femme est modiste.</i>
That man is <i>an</i> excellent lawyer,	<i>Cet homme est un excellent avocat.</i>
That woman is <i>an</i> excellent milliner,	<i>Cette femme est une modiste excellente.</i>

Explanation. In the two first examples, the indefinite article *A* is not rendered in French, because the noun expressing trade or profession is not qualified by an adjective. In the two last examples, the indefinite article *AN* is expressed in French, because the nouns of trade or profession are qualified by an adjective.

EXERCISE 52.

See rule 97.

Now I am glad of your success. To-day thou art too idle for a girl of thy age. At present he is fortunate in his business. She is always very generous towards the unfortunate. When one is sick, one is always excusable. We are too often inquisitive concerning the affairs of our neighbours. You are generally dexterous in your exercises. Those gentlemen are constantly busy with their best clerks. Our ladies are sometimes bold in their enterprises, especially when they are for the good of the poor and of christians.

EXERCISE 53.

See rule 98.

Yesterday I was as unhappy as ever on your account. The day before yesterday, after our walk, thou wast as tired as thy sister. When

he⁹⁸ was¹¹³ poorer¹¹³ than¹⁹ now¹⁰³, had³⁵ he⁹⁸ more¹¹⁴ than⁶² two⁶⁵ servants⁴⁹? Before⁵⁴ dinner⁴⁰ she¹¹⁴ was⁹⁸ less¹¹⁴ obedient⁹⁸ to⁹⁸ her¹¹⁴ father's⁵¹ orders⁵¹ than⁹⁸ now⁹⁸. We¹¹¹ were⁶² always¹¹¹ as³⁷ ready⁵⁰ as⁹⁸ possible⁹⁸ for⁹⁸ the¹¹⁴ payment⁶² of¹¹⁴ our⁵¹ debts⁵¹, when⁹⁸ we¹¹³ were⁶² mer-
chants⁵¹. You⁵¹ were⁹⁸ sometimes¹¹³ less⁶² weak⁹⁸ than¹¹³ your⁶² wife⁹⁸, in¹¹³ your⁶² conduct⁹⁸
towards⁵¹ your⁹⁸ children¹¹³. Mr.⁵² and¹¹³ Mrs.⁵² Abel⁹⁸ were¹¹³ often⁶² more⁹⁸ imprudent⁹⁸
in⁵² their¹¹³ actions⁵² than⁹⁸ in¹¹³ their⁵² words⁹⁸.

EXERCISE 54.

See rule 99.

Last⁹³ week⁷⁸ I⁹⁹ was⁸² very⁴⁷ severe¹¹⁸ against⁹⁸ my¹¹³ idlest⁶² scholars⁴⁸. The¹¹³ day⁴⁸
before³⁸ yesterday⁷⁸ thou⁹³ wast⁹⁹ more¹¹⁴ eloquent⁶² in⁴⁹ thy¹¹⁴ defence⁹⁹ than¹¹⁴ thy¹¹⁴ ad-
versary⁴⁹. The⁵⁵ last⁹⁹ week⁸² he⁶² was³⁹ less⁵⁰ rash⁹⁸ in¹¹³ his⁶² determination¹¹³ than¹⁰⁰
his⁷⁸ brother⁹⁹. After⁸² that⁶² accident³⁹ she⁵⁰ was⁹⁸ more¹¹³ quiet¹¹³ than¹⁰⁰ before⁹⁸. On⁹⁸
last³⁸ Sunday⁹⁹ we⁶² were⁴⁷ very¹⁰⁰ punctual⁷⁸ in⁹⁸ the⁹⁸ discharge⁹⁸ of⁹⁸ our⁹⁸ duties⁹⁸.
After⁵⁵ the⁹⁹ class¹¹³ you⁶² were¹¹³ too¹¹³ deaf¹⁰⁰ to⁹⁸ my⁹⁸ observations⁹⁸. On⁸⁷ last⁹⁹ Monday⁹⁹
those⁶² sailors⁴⁰ were⁵⁰ more⁹⁹ sick⁶² than³⁹ on⁹⁸ Saturday⁹⁸, because⁹⁸ they⁹⁸ were⁹⁸
intemperate⁹⁸. The³⁹ ladies⁶² of⁵² our⁶² house⁶² were⁹⁸ overjoyed⁹⁸ by⁹⁸ the⁹⁸ arrival⁹⁸
of⁹⁸ the⁹⁸ amiable⁹⁸ Mrs.⁹⁸ Henry⁹⁸, their⁹⁸ intimate⁹⁸ friend⁹⁸.

EXERCISE 55.

See rule 101.

To-morrow¹⁰¹ I¹¹³ shall⁶² be⁴⁷ more¹¹³ diligent¹¹³ in¹¹³ my¹¹³ studies¹¹³ than¹¹³ to-day¹¹³. The¹¹³
next¹⁰¹ day⁶² after³⁷ to-morrow⁹³ thou⁷⁸ wilt⁹⁸ be⁹⁸ ready⁹⁸ for⁹⁸ the⁹⁸ journey⁹⁸. Next⁹⁸ time⁹⁸
Miss¹⁰¹ Lucy¹¹¹ will⁶² be¹¹¹ as¹¹¹ polite¹¹¹ towards¹¹¹ Mr.¹¹¹ Paul¹¹¹ as¹¹¹ towards¹¹¹ Mr.¹¹¹ Peter¹¹¹.
Soon¹⁰¹ he¹¹³ will⁶² be⁴⁹ more⁶² ashamed¹¹³ of¹¹³ his¹¹³ bad¹¹³ conduct¹¹³ than¹¹³ now¹¹³. Hence-
forth¹⁰¹ we¹¹³ will⁶² be³⁸ more⁵⁰ active⁹³ in⁷⁸ the⁹⁸ pursuit⁹⁸ of⁹⁸ our⁹⁸ affairs⁹⁸. Next⁹⁸ week⁹⁸
you¹⁰¹ will⁶² be⁵¹ too⁶² proud⁴² of⁸⁷ your¹⁰¹ good⁹⁸ work⁹⁸. After¹¹³ some¹¹³ days⁵² they³² will⁹⁸ be⁹⁸
stronger⁹⁸ than⁹⁸ their⁹⁸ rivals⁹⁸. In⁹⁸ five⁹⁸ years⁹⁸ Messrs.⁹⁸ Nado⁹⁸ and⁹⁸ company⁹⁸
will⁹⁸ be⁹⁸ the⁹⁸ richest⁹⁸ merchants⁹⁸ in⁹⁸ the⁹⁸ city⁹⁸. Before⁹⁸ fifty⁹⁸ years⁹⁸ that⁹⁸ nation⁹⁸
will⁹⁸ be⁹⁸ the⁹⁸ most⁹⁸ powerful⁹⁸.

EXERCISE 56.

See rules 102 and 98.

If¹⁰² I¹¹⁴ was⁶² less¹⁰² sick¹¹³, I¹⁰² would¹¹³ be¹⁰² more¹⁰² sociable⁶². If¹⁰² we¹¹¹ were⁶² more¹¹¹ fortunate⁴⁹,
thou¹⁰² wouldst⁶² be¹⁰² more¹¹¹ independent⁶². If¹⁰² she¹¹¹ was⁶² as¹¹¹ learned⁴⁹ as⁹⁸ her⁹⁸ sister⁹⁸,
she¹⁰² would¹¹⁸ be³⁵ the¹⁰² loveliest⁹⁴ of⁹⁸ women⁹⁸. If⁹⁸ he⁹⁸ had⁹⁸ more⁹⁸ indulgence⁹⁸, he⁹⁸

would be not only more popular than his predecessor, but even the most popular of presidents. If we had more generosity, we should be more discreet. If they were less disinterested, they would be less rich than their uncle. If those ladies had more knowledge, would they not be less ridiculous? If Mr. Jules had as much money as Mr. Bertram, would he not be more happy than he?

EXERCISE 57.

See rule 104.

This week I have been as fortunate as your partner. Since the commencement of this month thou hast been more industrious than Mr. Leon. George was not so good as my son William. This century we have been as useful to mankind as all the other nations of the continent. During the course of this week you have been as lavish as ever. This winter the inhabitants of the island have been as busy as during the preceding season. Napoleon has been the victim of the treason of several of his generals and of the most vile and cruel revenge of the enemies of constitutional principles.

EXERCISE 58.

See rule 105.

Before the election of Mr. Lyon, I had been the captain of that company. Thou hadst been the professor of that class whilst I was president of that institution. Before the time of his admission into that society he had been more successful than his master. During the preceding year we had been too prodigal. You had been very unfortunate before you had your immense fortune. The workmen of that manufactory had been very assiduous at their work during the morning before they had their pay. Hadst thou never been in that establishment before yesterday?

EXERCISE 59.

See rule 106.

After I had been complaisant towards John he was the most tractable of boys. When thou hadst been sick, thou wast less strong than before. As soon as he had been unfaithful, he was without occupation and in the

¹¹⁸ greatest want. After we had ¹⁰⁶ been ⁶² liberal, we had a great number of friends. As soon as you had ¹⁰⁶ been ⁶² negligent in your affairs your employers were suspicious and uneasy. When they had been in the favour ⁹⁹ of the governor they had ⁶² more credit. After thou hadst been in presence ³⁷ of the assembly thou wast less timorous and thou wast much more eloquent. ³⁹

EXERCISE 60.

See rule 107.

Before the arrival ³⁹ of our ship I shall have been without goods. When thou shalt have ¹⁰⁷ been subaltern thou shalt perhaps be master. Before next Sunday ⁴⁷ my sister will have been often with her cousin Zoe, one of the prettiest girls in the city. When we shall have been more serviceable ⁵⁰ our neighbours will be more sociable. Before their appearance ³⁷ in the world you will have been the most illustrious among men. They ⁸⁹ are our creditors but they will soon be our debtors. Will not those things have been in your possession before the commencement of the spring of the next year. ³⁹

EXERCISE 61.

See rules 105 and 108.

If you had been a teacher, I would have been your scholar. If thou ¹⁰⁵ hadst had friends, thou wouldst have been more successful in thy enterprise. If he had been like his brother, he would have been present ⁴⁰ at the explanations of his professor. If she had been generous, you would have been in a more pleasant situation. If we had had our father's consent, we should have been much more happy. If Mr. and Mrs. Henry had been less rich, they would have been more charitable; but they have been too proud in this circumstance. If I had been president, wouldst thou not have been my secretary? ^{22 & 27}

EXERCISE 62.

See rules 109 and 110.

I shall be your boarder, provided that your price is not too high. Thou shalt have more power, provided that thou wilt be honest and without ambition. He will soon have a school, though he is not yet professor. ⁹²

Before we are learned, we are always ignorant. In case you are present at the ceremony of the consecration of the temple, we shall have a seat for your family. I shall be at the dinner, provided my brother and sister are in this city. I shall be ready, provided thou art in my house two hours before the time of the departure. God grant that thou mayest be present at my trial.

EXERCISE 63.

I had the necessary information, that I might be just in that affair. Joseph was attentive to thy observations, that thou mightest be contented. George was the first in his class, although he was very indolent. Our nephew was in the country, although we were in the city. You had that reward, on condition that you should be more studious. The teacher had several presents for those children, to the end that they might be quiet. John had a notice, that he might be ready at the commencement of the week; but as he was too indifferent, he was not with us. God forbid that I should be angry.

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

120. *Le mode de l'impératif*, THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, is used to exhort, command, intreat, permit, forbid, &c.; but as one cannot exhort, command, intreat, &c. himself or an absent person, it follows that there should be no first person singular; the third person singular and plural are not admitted by late French grammarians. However, since the third person singular and plural are given and used in the English grammars, they are used and given in this, and for their translation see the models of verbs.

EXERCISE 64.

Be always constant. Be not severe towards these little children. Let him be far from this place. Let us be submissive to the orders of our superiors. Let Miss Adelaide be constantly present at your lessons. Be ye attentive to the exhortations of your minister. Let Mr. Luke be the judge of our difficulties with our obstinate neighbours. Let all the troops of the army be on the field of battle on the day of the general ac-

tion. Let us ²²not be so rash as our adversaries. Let the ⁴⁰affairs of ⁵⁵this country be in a ^{41 115 & 62}better condition ¹¹³than at present. Be less ⁶²impatient. Let Mr. and Mrs. Brune be in ⁶²good health.

ACTIVE VERBS.

As the following exercises will contain, besides TO HAVE, *avoir*, and TO BE, *être*, only active verbs, it is necessary to explain in what manner they are used together with other parts of speech.

121. *Le verb actif*, THE ACTIVE VERB, as is said in the definitions, is that which expresses an action done or exercised by the nominative or person which is the cause of that action passing over to an object or thing, upon which that action is done or exercised, without the means of a preposition. That object is called a direct object. In French, if that direct object is not a proper name, it is generally preceded by the definite article, if not by any of the others, though in English the article may be omitted.

Besides the direct objects, active verbs may have one or several indirect objects, over which their action passes with the assistance of a preposition.

I give *something* to my friend, *Je donne quelque chose à mon ami.*

John will carry *the bundle* from Boston to Salem, *Jean portera le paquet de Boston à Salem.*

Explanation. In the first example, *quelque chose* is the direct object of *donne*, because it is the thing over which the action expressed by it passes without the assistance of any preposition; and *mon ami* is its indirect object, because that action passes to it by means of the preposition *à*. In the second, *paquet* is the direct object of *portera*, because the action expressed by that verb passes to it without the means of a preposition; and *Boston* and *Salem* are its two indirect objects, because that action passes to them with the assistance of the prepositions *de* and *à*.

122. When a verb has several objects, in English, the direct is generally placed first; but this is done, in French, only when

it is of the same length as the indirect object or even shorter, but if it was longer, the indirect object should be placed the first.

The French vanquished the Spaniards at Vallaviciosa, *Les Français vainquirent les Espagnols à Villaviciosa.*

We must oppose a stoical countenance to the insults of the wicked, *Nous devons opposer un maintien stoïque aux insultes des méchants.*

Hypocrites cover the most shameful and revolting crimes with the cloak of virtue, *Les hypocrites couvrent du manteau de la vertu les vices les plus honteux et les plus révoltants.*

Carry those pens and that paper to Miss Lucy, *Portez à Mademoiselle Lucie ces plumes et ce papier.*

Explanation. In the first example, the direct object is before the indirect, because they are both of the same length. In the second, the direct is before the indirect also, because they are of the same length. In the third, the direct is after the indirect, because it is longer. In the fourth, the indirect is before the direct, because it is shorter.

USE OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

123. The nominative of a verb is not always a noun nor a pronoun; sometimes it is a verb in the present infinitive, and when this is the case, in English, that infinitive is almost always preceded by the preposition *to*, which preposition is never rendered or expressed in French.

To run away before the enemy is the act of a coward, *Fuir devant l'ennemi est l'acte d'un lâche.*

To think, compare and judge, are faculties of the mind, *Penser, comparer et juger sont des facultés de l'esprit.*

124. The object of a verb is not always a noun nor a pronoun; sometimes it is one or several other verbs, which, in French, are always in the present infinitive preceded or not preceded by the preposition *à* or *de*, though in English it is generally in the present participle. When either of these prepositions *à* or *de*, whether required by a verb, an adjective or a noun, is to be used, if there are several verbs together, governed by it, it must be repeated before every one of them, though in English, it is expressed but once before the first. The preposition used before the present participle in English and in French,

before the present infinitive, is generally governed by the first verb, or the verb that precedes ; and as corresponding verbs do not always require corresponding prepositions after them, that is, if the first English verb should require before the following verb or indirect object, the preposition *TO* or *FROM*, the corresponding French verb, might not require the corresponding preposition *à* or *de* ; and as this difference of idiom creates much difficulty, to remove which no rule can be given, the following table will show what preposition should be used in French. The first column contains the French verbs, the second the preposition before another verb, the third the preposition before a noun, and the others the corresponding verbs and prepositions in English. Those verbs that have *se* or *s'* after them, are reflective verbs, or are to be conjugated reflectively.

125. LIST OF VERBS SHOWING THE PREPOSITION

THEY GOVERN BEFORE OTHER VERBS, AND BEFORE THEIR INDIRECT OBJECT.

NOTE. Many of the following verbs are active, and of course require no preposition before their direct object ; therefore, if after such verbs the use of a preposition were indicated, it must be remembered that it is only before the indirect object.

French verbs.	Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.		Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.
<i>Abaissér (s')</i>	à	à	To humble one's self	to	before
<i>Aboutir</i>	à	à	To tend	to	to
<i>Abstenir (s')</i>	de	de	To refrain	from	from
<i>Accoutumer</i>	à	à	To accustom	to	to
<i>Accoutumer (s')</i>	à	à	To accustom one's self	to	to
<i>Accuser</i>	de	de	To accuse	of	of
<i>Achever</i>	de		To finish		
<i>Adonner (s')</i>	à	à	To devote one's self	to	to
<i>Affecter</i>	de	de	To affect	to	
<i>Affliger (s')</i>	de	de	To grieve	at	for, at
<i>Aider*</i>	à	à & de	To help	to	with

* *Aider* requires no preposition before its object when that object is a noun representing an animated being, and the given assistance is lasting ; but, if that assistance is but momentary, or is given for some particular object, then *aider* requires *à* ; and the object with which the assistance is given must be preceded by the preposition *de*.

To help a man in his wants, . . . *Aider un homme dans ses besoins.*

Help that man to raise his bundle, . . . *Aidez à cette homme à lever son paquet.*

You have helped for the success of that affair, . . . *Vous avez aidé au succès de cette affaire.*

French verbs.	Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.		Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.
<i>Aimer</i>	à		To like	to	
<i>Aimer mieux</i>	†	†	To prefer	to	
<i>Aller</i>		à ou de	To go		to, from
<i>Ambitionner</i>	de		To desire	to	
<i>Amuser (s')</i>	à	à ou de	To amuse one's self	by	with
<i>Appeler</i>	à		To call	to	to, on
<i>Appliquer (s')</i>	à	à	To apply one's self	to	to
<i>Appréhender</i>	de		To apprehend		with
<i>Apprendre</i>	à	à ou de†	To learn	how to	of, with
<i>Apprendre (s')</i>	à		To teach one's self	to	
<i>Apprêter</i>	à	à	To prepare	to	for
<i>Apprêter (s')</i>	à	pour, à	To prepare one's self	to, for	for
<i>Arrêter</i>	de		To decree	to	
<i>Aspirer</i>	à	à	To aspire	to	to
<i>Assigner</i>	à	à	To summon	to	to
<i>Assujettir</i>	à	à	To subdue	to	to, by
<i>Assujettir (s')</i>	à	à	To submit	to	to
<i>Attacher (s')</i>	à	à	To attach one's self	to	to
<i>Attendre (s')</i>	à	à	To expect	to	
<i>Autoriser</i>	à		To empower	to	with
<i>Avertir</i>	de	de	To warn, to inform	to	of
<i>Avilir (s')</i>	à	à	To debase one's self	by	at, in
<i>Aviser (s')</i>	de		To bethink one's self	of	of, for
<i>Avoir</i>	à	de	To have	to	from
<i>Balancer</i>	à	dans	To hesitate	to	in
<i>Blâmer</i>	de	de	To blame	for	for
<i>Borner (se)</i>	à	à	To confine one's self	to	to
<i>Brûler</i>	de	de	To burn	to	with
<i>Censurer</i>	de		To censure	for	
<i>Cesser</i>	de		To cease	from	
<i>Charger</i>		de	To burden, to load		with
<i>Charger (se)</i>	de	de	To take upon one's self	to	
<i>Chercher</i>	à		To seek, to endeavour	to	
<i>Choisir</i>	de		To choose	to	
<i>Commander</i>	de	à	To command	to	
<i>Commencer§</i>	de, à & par		To commence	to, by	
<i>Complaire (se)</i>	à	en	To delight	in	in
<i>Compter</i>			To expect	to	
<i>Compter</i>		sur	To rely, to depend		upon
<i>Conclure</i>	de	de	To conclude	to	from
<i>Concourir</i>	à	à, pour	To contribute	to	to, for

† *Aimer mieux* requires no preposition before its first direct object ; but it requires the conjunction *que* before its second object if it is a noun, and *que de* if it is a verb.

I should prefer to die *than* to do a bad *J'aimerais mieux mourir que de faire une mauvaise action.*

I prefer study to play, *J'aime mieux l'étude que le jeu.*

† *Apprendre* requires *à* before the name of the person who is taught, and *de* before that of the person by whom one is taught.

§ After *commencer*, *de* is used to express that the action will last ; as,

The lawyer commenced to speak, *L'avocat commença de parler.*

And *à* to express that that action would or will improve ; as,

That child commences to speak, *Cet enfant commence à parler.*

French verbs.	Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.		Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.
<i>Condamner</i>	à	à, pour	To condemn	to	to, for
<i>Condescendre</i>	à	à	To condescend	to	to
<i>Conjurer</i>	de		To entreat	to	
<i>Conseiller</i>	de	à	To advise	to	to
<i>Consentir</i>	à	à	To consent	to	to
<i>Consister</i>	à	en ou dans	To consist	in	in, of
<i>Consoler</i>	de	de	To console	for	for
<i>Conspirer</i>	à	contre	To conspire	to	against
<i>Continuer</i>	de & à		To continue	to	
<i>Contraindre</i>	de ou à	à	To force, to compel	to	to
<i>Contribuer</i>	à	à	To contribute	to	for, to
<i>Convaincre</i>	de	de	To convince	of	of
<i>Convenir</i>	de	de	To agree	to	on
<i>Convier</i>	à	à	To suit		
<i>Convier</i>	à	à	To invite	to	to
<i>Corriger</i>	de	de	To reform, correct	from	from
<i>Coûter</i>	à	à	To cost	to	
<i>Craindre</i>	de		To fear	to	
<i>Croire</i>		à ou en†	To believe, to have faith		in
<i>Daigner</i>			To disdain	to	
<i>Décider (se)</i>	à	à	To take one's resolution	to	about
<i>Décider</i>	de		To determine	to	
<i>Déclarer</i>		à	To declare	to	to
<i>Décourager</i>	de	de	To discourage	from	from
<i>Dédaigner</i>	de		To scorn	to	
<i>Défendre</i>	de	à	To prohibit, forbid	to	
<i>Défier</i>	de		To defy	to	
<i>Dégouter</i>	de	de	To disgust	to	with
<i>Délibérer</i>	de	sur	To deliberate		
<i>Demander</i>	de	à	To demand	to	of
<i>Demander</i>	à	à	To ask	to	of
<i>Dépêcher (se)</i>	de		To make haste	to	
<i>Désaccoutumer</i>	de		To break off		from
<i>Désapprendre</i>	à		To unlearn	to	
<i>Désespérer</i>	de	de	To despair	of	of
<i>Déshabituer</i>	de	de	To break off		from
<i>Désirer*</i>	de	à	To desire, to wish	to	
<i>Désirer*</i>		à	To desire, to wish	to	to
<i>Désoler</i>	de	de	To grieve to excess	at	for
<i>Destiner</i>	à	à	To design	for	for
<i>Déterminer</i>	de	à	To resolve	to	upon
<i>Déterminer (se)</i>	à	à	To resolve	to	upon

† After *croire*, to believe or to have faith in, the preposition *en* is always used before the words *Dieu*, God, and *Jésus-Christ*, Jesus-Christ; *à* is generally used before every other noun.

* When *désirer* expresses a wish, the accomplishment of which is uncertain, it requires *de* before the following verb; as,

I wish to succeed, *Je désire de réussir.*

But if *désirer* expresses a wish, the accomplishment of which is easy, it requires no preposition before the following verb; as,

I wish to see him, *Je désire le voir.*

French verbs.	Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.		Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.
<i>Détester</i>	<i>de</i>		To hate	<i>to</i>	
<i>Détourner</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To deter	<i>from</i>	<i>from</i>
<i>Devoir*</i>		<i>à</i>	To owe	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Dévouer (se)</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To devote one's self		<i>to</i>
<i>Différer</i>	<i>de</i>		To defer, to put off		
<i>Dire</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>à</i>	To bid	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Discontinuer</i>	<i>de</i>		To cease	<i>to</i>	
<i>Disconvenir</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To deny		
<i>Dispenser</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To excuse dispense	<i>with</i>	<i>from with</i>
<i>Disposer</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To dispose	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Dissuader</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To dissuade	<i>from</i>	<i>from</i>
<i>Divertir (se)</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>de</i>	To recreate one's	<i>by</i>	<i>with</i>
<i>Donner</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To give [self]	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Dresser</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To train up	<i>for</i>	<i>in, for</i>
<i>Écrire</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>à & de</i>	To write	<i>to</i>	<i>to, con-</i>
<i>Efforcer (s')</i>	<i>de</i>		To earnestly endea- vour	<i>to</i>	<i>[cerning</i> <i>to</i>
<i>Effrayer (s')</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To be frightened	<i>at</i>	<i>at</i>
<i>Egosiller (s')</i>	<i>à</i>		To make one's throat sore	<i>by</i>	
<i>Empêcher</i>	<i>de</i>		To hinder	<i>from</i>	
<i>Employer</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To employ	<i>in, by</i>	<i>in</i>
<i>Employer (s')</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To apply one's self	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Empresser (s')</i>	<i>de</i>		To hasten	<i>to</i>	
<i>Encourager</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To encourage	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Engager</i>	<i>à</i>		To induce	<i>to</i>	
<i>Engager (s')</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To take upon one's self	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Enhardir</i>	<i>à</i>		To embolden	<i>to</i>	
<i>Enjoindre</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>à</i>	To enjoin	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Ennuyer (s')</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To grow weary	<i>of</i>	<i>of</i>
<i>Enorgueillir (s')</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To be proud	<i>of</i>	<i>of</i>
<i>Enseigner</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To teach	<i>to</i>	
<i>Entendre</i>			To intend	<i>to</i>	
<i>Entendre (s')</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To have skill	<i>in</i>	<i>in</i>
<i>Entendre (s')</i>		<i>en</i>	To understand		
<i>Entreprendre</i>	<i>de</i>		To undertake	<i>to</i>	
<i>Envoyer</i>		<i>à</i>	To send		<i>to</i>
<i>Espérer</i>		<i>de</i>	To hope		<i>from</i>
<i>Espérer†</i>	<i>de</i>		To hope	<i>to</i>	
<i>Essayer</i>	<i>de</i>		To try	<i>to</i>	
<i>Essayer (s')</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To try one's ability	<i>in</i>	<i>in</i>
<i>Étonner (s')</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To wonder	<i>at</i>	<i>at</i>

* *Devoir* is often used, before an infinitive, without a preposition, but it is merely to translate TO BE when it is used before an infinitive ; as,

We are to receive money, . . . *Nous devons recevoir de l'argent.*

† When *espérer* is used in the infinitive mood, it requires the preposition *de* before the next infinitive ; but, were it used in another tense, that preposition should not be employed.

May we hope to see you again ? . . . *Peut-on espérer de vous revoir.*

We hope to see you this evening, . . . *Nous espérons vous voir ce soir.*

French verbs.	Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.		Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.
<i>Être*</i>	à	à	To be		at
<i>Étudier (s')</i>	à		To endeavour	to	
<i>Éviter</i>	de		To avoid		
<i>Exceller</i>	à	dans, en, sur	To excel	in	in, upon
<i>Exciter</i>	à	à	To excite	to	to
<i>Excuser</i>	de	de	To excuse	for	for
<i>Exempter</i>	de	de	To exempt	from	from
<i>Exercer</i>	à	à	To train up	to	to
<i>Exhorter</i>	à	à	To exhort	to	to
<i>Exposer</i>	à	à	To expose	to	to
<i>Faillir</i>		à, dans	To fail	to	by, in
<i>Faillir</i>	à		To be very near		
<i>Faillir</i>	de		To be even ready	to	
<i>Falloir</i>		à	To be necessary, must		for
<i>Feindre</i>	de		To pretend	to	to
<i>Féliciter</i>	de	de	To congratulate	for	for, upon
<i>Finir</i>	de & par		To finish	by	
<i>Flatter (se)</i>	de	de	To flatter one's self	for	with
<i>Forcer</i>	de	à	To compel, oblige	to	to
<i>Former</i>	à	à	To train up	to	to
<i>Frémir</i>	de	de	To shudder	at	at
<i>Gager</i>	de	avec, contre	To lay a wager	to	with, a-
<i>Garder (se)</i>	de	de	To forbear	to	[gainst
<i>Gémir</i>	de	de	To lament	to	
<i>Glorifier</i>	de	de	To glory	in	in
<i>Habituer</i>	à	à	To accustom	to	to
<i>Haïr</i>	à		To hate	to	
<i>Hasarder (se)</i>	à	à	To expose one's self	to	to
<i>Hasarder</i>	de	à	To venture	to	at
<i>Hâter (se)</i>	de		To hasten	to	
<i>Hésiter</i>	à		To hesitate	to	
<i>Imaginer</i>	de		To imagine	to	
<i>Imaginer (s')</i>			To imagine, fancy	to	
<i>Impatienter (s')</i>	de	de	To be impatient	to	with, for
<i>Inciter</i>	à	à	To incite	to	to
<i>Incliner</i>	à	à	To incline	to	to
<i>Indigner (s')</i>	de	de	To be filled with in- dignation [self,	at	at
<i>Ingérer (s')</i>	de	de, dans	To take upon one's	to	with
<i>Insister</i>	à	sur	To insist	on	upon
<i>Inspirer</i>	de	à	To inspire, suggest	to	to
<i>Instruire</i>	à	à, dans	To teach	how to	
<i>Interdire</i>	de	à	To forbid	to	

* *Être* is often used with the preposition *à* before an infinitive ; but then it is used in the sense of TO BE ENGAGED IN ; as,

Je suis à travailler, I am engaged in working.

Je suis à écrire, I am engaged in writing.

Être is often used with the preposition *à* before a noun or a pronoun ; but then it is used in the sense of TO BELONG TO ; (see No. 381)

Cette maison est à M. David, . . . That house belongs to Mr. David ; or is Mr. David's ;

Ainsi elle n'est pas à moi, . . . Therefore it is not mine ; or does not belong to me.

French verbs.	Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.		Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.
<i>Intéresser (s')</i>	à	à	To be interested	in	in
<i>Inviter</i>	à	à	To invite	to	to
<i>Jurer</i>	de	à	To swear	to	to
<i>Justifier</i>	de	de	To justify	for	
<i>Laisser</i>		à	To leave, let		to
<i>Languir</i>	de	de	To long, to pine away	to, for	for
<i>Lasser (se)</i>	de	de	To grow weary	of	of
<i>Louer</i>	de	de	To commend	for	for
<i>Mander</i>	de	à	To send orders, to write	to	to
<i>Manquer</i>	de	à	To fail	in	in
<i>Méditer</i>	de	sur	To meditate, to think	of, upon	upon
<i>Mêler (se)</i>	de	de	To meddle, to busy one's self	in	with, in
<i>Menacer</i>	de	de	To threaten	to	with
<i>Mériter</i>	de	de	To deserve	to	from
			To set about, to commence		
<i>Mettre (se)</i>	à	à			
<i>Montrer</i>	à	à	To show	how to	
<i>Négliger</i>	de		To neglect	to	
<i>Nier</i>	de	à	To deny		to
<i>Notifier</i>	de	à	To notify	to	
<i>Obliger</i>	de	à	To oblige, to com- pel	to	
<i>Obstiner (s')</i>	à	à	To be obstinate	in	in
<i>Obtenir</i>	de	de	To obtain		from
<i>Offrir</i>	de	à	To offer	to	to
<i>Offrir (s')</i>	à	à	To offer one's self	to	to
<i>Occuper (s')</i>	à	à	To employ one's self	in	in
<i>Occuper (s')</i>	de	de	To think	of	of
<i>Omettre</i>	de	dans	To omit	to	in
<i>Ordonner</i>	de	à	To order, to pre- scribe	to	
<i>Oser</i>			To dare	to	
<i>Oublier</i>	de		To forget, to neg- lect	to	
<i>Ouïr*</i>			To hear		of
<i>Paraître</i>		à	To appear	to	at, to
<i>Pardonner</i>	de	à	To forgive	for	
<i>Parier</i>	de		To bet		
<i>Parler</i>	de	à & de	To speak	of	to, of
<i>Parvenir</i>	à	à	To succeed	in	in
<i>Passer son temps</i>	à	à, avec	To pass one's time	in	in, with

* *Ouïr* is hardly ever used, except in the present infinitive ; and in the past participle with the infinitive of such verbs as *parler*, to speak ; *chanter*, to sing ; *jouer*, to play ; &c. : But more specially with *dire*, the verb *entendre* being used instead of *ouïr* ; thus,

I have heard that *J'ai ouï dire que*

I have heard him speak, *Je l'ai entendu parler.*

French verbs.	Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.		Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.
<i>Penser*</i>	à	à & de	To think	of	of
<i>Penser</i>			To be near, to be like, to have nigh		
<i>Permettre</i>	de	à	To allow	to	
<i>Persister</i>	à	dans	To persist	in	in
<i>Persuader†</i>	de	à & de	To persuade	from	
<i>Piquer (se)</i>	de	de	To pride one's self	in	on
<i>Plaindre</i>	de	de	To pity	for	
<i>Plaire (se)</i>	à	à	To delight	in	in
<i>Pouvoir</i>			To be able, can, must	to	
<i>Préférer</i>	de	à	To prefer	to	
<i>Prendre garde</i>	de	à	To take care	not to	of
<i>Prendre plaisir</i>	à	à	To take pleasure	in	in
<i>Préparer (se)</i>	à	à	To prepare one's self	for	for
<i>Prescrire</i>	de	à	To prescribe		to, for
<i>Presser</i>	de		To urge	to	
<i>Prétendre</i>	de	à	To aim	at	at
<i>Prétendre</i>			To pretend	to	
<i>Prier‡</i>	de	de	To beg	to	of
<i>Professer</i>	de		To profess	to	
<i>Projeter</i>	de		To project		
<i>Promettre</i>	de	à	To promise	to	to
<i>Proposer</i>	de	à	To propose	to	to
<i>Protester</i>	de	à	To swear	to	to
<i>Provoquer</i>	à	à	To excite	to	
<i>Rappeler (se)</i>	de		To recollect	to	
<i>Rassasier</i>	de	de	To cloy	with	with
<i>Rebuter</i>	de	de	To despond	at	at
<i>Rechigner</i>	à	à	To look grim	at	at
<i>Recommander</i>	de	à	To recommend	to	to
<i>Reconnaître</i>		à	To acknowledge	to	
<i>Redouter</i>	de		To dread	to	
<i>Refuser</i>	de	à	To refuse	to	
<i>Regretter</i>	de		To regret	to	

* *Penser à* is used to translate TO THINK OF. But when TO THINK OF is used in an interrogative phrase, or with a relative pronoun implying OPINION rather than THOUGHT, then *penser* takes *de* instead of *à*; as,

Think of me, *Pensez à moi.*
 What do you think of that affair? *Que pensez-vous de cette affaire?*
 I shall tell you what I think of it to-morrow, *Je vous dirai demain ce que j'en pense.*

† When *persuader* is used with a direct and an indirect object, one being a pronoun or the name of a person, the other that of a thing; the direct object may be either that of the person or that of the thing in French; thus,

I have persuaded John of that truth, *J'ai persuadé Jean de cette vérité*; or,
J'ai persuadé cette vérité à Jean.

‡ To *BEG* requires for direct object the name of the begged thing, and the preposition *of* before the name of the person of whom it is begged; but, in French, *prier* requires for direct object the name of the person, and the preposition *de* before that of the begged thing; thus,

To beg a favour of one, *Prier quelqu'un d'une grâce.*

French verbs.	Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.		Prep. bef. a verb.	Prep. bef. a noun.
<i>Réjouir (se)</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To rejoice	<i>at</i>	<i>at</i>
<i>Remercier</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To thank	<i>for</i>	
<i>Renoncer</i>	<i>à</i>		To renounce		
<i>Reprimander</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To reprimand	<i>for</i>	<i>for</i>
<i>Reprocher</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>à</i>	To reproach	<i>for</i>	
<i>Répugner</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To be against		
<i>Résigner (se)</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To resign, to submit	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Résoudre</i>	<i>de</i>		To resolve	<i>upon</i>	<i>upon</i>
<i>Résoudre (se)</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To submit	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Ressouvenir (se)</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To recollect	<i>to</i>	
<i>Retenir</i>	<i>de & à</i>		To keep	<i>from, for</i>	<i>for</i>
<i>Réussir</i>			To succeed	<i>in</i>	<i>in</i>
<i>Savoir</i>		<i>de</i>	To know	<i>how to</i>	<i>from</i>
<i>Scandaliser (se)</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To take offence	<i>at</i>	<i>at</i>
<i>Sembler</i>		<i>à</i>	To seem	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Servir</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To serve, be useful	<i>for</i>	<i>for</i>
<i>Sommer</i>	<i>de</i>		To summon	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Songer</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To think	<i>of</i>	<i>of</i>
<i>Soucier (se)</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To care	<i>for</i>	<i>for</i>
<i>Souhaiter</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>à</i>	To wish	<i>to</i>	<i>for</i>
<i>Soumettre (se)</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To submit	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Soupçonner</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To suspect	<i>of</i>	<i>of</i>
<i>Souvenir (se)</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	To remember	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Suffire</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To answer	<i>to</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>Suggérer</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>à</i>	To prompt		<i>to</i>
<i>Supplier</i>	<i>de</i>		To beseech	<i>to</i>	
<i>Tâcher</i>	<i>de</i>		To endeavour	<i>to</i>	
<i>Tendre</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To aim	<i>at</i>	<i>at</i>
<i>Tenter</i>	<i>de</i>		To try	<i>to</i>	
<i>Travailler</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To work, to la-	<i>to</i>	<i>at</i>
		<i>de</i>	<i>bour</i>		
<i>Trembler</i>	<i>de</i>		To tremble	<i>to</i>	<i>with</i>
<i>Valoir mieux</i>		<i>de</i>	To be better		
<i>Vanter (se)</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>à & de</i>	To boast	<i>of</i>	<i>of</i>
<i>Venir</i>			To come		<i>to, from</i>
<i>Venir</i>	<i>de</i>		To have just		
<i>Venir</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	To happen	<i>to</i>	
<i>Viser</i>	<i>à</i>		To aim	<i>at</i>	<i>at</i>
<i>Voir</i>			To see	<i>to</i>	
<i>Vouloir</i>			To be willing	<i>to</i>	
<i>Vouloir</i>		<i>à</i>	To wish, to dislike	<i>to</i>	

From what precedes it is evident that *de* and *à* are the prepositions generally used before the present infinitive. Besides those there are also *par*, *sans* and *pour*, which require a present infinitive after them.

126. *Par* is used to translate the preposition *BY* only after *commencer*, to commence, and *finir*, to finish or conclude.

He commenced *by* explaining the rules, and concluded *by* giving examples, *Il commença par expliquer les règles, et finit par donner des exemples.*

127. *Sans* is always used to translate the preposition *WITHOUT* and therefore presents no difficulty, not forgetting that the English present participle should be rendered by the French present infinitive.

The servant entered the room *without* knocking, *Le domestique entra dans la chambre sans frapper.*

128. *Pour* is used to translate *FOR*, *IN ORDER TO*, and *TO*, when that *TO* is employed in the sense of *FOR*, or *IN ORDER TO*, and the following verb must be in the present infinitive, in French.

The thief was hanged *for* robbing (*for* having robbed) upon the highway, *Le voleur fut pendu pour avoir volé sur le grand chemin.*

I bought that horse *in order to* please my nephew, *J'achetai ce cheval pour plaire à mon neveu.*

To acquire riches the dishonest man uses all kinds of means, *Pour acquérir des richesses le malhonnête homme emploie toutes sortes de moyens.*

Explanation. In the first example, *pour* is used to translate the preposition *FOR*, because it is its corresponding preposition in French ; and the present participle *ROBBING* is rendered by the compound of the present infinitive, because, with the exception of *en*, there is no preposition that requires any other tense in French ; and also because the action of robbing is past, and not actually taking place. In the second, the three words *IN ORDER TO* are rendered by the single word *pour*, because it is sufficient to convey the same meaning. In the third, *to* is translated by *pour*, because it is used in the sense of *FOR*, or *IN ORDER TO* ; and if, instead of *TO ACQUIRE*, the words were *FOR ACQUIRING* or *IN ORDER TO ACQUIRE*, it should likewise be translated by *pour acquérir*.

129. The preposition *après*, *AFTER*, requires after it the compound tense, the preterite indefinite, which tense is also used independently of that preposition.

After *having sung* he played, *Après avoir chanté il joua.*

130. The present participle is used, in English, after any preposition except *to* ; but in French it is used only after the preposition *en*, or independently of that preposition, as an adjective. And when *en* is used, it should be to translate *IN*, *BY*, and sometimes *ON*, expressing manner or relating to time.

He shows his ignorance *in speaking* on that subject, *by giving* errors for correct principles, *Il montre son ignorance en parlant sur ce sujet, en donnant des erreurs pour des principes corrects.*

Explanation. In this example, *IN GIVING* is for *WHEN HE IS GIVING*, and therefore, *IN* relates to time, and is translated by *en* in French. *BY GIVING* is for *AS HE GIVES*, and therefore expresses manner, and *BY* is translated by *en* with the present participle.

131. The past participle is sometimes used as an adjective with or without the verb *être*, TO BE, and then it agrees in gender and number with the noun or pronoun to which it relates.

Virtuous men are always *esteemed*, *Les hommes vertueux sont toujours estimés.*

Virtuous women are always *esteemed and respected*, *Les femmes vertueuses sont toujours estimées et respectées.*

Explanation. In the first example, *estimés* is in the masculine plural, because it is conjugated with *être*, and because the noun *hommes*, to which it relates, is masculine plural. In the second, *estimées et respectées* are in the feminine plural, because they are used with the verb *être*, and because the noun to which they relate, *femmes*, is feminine plural.

132. When the past participle is used with *avoir*, TO HAVE, it never agrees with its subject or nominative, and remains invariable when its object follows it.

Miss Eliza has *carried* two letters, *Mademoiselle Éлиза a porté deux lettres.*

Those gentlemen have *received* their money, *Ces Messieurs ont reçu leur argent.*

Those ladies would have *sold* their houses, *Ces dames auraient vendu leurs maisons.*

Explanation. In these examples, the past participles *porté*, *reçu* and *vendu*, are in the masculine singular, because whatever be the nominative of *avoir*, with which they are used, the past participle never varies on its account; and because it does not vary according to the gender and number of its object when that object is placed after it.

However there are instances in which the past participle varies, when used with *avoir*, which will be explained in their proper place. In the following exercises it is always invariable.

EXERCISES ON REGULAR VERBS AND THE PARTS OF SPEECH ALREADY TREATED OF.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.—PRESENT TENSE.

133. It has already been said, at No. 97, that the present indicative is used to express that a thing is or is happening habitually, daily or in the moment one speaks. In English this

tense is differently expressed; sometimes by a single word, as I CARRY, and at other times by several, as I AM CARRYING, *or* I DO CARRY; but in French, it is always expressed by a single word, and it would be very wrong to translate I AM CARRYING, by *je suis portant*, and I DO CARRY, by *je fais porter*; for the French never say *je suis portant*, and *je fais porter* means I CAUSE TO CARRY. These three different expressions must be rendered, in French, by *je porte*. It is very important to notice this difference of idiom, because students are apt to translate the verb TO BE or TO DO, when they should not, and when they should be considered merely as auxiliaries or as the signs of the present tense. See the model for the First Conjugation, page 25.

134. The auxiliaries TO BE and TO DO, are principally used in asking questions, and with a negation, but even then the French do not translate them; as explained by note page 35. The interrogation with a verb is made, in French, by merely placing the nominative pronoun after it with a hyphen between them, and whenever the verb is in the third person singular, if that third person singular ends with a vowel, a *t* between two hyphens is placed between the verb and the pronoun; thus, has he? *a-t-il?* does she carry? *porte-t-elle?* did he carry? *porta-t-il?* will one carry? *portera-t-on?* &c. This *t* is used for the sake of pronunciation, to avoid the hard sound of two vowels that come together.

135. However, when a question is asked in the third person, if the verb has for its nominative a noun, that noun is placed before the verb, which verb must be used interrogatively, having after it a pronoun of the third person and of the same gender and number as that noun. If there are several nouns or pronouns, instead of one, the pronoun should of course be in the third person plural.

<i>Does Mr. B. bring his violin?</i>	<i>M. B. apporte-t-il son violon?</i>
<i>Is Miss C. singing her favorite piece?</i>	<i>Melle. C. chante-t-elle son morceau favori?</i>
<i>Are the servants working in the garden?</i>	<i>Les domestiques travaillent-ils dans le jardin?</i>

Do Mr. and Mrs. F. speak well of Paris? M. et Mme. F. parlent-ils *bien de Paris?*

Exp'lanation. In these examples, the nominative being a noun, is placed in French before the verb, which has an interrogative form. The auxiliaries *DOES, IS, ARE, and DO,* are not expressed, according to the rule No. 133; and in the first example, *il* is used, because it relates to Mr. B, which is a masculine singular noun; in the second, *elle* is used, because it relates to *Mademoiselle C.*, which is a feminine singular noun; in the third, *ils* is used, because it relates to *domestiques*, which is a masculine plural noun; and in the fourth, *ils* is used, because it relates to several nouns of different genders.

136. If several personal pronouns are the nominatives of the question, they must be placed before the verb, and a plural pronoun of the person that has the priority must be placed after the verb, which must agree with it in number and person; it should be remembered that the substantive verbal pronouns must be used instead of the active, according to rule No. 88.

I, thou and he, shall we not resist? Toi, lui *et moi, ne résisterons-nous pas?*

Explanation. I, THOU, and HE, are rendered by *toi, lui, et moi*, according to the rule No. 88, and *nous* is used after the verb, because *moi*, being the person that has the priority and being of the first person, the plural nominative pronoun must be also of the first person.

137. As to the negation with a verb, whether it be expressed in English with or without an auxiliary, in French it is always the same, that is, *ne* is used before the verb, and *pas* or *point*, or any other negative adverb after it, with the preposition *de* before the noun that is the object of the negation; and provided that noun is not used in a partitive sense, the negative article *aucun, aucune*, without the preposition *de*, may be used before it, instead of *pas* or *point*, with *ne* before the verb, according to rules No. 23 and 60.

I have no friend, *Je n'ai pas d'ami, or Je n'ai aucun ami.*

Explanation. The second translation, '*je n'ai aucun ami,*' is as correct as the first, and might be used according to the rules Nos. 23 and 60.

138. But if the negation refers to but a part of a thing represented by a noun, *pas* or *point* should be employed with the preposition *de*, without an article before that noun; *aucun* or *nul* would be very wrong.

I have no flour, *Je n'ai pas or point de farine;* not *Je n'ai aucune farine.*

He brought no butter, *Il n'a pas apporté de beurre;* not *Il n'a apporté aucun beurre.*

EXERCISE 65.

I like the religious principles of our preacher, especially when he speaks of the duties of a good christian. We always buy our pleasures with our money, and the esteem of our countrymen with our good conduct. If thou forsaketh thy friends when they are unfortunate, thou deservest their censure. Do you bring my sister's letters and presents? The news-papers of this morning announce the arrival of our minister; he brings very important news from our country.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

139. The imperfect tense, as it is said at No. 98, is used to describe and to relate an action as taking place in a past time, expressing neither the beginning nor the end of that action.

140. This tense is sometimes expressed, in English, by a single word, and sometimes by the imperfect of the verb TO BE, with a gerund or present participle; but in French, it is always expressed by a single word. The imperfect, therefore, I WAS CARRYING, should not be translated by *j'étais portant*, but by *je portais*; and as, when it is expressed by a single word in English, it is difficult to know whether it should be translated by the imperfect, the preterite definite, or the preterite indefinite; to remove the difficulty, it is only necessary to substitute for it the compound form of the imperfect of TO BE and gerund of the verb to be translated, or the words USED TO, with the infinitive of that same verb, and if either of these forms will do, without altering the sense of the sentence, the imperfect should be used in French.

When I was at school I studied latin, greek and mathematics,

Quand j'étais à l'école j'étudiais le latin, le grec et les mathématiques.

When my friend was travelling in that country, he often met beggars,

Quand mon ami voyageait dans ce pays, il rencontrait souvent des mendiants.

Explanation. In the first example, I WAS is translated by the imperfect *J'étais*, because it expresses habit or duration of existence, as I USED TO BE would do; I STUDIED is rendered by the imperfect *j'étudiais*, because it expresses duration or continuation of action, as I WAS STUDYING, or I USED TO STUDY, would do. In the second, WAS TRAVELLING is translated by the imperfect *voyageait*, because the imperfect of TO BE, with a present par-

tiple, is the true sign of the imperfect of the French verb ; *MET* is translated by the imperfect *rencontrait*, because it expresses habit, frequency of action, and because the words *USED TO MEET* might be used instead of it.

141. Sometimes *DID* is used with a verb in the sense of *USED TO*, and then both *DID* and the verb, with which it is expressed, should be rendered by the imperfect, in French ; as in

When he was my professor *I* *Lorsqu'il était mon professeur*
did like pretty well his les- *j'aimais assez bien ses leçons.*
 sons,

From what precedes, we might consider the imperfect as a tense to be used to express an action as present, or as taking place in a past time.

142. There is another form of this tense in English, which is the cause of some difficulty, on account of its similarity with that of the conditional ; it is when *WOULD* is used with a verb to express a repeated or habitual action of that verb, which on that account must be rendered by the imperfect, in French ; and also, when in a conditional phrase, *SHOULD* is used with the verb that is preceded by *IF*, which verb must be, in French, in the imperfect, the conjunction *si* not being used with a conditional as it is in English.

When that man was in our city *Lorsque cet homme était dans*
 he had very bad habits ; he *notre ville il avait de très-*
 often deceived the inhabi- *mauvaises habitudes ; sou-*
 tants, he *would sell* cotton *vent il trompait les habitants,*
 for silk, he *would steal* goods, *il vendait du coton pour de*
 he *would insult* children and *la soie, il volait des marchan-*
take their books, *dises, il insultait les enfants et*
prenait leurs livres.

I should be very glad if Mr. G. *Je serais bien content si M. G.*
 would do that for me, *voulait faire cela pour moi.*

Explanation. In the first example, *was* is translated by *était*, because it is used for *USED TO BE* ; *HAD* is translated by *avait*, because it is used for *USED TO HAVE* ; *DECEIVED* is translated by *trumpait*, because it is used for *USED TO DECEIVE* ; *WOULD SELL* is translated by *vendait*, because it means *USED TO SELL* ; *WOULD STEAL* is translated by *volait*, because *USED TO STEAL* might supply it ; *WOULD INSULT* is rendered by the imperfect *insultait*, because it is used in the sense of *USED TO INSULT* ; and *TAKE* is translated by *prenait*, because it is for *WOULD TAKE*, and in the sense of *USED TO TAKE*. In the second example, *WOULD* is rendered in French by the imperfect tense *voulait*, because the conjunction *IF*, *si*, precedes it.

As to the negation, interrogation, and interrogation with negation, that are expressed with this and other tenses, the rules given for the present will answer for this as well as for the other tenses.

EXERCISE 66.

Yesterday thou wast finishing thy exercise when I was correcting my brother's translation. Were you not drawing your sister's likeness whilst she was studying her lesson? The servants were sweeping the hall whilst we were preparing the parlour. We listened very attentively when our teacher gave to the class the explanations of the grammar. When I was younger I liked the study of chemistry. When I was speaking to Edward he would not listen, he would turn his head and look for some books or some other thing.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

143. The preterite definite, it is said at No. 99, expresses an action, not as taking place like the imperfect, but as having taken place in an entirely elapsed epoch, which epoch must be specified or at least clearly implied; it expresses also that a thing or action was completed at the time to which one refers.

144. In English, the preterite definite is expressed either by a single word, or by the auxiliary DID with the infinitive of a verb; but in French, it never requires but a single word. Therefore, *yesterday I carried or did carry*, must be translated by *hier je portai*, and not *je fis porter*; for this last expression means, *I caused to carry*. The difficulties in the use of this tense consist in confounding it with the imperfect or the preterite indefinite. To remove those difficulties it is necessary to ascertain whether the time of the action of the verb is specified, or at least determined and entirely elapsed; if it is so, provided it is not intended to express USE, HABIT, OR CONTINUATION OF ACTION, (in which case the imperfect should be employed, whatever be the form of the tense in English,) the preterite definite must be used in French; but, were not the time specified nor determined and entirely elapsed, and also, were it not intended to express

USE, HABIT, OR DURATION OF ACTION, the preterite indefinite should be used instead of the preterite definite.

Another sign by which the preterite definite may be ascertained is, when the simple form can be supplied without altering the sense of the phrase by the compound form, namely, DID joined with the infinitive of the verb to be translated.

Last week *I bought* a dictionary, *La semaine dernière j'achetai un dictionnaire.*

When I was at Philadelphia *I received* a letter from France, *Lorsque j'étais à Philadelphie je reçus une lettre de France.*

When *I passed* through Boston *I did not receive* your money, *Lorsque je passai par Boston je ne reçus pas votre argent.*

Explanation. In the first example, I BOUGHT is translated by *j'achetai*, because the time of the action of the verb is specified, and the epoch or period, that is, the WEEK, is entirely elapsed, and because it is not used in the sense of I WAS BUYING, but in the sense of I DID BUY. In the second, I WAS is rendered by the imperfect *j'étais*, because it is used in the sense of I USED TO BE; and I RECEIVED is translated by the preterite definite *je reçus*, because the time of the action of the verb is specified by the circumstance expressed by WHEN I WAS, and because it is not used in the sense of I WAS RECEIVING, but in the sense of I DID RECEIVE. In the third, I PASSED is rendered by the preterite definite *je passai*, because the time of the action of the verb is specified by the adverb WHEN, and because it is used not in the sense of I WAS PASSING, but in the sense of I DID PASS; DID RECEIVE is translated by *reçus*, the preterite definite, because it relates to a time specified and entirely elapsed and is not used in the sense of USED TO RECEIVE.

145. The difference between the preterite definite and the imperfect, is, that the action expressed by the latter is not concluded at the time referred to by the speaker, whilst that expressed by the preterite definite is entirely finished at that very time.

EXERCISE 67.

Thou didst give a great proof of sensibility and courage, when thy friend fell from the window of his room. On last Monday you showed your picture to my father and mother, and they admired the perfection of its likeness. When we gave our party we invited two hundred persons; almost all accepted the invitation and we spent a very agreeable evening; I danced twice with Mr. B., and waltzed five or six times; did you dance often?—No; but I refused several times. Why?—Because I was not very well.

FUTURE TENSE.

146. The future tense, it is said at No. 101, is used to express an action in a time yet to come. In English, it is expressed by SHALL or WILL, prefixed to a verb; but in French, by a single word. This tense presents no difficulty, except when sometimes, in English, the word SHALL or WILL is omitted, as is the case when the present indicative is used for the future, that is, when the action of the verb is not actually taking place, but is to take place at some time yet to come, though that verb is not preceded by SHALL or WILL, in English.

I shall work to-morrow, Je travaillerai demain.
When you arrive you will pre- *Lorsque vous arriverez vous*
sent my respects to your *présenterez mes respects à*
friend, *votre ami.*

Explanation. In the first example, I SHALL WORK is translated by the future *je travaillerai*, because it is the form of the future and there is no other way of rendering it. In the second, ARRIVE is translated by the future *arriverez*, because the action expressed by the verb is to take place at a time yet to come; and WILL PRESENT is translated by *présenterez*, because it is in the future tense having its sign WILL expressed.

147. There is an instance in which the future tense of the English is rendered by the present tense in French. It is when two futures are used in the same sentence, one of which is preceded by the conjunction IF, in French, *si*; then the verb, by which that conjugation is preceded, must be rendered by the present indicative in French; and if the conjunction *si* be before the pronoun *il* or *ils*, the *i* must be supplied by an apostrophe, but only in this case, and not in any other, not even before *elle*, *elles* or *on*.

If you will give that book to *Si vous remettez ce livre à ma*
my sister you will oblige my *sœur vous obligerez mon*
father, *père.*

Explanation. In this example, the future WILL GIVE is rendered by the present indicative *remettez*, because it is preceded by the conjunction *si*; WILL OBLIGE is rendered by the future *obligerez*, because there is no reason to translate it differently.

EXERCISE 68.

To-morrow Mr. Alexis will pay the rent of our house, and then we
 will give the money to our creditors. When thou wilt study the Italian
 language I will buy Italian books, but until that time I shall keep my
 money. As soon as the weather is fine, the servants will carry the

children to the next village. Will you pardon the young ladies if they
 recite their verbs well the next time? On the day of thy admission into
 that society I shall deliver a discourse. Will you not excuse your
 scholars, if they will study better?

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

148. The present conditional, it is said at No. 102, expresses that an action would take place, or a thing WOULD BE under a certain condition, which condition is expressed, in English, by the imperfect tense or the conditional; but in French, it is expressed by the imperfect or its compound the pluperfect. By the imperfect, when it is understood that the action should be present; by the pluperfect, if it is understood that the action should be past.

149. There is, in English, a form of conditional in which the conjunction IF is not used; as in, *were he good he would be happy*, which is the same as, *if he were good he would be happy*; but whatever be the form of the conditional phrase in English, it is always the same in French, that is, the conjunction *si*, which is the translation of IF, is always placed before the imperfect or the pluperfect of the verb, expressing what should be or should have been necessary to complete or to have completed the action of the other verb, and the conditional of this verb.

<i>If I had money I would buy a fine house,</i>	<i>Si j'avais de l'argent j'achèterais une belle maison.</i>
<i>I would travel in the United States if I had a companion,</i>	<i>Je voyagerais dans les États-Unis si j'avais un compagnon.</i>
<i>Were I publishing a book I would employ your printer,</i>	<i>Si je publiais un livre j'emploierais votre imprimeur.</i>
<i>If you would study you would soon speak French,</i>	<i>Si vous étudiez vous parleriez bientôt Français.</i>

Explanation. In the first example, I HAD is rendered by the imperfect *j'avais*, because it is the verb used with the conjunction *si*, and because it relates to the present time; WOULD BUY is rendered by the conditional *j'achèterais*, because it is the verb expressing the action that would take place had it not been for the want of money. In the second, the conditional *voyagerais* is used for the same reason as *j'achèterais* is used in the preceding; so it is with the imperfect *j'avais*. The only difference in the first and second examples

is that the order of the conditional phrase is inverted. In the third example, WERE I PUBLISHING is translated by *si je publiais*, because it is used for IF I WAS PUBLISHING. In the fourth, YOU WOULD STUDY is translated by the imperfect *vous étudiez*, because it is the verb preceded by the conjunction IF, in French *si*, the conjunction *si* being never used before the conditional tense.

EXERCISE 69.

Thou wouldst certainly gain more money with thy talents than with thy trade. If I had time, I would prepare a course of lectures on the principles of that science. Yesterday Mrs. B. announced to my husband that she would sing before our friends, and that Mr. C. would play for her. You would find all the words of your exercise if you would look in the vocabulary. Would not our teachers think that we are unjust if we would not encourage that young man? Were I not giving lessons at that hour, I would not refuse your invitation. If I should play the first part, would you sing that song?

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—PRESENT TENSE.

150. The present of the subjunctive is used after verbs expressing WISH, WILL, DOUBT, FEAR, COMMAND, NECESSITY, and after some conjugations all ending in *que*, given at No. 109, when either of those verbs, or the verb that precedes or follows either of those conjunctions, is in the present indicative, the future, or the present subjunctive. If, as it often happens, the verb that governs that, which is to be put in the subjunctive, is not expressed, but merely implied, its tense must be determined by the sense of the phrase, and thus determine that of the subjunctive.—For the following exercises see No. 109, besides the preceding rule.

I desire *that he will prevent* those abuses, *Je désire* qu'il empêche ces abus.

Although I doubt whether he will be more reasonable, Quoique je doute qu'il soit plus raisonnable.

I shall give orders that they march against the enemy, Je commanderai qu'on marche contre l'ennemi.

Explanation. In the first example, *empêche* is in the subjunctive mood, because the verb *désire* requires it; it is in the present tense, because *désire* is in the present indicative. In the second, *doute* is in the subjunctive mood, because the conjunction *quoique* requires it; and *soit* is also in the subjunctive mood, because the verb *douter* requires it, it is in the present, because *doute* is the present subjunctive. In the third, *marche* is in the present subjunctive, because the verb *commander* requires it; it is in the present, because *commanderai* is in the future.

⁵⁰our ^{105 37}request ³⁸be the ³⁸subject of the ¹⁰¹consideration of the court. I shall be ^{62 100}ready in case you arrive, for that affair. ^{150 55}

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

153. When the subjunctive mood is to be used, see No. 109, the verb which is to be in that mood must be in the imperfect, if the English corresponding verb is in one of the past tenses or in the conditional; also, if it is governed by another verb, should that verb be in the conditional or in one of the past tenses, the governed verb must be in the imperfect subjunctive.

His father wished *that he should avoid* the society of that man, *Son père désirait qu'il évitât la société de cet homme.*

I would have commanded *that they should bring* some wine, *J'aurais commandé qu'on apportât du vin, mais je n'avais pas d'argent.*
but I had no money,

Explanation. In the first example, *évîtât* is in the subjunctive mood, because the verb *désirer* requires it; it is in the imperfect, because *désirait* is in one of the past tenses. In the second, *apportât* is in the subjunctive mood, because *commander* requires it; it is in the imperfect, because *j'aurais commandé* is in the conditional.

EXERCISE 71.

⁹⁸I was ⁹²very often ¹³¹embarrassed, ¹⁰⁹although I ¹⁵³spoke several languages. ^{98 & 25}Was he not ⁹²always ¹³²invited ¹⁰⁹although he never ⁹²presented ¹⁵³his letters of ⁴⁹re-commendation? ⁸⁷They did ¹⁴⁴postpone ⁵²their celebration ¹⁰⁹that we might ¹⁵³stay with them. ⁸⁴I left ¹⁰⁴the partnership ³⁹on condition ¹⁰⁹that thou wouldst ¹⁵³continue ³⁵the same ⁶²business. ³⁷The constable ⁹⁹placed ⁴⁹his men ¹⁰⁹in order ⁴⁰that the thieves might ¹⁵³fall into ⁵²their hands. ⁹⁹He proposed ⁵⁵that arrangement ¹⁰⁹that you might ¹⁵³not neglect ⁸⁷his work. ^{98 & 109}We wished ⁸⁷that they might ¹⁵³prosper ⁵²in their trade, ¹⁰⁹that they might ⁸⁷increase ¹⁵³their fortune, ^{87 151 & 153 52}and pay ⁶²their immense debts.

PRETERITE SUBJUNCTIVE.

154. When the subjunctive mood is to be used, see No. 109, the verb that must be in that mood, must be in the preterite instead of the present, when the verb that governs it is in the present or the future, and if the idea expressed by the verb in the subjunctive mood refers to a past tense; as

I doubt } that you *have* *Je doute* } *que vous ayez*
I shall doubt } *studied,* *Je douterai* } *étudié.*

But if the idea expressed by the verb in the subjunctive, should

relate to a present or future tense, according to the rules No. 150 & 110, that verb should be in the present subjunctive.

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

155. When the subjunctive mood is to be used, see No. 109, the verb which must be in that mood must be in the pluperfect instead of the imperfect, when the verb that governs it is in one of the past tenses or conditional, and if the idea expressed by the verb in the subjunctive mood refers to a past tense; as

I doubted	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{that you} \\ \text{had} \\ \text{studied,} \end{array} \right.$	<i>Je doutais</i> or	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{que} \\ \text{vous eussiez} \\ \text{étudié.} \end{array} \right.$
I have doubted		<i>Je doutai</i>	
I should doubt		<i>J'ai douté</i>	
I should have doubted		<i>Je douterais</i>	
I had doubted		<i>J'aurais douté</i>	
		<i>J'avais douté</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

EXERCISE 72.—See No. 120.

Let the mayor of the city reward well the services of his officers, and he will be well protected. Prepare the rooms of our boarders, for they will be here this evening. Let us change our bad habits and cultivate the religious principles of our ancestors. Let the rulers of a nation consult often the opinion of the people, and they will easily find the line of their duty. Protect the poor and be just towards the rich, and you will deserve the respect, esteem and consideration of your fellow citizens. John, work during the day, sleep in the night, and thou wilt have much time. Study the greatness of God in the works of nature.

INFINITIVE MOOD.—PRESENT TENSE.

For the use of this tense, see No. 123 and following.

EXERCISE 73.

NOTE. When the number 125 is over a preposition, it is to find in the table the French verb which is to be used to translate the English verb which precedes that preposition, and to see which preposition that French verb requires before the following infinitive or noun.

The difficulty of finding truth is sometimes very great for some men. For reaping, one is under the necessity of sowing. The faculty of thinking and judging is the distinctive characteristic of the first creature of the Almighty. To command is the privilege of a general, whilst to

obey is the duty of a soldier. The custom of singing the praises of
 God is as ancient as the knowledge of his works. God created man to
 command over all the other creatures. The honest man never seeks to
 trouble his neighbour in the enjoyment of his rights. I never expected
 to correct his inclination, and I think that he will always be very un-
 happy.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

156. The present participle or gerund is used in English, after any preposition except to; but in French, it is used only after the preposition *en*, being the translation of IN, BY, and sometimes WITH, expressing manner or time. It is used also without a preposition, in French, at the commencement of a phrase, or in a phrase as an adjective; and when used as an adjective, it agrees in gender and number with the noun or pronoun to which it relates; if it is not used as an adjective, it is invariable. It is used as an adjective when it has no object, and is not governed by the preposition *en*; if it is the object of *en*, either expressed or understood, or if it has an object, it is not an adjective and therefore does not change in its termination. If there are several present participles together, the prepositions *en* must be repeated before every one.

Mr. B. is a man of good disposition, often obliging his friends,

M. B. est un homme d'un bon caractère, obligeant souvent ses amis.

Persons loving every body, generally love nobody,

Les personnes aimant tout le monde, n'aiment ordinairement personne.

Loving persons have more enjoyments than others,

Les personnes aimantes ont plus de jouissances que les autres.

Miss C. spends her time in working,

Mademoiselle C. passe son temps en travaillant.

Those men excited his anger by refusing to answer,

Ces hommes excitèrent sa colère en refusant de répondre.

Explanation. In the first example, *obligeant*, and *aimant* in the second, are invariable, because they have an object. In the third, *aimantes* is in the feminine plural, because it is used without an object or a preposition, and relates to *personnes*, which is a feminine noun in the plural number. In the fourth, *en* is translated by *en*, because it expresses

manner, and *travaillant* is invariable, because it is preceded by the preposition *en*. In the fifth, *en* is rendered by *en*, because it expresses manner, and *refusant* is invariable, because it is preceded by the preposition *en*.

EXERCISE 74.

One finds the true character of a man or a woman by residing with him or with her. You will arrive at that place by passing at the foot of that mountain. By looking attentively into the eyes of a man we sometimes penetrate the truth of his words. Miss D. captivated the affection of Mr. F. by singing Mozart's music. In publishing his opinions he proved the falsehood of his enemies. We spent the day in talking, eating, singing, dancing and playing. I have improved my health by travelling in the different countries of Europe. The chief of a nation gains the love of his people by acts of clemency.

157. When the active or nominative pronoun *WE* or *THEY* is used in an indefinite sense, that is, when it relates to no particular persons, it is generally translated into French by *on*, with the verb, of which it is the nominative, in the third person singular; the words *PEOPLE*, *FOLKS* or *SOME FOLKS*, and *ONE*, when used as nominatives of a verb, are also rendered in French by *on* :

They do that when it is necessary. *On fait cela quand c'est nécessaire.*
People like to be noticed, *On aime à être remarqué.*
Folks, or *some folks*, like to talk. *On aime à parler.*

Explanation. In the first examples, *THEY*, not relating to any particular person, is rendered by *on*, with the next verb in the third person singular, because *on* is a pronoun of the third person singular; see Nos. 87 and 89. In the second, *PEOPLE* is translated by *on*, because it is the nominative of *LIKE*; and *aime* is in the third person singular, because it has *on* for its nominative. In the third, *FOLKS* is rendered by *on* for the reasons given for the word *PEOPLE* of the preceding example.

COMPOUND TENSES AND PAST PARTICIPLE.

For the past participle see Nos. 131 and 132, and for the compound tenses see references.

EXERCISE 75.

When I have worked much I feel the want of repose. You had changed your dress when I arrived. After thou hadst announced to the public

⁵³thy intention of ¹²⁴teaching, the number of ³⁷thy scholars ⁴⁸increased ¹⁴³very much. We shall ¹⁰⁷have prepared ³⁷the dinner before ⁵¹your arrival. ⁷⁸Last Monday I would have paid ¹⁰⁸my rent, if I had not lent ⁴⁷all my money to ⁴⁷my cousin. Yesterday Mr. B. scolded ⁹⁹my brother for not having ⁴⁷recited ²⁷his lessons ¹⁰⁵very well. Would you not have given ⁶²your consent to ⁴⁷that transaction, if it had been ⁹²advantageous for you? I have not yet ²⁷examined ¹⁰⁸your verbs, because I have had to correct ⁵¹the exercises of the ⁵⁵other class.

EXERCISE 76.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.—PRESENT TENSE.

¹³⁴Do you punish ¹³³your scholars when they do not fulfil ⁵¹their duties? ⁸⁷Dost thou finish ¹³³thy great work on the miseries of this world? We ²²choose ¹³³the things necessary for our expedition. I furnish ⁵²all the materials of the building, and he pays ⁴⁰the workmen. The mayor of Boston ³⁷is embellishing the city, but he does not enrich ¹³⁸his fellow-citizens. Do ²²you not bless ¹³⁴your benefactors very often? Is he polishing ⁴⁰the buttons of my coat? Are they ⁵²not disgracing ⁵⁴the dignity of their ancestors' name? The old hermit ³⁷is converting ⁶²all the Indians of that tribe, and ¹³³thus is increasing ³⁷the number of the true servants of God.

EXERCISE 77.

IMPERFECT TENSE

I was ¹⁴⁰demolishing ⁴⁷my house in the neighbouring village, when Mr. C. ³⁷was building ⁶²his beautiful castle on the top of that steep mountain. ¹⁴⁰The learned members of that scientific society always ⁴⁹succeeded ⁷⁶in their projects when they kept ⁵⁵their plan ⁶²secret. Wast thou not frequently ⁴⁰warning ⁹²thy imprudent partners of the great dangers of that extensive ⁷⁵speculation? During that unfortunate war, the officers of the army ⁹²constantly ¹³⁹betrayed ³⁷the government. That ambitious prince was constantly ⁵⁵enlarging ⁷⁵his states, and thus excited ¹⁴⁰the enmity of his neighbours and the jealousy of the other monarchs. Did Mr. B. often ⁹²punish ¹⁴¹his indolent scholars?

EXERCISE 78.

PRETERITE TENSE.

When the industrious inhabitants of that new country abolished that barbarous and cruel custom they acted very wisely. At the unexpected approach of our enemy, we buried all our money and silver-plate, with valuable jewels, in a corner of our large garden. Did I not applaud as much as you, when the strong Mr. D. seized his corpulent antagonist? Why didst thou not accomplish thy solemn promise, when we united our children for ever? Did you punish my son, when he did not recite his lessons perfectly well? Mr. R. grew pale, when I spoke of his shameful conduct towards Mr. and Mrs. S. Jane, didst thou stuff the turkey yesterday morning?

EXERCISE 79.

FUTURE TENSE.

Will this white liquid lessen the hardness of that black matter? Wilt thou not soon terminate thy improper remarks on that uninteresting subject? I shall buy all your goods, as soon as you will warrant that they are of good quality. The intemperate habits of that young man will not only weaken his constitution, but even will cause the loss of his credit and fortune. I shall soon cure his friend of all his infirmities, even of his worst habits. Will you warn soon your relations of my intentions on that important subject? Will not this consideration soften his temper? Wilt thou widen the too narrow doors of thy house, and the gates of thy yard and garden?

EXERCISE 80.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

We would whiten those ornaments if we had a sufficient quantity of paint. Thou wouldst dazzle all the spectators with that brilliant dress. Would she not blush at the sight of that picture? If I were you, I would banish all fears from my mind. Would you not stun our ears with the horrible sound of that sharp instrument? If we did not water the plants of our garden every day in summer, certainly they would not blow. Were you as rich as the owner of that house, would you not embellish

⁵³ that fence and the ³⁸ upper part of ⁶² that gate? ⁷⁵ Should I ¹⁴⁹ establish ⁴⁹ his ⁷⁶ poor son, he would ¹⁴⁹ cherish ³⁸ the memory of ⁴⁷ my services and ¹⁴⁹ bless ⁶² all ⁴⁷ my numerous ⁶² family.

EXERCISE 81.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—PRESENT OR FUTURE.

I ⁹⁷ commence ⁵⁵ that ⁶² troublesome affair, ¹⁰⁹ that ⁴⁷ my friend ¹⁵⁰ may succeed in ⁴⁹ his ⁶² extensive enterprise. ¹⁰⁹ Although I ¹¹⁰ punish ⁴⁹ his partner, I ¹⁰¹ shall speak in ⁴⁹ favour of ⁹⁷ his request. I ⁵⁵ mention ¹⁰⁹ that ¹⁵⁰ circumstance ⁴⁰ that ⁶² thou ⁴¹ mayest ⁶² reflect on the ⁹² unfortunate effects of ⁹⁷ an ⁴⁰ imprudent ³⁸ conduct. ¹⁰⁹ He ⁸⁷ often ¹⁵⁰ flatters and ⁹⁷ rewards ⁴⁰ the servants of ³⁸ the house, ¹⁰⁹ that ⁸⁷ they ¹⁵⁰ may ⁴⁹ obey ⁵³ his ⁵⁵ orders ^{22 & 133} without ⁶² reluctance. ³⁸ Although ⁷⁵ you ⁵⁰ always ⁷⁶ warn ⁹⁷ your ¹⁵⁰ son of ⁵⁰ his ³⁸ ignorance in ¹¹⁰ that ⁵⁰ kind of ³⁸ business, ⁷⁵ he ³⁸ does ¹¹⁰ not ⁵⁰ act ³⁸ with ¹¹⁰ all ⁵⁰ the ³⁸ necessary ¹¹⁰ caution. ⁵⁰ Our ³⁸ good ¹¹⁰ old ⁵⁰ father ¹¹⁰ wishes ⁵⁰ that ¹¹⁰ we ⁵⁰ may ¹¹⁰ finish ⁵⁰ our ¹¹⁰ works ⁵⁰ before ¹¹⁰ the ⁵⁰ end ¹¹⁰ of ⁵⁰ this ¹¹⁰ month. ⁵⁰ I ¹¹⁰ shall ⁵⁰ arrive, ¹¹⁰ provided ⁵⁰ the ¹¹⁰ frost ⁵⁰ hardens ¹¹⁰ the ⁵⁰ road.

EXERCISE 82.

IMPERFECT.

¹⁰⁹ Although in ³⁷ the ⁴⁷ commencement of ¹¹⁰ my ¹¹⁰ establishment I ¹¹⁰ succeeded ¹¹⁰ very ²² well, ⁹² I ¹⁴⁴ did ⁴⁷ not ⁴⁸ much ⁹⁸ increase ²² my ²² fortune. ¹⁰⁹ Thy ¹⁵³ conduct ³⁸ was ³⁸ not ³⁸ without ⁴⁸ reproach, ¹⁰⁹ though ¹¹⁰ thou ¹⁵³ didst ¹⁵³ act ¹⁵³ honestly ¹⁵³ and ¹⁵³ according ¹⁵³ to ¹⁵³ the ¹⁵³ custom ¹⁵³ of ¹⁵³ thy ¹⁵³ country. ⁵¹ Although ^{22 & 144} Mr. D. ³⁷ desired ¹⁴³ that ⁴¹ you ⁷⁶ might ¹⁵³ accomplish ¹⁵³ your ¹⁵³ promise ¹⁵³ you ¹⁵³ did ¹⁵³ not ¹⁵³ succeed. ¹⁰⁹ The ¹⁵³ judge ³⁷ gave ¹⁴³ a ⁴¹ bad ⁷⁶ decision, ¹⁰⁹ although ¹⁵³ he ³⁷ reflected ³⁹ on ³⁹ that ³⁹ case ³⁹ more ³⁹ than ³⁹ a ³⁹ week. ⁹⁸ The ⁴⁰ landlord ¹⁵³ of ⁵² the ⁵² hotel ⁵² preferred ⁵² that ⁵² the ⁵² boarders ⁵² should ⁵² furnish ⁵² their ⁵² fuel. ⁹⁹ Yesterday ⁴¹ we ⁷⁶ bought ¹⁰⁹ a ¹⁵³ small ⁴⁰ spit, ⁵⁰ that ⁵⁴ we ⁵⁴ might ⁵⁴ roast ⁵⁴ the ⁵⁴ birds ⁵⁴ of ⁵⁴ our ⁵⁴ brother's ⁵⁴ chase. ^{18 & 102} I ⁵⁵ would ¹⁰⁹ pay ¹⁵³ that ⁵¹ sum ⁵¹ that ⁵¹ you ⁵¹ might ⁵¹ fulfil ⁵¹ your ⁵¹ promise.

EXERCISE 83.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

¹²⁰ John, ⁵⁴ blacken ⁸⁷ Mr. F.'s ⁶² frames, ⁶² for ⁶² they ⁶² are ⁶² almost ⁶² white. ¹²⁰ Let ¹²⁰ Mr. ¹²⁰ L. ³⁹ warrant ⁴⁹ the ¹²⁰ honesty ⁴⁹ of ¹²⁰ his ¹²⁰ friend ¹²⁰ and ¹²⁰ be ¹²⁰ his ¹²⁰ security, ¹⁰¹ and ¹⁰¹ I ¹⁰¹ shall ¹⁰¹ trade ¹⁰¹ with ¹⁰¹ him, ⁸⁴ even ⁴¹ for ⁷⁵ a ¹²⁰ considerable ⁴⁰ amount. ¹²⁰ Let ⁷⁶ us ⁷⁶ warn ⁷⁶ the ⁷⁶ young ⁷⁶ ladies ⁷⁶ of ⁷⁶ that ⁷⁶ school, ⁷⁶ of ⁷⁶ the ⁷⁶ mischievous ⁷⁶ intentions ⁷⁶ of ⁷⁶ those ⁷⁶ boys. ¹²⁰ Banish ¹²⁰ from ¹²⁰ your ¹²⁰ mind ¹²⁰ those ¹²⁰ puerile ¹²⁰ fears, ¹²⁰ and ¹²⁰ you ¹²⁰ will ¹²⁰ inspire ¹²⁰ more ¹²⁰ confi-

dence and be more successful. Let the merchants of that distant country fulfil their engagements, and we shall favour the sale of their goods. James, fill up those bottles with the white wine of the largest cask. Invest the place with three thousand horse, and the war will soon end.

EXERCISE 84.

INFINITIVE MOOD.—PRESENT TENSE.

See note of exercise 73, page 144.

The farmer was obliged to feed the fowls and rabbits of his landlord. The society of a virtuous woman has the power of polishing the mind of a young man, and of softening the roughness of his manners. The king of France increased the number of his troops without strengthening his throne, because he neglected the means of gaining the love of his people. We always call doctors to cure our diseases, but their remedies are not always efficacious. The ambitious chieftain is generally tormented by the desire of subjecting nations and enlarging his dominions. To bless is the duty of a minister of God. A severe law was proposed to abolish that custom.

EXERCISE 85.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

In punishing the wicked and rewarding the good, a magistrate exercises the true principles of justice. Mr. A. by seizing that excellent opportunity, showed his sound judgment and wisdom. In polishing the cruel manners of that barbarous people, the missionary evidently showed the power of his extraordinary benevolence and virtue, and even the truth of the christian religion. By widening that narrow door, Mr. R. will give a very fine appearance to the front of his house. That interesting lady displayed in growing, all the graces of the most perfect beauty. In uniting that young man and young lady, they will establish their happiness.

EXERCISE 86.

COMPOUND TENSES.

This afternoon I polished perfectly well your buckles and the buttons of your coat. Before last Monday my mother had finished all the

necessary preparations for the feast of to-morrow. When the minister of that place had warned all his parishioners, they avoided more carefully the occasions of sinning. We shall have accomplished our promise before the critical time of that disagreeable meeting. Would you not have applauded Mr. B. if he had well played the tragedy of Coriolanus? After having well fulfilled the duties of his important office, Mr. D. refused a re-election. I should be very sorry if you had acted towards me so severely.

EXERCISE 87.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.—PRESENT TENSE.

There are only seven regular verbs belonging to this conjugation ; viz. *apercevoir*, TO PERCEIVE ; *concevoir*, TO CONCEIVE, OR TO UNDERSTAND ; *décevoir*, TO DECEIVE ; *devoir*, TO OWE ; *percevoir*, TO RECEIVE, OR TO COLLECT (money) ; *recevoir*, TO RECEIVE ; and *redevoir*, TO OWE STILL.

I am always glad when I receive my lesson of music. Dost thou perceive the generosity of Mr. P. in his conduct towards thee and thy unfortunate brother? My cousin does not conceive the extent of his sister's love for the study of science. If in these critical times we owe much, the payment of our debts will be very difficult, and perhaps impossible. Do you not receive regularly your French paper from New York? Yes, sir; but the publishers owe the three last numbers to our society. Is not that man deceiving the public by announcing so very extraordinary things? Do you owe much money to the cashier of the great bank?

EXERCISE 88.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

When I was lodging with thee, wast thou not deceiving the landlord of the house? When we settled our accounts, I was still owing two hundred dollars to Mr. C. Why did not Mr. D. dine with us yesterday? Because he was too much engaged; he was collecting the money of the government. When you was in the state of Pennsylvania, did you not very often receive the visit of Mr. L.? Yes, and we did not conceive

⁴⁹his object. Yesterday morning those gentlemen owed ten thousand dollars to our family ; but in the afternoon they paid five thousand dollars, and this evening Mr. M. will pay the remainder for them ; but now ⁸⁷they owe still five thousand dollars.

EXERCISE 89.

PRETERITE TENSE.

When I ⁹⁹conceived that project, I was ⁵⁵preparing my accounts for the settlement of my eldest son. Didst thou not perceive Miss N. when we were together at the theatre ? My grandfather and grand uncle collected ninety-nine thousand dollars during the last two months of January and February. In the course of a year Miss C. deceived three times that handsome but unfortunate young man. When we were at Washington, we received three visits from Mrs. V. On last Saturday you received the books and paintings of our brother, the doctor. Did not your brother George receive yesterday a reprimand from his teacher ?

EXERCISE 90.

FUTURE TENSE.

When I shall perceive the light house, I shall be less uneasy, and my joy will be great. Wilt thou always deceive thy best friends ? Will you still owe much to your first partner, if you pay those twenty-one thousand dollars for him to Mr. D ? On the next day after to-morrow, the boarders will owe three hundred dollars to their landlady, Mrs. B. Certainly Mr. G. will not deceive the hopes of his intimate friend's interesting, beautiful and virtuous sister. Shall I soon receive my share of the benefits of our trade ? You will receive nothing this year, because the greater part of our goods is still in the store.

EXERCISE 91.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

Should I not receive the congratulations of all the inhabitants of this city if I succeeded in my project ? Would Mr. P. perceive the mistakes of his scholars in their translation from English into French, if they were not very gross ? Wouldst thou not deceive the hopes of thy poor old mother, if thou didst not study much ? We should owe much money,

if Mr. F. did not pay our debts often. Would you not receive my excuses, if my exercise was not perfect, and if I should not recite my lessons? Were not those young men studious, punctual and attentive, they would certainly deceive the expectation of their generous but very poor father.

EXERCISE 92.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—PRESENT and FUTURE.

I wish that you may receive very agreeable news from Europe. I am relating that circumstance to Miss C. that her cousin may not disappoint her hopes. I give these explanations to your brothers that they may conceive the great difficulties of that extraordinary enterprise. In this letter I enter into several particulars, that thou mayest easily perceive the important advantages of my disinterested proposition. Although I generally receive the friends of my friends, I refused the visit of that man from our small village. The government desires that you may collect its money in all the cities of this state.

EXERCISE 93.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Although I deceived the expectation of our opponents, I was not entirely certain of my success. I placed a blue signal at my window that Mr. L. might perceive that we were ready for the departure. Thou wert not faithful although thou receivedst all the proofs of our confidence. Mr. L. justified the conduct of his brother's wife, that we might conceive a better opinion of her intentions. Those gentlemen had not a great credit, although they collected the money of the city. Although you owed your immense fortune to the credit and exertions of Mr. S., you were very unjust towards him. I desired that he might receive that appointment, that he might pay his expenses.

EXERCISE 94.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Receive the most sincere congratulations of thy best friend. Let the flattering promise of that studious scholar not deceive our hope. Let those indolent young men perceive their ignorance, and they will per-

⁹²haps ¹⁰¹be ⁶²more ⁴⁰punctual ⁵²at the lessons of their instructors. Let ¹²⁰us owe nothing ²³to those dangerous ⁵⁵men, because soon we should pay ⁶²a too high ¹⁰²price ⁴¹for their services. Receive the religious instructions of our minister, and you will soon be ⁹²in favour ¹⁰¹of his doctrine. Let ⁴⁹us not deceive ^{120 & 22}that old gentleman, for his kindness towards us has ⁸⁴been ¹⁰⁴truly ⁶²disinterested. Receive ¹²⁰the ³⁹money ⁵⁵for those bills, and afterwards pay ¹²⁰all ⁶²my ⁴⁷debts ⁵⁵in this city.

EXERCISE 95.

INFINITIVE MOOD.—PRESENT TENSE.

The ³⁹vain ⁷⁵man ⁹⁷has ³⁷seldom ¹²⁴the power ⁴⁰of perceiving ⁴⁹the effects of his ^{62 & 79}ridiculous ⁶²and disgusting ³⁸manners. The difficulty ¹²⁴of conceiving ⁴⁰the designs of their superiors ⁵²excited ¹⁰⁴the suspicion ³⁷of the subalterns. In order ⁴⁴to receive ⁹²marks of distinction, Mr. R. is constantly ¹³³flattering ⁴⁰the inhabitants of his state. The members ⁴⁹of the council, at their last meeting, ³⁸gave ⁷⁵to Mr. F. the delicate office ¹²⁴of collecting ⁴⁰the taxes ³⁸of the city. Mr. L. ⁹⁷tries ⁹²often ¹²⁵to deceive ⁴⁹his customers, but if he continues, ⁹⁷he will ⁹²soon ¹⁰¹have ²³nobody ¹²⁵to deceive. I should ¹⁰²like ¹²⁵to conceive ³⁹the object of ⁵⁵that man, when he continues ⁹⁷to receive ¹²⁵in his house ⁴⁹the worst ¹¹⁸of men.

EXERCISE 96.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

We ⁹⁷show ⁴¹a generous ⁶²disposition and a charitable ⁴¹heart, by perceiving ⁶²only ¹³⁰the merits ²⁶of our ⁴⁰acquaintances ⁵⁰without ¹²⁷perceiving ⁵²their defects. The wise ⁷⁵man ⁹⁷perceives ⁴⁹his littleness ¹³⁰by conceiving ³⁸the truth ³⁸of the boundless greatness of the Creator of the universe. In receiving ⁷⁵the news ⁵⁵of that disaster, I was ⁹⁹naturally ¹³¹led ³⁸to the contemplation ³⁹of the striking uncertainty of the things of this world, and especially of our projects. By ¹³⁰deceiving ⁴⁹his scholars, ⁴¹a teacher ⁹²will ¹⁰¹never ¹²⁵succeed ³⁸in getting ⁵²the confidence of their parents nor acquaintances. In ¹³⁰collecting ⁴⁰the taxes of the inhabitants of this place, Mr. L. ⁵⁵fulfils ⁹⁷a very ⁴¹difficult ⁸²task. ⁷⁵

EXERCISE 97.

COMPOUND TENSES.

⁵⁵This morning I ¹⁰⁴received ⁶²several important letters from several merchants of Baltimore. Before ³⁸the publication of Mr. L.'s ⁵⁴book, thou

hadst¹⁰⁵ conceived³⁷ the⁴⁸ plan of thy grammar. After Mr. C. had¹⁰⁶ collected two thirds⁴⁰ of the taxes³⁹ of the state he left⁹⁹ the country, carrying³⁷ with him at least two hundred thousand dollars. I hope⁹⁷ that when we shall have¹⁰⁷ finished⁵⁰ our studies, we shall not have²² deceived¹⁰⁷ the expectation³⁹ of our friends. Those merchants would have owed¹⁰⁸ three hundred thousand dollars, if Mr. K. had not paid²² a part¹⁰⁵ of their debts⁴¹. After hav-¹²⁹ ing perceived³⁹ the ambitious intention⁶² of the government Mr. F. changed^{99 & 14} his opinion⁴⁴.

EXERCISE 98.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.—PRESENT TENSE.

Do you hear¹³⁴ the noise³⁷ of the waves⁴⁰ of the sea? Thou expectest³⁸ the bishop; but I think⁹⁷ he will not be here before²² the end¹⁰¹ of the next month. Does Mr. C. sell¹³⁵ well the goods⁴⁰ of his factory?—Yes, very well. Why do you forbid¹³⁴ the sale³⁸ of those books?—Because their principles, being⁵⁵ contrary⁶² to the doctrine³⁸ of the christian religion, corrupt⁷⁵ the manners⁹⁷ of our young men. We never return⁵⁰ their instruments⁷⁶ to the students⁹² when they leave⁸⁷ the institution. Dost thou pretend⁹⁷ that Mr. B. does¹³⁴ not hear²² very well the mistakes¹³³ of pronunciation? Do you not lose^{25 & 133} your time⁵¹ in studying that useless though interesting science?

EXERCISE 99.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

When I was studying¹⁴⁰ mineralogy I often melted³⁵ several metals together. Wert thou not losing^{25 & 140} when I arrived⁹⁹ with our cousin? Has John cleaned¹⁰⁵ the yard?—Not yet. Why?—Because he was splitting³⁸ wood for the kitchen. When that servant⁵⁵ was in our house we often condescended⁹⁹ to his wishes, that he might fulfil⁵⁰ his task with more satisfaction⁹² and zeal. If you were extending⁴⁹ your limits beyond that point, your envious neighbour would be discontented. Whenever a friend spoke¹⁰⁹ to that child, he would answer¹⁴⁰ with simplicity⁵¹ and with an astonishing precision. Was you not selling¹⁰² something to Miss E. when I passed¹³¹ by your store?

EXERCISE 100.

PRETERITE TENSE.

In his judgment of last Wednesday the judge of the court confounded the innocent with the guilty. Did I not descend the hill as soon as you showed the flag on the oak of the valley? When I called, thou heards^t my voice very distinctly, but thou didst not answer. As we had no good guide, we unfortunately lost our way in that thick forest. You excited the jealousy of the other officers of the regiment when you pretended to occupy the first rank in the procession. The general in chief restored the goods, when the merchants of the city presented their request. The sheriff hung the five pirates together according to the judgment of the court of the state.

EXERCISE 101.

FUTURE TENSE.

That dangerous man will spread the poison of his false doctrines in the minds of those innocent persons. When wilt thou shear the sheep of the farm?—On the first Monday of the next month. Before thy departure for Europe, I shall sell my library. Wilt thou not buy some books?—If the magistrate interrogates our clients, we will answer for them. Will you bend your nets before us when we shall be at your mill? The executioners will hang the criminals before next Tuesday. Will you not twist that cord when you tie together those two pieces of wood? Shall I not hear the accusations of my adversaries?

EXERCISE 102.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

If last year I had bought a great quantity of that kind of goods, now I should lose in my business. If the fowls were fat, they would lay eggs oftener. They would melt again the bell of our church if it was not good. We should expect the company of Mr. B. this evening, if his wife was not very sick. Would you not sell your house to Mr. C. if he paid the two-thirds cash? If in your writings you attacked the character of the members of that society, would they not answer? Would that dog bite my son, were he not with you? If I should borrow money from Mr. F. he would pretend that he has not one single cent.

EXERCISE 103.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—PRESENT OR FUTURE.

Hector gives those jewels to my children, that I may wait the result of his speculation. I explain thus those rules, that thou mayest not confound the first with the second. Your intimate friend Eugene is far from being proud, although he descends from a very respectable family. We will borrow ten thousand dollars, that we may extend the limits of our property. James, to-morrow I shall buy a new saw, that you may easily saw all the wood for our consumption during the winter. I hope that you will soon prepare the large furnace, that the founders may melt several thousand pounds of lead and pewter.

EXERCISE 104.

IMPERFECT.

Last year I stopped my extensive business, that I might not lose all my fortune. Yesterday in the church I spoke very loud, that thou mightest hear distinctly every word of my discourse. Although my brother did never answer, he certainly received more than twenty letters from your friend David. Miss A spoke low, that we might not hear her conversation with Mrs. B. That little roguish boy concealed your axe, that you might not split the wood of the neighbour. On the first of the month of April, Mr. C. gave orders that his farmers should shear his sheep and sell the lambs of the flock and the wool.

EXERCISE 105.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Confound your wicked adversaries by publishing your political principles. Let him extend his powers, and he will be not only powerful, out even invincible. Let us not lose the time of our youth, for it is too precious. Hang only two or three of those robbers, and your citizens will be quiet in their houses. Let our enemies descend from the mountain, and they will find less advantage in the plain. Do not expect my wife, because she is not well. Prohibit the sale of strong liquors, and you will stop their dreadful effects in society. Let us undertake that great work, and we shall have as much occupation as the other workmen.

EXERCISE 106.

INFINITIVE MOOD.—PRESENT TENSE.

We are here to hear the music of Mr. H; I admire his compositions, because although they are generally very simple, they are not only beautiful but also excellent. I have given to the intendant of my farms the permission of selling the half of the fruit of our orchards for the benefit of the poor of that unfortunate village. The fear of losing the office of governor of that state, has caused a very great revolution in the principles and opinions of that ambitious politician; for he neglects his former friends of a certain party, and favours their enemies. Our professor Mr. L. has given this problem for to-morrow morning at ten o'clock.

EXERCISE 107.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

On hearing the sad news of the horrible death of her husband, Mrs. P. fell almost dead upon the floor. Thieves lessen the enormity of their thefts by restoring the stolen goods to the owners. Yesterday morning I tore my new white gown in descending the hill with you. The emperor of the French, the great Napoleon, excited the jealousy of the other potentates of Europe, by extending the limits of his empire. In losing his reputation a man loses his best treasure; for with it he loses also his friends, the consideration of the public and his credit. A slanderer is a very dangerous man; he is like a dog biting his defenceless victim without barking.

EXERCISE 108.

COMPOUND TENSES and PAST PARTICIPLE.

At the commencement of this year I sold my farm to a very rich gentleman of this city. When you finished your work, the citizen king had already forbidden the publication of liberal principles. Soon after I had heard the piercing sound of the trumpet, I called my servant and I prepared my arms for the battle. As soon as we shall have heard Mrs. M.'s concert, we will pass two or three hours at your house. Would you not have extended your remarks on that important point, if you

^{22 & 105} had not been ill? ³⁷ The judge ^{22 & 104} did not condemn the criminal, without hav- ³⁷ ing heard ⁴⁹ his witnesses and his defence. ⁴⁹ Had you not sold your book, ^{25 & 105} when I met your first clerk? ⁵¹

PASSIVE VERBS.

158. Properly speaking there are no passive verbs in French, nor in English; and what is called a passive verb in those languages is the combination or conjugation of the substantive verb *être*, TO BE, with the past participle of an active verb, which past participle never varies in English, but in French, must agree in gender and number with its nominative, the same as the adjective.

Therefore, if the nominative is masculine singular, the past participle must be masculine singular; if it is feminine singular, the past participle must be feminine singular; if it is plural, the past participle must be plural, masculine or feminine, according to the gender of the nominative.

To establish a distinction in the tenses of the passive verbs, those, that are formed with the simple tenses of the verb *être*, will be called simple tenses, and those that are formed with the compound tenses of the verb *être*, that is, with *avoir* and *être* together, will be called compound tenses.

INFINITIVE MOOD.—MODE DE L'INFINITIF.

SIMPLE TENSES, <i>Temps Simples.</i>		COMPOUND TENSES, <i>Temps Composés.</i>	
PRESENT,	<i>Présent.</i>	PRETERITE,	<i>Prétérit.</i>
To be loved,	<i>Être aimé or aimée.</i>	To have been loved,	<i>Avoir été aimé or aimée, aimés or aimées.</i>
PRESENT PARTICIPLE,	<i>Participe Présent.</i>	PRETERITE ANTERIOR,	<i>Prétérit Antérieur.</i>
Being loved,	<i>Êtant aimé or aimée.</i>	Having been loved,	<i>Ayant été aimé or aimés.</i>
	<i>„ aimés or aimées.</i>		<i>„ aimés or aimées.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.—MODE DE L'INDICATIF.

PRESENT,		PRETERITE INDEFINITE, <i>Prétérit indéfini.</i>	
Now	<i>Maintenant</i>	I do not know when	<i>Je ne sais quand</i>
I am loved,	<i>Je suis aimé or aimée.</i>	I have been loved,	<i>J'ai été aimé or aimée.</i>
Thou art loved,	<i>Tu es aimé or aimée.</i>	Thou hast been loved,	<i>Tu as été aimé or aimée</i>
He is loved,	<i>Il est aimé.</i>	He has been loved,	<i>Il a été aimé.</i>
She is loved,	<i>Elle est aimée.</i>	She has been loved,	<i>Elle a été aimée.</i>
One is loved,	<i>On est aimé or aimée.</i>	One has been loved,	<i>On a été aimé or aimée</i>
We are loved,	<i>Nous sommes aimés or aimées.</i>	We have been lov- ed,	<i>Nous avons été aimés or aimées.</i>
You are loved,	<i>Vous êtes aimés or aimées</i>	You have been lov- ed,	<i>Vous avez été aimés or aimées.</i>
They are loved, (m.)	<i>Ils sont aimés.</i>	They have been loved, (m.)	<i>Ils ont été aimés.</i>
They are loved, (f.)	<i>Elles sont aimées.</i>	They have been lov- ed, (f.)	<i>Elles ont été aimées.</i>

SIMPLE TENSES, *Temps Simples.*
IMPERFECT, *Imparfait.*
 Usually *Ordinairement*
 I was loved, *J'étais aimé or aimée.*
 Thou wast loved, *Tu étais aimé or aimée.*

He was loved, *Il était aimé.*
 She was loved, *Elle était aimée.*
 One was loved, *On était aimé or aimée.*

We were loved, *Nous étions aimés or aimées.*

You were loved, *Vous étiez aimés or aimées.*

They were loved, *Ils étaient aimées.*

(mas.)
 They were loved, *Elles étaient aimés.*
 (fem.)

PRETERITE DEFINITE, *Prétérit défini.*
 Last year *L'année dernière*
 I was loved, *Je fus aimé or aimée.*
 Thou wast loved, *Tu fus aimé or aimée.*

He was loved, *Il fut aimé.*
 She was loved, *Elle fut aimée.*
 One was loved, *On fut aimé or aimée.*
 We were loved, *Nous fûmes aimés or aimées.*

You were loved, *Vous fûtes aimés or aimées.*

They were loved, *Ils furent aimés. (m.)*

They were loved, *Elles furent aimées. (f.)*

FUTURE, *Futur.*
 Soon *Bientôt*
 I shall be loved, *Je serai aimé or aimée.*

Thou wilt be loved, *Tu seras aimé or aimée.*

He will be loved, *Il sera aimé.*

She will be loved, *Elle sera aimée.*

One will be loved, *On sera aimé or aimée.*

We will be loved, *Nous serons aimés or aimées.*

You will be loved, *Vous serez aimés or aimées.*

They will be loved, *Ils seront aimés.*
 (masc.)

They will be loved, *Elles seront aimées.*
 (fem.)

CONDITIONAL, *Conditionnel.*
 Present, *Présent.*
 If I could *Si je pouvais*
 I would be loved, *Je serais aimé or aimée.*

Thou wouldst be loved, *Tu serais aimé or aimée.*

He would be loved, *Il serait aimé.*

She would be loved, *Elle serait aimée.*

COMPOUND TENSES, *Temps Composés.*
PLUPERFECT, *Plus-que-parfait.*
 Before that time *Avant ce temps-là*
 I had been loved, *J'avais été aimé or aimée.*
 Thou hadst been loved, *Tu avais été aimé or aimée.*

He had been loved, *Il avait été aimé.*

She had been loved, *Elle avait été aimée.*

One had been loved, *On avait été aimé or aimée.*

We had been loved, *Nous avions été aimés or aimées.*

You had been loved, *Vous aviez été aimés or aimées.*

They had been loved, *Ils avaient été aimés.*

(m.)
 They had been loved, *Elles avaient été aimées.*
 (f.)

PRETERITE ANTERIOR, *Prétérit antérieur.*
 When *Lorsque*
 I had been loved, *J'eus été aimé or aimée.*
 Thou hadst been loved, *Tu eus été aimé or aimée.*

He had been loved, *Il eut été aimé.*

She had been loved, *Elle eut été aimée.*

One had been loved, *On eut été aimé or aimée.*

We had been loved, *Nous eûmes été aimés or aimées.*

You had been loved, *Vous eûtes été aimés or aimées.*

They had been loved, *Ils eurent été aimés.*
 (m.)

They had been loved, *Elles eurent été aimées.*
 (f.)

FUTURE ANTERIOR. *Futur antérieur.*
 Before you *Avant vous*
 I shall have been loved, *J'aurai été aimé or aimée.*

Thou wilt have been loved, *Tu auras été aimé or aimée.*

He will have been loved, *Il aura été aimé.*

She will have been loved, *Elle aura été aimée.*

One will have been loved, *On aura été aimé or aimée.*

We will have been loved, *Nous aurons été aimés or aimées.*

You will have been loved, *Vous aurez été aimés or aimées.*

They will have been loved, *Ils auront été aimés.*
 (m.)

They will have been loved, *Elles auront été aimées.*
 (f.)

CONDITIONAL, *Conditionnel.*
 Past *Passé*
 If I had foreseen *Si j'avais prévu*
 I would have been loved, *J'aurais été aimé or aimée.*

Thou wouldst have been loved, *Tu aurais été aimé or aimée.*

He would have been loved, *Il aurait été aimé.*

She would have been loved, *Elle aurait été aimée.*

SIMPLE TENSES, *Temps Simples.*

One should be loved,	<i>On serait aimé or aimée.</i>
We would be loved,	<i>Nous serions aimés or aimées.</i>
You would be loved,	<i>Vous seriez aimés or aimées.</i>
They would be loved, (masc.)	<i>Ils s'aimeraient.</i>
They would be loved, (fem.)	<i>Elles seraient aimées.</i>

COMPOUND TENSES, *Temps Composés.*

One would have been loved,	<i>On aurait été aimé or aimée.</i>
We would have been loved,	<i>Nous aurions été aimés or aimées.</i>
You would have been loved,	<i>Vous auriez été aimés or aimées.</i>
They would have been loved, (m.)	<i>Ils auraient été aimés.</i>
They would have been loved, (f.)	<i>Elles auraient été aimées.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—*MODE DU SUBJONCTIF.*PRESENT OR FUTURE, *Présent ou Futur.*

To the end	<i>Afin</i>
That I may be loved,	<i>que je sois aimé or aimée.</i>
That thou mayst be loved,	<i>que tu sois aimé or aimée.</i>
That he may be loved,	<i>qu'il soit aimé.</i>
That she may be loved,	<i>qu'elle soit aimée.</i>
That one may be loved,	<i>qu'on soit aimé or aimée.</i>
That we may be loved,	<i>que nous soyons aimés or aimées.</i>
That you may be loved,	<i>que vous soyez aimés or aimées.</i>
That they may be loved, (mas.)	<i>qu'ils soient aimés.</i>
That they may be loved, (fem.)	<i>qu'elles soient aimées.</i>

PRETERITE,

Prétérit.

Although	<i>Quoique</i>
I may have been loved,	<i>J'aie été aimé or aimée.</i>
Thou mayest have been loved,	<i>Tu aies été aimé or aimée.</i>
He may have been loved,	<i>Il ait été aimé.</i>
She may have been loved,	<i>Elle ait été aimée.</i>
One may have been loved,	<i>On ait été aimé or aimée.</i>
We may have been loved,	<i>Nous ayons été aimés or aimés.</i>
You may have been loved,	<i>Vous ayez été aimés or aimés.</i>
They may have been loved, (m.)	<i>Ils aient été aimés.</i>
They may have been loved,	<i>Elles aient été aimées.</i>

IMPERFECT,

Imparfait.

Provided	<i>Pourvu</i>
That I might be loved,	<i>que je fusse aimé or aimée.</i>
That thou mightest be loved,	<i>que tu fusses aimé or aimée.</i>
That he might be loved,	<i>qu'il fût aimé.</i>
That she might be loved,	<i>qu'elle fût aimée.</i>
That one might be loved,	<i>qu'on fût aimé or aimée.</i>
That we might be loved,	<i>que nous fussions aimés or aimées.</i>
That you might be loved,	<i>que vous fussiez aimés or aimées.</i>
That they might be loved, (m.)	<i>qu'ils fussent aimés.</i>
That they might be loved, (f.)	<i>qu'elles fussent aimées.</i>

PLUPERFECT,

Plus-que-parfait.

Although	<i>Quoique</i>
I might have been loved,	<i>J'eusse été aimé or aimée.</i>
Thou mightest have been loved,	<i>Tu eusses été aimé or aimée.</i>
He might have been loved,	<i>Il eût été aimé.</i>
She might have been loved,	<i>Elle eût été aimée.</i>
One might have been loved,	<i>On eût été aimé or aimée.</i>
We might have been loved,	<i>Nous eussions été aimés or aimés.</i>
You might have been loved,	<i>Vous eussiez été aimés or aimés.</i>
They might have been loved, (m.)	<i>Ils eussent été aimés.</i>
They might have been loved, (f.)	<i>Elles eussent été aimées.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.—*MODE DE L'IMPÉRATIF.*

Be thou loved,	<i>Sois aimé or aimée.</i>
Let him be loved,	<i>Qu'il soit aimé.</i>
Let her be loved,	<i>Qu'elle soit aimée.</i>
Let one be loved,	<i>Qu'on soit aimé or aimée.</i>
Let us be loved,	<i>Soyons aimés or aimés.</i>
Be ye or you loved,	<i>Soyez aimés or aimés.</i>
Let them be loved, (masc.)	<i>Qu'ils soient aimés.</i>
Let them be loved, (fem.)	<i>Qu'elles soient aimées.</i>

159. The preposition *by*, which generally follows an English passive verb, must be translated into French by *de* or *par*. By *de* when the passive verb expresses a sentiment, a passion, or a disposition of the soul ; and by *par*, when the passive verb expresses an action in which the mind or the body takes part.

Useful men are esteemed <i>by</i>	<i>Les hommes utiles sont estimés</i>
all their countrymen,	<i>de tous leurs compatriotes.</i>
The greater part of Europe	<i>La plus grande partie de l'Eu-</i>
has been conquered <i>by</i> the	<i>rope a été conquise par les</i>
French,	<i>Français.</i>
Gunpowder was invented <i>by</i> a	<i>La poudre à canon fut inventée</i>
monk,	<i>par un moine.</i>
The murderer was condemned	<i>L'assassin fut condamné par le</i>
<i>by</i> the jury,	<i>jury.</i>

Explication. In the first example, *estimés* is in the masculine plural, because the nominative *hommes*, to which it relates, is a masculine noun in the plural number ; and the preposition *by* is translated by *de*, because the action expressed by the verb is independent of the mind or the body, but depends on sentiment. In the second, *conquise* is in the feminine singular, because its nominative *partie* is a feminine noun in the singular number ; *by* is translated by *par*, because the action expressed by the verb is the effect of the body and not of sentiment. In the third, *inventée* is in the feminine singular, because its nominative *poudre* is a feminine noun in the singular number ; the preposition *by* is translated by *par*, because the action expressed by the verb is the effect of the mind and not of sentiment. In the fourth, *condamné* is in the masculine singular, because its nominative *assassin* is a masculine noun in the singular number ; the preposition *by* is translated by *par*, because the action expressed by the verb is the effect of judgment, or mind, and not of sentiment.

From these observations we may conclude that when the passive verb expresses a moral or sentimental action it requires *de* before its object, and when it expresses a physical or mental action, without being moral or sentimental, it requires *par*.

NOTE. Such references are omitted, in the following exercises, as must prove useless to any scholar who has faithfully written the preceding.

EXERCISE 109.

The president of that society was elected last year without opposition ;
 for he was loved by all the members. My mother and sister will be
 admitted to the ceremony of the marriage, because they have been in-
 vited by the young lady. Those young men would have been well re-
 ceived by my cousin, if they had been presented by a friend. I wish that
 your proposition may be well received by your correspondent. The laws

of the country will not have been violated in vain by those foreigners.
That action of generosity was celebrated in the whole country.

EXERCISE 110.

The statue of Napoleon was replaced by the French, on the column of the place Vendome, fifteen years after his death, and twenty-one after having fallen under the united efforts of all the other monarchs of Europe. Those ladies would have been condemned, if their husbands had not had friends employed by the government. Last Friday was not Miss C. punished for not having studied her lessons?—No, because having been engaged, she was excused. When will my spatterdashes be finished?—Next Thursday or Friday, if I am not sick, and if I find the necessary cloth.

EXERCISE 111.

The beauty of that young lady is admired by all her acquaintances, and as she is very well educated, her manners are always very agreeable; she is esteemed by all the young men of good taste and good education. The hopes of our friend have often been deceived; but now his reputation is so well established, that he will never be disappointed. In eighteen hundred and fourteen, the city of Paris was sold by Raguse to the enemy, and when the government of the Bourbons was established, he was rewarded for his treacherous action; but his name was frenchified by the people and used instead of *trahir* (to betray); thus, *Raguser*, (to raguse.)

NEUTER VERBS.

160. Neuter verbs are those which express an action confined within the nominative, passing over to an object only by the aid of a preposition; as in

John *went to* Providence yes-terday, Jean *alla hier à* Providence.

Next summer we *shall travel* in Canada, L'été prochain nous *voyagerons* dans le Canada.

Explanation. In the first example, *WENT* in English, and *alla* in French, are neuter verbs, because the action which they express passes to the object *Providence* by the means of the preposition *to, à*, and because they could not have a direct object. In the second, *SHALL TRAVEL, voyagerons*, is neuter for the same reason.

161. As corresponding neuter verbs, in French and in English, do not always require corresponding prepositions before their object, the difficulties arising from this circumstance are the same as those connected with the indirect object of active verbs; thus, TO THINK OF, is in French, *penser à*; TO AGREE UPON, is *convenir de*; therefore every necessary means to remove those difficulties will be taken in the course of the Grammar, and in the Vocabulary.

In their simple tenses, neuter verbs, unless they are irregular, are conjugated the same as the active; that is, if their present infinitive ends in *er*, *porter* must be taken for model; if it ends in *ir*, *finir* must be taken; if it ends in *avoir*, *recevoir* must be taken; and if it ends in *re*, *vendre* must be taken.

162. The compound tenses of neuter verbs are generally formed, in French, with the auxiliary verb *avoir*; for, out of about six hundred that are in the French language, those only that are in the following table are conjugated with *être*. However, those that are marked with an asterisk, thus *, are conjugated also with *avoir*; but then they express a different meaning than when conjugated with *être*. As the English neuter verbs are uniformly conjugated with TO HAVE, in their compound tenses, it follows, that, when a French neuter verb takes *être*, the auxiliary TO HAVE of the English corresponding verb must be translated by *être*, and then *être* should be in the same tense, number, and person as TO HAVE, unless it were contrary to the rules given for the use of tenses.

163. TABLE OF THE NEUTER VERBS THAT ARE CONJUGATED WITH ÊTRE,

IN WHICH IS GIVEN THE PREPOSITION THAT EACH OF THEM REQUIRES BEFORE THE OBJECT, WHEN THAT OBJECT IS A NOUN OR A PRONOUN.

* <i>Aborder</i>	<i>à</i> ,	To land at.	* <i>Contrevenir</i>	<i>à</i> ,	To contravene.
* <i>Accoucher</i>	<i>de</i> ,	To be delivered of.	* <i>Convenir</i>	<i>de</i> ,	To agree upon.
<i>Accourir</i>	<i>à</i> ,	To run to.	<i>Décéder</i>	<i>à</i> ,	To die at.
<i>Aller</i>	<i>à</i> ,	To go to.	<i>Déchoir</i> ,		To decay.
* <i>Apparaître</i>	<i>à</i> ,	To appear to.	* <i>Demeurer</i>	<i>a</i> ,	To live in.
<i>Arriver</i>	<i>à & de</i> ,	To arrive at & from.	* <i>Descendre</i>	<i>de</i> ,	To come down from.
<i>Arriver</i>	<i>de</i> ,	To happen from.	<i>Devenir</i> ,		To become.
<i>Choir</i>	<i>à</i> ,	To fall to.	<i>Disconvenir</i>	<i>de</i> ,	To disown.

*Échapper	à,	To escape from.	Relever,		To become again.
Échoir,		To fall due.	*Remonter,		To go up again.
Éclorre,		To be hatched.	Rentrer	dans,	To go or come in again.
Entrer	dans,	To enter.	Repartir	de,	To set out again from.
*Expier,		To expire.	Ressortir	de,	To go out again from.
Intervenir	dans,	To intervene.	Rester	dans or en,	To stay in or remain.
*Monter	à,	To go up to.	*Résulter	de,	To result from.
Mourir	de,	To die of.	Retomber	de,	To fall again from.
Naître	de,	To be born from.	Retourner	à,	To return to.
Partir	de,	To set out from.	Revenir	de,	To come back from.
Parvenir	à,	To attain.	Sortir	de,	To go out from.
*Passer,		To pass away.	Survénir,		To befall.
*Périr	de,	To perish with.	Tomber	de,	To fall from.
Provenir	de,	To come from.	Venir	à and de,	To come to and from.
Redescendre	de,	To come down again from.			

164. NOTE. In conjugating neuter verbs with *avoir*, the past participle does not vary, or does not change in its termination; but, when conjugated with *être*, it must change according to the gender and number of the nominative, like passive verbs.

165. In the following exercises only those neuter verbs that are in the preceding table are conjugated with *être*, although they are with *TO HAVE*, in the English. As to the preposition required by the French verb, the vocabulary, and not the corresponding preposition of the English, should be relied on. So when the No. 165 is over a preposition, or before a noun or pronoun, it is to refer to the Vocabulary, or to the preceding Table, to see what French preposition should be used after the verb of which that noun or pronoun is the object.

EXERCISE 112.

Will you have arrived at your destination before next Thursday?—
 Perhaps. As soon as we had entered the hall, we perceived Mr. and
 Mrs. D. Last Wednesday Mr. L. fell from his chaise, and this morning
 he has fallen again. Will you not travel with us in the state of Virginia
 next summer?—I should like your company very much, because with
 you I shall enjoy my journey better than if I am alone. How many
 years have you remained in America?—About eight years. When shall
 you return to Baltimore?—As soon as my health shall be restored.

EXERCISE 113.

The Creator of the world has endowed every living being with the
 faculty of voluntary motion and with the means of its execution; a fish

swims in the water with its fins ; a bird flies in the air with its wings ; a serpent creeps on the earth with its scales ; a quadruped walks with its feet, &c. That officer would have been ¹⁰³tried ¹⁵³for his disobedience, if his colonel had not ^{22 & 105}interceded for him. When you entered ^{104 & 163}our room we were ¹⁴⁰expecting an answer from you with ⁹²anxiety ; I was ¹⁴⁰trembling with ¹⁶⁵impatience, whilst my poor sister was ¹⁴⁰sighing and ¹⁴⁰weeping.

UNIPERSONAL VERBS.*

166. *Les verbes unipersonnels*, UNIPERSONAL VERBS, in French and in English, are those that are used only in the third person singular of each tense. For their conjugation in French they follow the models of regular verbs. They have always for nominative in English the pronoun *it*, and in French the pronoun *il*, as

PRES. INF.	To drizzle,	Bruiner.
PRES. PART.	Drizzling,	Bruinant.
PRET. ANT.	Having drizzled,	Ayant bruiné.
PAST PART.	Drizzled,	Bruiné.
IND. PRES.	It drizzles,	Il bruine.
IND. IMPERF.	It drizzled,	Il bruinait.
IND. PRET.	It drizzled,	Il bruina.
IND. FUTURE.	It will drizzle,	Il bruinera.
CONDIT. PRES.	It would drizzle,	Il bruinerait.
SUBJ. PRES.	That it may drizzle,	Qu'il bruine.
SUBJ. IMP.	That it might drizzle,	Qu'il bruinât.
IMPERATIVE.	Let it drizzle,	Qu'il bruine.
PRET. INDEF.	It has drizzled,	Il a bruiné.
PLUPERFECT.	It had drizzled,	Il avait bruiné.
PRET. ANT.	It had drizzled,	Il eut bruiné.
FUT. ANT.	It will have drizzled,	Il aura bruiné.
PAST CONDIT.	It would have drizzled,	Il aurait bruiné.
PRET.	That it may have drizzled,	Qu'il ait bruiné.
PLUPERFECT.	That it might have drizzled,	Qu'il eût bruiné.

167. Among the unipersonal verbs there is one that requires an early and particular notice on account of its very frequent

* Unipersonal verbs are called by most grammarians, though not by all. Impersonal Verbs. The appellation Unipersonal Verbs seems to be preferable, because it means verbs with one person, whilst Impersonal Verbs means verbs with no person at all ; when it is well known and understood that the verbs included in this classification are used in one person, viz. the third person singular of each tense.

use. It is *y avoir* used to translate *there to be*, in the following manner,

INFIN. PRES.	There to be,	Y avoir.
PRES. PART.	There being,	Y ayant.
PAST PART.	There having been,	Y ayant eu.
INDIC. PRES.	There is,	Il y a.
INDIC. PRES.	There are,	Il y a.
INDIC. IMPERF.	There was,	Il y avait.
INDIC. IMPERF.	There were,	Il y avait.
IND. PRET.	There was,	Il y eut.
IND. PRET.	There were,	Il y eut.
INDIC. FUTURE.	There will be,	Il y aura.
INDIC. CONDIT.	There would be,	Il y aurait.
SUBJ. PRES.	That there may be,	Qu'il y ait.
SUBJ. IMPERF.	That there might be,	Qu'il y eût.
PRET. INDEF.	There has been,	Il y a eu.
PLUPERF.	There had been,	Il y avait eu.
PRET. ANTER.	There had been,	Il y eut eu.
FUTURE ANT.	There will have been,	Il y aura eu.
PAST CONDIT.	There would have been,	Il y aurait eu.
SUBJ. PRET.	That there may have been,	Qu'il y ait eu.
SUBJ. PLUPERF.	That there might have been,	Qu'il y eût eu.

There are men in the garden, Il y a des hommes dans le jardin.
There were in that society persons of different countries, Il y avait dans cette société des personnes de différents pays.
There will be a great celebration in the city of Washington, Il y aura une grande célébration dans la ville de Washington.

Explanation. In these examples, it is evident that **THERE ARE** and **THERE WERE**, in English, are in the plural number, because the nominatives of those verbs are plural; but that they are rendered, in French, by the singular *Il y a* and *Il y avait*, because *y avoir*, being a true unipersonal verb, is never used in the plural number. This difference of idiom, in French and in English, should be particularly noticed, because students are apt to translate **THERE ARE** by *il* or *ils y sont*, and **THERE WERE** by *ils* or *il y étaient*, which is very incorrect.

EXERCISE 114.

There will be an examination of the scholars of the class to-morrow morning. There would have been several arrests in the city, had not the commander of the troops been a man very much devoted to his country. There were persons very much dissatisfied with the speech of the orator of last Thursday. There are now in a large city of France more than twenty-one thousand workmen without work, and without the means of living. If there were men of that character, they would be the objects of the contempt of religious and virtuous persons. I wish that there may be for young men opportunities of showing their talents.

PASSIVE VERBAL PRONOUNS.

168. It has been said, pages 95, 96, that the pronouns ME, THEE, HIM, HER, ONE'S SELF, US, YOU, THEM, are used in English as objects to prepositions or verbs; but that in French their corresponding substantive pronouns *moi, toi, lui, elle, soi, nous, vous, eux, elles*, are used only as objects to prepositions and never as objects to any verb, but that there is a third class of personal pronouns, called in the Practical Translator CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS, and here PASSIVE VERBAL PRONOUNS, being never used except as objects to a verb. These passive verbal pronouns are

for me, <i>or</i> to me,		<i>me</i> or <i>m'</i> .
thee, to thee, <i>or</i> at thee,		<i>te</i> or <i>t'</i> .
him, it, <i>or</i> so,		<i>le</i> or <i>l'</i> .
her <i>or</i> it,		<i>la</i> or <i>l'</i> .
to <i>or</i> at him,		<i>lui</i> .
to <i>or</i> at her,		<i>lui</i> .
one's self, to one's self, <i>or</i> at one's self,		<i>se</i> or <i>s'</i> .
us, to us, <i>or</i> at us,		<i>nous</i> .
you, to you, <i>or</i> at you,		<i>vous</i> .
them,		<i>les</i> .
to <i>or</i> at them,		<i>leur</i> .
of <i>or</i> from him, of <i>or</i> from her, of <i>or</i> from me, <i>or</i> from thee, &c.,		<i>en</i> .
to <i>or</i> at it, there, thither, &c.,		<i>y</i> .

They are used according to the following rule:

169. RULE. When the object of a verb is a personal pronoun in English, the PASSIVE VERBAL PRONOUNS must be used in French instead of the SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS; and if the verb is not in the 2d person singular or the 1st or 2d person plural of the imperative without negation, they must be placed before it without preposition, although the verb might require *à* or *de* before its object; and if there are several verbs together that have the same pronoun for their object, that pronoun must be repeated with every one of them, though it is expressed but once in English.

	TRANSLATE	BY	INSTEAD OF
1st.	He knows <i>me</i> ,	<i>Il me connaît,</i>	<i>Il connaît moi.</i>
2d.	She said <i>to me</i> ,	<i>Elle me dit,</i>	<i>Elle dit à moi.</i>
3d.	You placed <i>us</i> ,	<i>Vous nous plaçâtes,</i>	<i>Vous plaçâtes nous.</i>
4th.	They speak <i>to us</i> ,	<i>Ils nous parlent,</i>	<i>Ils parlent à nous.</i>
5th.	I see <i>thee</i> ,	<i>Je te vois,</i>	<i>Je vois toi.</i>
6th.	We give <i>to thee</i> ,	<i>Nous te donnons,</i>	<i>Nous donnons à toi.</i>
7th.	I pray <i>you</i> ,	<i>Je vous prie,</i>	<i>Je prie vous.</i>
8th.	I promise <i>to you</i> ,	<i>Je vous promets,</i>	<i>Je promets à vous.</i>
9th.	Thou prayest <i>him</i> ,	<i>Tu le pries,</i>	<i>Tu pries lui.</i>
10th.	I will serve <i>her</i> ,	<i>Je la servirai,</i>	<i>Je servirai elle.</i>
11th.	You would sell <i>it</i> ,	<i>Vous le or la vendriez,</i>	<i>Vous vendriez lui or elle.</i>
12th.	I think <i>so</i> ,	<i>Je le pense,</i>	<i>Je pense cette chose or ainsi.</i>
13th.	We lend <i>to him</i> ,	<i>Nous lui prêtons,</i>	<i>Nous prêtons à lui.</i>
14th.	We lend <i>to her</i> ,	<i>Nous lui prêtons,</i>	<i>Nous prêtons à elle.</i>
15th.	Thou lost <i>them</i> ,	<i>Tu les perdis,</i>	<i>Tu perdis eux or elles.</i>
16th.	I offer <i>to them</i> ,	<i>Je leur offre,</i>	<i>J'offre à eux or à elles.</i>
17th.	He } decks { <i>himself, Il</i>		<i>Il pare lui-même.</i>
18th.	She } decks { <i>herself, Elle</i>	<i>se pare,</i>	<i>Elle pare elle-même.</i>
19th.	One } decks { <i>one's self, On</i>		<i>On pare soi-même.</i>
20th.	To give <i>one's self</i> ,	<i>Se donner,</i>	<i>Donner soi.</i>
21st.	To give <i>to one's self</i> ,	<i>Se donner,</i>	<i>Donner à soi.</i>
22d.	People speak <i>of him</i> ,	<i>On en parle,</i>	<i>On parle de lui, d'elle, de</i>
	<i>of her, of you, of</i>		<i>vous, de moi.</i>
	<i>me, &c.</i>		
23d.	He added <i>to it</i> ,	<i>Il y ajouta,</i>	<i>Il ajouta à cette chose.</i>
24th.	We sent <i>there</i> , or <i>thither.</i>	<i>Nous y envoyâmes,</i>	<i>Nous envoyâmes là.</i>

Explanation. In all the preceding examples, the passive verbal pronouns are placed before the verb, because it is not in the second person singular or the first or second person plural of the imperative ; in the 2d, 4th, 6th, 8th, 13th, 14th, 16th, 21st, 22d, 23d, and 24th, there is no preposition before the passive verbal pronoun, although the verb requires one before its indirect object, because these pronouns never suffer any before them. In the 13th and 14th, the passive verbal pronoun *lui* is used for the masculine and feminine gender, instead of *à lui* and *à elle*. In the 20th, *en* is used instead of any substantive pronoun that is the object of the preposition *de* required by the verb *parler*. In the 23d and 24th, *y* is used to translate *TO IT* and the adverb *THERE*.

170. From the preceding examples it is evident that *en* is employed instead of any substantive pronoun which is the object of the preposition *de* according to the following rule.

RULE. When any pronoun is used as the object of a verb that requires the preposition *de*, in French, before its object, if that pronoun relates to persons or things already spoken of, the passive verbal pronoun *en* should be employed instead of any other pronoun ; it should be without a preposition and placed as explained in the preceding rule. So if, after having named a person or thing or several persons or things, we had to

translate, MR. PAUL SPEAKS OF ME, OF THEE, OF HIM, OF HER, OF IT, OF US, OF YOU, OF THEM, and even OF THIS, OF THAT, THENCE in the sense of OF THERE, &c., *en* would answer for either of those pronouns and prepositions, thus *M. Paul en parle*.

171. But had no person or thing been expressed before, we ought to use the French Substantive Pronouns with the preposition *de*, thus, *M. Paul parle de moi, de toi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux, d'elles, &c.*

172. *En* is used also with a verb to express SOME, ANY, SOME OF IT, SOME OF THEM, &c. relating to a part of any thing or any number of things spoken of before, or implied; as in

I have apples; do you want *J'ai des pommes; en voulez-vous ?*
some or any?

There is a pie; do you want a *Voilà un pâté; en voulez-vous un morceau ?*
piece of it?

173. *En* is employed to translate BY IT, BY THEM OR FOR HIM, FOR IT, FOR THEM, used in the sense of ON ACCOUNT OF THAT, OF HIM, OF THOSE THINGS, &c.

You lend that money to those *Vous prêtez cet argent à ces*
merchants, but you will never *marchands; mais vous n'en*
be paid *by them,* *serez jamais payé.*

He has committed a great *Il a commis un grand crime,*
crime, and he will be punished *et il en sera puni.*
for it,

Miss D. has done several good *Mademoiselle D. a fait plu-*
actions, and she will be re- *sieurs bonnes actions, et elle*
warded *for them,* *en sera récompensée.*

174. Very often OF IT, OF THEM, IT, THEM, TO IT, TO THEM, THERE, &c., are not expressed in English conversation and writing, but they are generally implied, and should always be expressed in French by an appropriate passive verbal pronoun; as in

Have you any books?—Yes, I *Avez-vous des livres?—Oui,*
have several *(of them,)* *j'en ai plusieurs.*

Have you received any letters *Avez-vous reçu des lettres de*
from your brother?—Yes, I *votre frère?—Oui, j'en re-*
received one yesterday, *çus une hier.*

There is a very good cake; do you want *a piece*, or *some* of it? *Voilà un bon gâteau; en voulez-vous un morceau?*

NOTE. When a number in the references is preceded by the letters *ex*, it is to refer to the example, which is marked by that number.

EXERCISE 115.

How do you like Miss A. ?—I find her very agreeable and beautiful. Yesterday I spoke to her for the first time, and she showed herself very agreeable and witty. When will you carry me to the theatre? I have not been there since the commencement of the winter.—When they shall play Romeo and Juliet. You will oblige my friend by presenting him to the members of your society, and I have no doubt that he will interest them by his great talents: my opinion is entirely in his favour, and he deserves it.

EXERCISE 116.

My dear friend, in announcing to thee the marriage of Miss D., I congratulate thee; because I consider her unworthy of a man like thee. Yesterday Mr. C. spoke to me of his plans, and I found them very well conceived. Last week Mr. L. proposed to us a very delicate and difficult question; but we did not discuss it, because it was too complicated. When our good friend presented us to his old father and mother, he showed himself very polite towards us, and then I conceived the hope of returning the same kindness to him.

EXERCISE 117.

Have you heard Mrs. W. ?—Not yet; but I shall hear her next week; all my acquaintances speak of her very favourably. Will Mr. B. be present at the opening of the senate?—I hope so; for last week he assured me that he would be there. That book is very interesting, I like it much; would you sell it if I wished to buy it?—Yes; I would sell it for four dollars.—But you ask too much for it.—No, it cost me three dollars and seventy-five cents; add to it some extra expenses, and you will find that it is not dear, that the price of it is very reasonable.

EXERCISE 118.

The wish of arrogating to one's self the privileges of a superior always shows an ambitious propensity. You like Rousseau, for you

¹³³ are constantly ⁹² speaking ¹³³ of ¹⁷⁰ him. ²² If I had ⁹⁸ fruit I would ¹⁰³ give ¹⁷² some to my niece, but I have ²² not ¹⁷² any. Yesterday Mr. G. gave ⁹⁹ me ^{ex. 2} my papers, I am very glad ¹⁷⁰ of ¹⁰⁴ it. If we have ^{ex. 8} caused ^{ex. 2} you the least trouble, we are sincerely sorry ¹⁷⁰ for ^{ex. 2} it. You announce ^{ex. 2} to ^{ex. 2} me the destruction of that establishment, but are you sure ¹⁷⁰ of ¹⁰¹ it? Our friends will ¹³¹ be ¹⁷⁰ presented to the president and I think that they will be well received ⁸⁷ by ¹⁷⁰ him.

EXERCISE 119.

I have several ⁶² good pens, if you have ¹⁷² not ¹⁷² any, I will give ¹⁷² two or three (of ¹⁷⁴ them) ^{ex. 131} to your daughter for ¹⁷¹ you. Mr. G. expects ¹⁷¹ too much from ¹⁷¹ me, he does not consider that my health is very feeble. I hope that I shall ⁹² soon have a handsome present ¹⁷¹ from ¹⁷¹ thee because I should think that thou art ¹³¹ offended ⁸⁴ with ⁸⁴ me, or that thy affection ⁸⁴ for ⁸⁴ me has much diminished. Mrs. F. speaks frequently ¹⁷¹ of ¹⁷¹ me, ¹⁷¹ of ¹⁷¹ thee, and of thy brother, her friendship ⁸⁴ for ⁶² us all is very great; ^{ex. 10} when we meet ⁹² her she always ^{ex. 3} treats ^{ex. 3} us very well; ¹¹¹ she loves ¹¹¹ us as much ^{ex. 10} as we esteem ^{ex. 10} her.

175. When a personal pronoun of the third person, relating to a noun that should be called neuter in English, is the object of a verb that requires the preposition *à* before its indirect object, in French the passive verbal pronoun *y* placed before the verb, and without any preposition, must be used instead of any other.

The dowry of Miss N. will be	<i>La dot de mademoiselle N. sera</i>
forty thousand dollars, and	<i>de quarante mille dollars, et</i>
perhaps her uncle will add	<i>son oncle y ajoutera peut-</i>
to it his beautiful house,	<i>être sa belle maison.</i>

The pronoun *y* is used also in the same manner to translate
HERE, THERE, THITHER, WITHIN; as in

We went <i>there</i> ,	<i>Nous y allâmes.</i>
If you live in that house, our	<i>Si vous restez dans cette maison</i>
boy will carry your bundle	<i>notre garçon vous y ap-</i>
thither for you,	<i>portera votre paquet.</i>

EXERCISE 120.

Although the laws ¹⁰⁹ of that country are severe, ¹¹⁰ foreigners as well as its citizens are ¹⁷⁵ subject to them. When you shall have given ¹⁰⁷ that painting ^{ex. 2} to me I shall work ¹⁷⁵ on it very diligently. If the body ¹⁷⁵ of that house

¹⁴⁹were complete, I would immediately ⁹²add to ¹⁷⁵it a green house. I have ⁴⁴business with Mr. G. Several times I ¹⁰⁴had the hope of ¹²⁴finding ^{ex. 9}him in his room, but he was not there. As the anniversary of Washington's ⁵⁴birth will be celebrated ¹³¹in Boston, I will carry my sister ^{ex. 24}thither, and I have ⁶⁰no doubt that she will enjoy herself ^{ex. 14}there with her friends.

176. When, in an answer to a question, the word *so*, which is in French *aussi*, is used for *THAT*, as the object of such verbs as *TO THINK*, *penser*; *TO BELIEVE*, *croire*; *TO SUPPOSE*, *supposer*; *TO FANCY*, *imaginer* or *s'imaginer*; &c., it is rendered in French, by *le* as in the given example :

I think *so*, *Je le pense*.

177. When, in an answer to a question after such verbs as given in the preceding paragraph, follow any of the auxiliary verbs *TO DO*, *WILL*, *SHALL*, *CAN*, *MAY*, &c., without the verb of the question, which is implied, that auxiliary is generally rendered by *le* in French, with that verb, or by the translation of that auxiliary with *le*; as

Does Miss Julia learn music?	<i>Mademoiselle Julie, apprend</i>
—I do not think she does,	<i>-elle la musique?—Je ne le</i>
	<i>pense pas.</i>
Will Mr. G. write that letter for me?—I suppose <i>he will</i> ,	<i>M. G. écrira-t-il cette lettre</i>
	<i>pour moi?—Je le suppose.</i>
Will Mr. J. pay that money before Sunday?—I think <i>he may</i> ,	<i>M. J. paiera-t-il cet argent</i>
	<i>avant dimanche?—Je le</i>
	<i>pense.</i>

Explanation. In the first example, *le* is used to translate *SHE DOES*, because the verb *TO THINK* precedes it, and the word *LEARN* is implied, for *SHE DOES*, is, for *SHE DOES LEARN*. In the second, *HE WILL* is translated by *le*, because it is for *HE WILL WRITE*, and is preceded by the verb *TO SUPPOSE*. In the third, *HE MAY* is rendered by *le*, because it is for *HE MAY PAY*, and is preceded by *I THINK*, of which it is the object.

178. It very often happens that a verb has several objects that are represented by substantive pronouns in English. As it has already been said, those pronouns should be translated into French, by the passive verbal pronouns, and whatever may be the order in which they are placed in English, in the French sentence they should be placed as in the following table, the

arrangement of which is such that two pronouns of the same column can never be the objects of the same verb.

1ST.	2D.	3D.	4TH.	5TH.
<i>Me</i>	<i>Le</i>	<i>Lui</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>en</i>
<i>Te</i>	<i>La</i>	<i>Leur</i>		
<i>Se</i>	<i>Les</i>			
<i>Nous</i>				
<i>Vous</i>				

Therefore, any of the first column must be placed before any of the four others; any of the second must be placed before any of the three others, and after any of the first; either of the third must be placed before the two others, and after the first and second; and, finally, *y* must be placed before *en*: as in

When we are in the country, *Quand nous serons à la campagne,* will you send those drawings *nous y enverrez-vous* there to us? *ces dessins?*

Yes; but perhaps I shall carry *Où; mais peut-être je vous* them there to you myself. *les y porterai moi-même.*

You wish to know Mr. L. If *Vous désirez connaître M. L.* I see you at the theatre tomorrow evening, I shall *Si je vous vois au théâtre demain au soir* speak of him there to you. *je vous y en parlerai.*

Explanation. In the first example *nous* is before *y* because it belongs to the first column, whilst *y* belongs to the fourth. In the second example *vous* is before *les*, because it belongs to the first column, whilst *les* belongs to the second; and *les* is before *y* because it belongs to the second column, whilst *y* belongs to the fourth. In the third example *vous* is before *y* because it belongs to the first column, whilst *y* belongs to the fourth; and *y* is before *en* because it belongs to the fourth column, whilst *en* belongs to the fifth.

EXERCISE 121.

If Mrs. C. arrives before noon, announce to her the happy result of her recommendations, and that I shall soon thank her for them. The soldiers of that company are dissatisfied, because yesterday their captain carried them in presence of the enemy and left them there without their chief. I have melons in my garden, if you like them I will give two of them to you there. Your decision is very important for my friends; I shall inform them of it, and I shall explain it to them, that they may perceive the advantages of it, and that they may show their gratitude for it.

179. When the passive verbal pronouns are used with compound

tenses, students are apt to place them between the auxiliary and the past participle ; but this practice is very wrong, since their only proper place is before the auxiliary, from which they must never be separated by any word ; and in phrases with a negation, they are placed between the *ne* and the auxiliary verb, or indeed any other verb ; and when either of the pronouns *me, nous, te, vous, se, le, la, les*, is used with a compound tense, as a direct object, the past participle must agree in gender and number with that pronoun, or direct object, but never with an indirect object.

Have you not given *me* your consent ?—No, I have never given *it to you*, *Ne m'avez-vous pas donné votre consentement ?—Non, je ne vous l'ai jamais donné.*

They would have sent sooner that bundle *to us*, if they had not been prevented (from it), *Ils nous auraient plus tôt envoyé ce paquet s'ils n'en avaient pas été empêchés.*

I never believed *it*, *Je ne l'ai jamais cru.*

Have you received your letters ? *Avez-vous reçu vos lettres ?—*
—Yes, I have received them, *Oui, je les ai reçues.*

Explanation. In all these examples the passive verbal pronouns are placed before the auxiliary verb, according to the last rule, though in the English phrases they are placed after the past participle ; and in the last, *reçues* is in the feminine plural because *les*, which represents the feminine plural noun *lettres*, is before it and is its direct object.

EXERCISE 122.

We have protected thee, but thou hast not thanked us for it. That man would not have asked you the price of those goods if he had not sold them to you. Mrs. P. wishes to hear the circumstances of our misfortune, and I would have already related them to her if my husband had not found it useless. Yesterday I was expecting you in the public garden, I wished to hear you speak of Mr. and Mrs. R. If I had met you, would you not have spoken of them there to me ? I would not assure it to you because I have been with them very little ; and it would have been impossible for me to answer your questions.

* Students should never forget the remarks of the paragraphs 124, 161, relating to the preposition required by French and English verbs before their indirect objects. In this phrase, for instance, *TO BE IMPOSSIBLE* requires *for* in English, and *être impossible* requires *d* in French ; and, for that reason alone, the reference to example 2 is given. This note is also applicable to similar instances, in which the French and English verbs require different prepositions before their indirect object ; and in a few other cases, they are referred to Nos. 170, 172, 173, 174.

180. As the use of the passive verbal pronouns is difficult, it would be of great advantage to the student to impress his mind with all the combinations in which they are employed, all of which are included in the following table. Every combination has with it marks to indicate the place it must occupy in the sentence ; for instance, in phrases that are not interrogative, *nom.* indicates the place of the nominative, and the word *verb* that of the verb ; and, if the phrase is negative, *ne* indicates the place of the *ne* of the French negation ; and *pas* that of the *pas* or of any other negative adverb or adjective. If the phrase is interrogative, the nominative pronoun should be placed after the verb, before *pas*, instead of the place indicated by *nom.* If the verb is in the imperative with a negation, the same order should be followed, the pronouns of the first and second person being omitted ; if it is not negative, see No. 118 and following. The dash of the English indicates the place of the verb, its nominative, and negation if there be any.

TABLE OF THE DIFFERENT COMBINATIONS OF THE PASSIVE VERBAL PRONOUNS.

1st Combination, with *ME*, *ME* or *TO ME*.

—him, or it, to me.	—her, or it, to me.	—them to me.
nom. ne me le verb pas	nom. ne me la verb pas	nom. ne me les verb pas
—some of it to me.	—me there.	—him, her, or it, to me there.
nom. n m'en verb pas	nom. ne m'y verb pas	nom. ne me l'y verb pas
—some of it, of them, or any, to me there.		
nom. ne m'y en verb pas		

2d Combination, with *NOUS*, *US* or *TO US*.

—him, or it, to us.	—her, or it, to us.	—them to us.
nom. ne nous le verb pas	nom. ne nous la verb pas	nom. ne nous les verb pas
—some of it, of them, or any, to us.	—him, her, or it, there to us.	
nom. ne nous en verb pas	nom. ne nous l'y verb pas	
—them there to us.	—us there.	
nom. ne nous les y verb pas	nom. ne nous y verb pas	
—some of it, of them, or any, there to us.		
nom. ne nous y en verb pas		

3d Combination, with *TE*, *THEE* or *TO THEE*.

—him, or it, to thee. —her, or it, to thee. —them to thee.

nom. ne *te le* verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne *te la* verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne *te les* verb pas
..... ..

—some of it, of them, or any, to thee. —her, him, or it, to thee there.

nom. ne *t'en* verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne *te l'y* verb pas
..... ..

—them there to thee.

nom. ne *te les y* verb pas
..... ..

—thee there.

nom. ne *t'y* verb pas
..... ..

—some of it, of them, or any, there to thee.

nom. ne *t'y en* verb pas
..... ..

4th Combination, with *VOUS*, *YOU* or *TO YOU*.

—him, or it, to you. —her, or it, to you. —them to you.

nom. ne *vous le* verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne *vous la* verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne *vous les* verb pas
..... ..

—some of it, of them, or any, to you. —him, her, or it, there to you.

nom. ne *vous en* verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne *vous l'y* verb pas
..... ..

—them there to you.

nom. ne *vous les y* verb pas
..... ..

—you there.

nom. ne *vous y* verb pas
..... ..

—some of it, of them, or any, there to you.

nom. ne *vous y en* verb pas
..... ..

5th Combination, with *LUI*, *TO HIM* or *TO HER*.

—him, or it, to him or to her. —her, or it, to him or to her.

nom. ne *le lui* verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne *la lui* verb pas
..... ..

—them to him or to her.

nom. ne *les lui* verb pas
..... ..

—some of it, of them, or any, there to him or to her.

nom. ne *lui en* verb pas
..... ..

6th Combination, with *LEUR*, *TO THEM*.

—him, or it, to them. —her, or it, to them. —them to them.

nom. ne *le leur* verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne *la leur* verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne *les leur* verb pas
..... ..

—some of it, of them, or any, to them. —him, or it, there to them.

nom. ne *leur en* verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne *le leur y* verb pas
..... ..

—her, or it, there to them.

nom. ne *la leur y* verb pas
..... ..

—them there to them.

nom. ne *les leurs y* verb pas
..... ..

—some of it, of them or any, there to them. —to them there.

nom. ne *leur y en* verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne *leur y* verb pas
..... ..

7th Combination, with SE, ONE'S SELF or TO ONE'S SELF, HIMSELF, HERSELF, TO HIMSELF, TO HERSELF.

—him, or it, for himself. —her, or it, for himself. —them for himself.

nom. ne se le verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne se la verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne se les verb pas
..... ..

—some of it, of them, or any, for himself.

nom. ne s'en verb pas
..... ..

—him, her, or it there for himself. —them there for himself.

nom. ne se l'y verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne se les y verb pas
..... ..

—there for himself. —some of it, of them, or any there for himself.

nom. ne s'y verb pas
..... ..

nom. ne s'y en verb pas
..... ..

NOTE. The plural THEMSELVES is also translated by se.

Had a scholar to translate YOU WILL CARRY THEM THERE TO US, he should look for the combination THEM THERE TO US, which is in the second combination, and he would find *nous les y* for its translation. The nominative YOU, in French *vous*, should be placed first, thus, *vous nous les y*; the verb WILL CARRY, which is in French *porterez*, for the second person plural of the future, should be placed after the objective verbal pronouns, thus, *vous nous les y porterez*: Were the phrase negative, thus, YOU WILL NOT CARRY THEM THERE TO US, the French should be *vous ne nous les y porterez pas*, placing *ne* between the nominative and the passive verbal pronouns, and *pas* after the verb: Were it interrogative thus, WILL YOU CARRY THEM THERE TO US? the French should be *nous les y porterez-vous?* placing the nominative pronoun after the verb: Were it interrogative and negative together, thus, WILL YOU NOT CARRY THEM THERE TO US? the French should be *ne nous les y porterez-vous pas?* placing *ne* before the objective verbal pronouns, the nominative pronoun after the verb, and *pas* after the nominative pronoun, according to the foregoing explanation: Were the word NEVER, OR ANY OTHER, used instead of NOT, the French should be the same, except *pas*, which should be replaced by *jamais*, or any other word corresponding to that of the English. Were these pronouns used with a compound tense, according to No. 179, they should be combined only with the auxiliary.

REMARK. It may be noticed in the preceding Table, that the pronouns *lui*, TO HIM OR TO HER, and *leur*, TO THEM, are combined only with *le*, *la*, *les*, *y*, and *en*, and never with the objective verbal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*.

181. The foregoing rules are not applicable to the second person singular, and the first and second person plural of the imperative when used without a negation, in which cases the pronouns must be placed after the verb, linked to it by a hyphen; and instead of *me* and *te*, *moi* and *toi* must be employed, except when *moi* or *toi* should be used before *en*, when *moi* becomes *m'* thus *m'en*, and *toi* becomes *t'* thus *t'en*, instead of *moi en*, *toi en*.

182. Also, when *y* should be used with *moi* and *toi*, it should be placed before, thus, *y-moi*, *y-toi*, instead of *moi-y*, *toi-y*. Therefore,

TRANSLATE	BY	INSTEAD OF
Send me of it there,	<i>Envoyez-y-en-moi,</i>	<i>Envoyez-m'y en or m'y en envoyez.</i>
Know me	<i>Connais-moi,</i>	<i>Connais me or me connais.</i>
Speak to me,	<i>Parle-moi,</i>	<i>Parle me or me parle.</i>
Love us,	<i>Aime-nous,</i>	<i>Nous aime.</i>
Write to us,	<i>Écris-nous,</i>	<i>Nous écris.</i>
Place thee or thyself,	<i>Place-toi,</i>	<i>Place-te or te place.</i>
Let us give it,	<i>Donnons-le,</i>	<i>Le donnons.</i>
Give to him,	<i>Donne-lui,</i>	<i>Lui donne.</i>
Carry them,	<i>Portez-les,</i>	<i>Les portez.</i>
Send me there,	<i>Envoyez-y-moi,</i>	<i>Envoyez-m'y or m'y envoyez.</i>
Give me of it,	<i>Donnez-m'en,</i>	<i>Donnez-moi-en or m'en donnez.</i>

183. But if the imperative is used with a negation, the passive verbal pronouns are used, and placed according to the general rule at No. 169, and the tables given at No. 178 and 180.

184. When the second person singular of the imperative ends with a vowel it takes an *s* before *y* and *en*; thus,

Speak of it to my friend, *Parles-en à mon ami.*
Carry my instrument there. *Portes-y mon instrument.*

EXERCISE 123.

I have related to you the object of my visit to your father, speak of it to him. I am obliged to be at Salem this evening, carry me there as soon as possible. Have you any red wine?—Yes sir, I have fifty boxes of it.—Is it good?—Yes sir.—Very well; to-morrow I shall be at my farm, carry six boxes of it to me there. John, show me your exercise.—I have forgotten it, sir. Your handkerchiefs are very beautiful, sell me a dozen of them. If you are at the sale of the flowers, buy me some (of them) for a garland.—Yes; but I have no money; give me some, and I will buy some of them.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE PASSIVE VERBAL PRO-
NOUNS.

185. It often happens in English, that the preposition to which is required by some verbs before their indirect object, is omitted before that object; as in

I shall give him thy letter, in which HIM is for TO HIM.

He showed her my picture, in which HER is for TO HER.

I presented them his request, in which THEM is for TO THEM.

This is the cause of many errors, because students are apt to translate that indirect object by the direct; but in such instances to ascertain whether HIM, HER, IT or THEM are used for the direct object, the following, or similar questions, should be asked, and the last answer would determine the case. In the first example, for instance, it should be asked, WHAT IS TO BE GIVEN?—THY LETTER. TO WHOM?—TO HIM. Therefore HIM in that phrase is for TO HIM and should be translated by *lui*; thus, *Je lui donnerai ta lettre*. In the second, WHAT WAS SHOWN?—MY PICTURE. TO WHOM?—TO HER. Therefore HER in that phrase is for TO HER, and should be translated by *lui*; thus, *Il lui montra mon portrait*. In the third, WHAT WAS PRESENTED?—HIS REQUEST. TO WHOM?—TO THEM; therefore THEM in that phrase, is for TO THEM, and should be translated by *leur*; thus, *Je leur présentai sa requête*.

186. Another difficulty arises from the different preposition, which corresponding verbs in French and in English require before their indirect object. For instance, TO DEMAND, in English, requires the preposition OF before its indirect object; whilst *demander*, the corresponding verb in French, requires the preposition *à*. TO ENJOY requires no preposition before its object in English, whilst *jouir*, the corresponding verb, which is a neuter verb in French, requires the preposition *de*. TO THINK requires the preposition OF, in English, whilst *penser*, the corresponding verb in French, requires the preposition *à*. TO CHARGE requires the preposition WITH before its indirect object, whilst *charger*, the corresponding verb in French, requires the preposition *de*. TO CALL is used with the preposition to before its

object, whilst its corresponding verb in French, *appeler*, never suffers any preposition before its object. Therefore

TRANSLATE	BY	INSTEAD OF
I shall demand it of <i>them</i> ,	<i>Je le leur demanderai.</i>	<i>Je l'en demanderai.</i>
He was enjoying it,	<i>Il en jouissait,</i>	<i>Il le jouissait.</i>
I have thought of it.	<i>J'y ai pensé,</i>	<i>J'en ai pensé.</i>
We charged you with it,	<i>Nous vous en chargeâmes,</i>	<i>Nous vous chargeâmes avec lui or cela.</i>
I perceive John, call him,	<i>Paperçois Jean, appelez-le,</i>	<i>Paperçois Jean, appelez-lui.</i>

Therefore, to avoid mistakes, the vocabulary or a dictionary should be consulted in every instance. See Nos. 124, 125 and 163.

EXERCISE 124.

When you meet Mr. A. will you give him this watch? If your son was in my school, I would teach him to speak French. If those men were of our party, I would address them this circular. If your sister wishes to hear me, I shall wait for her. When your father and mother were in this city, I assured them that I would give you one of my best rooms. As soon as you are at the head of one thousand men, order them to advance immediately. Yesterday you spoke for me, and now I thank you for it. When my scholars are not diligent, I reproach them with their idleness.

REFLECTIVE AND RECIPROCAL VERBS.

There are no reflective or reciprocal verbs in English.

187. The reflective verb, in French, is that which is conjugated with the passive verbal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, *se*, as its object, being of the same number and person as its nominative. Whence it follows, that when the

nominative is . *Je*, the passive verbal pronoun is *me* or *m'*.
 when it is . . *Tu*, the passive verbal pronoun is *te* or *t'*.
 when it is a singular noun, { *Il*,
 { *Elle*, } the passive verbal pronoun is *se* or *s'*.
 { *On*, }
 when it is . . *Nous*, the passive verbal pronoun is *nous*.

when it is . . . *Vous*, the passive verbal pronoun is *vous*.
 when it is a plural, { *Ils*, }
 several nouns, or { *Elles*, } the passive verbal pronoun is *se*.

NOTE. Reflective verbs are conjugated like any other verbs, after the model of the conjugation to which they belong; that is, if their present infinitive ends in *er*, *porter* must be taken for model; if it ends in *ir*, *finir* must be taken; if it ends in *evoir*, *recevoir* must be taken; and, if it ends in *re*, *vendre* must be taken, unless they have some irregularities, in which case, they are found among the irregular verbs.

188. The only peculiarity that reciprocal verbs present, is in the combination of their nominative and passive verbal pronouns, which is for all tenses, except the imperative mood, as in the present indicative of the verbs *se gargariser*, TO GARGLE, and *s'écrier*, TO EXCLAIM, which are conjugated thus:

I gargle,	.	.	<i>Je me gargarise.</i>
Thou garglest,	.	.	<i>Tu te gargarises.</i>
He	} gargles,	.	<i>Il</i>
She		.	<i>Elle</i>
One		.	<i>On</i>
			} <i>se gargarise.</i>
We gargle,	.	.	<i>Nous nous gargarisons.</i>
You gargle,	.	.	<i>Vous vous gargarisez.</i>
They gargle, m.	.	.	<i>Ils</i>
They gargle, f.	.	.	<i>Elles</i>
			} <i>se gargarisent.</i>
I exclaim,	.	.	<i>Je m'écrie.</i>
Thou exclaimest,	.	.	<i>Tu t'écries.</i>
He	} exclaims,	.	<i>Il</i>
She		.	<i>Elle</i>
One		.	<i>On</i>
			} <i>s'écrie.</i>
We exclaim,	.	.	<i>Nous nous écrivons.</i>
You exclaim,	.	.	<i>Vous vous écrivez.</i>
They exclaim, m.	.	.	<i>Ils</i>
They exclaim, f.	.	.	<i>Elles</i>
			} <i>s'écrivent.</i>

189. In the imperative, according to the rules 181, 182, 183 and 184, for the use of the passive verbal pronouns, in the second person singular, and in the first and second persons plural, those

pronouns should be placed after the verb, and linked to it by a hyphen, and instead of *te*, *toi* should be employed ; thus,

Gargle,	.	.	<i>Gargarise-toi</i> , and not <i>gargarise-te</i> .
Let him	} gargle,	.	<i>Qu'il</i>
Let her		.	<i>Qu'elle</i>
Let one		.	<i>Qu'on</i>
Let us gargle,	.	.	<i>Gargarisons-nous</i> .
Gargle ye or you.	.	.	<i>Gargarisez-vous</i> .
Let them gargle,	m.	.	<i>Qu'ils</i>
Let them gargle,	f.	.	<i>Qu'elles</i>
			} se <i>gargarisent</i> .

190. Although there is no reflexive verbs in English, it often happens that the pronouns MYSELF, THYSELF, HIMSELF, HERSELF, ONE'S SELF, ITSELF, OURSELVES, YOURSELVES, THEMSELVES, are used as objects to active verbs, and in the same person and number as their nominative. This may be considered, and is indeed, the English reflexive form of the corresponding French verb, conjugated in a reflexive manner, by using with it the passive verbal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, *se*, in the same number and person as its nominative, according to the foregoing observations ; thus,

I flatter <i>myself</i> ,	<i>Je me flatte</i> .
Thou wast considering <i>thyself</i> ,	<i>Tu te considérais</i> .
He exposed <i>himself</i> ,	<i>Il s'exposa</i> .
She will apply <i>herself</i> ,	<i>Elle s'appliquera</i> .
We would deceive <i>ourselves</i> ,	<i>Nous nous tromperions</i> .
That you may prepare <i>yourselves</i> ,	<i>Que vous vous prépariez</i> .
That they might show <i>themselves</i> , m.	<i>Qu'ils se montrassent</i> .
Let them adorn <i>themselves</i> , f.	<i>Qu'elles se parent</i> .

191. Sometimes the pronouns EACH OTHER, OR ONE ANOTHER, are used as the object of an active verb, to express what two, or several persons or things, reciprocally do to one another, which constitutes, what is called in French, a reciprocal verb ; then, EACH OTHER, OR ONE ANOTHER, is expressed in French, by a

passive verbal pronoun, corresponding to the nominative according to the rules heretofore given.

John and William are beating *Jean et Guillaume se battent.*
each other,

Paul and Virginia tenderly loved *Paul et Virginie s'aimaient*
each other, *tendrement.*

When I am with my friend, we *Quand je suis avec mon ami,*
sustain each other, *nous nous soutenons.*

Explanation. In the first example EACH OTHER is rendered in French by *se*, because the nominative being composed of two nouns constitutes a nominative of the third person plural. In the second, *s'* is used for the same reason, and the apostrophe stands for the letter *e*, because it is before a vowel. In the third, EACH OTHER is rendered by *nous* because the nominative being composed of a noun and a pronoun of the first person, constitutes a nominative of the first person plural, and because the pronoun of the first person has the priority over the others. See No. 90.

EXERCISE 125.

When the order of the departure arrived the soldiers of the garrison
mutinied against their chiefs. Yesterday those two girls were walking
and strutting in the mall; I perceived them there at about five o'clock.
If I were at the head of that institution, I would strive to introduce
the best manner of governing it. When we ardently desire a thing we
flatter ourselves that we shall find it without obstacle or difficulty. Last
Tuesday those two men despised one another; but now they esteem
each other; they desire to render themselves reciprocally useful.

192. Reflective, reciprocal or active verbs, that have become reflective by the use of a passive verbal pronoun of the same number and person as their nominative, form their compound tenses with the verb *être*, in French, although TO HAVE is used in English; and the past participle must be of the same gender and number as the nominative; as in

Mary and Louisa have repented, *Marie et Louisa se sont repenties.*

Joseph and Jacob had insulted each other, *Joseph et Jacob s'étaient insultés.*

EXERCISE 126.

We have expressed ourselves very frankly on your account, but you
have not shown yourselves very firm by not defending yourselves with
energy. That man has insulted me; but soon I shall have revenged

¹⁹⁰ myself. I hope that you will ¹⁷⁸ desist from that intention, because he is not only stronger than you, but yet he will have prepared himself for meeting you. ¹²⁸ ^{ex. 7} Wouldst thou not have amused thyself at our party if Miss D. had not ¹⁹² fainted? Will the national ¹³⁵ guards have ¹⁹² presented themselves before the general at ten o'clock?—I think so, but our friends ^{ex 12} will not have ¹⁹² prepared themselves for that visit. ¹⁹⁰

CHAPTER IX.

DEFECTIVE AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

The difficulty of remembering the irregularities of the French irregular verbs has suggested the plan that is here followed in treating of them. As it may be noticed, every defective or irregular verb is given at full length, and not only its irregularities are printed in *Italic* letters, but they are besides considered singly ; and, to impress them more deeply on the mind of the student, under the irregular, though only proper forms, there are given, in small characters, the forms as they should be, were the verb a regular one ; these last forms, it should be noticed, are most frequently and erroneously used by the learner, and should be most carefully avoided. Those irregularities will be considered according to the rules for the formation of tenses, and the four models for the regular conjugations, and are printed in italics.

DEFECTIVE AND IRREGULAR VERBS. 1st CONJUGATION.

192½ INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Aller, *To go,* is a neuter verb, conjugated with être.
Pres. part. Allant, *Going.*
Past part. Allé, ée *Gone.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	vais,	vas,	il	allons,	allez,	vont
<i>Imper.</i>	allais,	allais,	allait,	allions,	alliez,	allaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	allai,	allas,	alla,	allâmes,	allâtes,	allèrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	irai,	iras,	ira,	irons,	irez,	iront.
<i>Condit.</i>	irais,	irais,	irait,	irions,	iriez,	iraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>Aille,</i>	<i>ailles,</i>	<i>aille,</i>	<i>allions,</i>	<i>alliez,</i>	<i>aillent.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	Aille,	ailles,	aille,	allions,	alliez,	aillent.
<i>Imper.</i>	allasse,	allasses,	allât,	allussions,	allassiez,	allassent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	va,	aille,	allons,	allez,	aillent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the three persons singular and third person plural of the present indicative,

which are *je vais, tu vas, il va, ils vont.*

instead of *j'alle, tu alles, il alle, ils allent.* See model for 1st conjugation.

2d. In the future and conditional,

which are *j'irai, &c. j'irais, &c.*

instead of *j'allerai, &c. j'allerais, &c.* See formation of tenses.

3d. In the radical letters of the three persons singular and third person plural of the present subjunctive,

which are *que j'aïlle, que tu aïlles, qu'il aïlle, qu'ils aïllent.*

instead of *que j'alle, que tu alles, qu'il alle, qu'ils allent.* See the formation of tenses.

193. 4th. In the second person singular of the imperative, which is *va* instead of *vas*, because the second person singular of the present indicative not ending in *es*, the *s* should be preserved. However, the *s* is retained before *y* and *en*.

Go there, . . . Vas-y.

Go for some of them, . . . Vas-en chercher.

194. Remarks on *aller*, to go:—When the object of *aller* is a noun, the preposition *à* is used before it, the same as *to* is used before the object of *to go*; and the preposition *from*, which is sometimes required after the English verb, should be translated into French by *de*; as in

He goes from Salem to Boston *Il va de Boston à Salem en deux heures.*

195. Sometimes *to go* requires *to* or *and* before the following present infinitive; but, in French, whatever the construction of the English phrase may be, the verb *aller* never requires any preposition or conjunction before the following present infinitive; as in

Go and speak to Mr. C., Allez parler à M. C.

I am going to finish my work, Je vais finir mon ouvrage.

196. After *to go* the preposition *for* is very often used, in English before a substantive, which preposition must be rendered in French, by the present infinitive *chercher*, or *quérir*.

Go for my hat, cane and gloves, Allez chercher mon chapeau, ma canne et mes gants.

197. Some writers omit the pronoun or adverb *y*, before a word commencing with an *i*, on account of the pronunciation; others retain it for the sake of grammar. To conciliate both opinions, the *y* should never be omitted in writing, and never pronounced in reading or speaking.

198. The adverb *THERE* is often omitted in English, but, in French, *y* should always be expressed, when the object of *to go* is implied.

Do you go to school?—Yes, I *Allez-vous à l'école?—Oui,*
am going. *j'y vais.*

EXERCISE 127.

Where art thou going, George?—I am going to the Lyceum.—When wilt thou go to the Atheneum?—As soon as my sister shall have decided to go there.—Is she not going there this afternoon?—She would go there if her cousin Julia was not sick—I hope that she will soon be cured that they may go together.—I desire that thy sister may not go without her, and that if they go thou mayst go with them. Where do those soldiers go?—They go for the governor and the other officers of the state. Do they go for them to escort them?—I think so; but I am not sure of it.

199. From *aller* is formed the reflexive verb *s'en aller*, which means to go AWAY, and which is conjugated thus:

I go away,	.	.	.	<i>Je m'en vais.</i>
Thou goest away,	.	.	.	<i>Tu t'en vas.</i>
He goes away,	.	.	.	<i>Il s'en va.</i>
We go away,	.	.	.	<i>Nous nous en allons.</i>
You go away,	.	.	.	<i>Vous vous en allez.</i>
They go away,	.	.	.	<i>Ils s'en vont.</i>

200. The other tenses are conjugated in the same manner, and the imperative is

Go away,	.	.	.	<i>Va-t'en.</i>
Let him go away,	.	.	.	<i>Qu'il s'en aille.</i>
Let us go away,	.	.	.	<i>Allons-nous-en.</i>
Go away,	.	.	.	<i>Allez-vous-en.</i>
Let them go away,	.	.	.	<i>Qu'ils s'en aillent.</i>

The compound tenses of *s'en aller* are formed with *être* : thus,
 I have gone away, . . . *Je m'en suis allé.*
 Thou hast gone away, . . . *Tu t'en es allé, &c.*

EXERCISE 128.

Why do you go away so soon?—Because I assured¹⁰⁴ my sister that I¹⁰⁹ would go away before it was late.—Stay but a moment ; I wish to speak¹¹⁰ to you of our business ; your sister will excuse you, and will stay also^{ex. 8} to oblige us.—I would like it ; but my father and mother are expecting^{ex. 3} us, and if we should not go away soon, they would not let us go to the party next Thursday.—I am sorry⁸⁷ for it, and I shall insist no more, and, since your father and mother wish⁴⁶ that you may go away now, I thank^{ex. 7} you for your visit, and I wish you a good night and I hope that¹⁰⁰ on Thursday you will go where you wish.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Envoyer,</i>	<i>To send,</i> is an active verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Envoyant,</i>	<i>Sending.</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Envoyé ée,</i>	<i>Sent.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>j'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	envoie,	envoies,	envoie,	envoyons,	envoyez,	envoient.
<i>Imper.</i>	envoyais,	envoyais,	envoyait,	envoyions,	envoyiez,	envoyaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	envoyai,	envoyas,	envoya,	envoyâmes,	envoyâtes,	envoyèrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	enverrai,	enverras,	enverra,	enverrons,	enverrez,	enverront.
<i>Cond.</i>	enverrais,	enverrais,	enverrait,	enverrions,	enverriez,	enverraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	envoie,	envoies,	envoie,	envoyions,	envoyiez,	envoient.
<i>Imper.</i>	envoyasse,	envoyasses,	envoyât,	envoyassions,	envoyassiez,	envoyassent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	envoie,	envoie,	envoyons,	envoyez,	envoient.

The irregularities of this verb are in the future, and the conditional,

which are *j'enverrai, &c. j'enverrais, &c.*
 instead of *j'envoierai, &c. j'envoierais, &c.*

See formation of tenses.

This verb is conjugated according to the observations on some verbs, No. 18.

The same irregularities are in *renvoyer*, TO SEND BACK.

To familiarize students with the proper use of the passive verbal pronouns, they might be required to conjugate the irregular verbs in connection with some of them, and with or without negation or interrogation.

Envoyer might be conjugated with *la leur y*, HER THERE TO THEM ; thus,

I send her there to them,	<i>Je la leur y envoie.</i>
Thou sendest her there to them	<i>Tu la leur y envoies.</i>
He sends her there to them, &c.	<i>Il la leur y envoie, &c.</i>

As to the use of the compound tenses with the passive verbal pronouns, it is necessary to take into consideration the following rules :

201. When either of the passive verbal pronouns *le, la, les, me, te, se, nous, vous*, representing the direct object of the verb, is used with a compound tense, the past participle must agree in gender and number with that direct object ; as in, (See No. 179)

I have sent <i>him</i> ,	.	.	<i>Je l'ai envoyé.</i>
Thou hast sent <i>her</i> ,	.	.	<i>Tu l'as envoyée.</i>
He has sent <i>them</i> , m.	.	.	<i>Il les a envoyés.</i>
He has sent <i>them</i> , f.	.	.	<i>Il les a envoyées.</i>

Explanation. In the first example *envoyé* is in the masculine singular because it is preceded by *l'* its direct object, which relates to a masculine singular noun. In the second, *envoyée* is in the feminine singular because its direct object *l'*, which relates to a feminine singular noun, precedes it. In the third, *envoyés* is in the masculine plural because its direct object *les*, that precedes it, relates to a masculine plural noun. In the fourth, *envoyées* is in the feminine plural because its direct object *les*, which represents a feminine plural object, precedes it.

202. When either of the passive verbal pronouns *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur, y, en*, representing the indirect object of the verb, is used with a compound tense, the past participle never varies on account of the gender and number of that indirect object ; as in

He has sent two of <i>them there</i> ,	<i>Il y en a envoyé deux.</i>
Those ladies have sent two of <i>them to him</i> ,	<i>Ces dames lui en ont envoyé deux.</i>

Explanation. In these examples the past participle is invariable, because it has no direct object before it.

203. When among several passive verbal pronouns is one representing a direct object, the past participle agrees in gender and number with that pronoun ; as in

I had sent <i>her there to them</i> ,	<i>Je la leur y avais envoyée.</i>
I should have sent <i>them to him</i> ,	<i>Je les lui aurais envoyés or envoyées.</i>

Explanation. In the first example the past participle *envoyée* is in the feminine singular, because its direct object *la*, representing a feminine singular noun, is before it. In the second, *envoyés* or *envoyées* is in the plural, because its direct object *les*, representing a plural noun, is before it : if that noun were feminine, *envoyées* should be employed ; if it were masculine, *envoyés* should be employed.

EXERCISE 129.

When will you send those goods to my boarding-house ?—I shall send
 ex. 15 ex. 2 ex. 24 & 178 ex. 2
 them to you there to-morrow.—If you send them to me to-day, you will
 ex. 1 178
 oblige me very much.—I would send them to you now, if my boy was
 ex. 9 & 179 123 44
 here ; but I have sent him with a lady to carry some goods ; after his
 return I shall send him to you ; however, you will receive your
 178 ex. 2
 goods sooner if you send your servant to me ; he is stronger than my
 87 133
 boy, and will carry the whole at once.—Very well, I am going to the ex-
 178
 change, and in one hour and a half I shall send him to you.

204. *Importer*, TO CONCERN, is a unipersonal, neuter, and defective verb. It requires the preposition *à* before the noun or pronoun that is its object ; and *que* before the next verb which must be in the subjunctive mood, or *de* before the following infinitive, though TO CONCERN requires TO.

It concerns your partners that Il importe à vos associés que
 you arrive immediately, vous arriviez immédiatement.
It much concerns them to pre- Il leur importe beaucoup de
 serve that establishment, conserver cet établissement.

Explanation. In the first example *à* is used with the object of *il importe*, and the subjunctive present *arriviez* after the conjunction *que*. In the second, the present infinitive is used after the preposition *de* ; if instead of that preposition the conjunction *que* had been employed, the following verb instead of being in the present infinitive should have been in the present subjunctive ; thus, instead of *de conserver*, it should have been *qu'ils conservent*.

205. *Résulter*, TO RESULT, TO FOLLOW, TO BE THE RESULT, is a unipersonal, neuter and defective verb ; it is conjugated with *avoir*, or *être*, and is used only in the third person singular of every tense ; following *porter* as its model. It requires *de* before its object, whether a noun or a verb. It may be conjugated with *en*, FROM IT ; thus,

It results from it, &c. . . . Il en résulte, &c.

It has resulted from it, &c. . . . Il en a résulté, &c.

206. *Neiger*, TO SNOW, is a unipersonal neuter verb ; it is conjugated with *avoir*, and is used only in the third person sin-

gular of every tense ; following *porter* as its model, together with the observation on verbs ending in *ger* in the present infinitive. (See No. 14.) It may be conjugated with *y*, THERE ; thus,

It snows *there*, &c. . . . *Il y neige, &c.*

It has snowed *there*, &c. . . . *Il y a neigé, &c.*

EXERCISE 130.

The affairs of that man concern me ^{ex. 2} very little, and if they ⁸⁷ did not concern a certain person of this place, ⁶⁰ no bad effect would follow from his unfortunate speculations. It ⁹² very much concerns Mr. D. ²⁰⁴ to receive ⁴⁴ letters from his brother ; for if he does not receive ¹⁷² any, the result will be that he will be obliged ¹³¹ to stop his works and dismiss ¹²⁵ all the men and women of his factories. If it snows soon, he will go ¹⁹⁵ and console his friend ; but perhaps it will not snow before next month ; however, it would snow ¹⁰² if the weather were less cold, and if the wind were south ; ⁹³ otherwise it will not snow. ⁹³

Puer, TO STINK, is a neuter defective verb. It is conjugated like *porter*, but it wants the past participle, the preterite definite, and the imperfect subjunctive. Its present participle is *puant*.

DEFECTIVE AND IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

207. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Acquérir,</i>	<i>To acquire,</i>	is an active verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Acquérant,</i>	<i>Acquiring.</i>	
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Acquis, ise,</i>	<i>Acquired.</i>	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>j'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>acquiers,</i>	<i>acquiers,</i>	<i>acquiert,</i>	<i>acquérons,</i>	<i>acquérez,</i>	<i>acquièrent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>acquérais,</i>	<i>acquérais,</i>	<i>acquérait,</i>	<i>acquérions,</i>	<i>acquériez,</i>	<i>acquéraient.</i>
<i>Pret.def.</i>	<i>acquis,</i>	<i>acquis,</i>	<i>acquît,</i>	<i>acquîmes,</i>	<i>acquîtes,</i>	<i>acquirent.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>acquerrai,</i>	<i>acquerras,</i>	<i>acquerra,</i>	<i>acquerrons,</i>	<i>acquerez,</i>	<i>acquerront.</i>
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>acquerraïs,</i>	<i>acquerraïs,</i>	<i>acquerrait,</i>	<i>acquerrions,</i>	<i>acqueriez,</i>	<i>acquerraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>acquière,</i>	<i>acquières,</i>	<i>acquière,</i>	<i>acquérions,</i>	<i>acquériez,</i>	<i>acquièrent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>acquiesse,</i>	<i>acquiesse,</i>	<i>acquît,</i>	<i>acquissions,</i>	<i>acquissiez,</i>	<i>acquissent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	—	<i>acquiers,</i>	<i>acquière,</i>	<i>acquérons,</i>	<i>acquérez,</i>	<i>acquièrent.</i>

The irregularities of this verb are 1st, in the present participle, which is *acquérant*.
instead of *acquérissant*. See the model *finir*

2d. In the past participle,
 which is *acquis*.
 instead of *acqui*. See the model *finir*.

3d. In the three persons singular, and third person plural
 of the present indicative,
 which are *j'acquiers, tu acquiers, il acquiert, ils acquièrent*.
 instead of *j'acquérís, tu acquérís, il acquérit, ils acquérissent*. See
 the formation of tenses.

4th. In the future and conditional,
 which are *j'acquerrai, &c. j'acquerrais, &c.*
 instead of *j'acquérirai, &c. j'acquérirais, &c.* See the formation of tenses.

5th. In the three persons singular, and third person plural
 of the present subjunctive,
 which are *acquière, acquières, acquière, acquièrent*.
 instead of *acquère, acquères, acquère, acquèrent*. See formation of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *en*, OF IT ; thus,

I acquire *of it*, . . . *J'en acquiers*.
 Thou acquirest *of it*, . . . *Tu en acquiers, &c.*
 I have acquired *of it, &c.* . . . *J'en ai acquis, &c.*

The same irregularities exist in *conquérir*, TO CONQUER ;
reconquérir, TO CONQUER AGAIN ; *requérir*, TO REQUIRE ; *s'en-*
quérir, TO ENQUIRE AFTER.

EXERCISE 131.

That man has an immense fortune, and he acquires riches every day,
 and as he is benevolent he will soon acquire claims to the esteem of his
 fellow citizens. Our master would ¹⁰²acquire ⁴⁴celebrity if he was in an
 advantageous situation, and we should ¹⁰²acquire ⁹⁴more consideration from
 his fame. By thy conduct thou acquirest the confidence of thy superi-
 ors, although thou dost not ¹⁰⁹acquire ¹¹⁰much ⁹⁴money. When I shall have
 acquired the knowledge of those sciences I shall ^{ex. 15}teach them in my
 school, that I may ¹⁰⁹increase ¹¹⁰the number of my scholars ; and I hope that
 they will ^{ex. 15}teach them when they are ⁸⁷capable ¹⁴⁶of it. ^{ex. 22}

208. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Assaillir, To assault, is an active verb.
 Pres. part. Assaillant, Assaulting.
 Past part. Assailli, Assaulted.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>j'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	assaille,	assailles,	assaille,	assaillons,	assaillez,	assaillent.
<i>Imper.</i>	assaillais,	assaillais,	assaillait,	assaillions,	assaillez,	assaillaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	assaillis,	assaillis,	assaillit,	assaillîmes,	assaillîtes,	assaillirent.
<i>Future.</i>	assaillirai,	assailliras,	assaillira,	assaillirons,	assaillirez,	assailliront.
<i>Condit.</i>	assaillirais,	assaillirais,	assaillirait,	assaillirions,	assailliriez,	assailliraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	assaille,	assailles,	assaille,	assaillions,	assaillez,	assaillent.
<i>Imper.</i>	assaillisse,	assaillisses,	assaillît,	assaillions,	assaillissiez,	assaillissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	assaille,	assaille,	assaillons,	assaillez,	assaillent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *assaillant*.
 instead of *assaissant*. See the model *finir*.

In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *assaille*, *assailles*, *assaille*.
 instead of *assaillis*, *assaillis*, *assaillit*. See the model *finir*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated after the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *les y*, THEM THERE; thus,

I assault *them there*, . . . *Je les y assaille*.
 Thou assaultest *them there*, &c. *Tu les y assailles*, &c.
 I have assaulted *them there*, &c. *Je les y ai assaillis*, &c.

The same irregularities exist in *tressaillir*, TO START.

EXERCISE 132.

If we go to that place, the inhabitants will assault us. Our soldiers^{ex.3} would assault the fort, if they had artillery; but as they have no cannon, they will be obliged to defer their operations; but they will certainly assault it before the end of the month. When I heard the noise of the guns, I started, and my apprehensions of being assaulted by the enemy were realized. At the reception of that unfortunate and unexpected news, my mother started and swooned, and when she had recovered her senses, she went to demand the protection of the consul of her government; but he had gone away during the preceding night.

209. *Bénir*, TO BLESS, is an active verb, irregular only in its past participle,

which is *bénit*, *ite*.
 instead of *béni*, *ie*. See the model *finir*.

210. However, this verb has also its regular past participle *béni*, but it is used in a different sense from the irregular one. *Bénit*, is employed to express the quality of being blessed by the church or its ministers ; and *béni*, to express that of being blessed by God, parents, or friends ; as in,

With <i>blessed</i> water,	<i>Avec de l'eau bénite.</i>
For a piece of <i>blessed</i> bread,	<i>Pour un morceau de pain bénit.</i>
The arms <i>blessed</i> by God are always successful.	<i>Les armes bénies de Dieu sont toujours heureuses.</i>

This verb may be conjugated with either *le*, *la*, or *les*, HIM, HER, IT, THEM ; thus,

I bless <i>him</i> or <i>it</i> ,	<i>Je le bénis.</i>
Thou blessest <i>her</i> or <i>it</i> , &c.	<i>Tu la bénis, &c.</i>
I have blessed <i>them</i> , &c.	<i>Je les ai bénis or bénies, &c.</i>

EXERCISE 133.

⁹³ Catholic priests ⁶² bless certain things, and the greater part of the christians of the same creed think that those ⁸⁹ blessed things have the virtue of averting the bad effects of tempests, and thunder. ¹²⁴ Blessed bread is distributed to the people in catholic churches in the time of lent. Our ancestors ⁹⁸ blessed their children when they were ⁶² good ; that custom was excellent ; for, the benediction of a father and ³⁴ mother was a sign of tenderness, ³¹ affection, and ³¹ approbation. When children were ⁹⁸ blessed, they were happy ; and when their parents refused to ¹²⁵ bless ^{ex. 15} them, they were very unhappy.

211. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Bouillir,	<i>To boil</i> is a neuter verb, conjugated with <i>avoir</i> .
<i>Pres. part.</i>	Bouillant,	<i>Boiling.</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	Bouilli,	<i>Boiled.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	bous,	bous,	bout,	bouillons,	bouillez,	bouillent.
<i>Imper.</i>	bouillais,	bouillais,	bouillait,	bouillions,	bouilliez,	bouillaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	bouillis,	bouillis,	bouillit,	bouillîmes,	bouillîtes,	bouillirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	bouillirai,	bouilliras,	bouillira,	bouillirons,	bouillirez,	bouilliront.
<i>Condit.</i>	bouillirais,	bouillirais,	bouillirait,	bouillirions,	bouilliriez,	bouilliraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	bouille,	bouilles,	bouille,	bouillions,	bouilliez,	bouillent.
<i>Imper.</i>	bouillisse,	bouillisses,	bouillît,	bouillionsions,	bouillissiez,	bouillissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	bous,	bouille	bouillons,	bouillez,	bouillent.

The irregularities of this verb are 1st, in the present participle, which is *bouillant*.
instead of *bouillissant*. See the model *finir*.

2d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *bous, bous, bout*.
instead of *bouillis, bouillis, bouillit*. See the model *finir*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated according to the formation of tenses.

212. In the sense of cooking things in water or any other liquid, this verb is used only in the infinitive, with the verb *faire*, TO MAKE, and then it becomes active ; as in

I boil the meat, . . . *Je fais bouillir la viande*.

I have boiled the eggs, . . . *J'ai fait bouillir les œufs*.

This verb may be conjugated with *le leur*, IT TO THEM OR FOR THEM ; as in

I boil it for them, &c. . . *Je le leur fais bouillir, &c.*

I have boiled it for them, &c. *Je le leur ai fait bouillir, &c.*

But it is better to leave the form with *faire*, until after the conjugation of that verb.

The same irregularities exist in *rebouillir*, TO BOIL AGAIN, and *ébouillir*, TO BOIL AWAY.

EXERCISE 134.

John, I have asked for boiling water, where is it ?—Sir, it is on the fire.—Why have you not brought it to me ?—Because it was not boiling.—Will it boil soon ?—Yes, sir, it commences to boil now.—Why has it not boiled already ?—Because I had no fire, and I have been obliged to kindle it ; but it boils now, and you shall have it in a moment.—Well, if it boils, bring it to me directly.—It has not boiled enough, sir ; but as soon as it shall have boiled enough, I will bring it to you ; and you would have had it already, if it had boiled sooner ; another time you shall have it ready beforehand.

213. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Courir, To run, is a neuter verb conjugated with *avoir*
Pres. part. Courant, Running,
Past. part. Couru, rue, Run,

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous,</i>	<i>vous,</i>	<i>ils</i>
Pres.	cours,	cours,	court,	courons,	courez,	courent.
Imper.	courais,	courais,	courait,	courions,	couriez,	couraient.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pret.def.</i>	<i>courus,</i>	<i>courus,</i>	<i>courut,</i>	<i>courûmes,</i>	<i>courûtes,</i>	<i>coururent.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>courrai,</i>	<i>courras,</i>	<i>courra,</i>	<i>courrons,</i>	<i>courrez,</i>	<i>courront.</i>
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>courrais,</i>	<i>courrais,</i>	<i>courrait,</i>	<i>courrions,</i>	<i>courriez,</i>	<i>courraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>coure,</i>	<i>coures,</i>	<i>coure,</i>	<i>courions,</i>	<i>couriez,</i>	<i>courent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>courusse,</i>	<i>courusses,</i>	<i>courût,</i>	<i>courussions,</i>	<i>courussiez,</i>	<i>courussent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	—	<i>cours,</i>	<i>coure,</i>	<i>courons,</i>	<i>courez</i>	<i>courent.</i>

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle,
which is *courant*,
instead of *courissant*. See the model *finir*.

2d. In the past participle,
which is *couru*.
instead of *couri*. See the model *finir*.

3d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative.
which are *cours*, *cours*, *court*.
instead of *couris*, *couris*, *court*. See the model *finir*.

4th. In the preterite definite,
which is *courus*, &c.
instead of *couris*, &c. See the model *finir*.

5th. In the future and conditional,
which are *courrai*, &c. *courrais*, &c.
instead of *courirai*, &c. *courirais*, &c.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *y*, TO IT OR THERE; thus,

I run *there*, *J'y cours*.
Thou runnest *there*, &c. . . . *Tu y cours*, &c.
I have run *there*, &c. . . . *J'y ai couru*, &c.

The same irregularities exist in *accourir*, TO RUN TO; *concourir*, TO CONCUR OR COMPETE; *discourir*, TO DISCOURSE; *encourir*, TO INCUR; *parcourir*, TO RUN OVER; *recourir*, TO RECUR TO; *secourir*, TO SUCCOR.

EXERCISE 135.

¹³³ Do you go to the exhibition of the animals of the menagerie?—Yes.
—But you will arrive late.—I do not think so, because I shall run all
¹³³ the way.—If you run all the way, perhaps you will arrive before the be-
^{ex-12} ginning of the exhibition; however, if I were you, I would not run.—
¹⁴⁹ Why?—Because, if you run, you will be very much fatigued.—But, if I
¹⁴⁹

¹³³do not run, the exhibition, as you have observed, ^{174&ex.11} will have commenced, and I wish to be present at the beginning.—Then you will be obliged ¹²⁵to run, and run very fast, for, if ⁸⁷it has not commenced, ⁸⁷it will commence very soon.

214. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Couvrir,	<i>To cover,</i>	is an active verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	Couvrant,	<i>Covering,</i>	
<i>Past part.</i>	Couvert, <i>rte,</i>	<i>Covered,</i>	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous,</i>	<i>vous,</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	couvre,	couvres,	couvre,	couvrons,	couvrez,	couvrent.
<i>Imper.</i>	couvrais,	couvrais,	couvrait,	couvrons,	couvriez,	couvraient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	couvris,	couvris,	couvrit,	couvrîmes,	couvrites,	couvrirent.
<i>Future.</i>	couvrirai,	couvrires,	couvrira,	couvrons,	couvrirez,	couvriront.
<i>Condit.</i>	couvrirais,	couvrirais,	couvrirait,	couvrons,	couvriez,	couvriraient

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	couvre,	couvres,	couvre,	couvrons,	couvriez,	couvrent.
<i>Imper.</i>	couvrisse,	couvrisse,	couvrit,	couvrissons,	couvrissez,	couvrirent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	couvre,	couvre,	couvrons,	couvriez,	couvrent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *couvrant*.
instead of *couvissant*. See the model *finir*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *couvert*.
instead of *covri*. See the model *finir*.

3d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *je couvre, tu couvres, il couvre*.
instead of *je couvris, tu couvris, il couvrit*. See the model *finir*.

The preterite definite is regular according to the model *finir*, and irregular according to the formation of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le, la* or *les*, HIM or IT, HER or IT, THEM ; thus,

I cover <i>them,</i>	.	.	<i>Je les couvre.</i>
Thou coverest <i>them,</i>	&c.		<i>Tu les couvres, &c.</i>
I have covered <i>them,</i>	&c.		<i>Je les ai couverts or couvertes, &c.</i>

The same irregularities exist in *découvrir*, TO DISCOVER ; *mésoffrir*, TO UNDERBID ; *offrir*, TO OFFER ; *ouvrir*, TO OPEN ;

recouvrir, TO COVER UP AGAIN; *rouvrir*, TO OPEN AGAIN; *en-tr'ouvrir*, TO OPEN A LITTLE; *souffrir*, TO SUFFER.

EXERCISE 136.

Joseph, cover the fire.—It is already covered.—And the preserves, are they covered?—They are not yet.—Cover them then. Julia, hast thou covered thy grammar?—I am covering it now.—How! thou art covering it now! Why didst thou not cover it last Friday?—Because I had no blue paper.—And thy other books, are they covered?—Not yet; but I would cover them now, if I had not my lessons to study.—Well; study them, and when thou hast recited, thou wilt cover them all without exception, for by covering them thou wilt preserve them much better.

215. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Cueillir, *To gather*, is an active verb.
Pres. part. Cueillant, *Gathering*.
Past part. Cueilli, *Gathered*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	cueille,	cueilles,	cueille,	cueillons,	cueillez,	cueillent.
<i>Imper.</i>	cueillais,	cueillais,	cueillait,	cueillions,	cueilliez,	cueillaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	cueillis,	cueillis,	cueillit,	cueillimes,	cueillîtes,	cueillirent.
<i>Future.</i>	cueillerai,	cueilleras,	cueillera,	cueillerons,	cueillerez,	cueilleront.
<i>Condit.</i>	cueillerais,	cueillerais,	cueillerait,	cueillerions,	cueilleriez,	cueilleraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	cueille,	cueilles,	cueille,	cueillions,	cueilliez,	cueillent.
<i>Imper.</i>	cueillisse,	cueillisses,	cueillît,	cueillissions,	cueillissiez,	cueillissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	cueille,	cueille,	cueillons,	cueillez,	cueillent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *cueillant*, instead of *cuillissant*. See the model *finir*.

2d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *je cueille*, *tu cueilles*, *il cueille*, instead of *je cueillis*, *tu cueillis*, *il cueillit*. See the model *finir*.

3d. In the future and conditional, which are *je cueillerai*, &c. *je cueillerais*, &c. instead of *je cueillirai*, &c. *je cueillirais*, &c. See formation of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *lui en*, SOME OF IT, OR OF THEM, FOR HIM OR HER; thus,

I gather some for him, or her, Je lui en cueille.

Thou gatherest some for him, *Tu lui en cueilles*, &c.
or her, &c.

I have gathered some for him, *Je lui en ai cueilli*, &c.
or her, &c.

The same irregularities exist in *accueillir*, TO WELCOME;
recueillir, TO GATHER.

EXERCISE 137.

Louisa, where are you?—I am in the garden. I am gathering flowers
for a nosegay.—Have you gathered roses?—Yes, I have gathered six
of them.—And the violets of the green box?—I have gathered them all.—
And the mignonette?—I have not yet gathered any; but I will gather
some.—Do you think of gathering cherries?—I would gather some if
they were not so high.—Will not George go and gather some for you?—
I should like it; and if he gathers only my basket full, I will gather
some pretty flowers for him.—I have no doubt he would gather them all
to oblige you.

216. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Dormir, *To sleep*, is a neuter verb, conjugated with *avoir*.
Pres. part. Dormant, *Sleeping*.
Past part. Dormi, *Slept*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	dors,	dors,	dort,	dormons,	dermez,	dorment.
<i>Imper.</i>	dormais,	dormais,	dormait,	dormions,	dormiez,	dormaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	dormis,	dormis,	dormit,	dormimes,	dormîtes,	dormirent.
<i>Future.</i>	dormirai,	dormiras,	dormira,	dormirons,	dormirez,	dormiront.
<i>Condit.</i>	dormirais,	dormirais,	dormirait,	dormirions,	dormiriez,	dormiraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	dorme,	dormes,	dorme,	dormions,	dormiez,	dorment.
<i>Imper.</i>	dormisse,	dormisses,	dormît,	dormissions,	dormissiez,	dormissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	dors,	dorme,	dormons,	dormez,	dorment.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle,
which is *dormant*.
instead of *dormissant*. See the model *finir*.

2d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative,
which are *je dors*, *tu dors*, *il dort*.
instead of *je dormis*, *tu dormis*, *il dormit*. See the model *finir*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *y*, THERE ; thus

I sleep *there*, *J'y dors*.

Thou sleepest *there*, &c. . . . *Tu y dors*, &c.

I have slept *there*, &c. . . . *J'y ai dormi*, &c.

The same irregularities exist in *endormir*, TO LULL ASLEEP ; *s'endormir*, TO FALL ASLEEP OR TO FEEL SLEEPY ; *redormir*, TO SLEEP AGAIN ; *se rendormir*, TO FALL ASLEEP AGAIN.

EXERCISE 138.

Harriet, go ¹⁹⁵ and ask ¹²⁵ your father whether he wishes his tea ; but if he sleeps, do not awake him.—I am going directly. Then Harriet went to the room of her father ; she asked him softly ; Father, art thou sleeping ? —No, I have not slept since yesterday ; however, I do not feel sleepy.—Do you wish your tea ?—No ; because ⁸⁷ it prevents ^{ex.1} me from sleeping, and a good slumber would, I think, relieve ⁴⁴ me now. Perhaps opium would be better for me now.—I will give you some, if you desire it.—No, I thank you ; I think that I shall sleep soon without that drug.

217. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Faillir, *To fail*, is a neuter verb, conjugated with *avoir*.

Pres. part. Faillant, *Failing*.

Past part. Failli, *Failed*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	faut,	faut,	faut,	faillons,	failliez,	faillent.
<i>Imper.</i>	faillais,	faillais,	faillait,	faillions,	failliez,	faillaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	faillis,	faillis,	faillit,	faillimes,	faillites,	faillirent.
<i>Future.</i>	faudrai,	faudras,	faudra,	faudrons,	faudrez,	faudront.
<i>Condit.</i>	faudrais,	faudrais,	faudrait,	faudrions,	faudriez,	faudraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	faille,	failles,	faille,	faillions,	failliez,	faillent.
<i>Imper.</i>	faillisse,	faillisses,	faillît,	faillions,	faillissiez,	faillissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	faut,	faille,	faillions,	failliez,	faillent.

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle, which is *faillant*.
instead of *faillissant*.

See the model *finir*.

2d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *faut*, *faut*, *faut*.
instead of *faillis*, *faillis*, *faillit*. See the model *finir*.

3d. In the future and conditional, which are *je faudrai*, &c. *je faudrais*, &c.
instead of *je faillirai*, &c. *je faillirais*, &c.

218. As to this verb, we see in "La Grammaire des Grammaires," that "the French academy have put in their dictionary, *je faux, tu faux, il faut, nous faillons, vous faillez, ils faillent, je faillais, je faillis, je faudrai, faillant*, but observing that several of those tenses are in very little use; and indeed, if they are used at all, it is only in a familiar style. As to the future, some persons write *faudrai*, &c. and others *faillirai*." On account of the future of the verb *falloir*, which is also *faudrai*, &c. it is desirable that *faillirai* should prevail. The verb *manquer*, TO FAIL, is very often employed instead of *faillir*.

The same Grammar says that this verb is used only in the preterite definite, and in all its compound tenses.

EXERCISE 139.

That building has failed at the foundation, because it was not deep enough. Our horse has begun to fail in the legs. Will you forget your promise?—No; I shall go to your party without fail. He failed when money was scarce; but he would not have failed if one of his debtors, for a considerable amount, had not failed last month. The difficulty of procuring money or credit obliged him to fail; and my opinion is, that several of our first merchants of the city will soon fail, for they are already very much embarrassed.

219. *Défaillir*, TO DECAY, is a neuter and defective verb, conjugated with *avoir*. It is almost out of use, and has only the plural of the present indicative, the imperfect and the preterites, which are regularly formed, (the present participle being supposed *défaillant*.) and the present infinitive.

220. *Férir*, TO STRIKE, is an active and defective verb, used only in this phrase *sans coup férir*, WITHOUT STRIKING A BLOW. Its past participle *féru*, is used only in a very familiar style.

221. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Fleurir, To prosper or flourish, is a neuter verb conjugated with *avoir*.
 Pres. part. Florissant, Prospering or flourishing.
 Past part. Fleuri, e, Prospered or flourished.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
Pres.	fleuris,	fleuris,	fleurit,	florissons,	florissez,	florissent.
Imper.	florissais,	florissais,	florissait,	florissions,	florissiez,	florissaient.
Pret. def.	fleuris,	fleuris,	fleurit,	fleurîmes,	fleurîtes,	fleurirent.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Future,</i>	fleurirai,	fleuriras,	fleurira,	fleurirons,	fleurirez,	fleuriront.
<i>Condit.</i>	fleurirais,	fleurirais,	fleurirait,	fleuririons,	fleuririez,	fleuriraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	florisse,	florisses,	florisse,	florissions,	florissiez,	florissent.
<i>Imper.</i>	florisse,	florisses,	florît,	florissions,	florissiez,	florissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	floris,	florisse,	florissons,	florissez,	florissent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the radical letters of the present participle, which is *florissant*,

instead of

flourissant.

See the model *finir*.

2d. In the tenses that are formed from the present participle, which have the same irregularity in the radical letters.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *y*, THERE ; thus,

I prosper *there*, . . . *J'y fleuris.*

Thou prosperest *there*, &c. *Tu y fleuris, &c.*

I have prospered *there*, &c. *J'y ai fleuri, &c.*

This verb should not be confounded with the regular verb *fleurir*, *fleurissant*, *fleuri*, which means TO BLOSSOM.

222. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Fuir, To run away, is a neuter verb conjugated with *avoir*.

Pres.part. Fuyant, Running away.

Past part. Fui, Ran away.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	fuis,	fuis,	fuit,	fuyons,	fuyez,	fuient.
<i>Imper.</i>	fuyais,	fuyais,	fuyait,	fuyions,	fuyiez,	fuyaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	fuis,	fuit,	fuit,	fuîmes,	fuîtes,	fuirent.
<i>Future,</i>	fuirai,	fuiras,	fuirà,	fuirons,	fuires,	fuiront.
<i>Condit.</i>	fuirais,	fuirais,	fuirait,	fuirions,	fuiriez,	fuiraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	fuie,	fuies,	fuie,	fuyions,	fuyiez,	fuient.
<i>Imper.</i>	fuisse,	fuisses,	fuît,	fuissions,	fuissiez,	fuissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	fuis,	fuie,	fuyons,	fuyez,	fuient.

The irregularities of this verb are in the present participle, which is *fuyant*.

instead of

fuissant.

See the model *finir*.

The other tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses, and the observations on verbs whose termination *ant* is preceded by *y*: See No. 18.

The same observations stand good for *s'enfuir*, TO RUN AWAY.

223. The verb *fuir* is often used as an active verb, when it means TO AVOID, TO SHUN.

224. *Gésir*, TO LIE, is a neuter and defective verb. It is used only in these tenses and persons; *il gît, nous gisons, ils gisent, il gisait, gisant*. Epitaphs generally commence with *ci-gît*, HERE LIES.

EXERCISE 140.

Our soldiers entered the city without striking a blow : they found that commerce was flourishing, and that the arts and sciences were cultivated there, and that they were even in a prosperous condition : they thought that literature would prosper there, if youth had more time to devote to it. Before their entry into the city, the municipal officers had run away, and a great number of citizens would have also run away, if the sudden arrival of our troops had not prevented them (from it) ; showing that cowards have always run away, do always run away, and will always run away at the approach of their enemies.

225. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Haïr, *To hate*, is an active verb.

Pres. part. Haïssant, *Hating*.

Past part. Haï, e, *Hated*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	haïs,	haïs,	hait,	haïssons,	haïssez,	haïssent.
<i>Imper.</i>	haïssais,	haïssais,	haïssait,	haïssions,	haïssiez,	haïssaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	haïs,	haïs,	haît,	haïmes,	haïtes,	haïrent.
<i>Future,</i>	haïrai,	haïras,	haïra,	haïrons,	haïrez,	haïront.
<i>Condit.</i>	haïrais,	haïrais,	haïrait,	haïrions,	haïriez,	haïraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	haïsse,	haïsses,	haïsse,	haïssions,	haïssiez,	haïssent.
<i>Imper.</i>	haïsse,	haïsses,	haît,	haïssions,	haïssiez,	haïssent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	haïs,	haïese,	haïssons,	haïssez,	haïssent.

The irregularities of this verb are in the three persons singular of the present indicative,

which are *haïs, haïs, haît*,
instead of *haïs, haïs, haît*. See the model *finir*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated ; except the first and second persons plural of the preterite of the indicative and the third singular of the imperfect subjunctive, which have two dots over the *i* instead of a circumflex accent.

Haïr may be conjugated with *le, la, or les*, HIM, HER, IT, OR THEM; thus,

I hate *him, or it*, *Je le hais*,
 'Thou hatest *him, or it, &c.* *Tu le hais, &c.*
 I have hated *him, or it, &c.* *Je l'ai haï, &c.*

EXERCISE 141.

When we found that poor man, he was lying on the straw. Here lies Green Poll, here lie all our hearts. Here lies a virtuous man; the effects of his kindness and benevolence were felt by all his friends, and now he is receiving his reward among the righteous.—What vice dost thou hate most?—As my father hates hypocrisy, I hate it, above all.—Dost thou not hate that word 'to hate'?—Yes, I hate it, and I always avoid using it; if I should hate a thing, I should prefer to express my feelings by other words,—by 'I do not like it.'

226. *Issir*, TO ISSUE, TO DESCEND, is a neuter and defective verb, used only in its compound tenses, which are formed with its past participle *issu, e*, and the verb *être*. It may be conjugated with *en*, FROM HIM, HER, IT, OR THEM; thus,

I descended from *him, her, it, them*, *J'en suis issu, or issue*.
 Thou descendest from *him, her, it, them, &c.* *Tu en es issu, &c.*
 She descended from *him, her, it, them, &c.* *Elle en est issue, &c.*

227. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, *Mentir*, *To lie*, is a neuter verb, conjugated with *avoir*.
Pres. part. *Mentant*, *Lying*.
Past part. *Menti*, *Lied*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mens</i> ,	<i>mens</i> ,	<i>ment</i> ,	<i>mentons</i> ,	<i>mentez</i> ,	<i>mentent</i> .
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>mentais</i> ,	<i>mentais</i> ,	<i>mentait</i> ,	<i>mentions</i> ,	<i>mentiez</i> ,	<i>mentaient</i> .
<i>Pret. def.</i>	<i>mentis</i> ,	<i>mentis</i> ,	<i>mentit</i> ,	<i>mentimes</i> ,	<i>mentîtes</i> ,	<i>mentirent</i> .
<i>Future.</i>	<i>mentirai</i> ,	<i>mentiras</i> ,	<i>mentira</i> ,	<i>mentirons</i> ,	<i>mentirez</i> ,	<i>mentiront</i> .
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>mentirais</i> ,	<i>mentirais</i> ,	<i>mentirait</i> ,	<i>mentirions</i> ,	<i>mentiriez</i> ,	<i>mentiraient</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mente</i> ,	<i>mentes</i> ,	<i>mente</i> ,	<i>mentions</i> ,	<i>mentiez</i> ,	<i>mentent</i> .
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>mentisse</i> ,	<i>mentisses</i> ,	<i>mentît</i> ,	<i>mentissions</i> ,	<i>mentissiez</i> ,	<i>mentissent</i> .
<i>Impera.</i>	—	<i>mens</i> ,	<i>mente</i> ,	<i>mentons</i> ,	<i>mentez</i> ,	<i>mentent</i> .

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *mentant*,
 instead of *mentissant*. See the model *finir*.

2d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *mens*, *mens*, *ment*, instead of *mentis*, *mentis*, *mentit*. See the model *finir*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *leur*, TO THEM; thus,

I lie to them, *Je leur mens*.

Thou liest to them, &c. . . . *Tu leur mens*, &c.

I have lied to them, &c. . . . *Je leur ai menti*, &c.

The same irregularities are in *consentir*, TO CONSENT; *démentir*, TO GIVE THE LIE; *pressentir*, TO FORESEE; *se repentir*, TO REPENT; *ressentir*, TO FEEL, TO RESENT; *sentir*, TO FEEL, TO SMELL.

EXERCISE 142.

That man pretends to descend from a noble family, but he lies impudently; for he is descended from an obscure family of our town. If thou wert ever lying, I should perhaps have some doubts; but, as thou never liest, I do not doubt thy word.—O no! I never lie; I hate falsehood and hypocrisy too much.—Then you hate two very bad things; but it seems to me that there should be a discrimination in lies.—Perhaps so; but, after all, I consider a liar as one of the worst beings in society, and I do think he is not better than a thief.

228. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Mourir, *To die*, is a neuter verb, conjugated with *être*.

Pres. part. Mourant, *Dying*.

Past part. Mort, *Died*.

* INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>meurs</i> ,	<i>meurs</i> ,	<i>meurt</i> ,	<i>mourons</i> ,	<i>mourez</i> ,	<i>meurent</i> .
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>mourais</i> ,	<i>mourais</i> ,	<i>mourait</i> ,	<i>mourions</i> ,	<i>mouriez</i> ,	<i>mouraient</i> .
<i>Pret.def.</i>	<i>mourus</i> ,	<i>mourus</i> ,	<i>mourut</i> ,	<i>mourûmes</i> ,	<i>mourûtes</i> ,	<i>moururent</i> .
<i>Future</i> ,	<i>mourrai</i> ,	<i>mourras</i> ,	<i>mourra</i> ,	<i>mourrons</i> ,	<i>mourez</i> ,	<i>mourront</i> .
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>mourrais</i> ,	<i>mourrais</i> ,	<i>mourrait</i> ,	<i>mourrions</i> ,	<i>mourriez</i> ,	<i>mourraient</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>meure</i> ,	<i>meures</i> ,	<i>meure</i> ,	<i>mourions</i> ,	<i>mouriez</i> ,	<i>meurent</i> .
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>mourusse</i> ,	<i>mourusses</i> ,	<i>mourût</i> ,	<i>mourussions</i> ,	<i>mourussiez</i> ,	<i>mourussent</i> .
<i>Impera.</i>	—	<i>meurs</i> ,	<i>meure</i> ,	<i>mourons</i> ,	<i>mourez</i> ,	<i>meurent</i> .

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *mourant*, instead of *mourissant*. See the model *finir*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *mort*,
instead of *mouri*. See the model *finir*.

3d. In the three persons singular and third person plural of the present indicative,

which are *meurs, meurs, meurt, meurent*.
instead of *mouris, mouris, mourit, mourent*. See the model *finir*
 for the three persons singular, and the formation of tenses for the third person plural.

4th. In the preterite definite, which is *mourus, &c.*
instead of *mouris, &c.* See formation of tenses.

5th. In the future and conditional,
 which are *mourrai, &c. mourrais, &c.*
instead of *mourirai, &c. mourirais, &c.* See the formation of tenses.

6th. In the three persons singular and third person plural of the present subjunctive,

which are *meure, meures, meure, meurent*,
instead of *moure, moures, moure, mourent*. See formation of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

229. This verb may be conjugated with *en*, OF IT, WITH IT, IN CONSEQUENCE OF IT; thus,

I die *of it*, . . . *J'en meurs*.
 Thou diest *of it, &c.* . . *Tu en meurs, &c.*
 I have died *of it, &c.* . . *J'en suis mort or morte, &c.*

EXERCISE 143.

I have received the news that my brother is dead, and I am dying with sorrow.—I hope, however, that thou wilt not die of it, and that thou wilt find some source of consolation. The death of a brother is certainly a very great misfortune, but one does not always die in consequence of it; and if thou diest, thy children will be without a protector in this world. When did he die?—He died last Friday.—Has he left any children?—He has left three (of them).—Of what sickness did he die?—Of the cholera morbus. A great many persons are dying now of it.

230. *Ouïr*, TO HEAR, is an active verb, used only in the preterite indefinite,

which is *ouïs, ouïs, ouït, ouïmes, ouïtes, ouïrent*;
 —in the past participle, which is *ouï, ouïe*;—in the present infinitive, and the compound tenses, which are formed with *avoir*.

231. This verb is generally used with the present infinitive *dire*, TO SAY ; thus,

I have heard,	.	.	<i>J'ai ouï dire.</i>
Thou hast heard, &c.	.	.	<i>Tu as ouï dire, &c.</i>
I have heard it, &c.	.	.	<i>Je l'ai ouï dire, &c.</i>

232. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Partir,</i>	<i>To set out, is a neuter verb, conjugated with être.</i>
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Partant,</i>	<i>Setting out.</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Parti, e,</i>	<i>Set out.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>pars,</i>	<i>pars,</i>	<i>part,</i>	<i>partons,</i>	<i>partez,</i>	<i>partent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>partais,</i>	<i>partais,</i>	<i>partait,</i>	<i>partions,</i>	<i>partiez,</i>	<i>partaient.</i>
<i>Pret. def.</i>	<i>partis,</i>	<i>partis,</i>	<i>partit,</i>	<i>partîmes,</i>	<i>partîtes,</i>	<i>partirent.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>partirai,</i>	<i>partiras,</i>	<i>partira,</i>	<i>partirons,</i>	<i>partirez,</i>	<i>partiront.</i>
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>partirais,</i>	<i>partirais,</i>	<i>partirait,</i>	<i>partirions,</i>	<i>partiriez,</i>	<i>partiraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>parte,</i>	<i>partes,</i>	<i>parte,</i>	<i>partions,</i>	<i>partiez,</i>	<i>partent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>partisse,</i>	<i>partisses,</i>	<i>partît,</i>	<i>partissions,</i>	<i>partissiez,</i>	<i>partissent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	—	<i>pars,</i>	<i>parte,</i>	<i>partons,</i>	<i>partez,</i>	<i>partent.</i>

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *partant*, instead of *partissant*. See the model *finir*.

2d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *pars*, *pars*, *part*. instead of *partis*, *partis*, *partit*. See the model *finir*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *en*, FROM IT, FROM THERE ; thus, I set out *from there* or *it*, *J'en pars*.

Thou settest out *from there* or *it*, &c. *Tu en pars, &c.*

I have set out *from there* or *it*, &c. *J'en suis parti* or *partie, &c.*

The same irregularities are in *repartir*, TO SET OUT AGAIN ; *ressortir*, TO GO OUT AGAIN ; *sortir*, TO GO OUT.

233. The preposition *on*, which generally follows the verb TO SET OUT, is generally translated into French by *pour* ; as To-morrow I shall set out *on* *Demain je partirai pour un* a voyage, *voyage.*

EXERCISE 144.

What day dost thou set out for Hartford?—I shall set out next Tuesday, if I do not set out on Monday.—Wouldst thou set out without thy cousin, if he should not be ready then?—Yes. I am obliged to set out as soon as possible, because I wish to speak to Mrs. Lavone, and I am sure that she will set out soon on a long journey.—Does she expect thee?—I do not think she does.—Then, if she sets out before thee, thou wilt be disappointed.—I should be so; but I hope, that, when I shall arrive, she will not have set out, and that I shall find her at home.

234. *Quérir*, TO GO AND BRING, is an active and defective verb, which is never used except in the present infinitive after the verbs *aller*, TO GO; *venir*, TO COME; *envoyer*, TO SEND; thus,

To go and bring, . . . *Aller quérir*, or *chercher*.

To come for, . . . *Venir quérir*, or *chercher*.

To send for, . . . *Envoyer quérir*, or *chercher*.

235. *Saillir*, TO GUSH OUT, is a neuter and defective verb, used only in the third persons singular and plural of each tense, which are regularly formed, the participles being supposed to be *saillissant*, *sailli*. It may be conjugated with *en*, FROM IT; thus,

Water gushes out from it, *Il en saillit de l'eau*.

Water has gushed out from it, *Il en a sailli de l'eau*.

The verb *jaillir* is generally used instead of *saillir*.

236. *Saillir*, TO PROJECT, is also a neuter and defective verb, used only in the third persons singular and plural of each tense; its participles are *saillant*, *sailli*. Its present indicative is *il saille*, *ils saillent*. The other tenses are regularly formed according to the formation of tenses.

EXERCISE 145.

Have you sent for our journal?—Not yet; but I think I shall go to the post-office myself.—Do you not expect Mr. B. to-day?—Yes, I expect him.—Will he bring my music?—I do not think he will; but I am not sure of it; and if he did not bring it, our servant would go and fetch it.—What kind of ornaments do you like best? Do you think that those flowers are pretty?—I find them very fine; but do they not

project too much ?—I do not think so ; ^{ex.12} and ⁸⁷ they will project less when the drapery shall be placed, ¹³¹ otherwise I think they would ⁸⁷ project too much.

237. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Servir, *To serve, or to help,* is an active verb.

Pres. part. Servant, *Serving, or helping.*

Past part. Servi, e, *Served, or helped.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	sers,	sers,	sert,	servons,	servez,	servent.
<i>Imper.</i>	servais,	servais,	servait,	servions,	serviez,	servaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	servis,	servis,	servit,	servîmes,	servîtes,	servirent.
<i>Future,</i>	servirai,	serviras,	servira,	servirons,	servirez,	serviront.
<i>Condit.</i>	servirais,	servirais,	servirait,	servirions,	serviriez,	serviraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	serve,	erves,	serve,	servions,	serviez,	servent.
<i>Imper.</i>	servisse,	servisses,	servît,	servissions,	servissiez,	servissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	sers,	serve,	servons,	servez,	servent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *servant*, instead of *servissant*. See the model *finir*.

2d, In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *sers, sers, sert*, instead of *servis, servis, servit*. See the model *finir*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *lui en*, HIM or HER TO SOME OF IT, OR OF THEM ; thus,

I help *him to some of it*, *Te lui en sers.*
 Thou helpest *him to some of it, &c.* *Tu lui en sers, &c.*
 I have helped *him to some of it, &c.* *Je lui en ai servi, &c.*

The same irregularities exist in *desservir*, TO CLEAR THE TABLE, OR TO HURT ; *se servir de*, TO MAKE USE OF.

EXERCISE 146.

Where is thy brother ?—He is in the navy ; he is ¹³³ serving his country.
 —Why dost thou ¹³⁴ not serve ^{ex.11} it thyself ?—If I do not ^{ex.11} serve it with arms, like my brother, I serve it differently.—How ?—I am the minister of a church in this place.—I am very glad of it ; and I think that thou art ¹⁷⁰ as useful ¹¹¹ as thy brother. In what quality does ¹³⁴ he serve ?—He is the

captain of the Nestor.—How many years has ²¹ he served?—About two years.—Shall I help you to some of this dish?—No, I thank you; my neighbour has already helped me to some of it.

238. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Tenir,	<i>To hold,</i>	is an active verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	Tenant,	<i>Holding.</i>	
<i>Past part.</i>	Tenu, e,	<i>Held.</i>	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	tiens,	tiens,	tient,	tenons,	tenez,	tiennent.
<i>Imper.</i>	tenais,	tenais,	tenait,	tenions,	teniez,	tenaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	tins,	tins,	tint,	tîmes,	tîntes,	tinrent.
<i>Future.</i>	tiendrai,	tiendras,	tiendra,	tiendrons,	tiendrez,	tiendront.
<i>Condit.</i>	tiendrais,	tiendrais,	tiendrait,	tiendrions,	tiendriez,	tiendraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	tienne,	tiennes,	tienne,	tenions,	teniez,	tiennent.
<i>Imper.</i>	tinsse,	tiusses,	tînt,	tinssions,	tinssiez,	tinssent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	tiens,	tienne,	tenons,	tenez,	tiennent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *tenant*,
instead of *tenissant*. See the model *finir*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *tenu*,
instead of *teni*. See the model *finir*.

3d. In the three persons singular and the third plural of the present indicative, which is *tiens, tiens, tient, tiennent*,
instead of *tenis, tenis, tenit, tenent*. For the three persons singular see the model *finir*, and for the third person plural see formation of tenses.

4th. In the preterite definite, which is *tins, tins, tint, tîmes, tîntes, tinrent*,
instead of *tenus, tenus, tenut, tenûmes, tenûtes, tenurent*. See formation of tenses.

5th. In the future and conditional, which are *tiendrai, &c. tiendrais, &c.*
instead of *tenirai, &c. tenirais, &c.* See formation of tenses.

6th. In the three persons singular and third plural of the present subjunctive,

which are *tienne, tiennes, tienne, tiennent*,
instead of *tene, tenes, tene, tenent*. See formation of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *les y*, THEM THERE; thus, I hold *them there*, . . . *Je les y tiens*.

Thou holdest *them there*, &c. *Tu les y tiens, &c.*

I have held *them there*, &c. *Je les y ai tenus, or tenues, &c.*

The same irregularities are in *s'abstenir*, TO ABSTAIN; *appartenir*, TO BELONG; *avenir*, TO HAPPEN; *contenir*, TO CONTAIN OR RESTRAIN; *contrevenir*, TO OPPOSE; *convenir*, TO AGREE; *détenir*, TO DETAIN; *devenir*, TO BECOME; *disconvenir*, TO DENY; *entretenir*, TO MAINTAIN, TO KEEP; *intervenir*, TO INTERVENE; *maintenir*, TO MAINTAIN; *obtenir*, TO OBTAIN; *parvenir*, TO ATTAIN; *prévenir*, TO ANTICIPATE; *provenir*, TO COME FROM; *se ressouvenir*, TO RECOLLECT, TO REMEMBER; *retenir*, TO RETAIN; *revenir*, TO COME AGAIN; *redevenir*, TO BECOME AGAIN; *soutenir*, TO SUPPORT; *subvenir*, TO COME BY CHANCE, TO PROVIDE; *survenir*, TO HAPPEN; *venir*, TO COME; *se souvenir*, TO REMEMBER.

EXERCISE 147.

Hold that end of this cord, I shall hold the middle of it, and your sister will hold the other end. Does this book belong to Mr. L. ?—No ; it belongs to Mrs. N. : yesterday it belonged to Miss G., and perhaps tomorrow it will belong to another person. Will your cousin come to my party, if I invite her ?—She will be very glad to go, I am sure of it.—Why did she not come last week ?—Because she was not yet come from the country, and she was very sorry for it.—Well. Give her my invitation, and come with her ; so I shall be sure to have her this time.

239. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Vêtir, To clothe, is an active verb.
Pres. part. Vêtant, Clothing.
Past part. Vêtu, e, Clothed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	vêts,	vêts,	vêt,	vêtons,	vêtez,	vêtent.
<i>Imper.</i>	vêtais,	vêtais,	vêtait,	vêtions,	vétiez,	vêtaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	vêtis,	vêtis,	vêtit,	vêtîmes,	vêtîtes,	vêtirent.
<i>Future.</i>	vêtirai,	vêtiras,	vêtira,	vêtirons,	vêtirez,	vêtiront.
<i>Condit.</i>	vêtirais,	vêtirais,	vêtirait,	vêtirions,	vêtiriez,	vêtiraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>vête,</i>	<i>vêtes,</i>	<i>vête,</i>	<i>vêtions,</i>	<i>vétiez,</i>	<i>vêtent.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	vête,	vêtes,	vête,	vêtions,	vétiez,	vêtent.
<i>Imper.</i>	vêtisse,	vêtisses,	vêtît,	vêtissions,	vêtissiez,	vêtissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	vêts,	vête,	vêtons,	vêtez,	vêtent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *vêtant*,
 instead of *vêtissant*. See the model *finir*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *vêtu*,
 instead of *vêti*. See the model *finir*.

3d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *vêts, vêts, vêt*, instead of *vêtis, vêtis, vêtit*. See the model *finir*.

4th. In the preterite definite, which is *vêtis, vêtis, vêtit, vêtîmes, vêtîtes, vêtirent*, instead of *vêtus, vêtus, vêtut, vêtûmes, vêtûtes, vêturent*. See forma. of tenses.

However, the preterite *vêtis, &c.*, is regular, according to the model *finir*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le*, HIM ; thus,

I clothe *him*, *Je le vêts.*

Thou clothest *him*, &c. *Tu le vêts, &c.*

I have clothed *him*, &c. *Je l'ai vêtu, &c.*

The same irregularities are in *se dévêtir*, TO UNCLOTHE ONE'S SELF ; *revêtir*, TO CLOTHE OR INVEST.

NOTE. In the following Exercise the verb TO DRESS should be rendered by *vêtir* merely for the sake of practice, the verb of the first conjugation, *habiller*, being preferable ; since the true meaning of *vêtir* is TO INVEST OR TO PROVIDE WITH CLOTHES, and that of *habiller* is TO DRESS. Besides, *vêtir* is very little used ; for, *habiller* is also very often employed in the sense of TO PROVIDE WITH CLOTHES ; as in this phrase,

He works for me ; but I lodge and clothe him,

Il travaille pour moi ; mais je le loge et l'habille.

Few persons would say : *et le vêts.*

EXERCISE 148.

Jane, have you dressed the child ?—Not yet, madam ; but I am dressing him now, and I have almost finished.—I hope, that, another time, you will dress him before this hour.—I should have dressed him already, if Miss Lucy had not come to hinder me ; yesterday I was not disturbed, and I dressed him according to your wishes.—Yes ; I remember it, you dressed him as I had ordered you, and I shall remember it ; for I very seldom find you as diligent as yesterday, especially in dressing my child ; I could dress him in much less time than you ; you are too lazy generally.

DEFECTIVE AND IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

As it has already been said, there are only seven regular verbs of this conjugation, viz. *recevoir*, TO RECEIVE ; *apercevoir*,

TO PERCEIVE ; *concevoir*, TO CONCEIVE, TO UNDERSTAND ; *décevoir*, TO DECEIVE ; *devoir*, TO OWE ; *percevoir*, TO RECEIVE (money) ; *redevoir*, TO OWE AGAIN OR STILL.

Those verbs, whose present infinitive ends in *oir*, not preceded by *ev*, are irregular, and are only thirty in number.

240. *Avoir*, TO HAVE, is an active and auxiliary verb, conjugated in its compound tenses with itself. This verb is one of the most irregular, and is given at page 30. Its present indicative and subjunctive, and the imperative, are irregular, both in the radical letters and terminations. The irregularities of its imperfect, future, and conditional, are only in the radical letters. Its preterite definite and imperfect subjunctive are regularly formed.

241. *Apparaître*, TO BE EVIDENT, is a neuter and defective verb. It is used only in the infinitive with the verb *faire*, and in the third person singular of the present infinitive, which is *il appert* ; but it is used only in the courts of law.

242. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Asseoir,</i>	<i>To set,</i>	is an active verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Asseyant,</i>	<i>Setting.</i>	
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Assis, e,</i>	<i>Sat.</i>	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>j'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>assieds,</i>	<i>assieds,</i>	<i>assied,</i>	<i>asseyons,</i>	<i>asseyez,</i>	<i>asseyent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>asseyais,</i>	<i>asseyais,</i>	<i>asseyait,</i>	<i>asseyions,</i>	<i>asseyiez,</i>	<i>asseyaient.</i>
<i>Pret.def.</i>	<i>assis,</i>	<i>assis,</i>	<i>assit,</i>	<i>assimes,</i>	<i>assîtes,</i>	<i>assirent.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>asseyerai,</i>	<i>asseyeras,</i>	<i>asseyera,</i>	<i>asseyerons,</i>	<i>asseyerez,</i>	<i>asseyeront,</i>
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>asseierais,</i>	<i>asseierais,</i>	<i>asseierait,</i>	<i>asseierions,</i>	<i>asseieriez,</i>	<i>asseieraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>asseye,</i>	<i>asseiyes,</i>	<i>asseye,</i>	<i>asseyions,</i>	<i>asseyiez,</i>	<i>asseyent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>assisse,</i>	<i>assisses,</i>	<i>assît,</i>	<i>assissions,</i>	<i>assissiez,</i>	<i>assissent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	—	<i>assieds,</i>	<i>asseie,</i>	<i>asseyons,</i>	<i>asseyez,</i>	<i>asseyent.</i>

The irregularities of this verb are 1st, in the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *assieds, assieds, assied,* instead of *asseois, asseois, asseoit.* See the model *recevoir*.

2d. In the future and conditional, which are *asseyerai, &c. asseyerais, &c.* instead of *asseoirai, &c. asseoirais, &c.* See the formation of tenses.

There is another future and conditional, viz : *assiérai, &c., assiérais, &c.*

This verb is sometimes conjugated thus ; *J'assois, tu assois, il assoit, vous assoyons, nous assoyez, ils assoient. J'assoyais, &c. J'assoirai, &c. Que j'assoie, &c. Assoyant.* (Dict. Fr. Acad.)

243. When the verb to sit has for its direct object a personal pronoun, or is used in English with the preposition DOWN, without any direct object, it is translated into French by *s'asseoir* ; that is, by *asseoir*, with the passive verbal pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous, se*, without rendering DOWN ; thus, I SIT DOWN, *je m'assieds* ; THOU SITTEST DOWN, *tu t'assieds* ; HE SITS DOWN, *il s'assied, &c.*

This verb may be conjugated with *y*, THERE, OR HERE ; thus

I sit *here*, . . . *Je m'y assieds.*

Thou sittest *there*, &c. . . *Tu t'y assieds, &c.*

I have sat *there*, &c. . . *Je m'y suis assis, &c.*

The same irregularities are in *rasseoir*, TO SIT AGAIN.

EXERCISE 149.

Come, and sit²⁴³ down a moment ; I wish to speak^{ex. 8} to you.—Not now ; because, if I sit²⁴³ down, you will detain^{ex. 1} me at least an hour, and my presence is necessary in my store.—No ; I shall not detain^{ex. 7} you more than¹⁰³ ten minutes ; and if you do not sit²³⁴ down now, I shall never go to⁹² your house.—To please you, I will sit⁸⁵ down ; but I should prefer to go¹²⁸ to my business now, and afterwards I should have more⁹⁴ time¹²⁸ to talk with you.—Would you not sit²⁴³ down, if Mr. L. was here ?—Not now, because Mr. D. is expecting me.—Sit¹³³ down, only ten minutes.—I would sit²⁴³ down if I was not engaged¹³¹, but excuse^{ex 1} me at this time.

244. *Choir*, TO FALL, is a neuter and defective verb, very seldom used, and only in the present infinitive and past participle, which is *chu, chue*.

245. *Comparoïr*, TO APPEAR, is a neuter and defective verb, used only in the present infinitive, and that in the style of court ; as in

To be summoned to appear at court, *Être assigné à comparoïr.*

246. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Déchoir, To decline, is a neuter and defective verb, conjugated
Pres. part. ——— with *avoir* and *être*
Past part. Déchu, e, Declined.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	déchois,	déchois,	déchoit,	déchoyons,	déchoyez,	déchoient.
<i>Imper.</i>	déchoyais,	déchoyais,	déchoyait,	déchoyions,	déchoyiez,	déchoyaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	déchus,	déchus,	déchut,	déchûmes,	déchûtes,	déchurent.
<i>Future.</i>	décherrai,	décherras,	décherra,	décherrons,	décherez,	décherront.
<i>Condit.</i>	décherrais,	décherrais,	décherrait,	décherrions,	décheriez,	décherraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	déchoie,	déchoies,	déchoie,	déchoyions,	déchoyiez,	déchoient.
<i>Imper.</i>	déchusse,	déchusses,	déchût,	déchussions,	déchussiez,	déchussent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	déchois,	déchoie,	déchoyons,	déchoyez,	déchoient.

This verb has no present participle, but that tense is supposed to be *déchoyant*, for the persons and tenses that are formed from it, the *y* being changed into *i* before a silent *e*, according to the observation No. 18.

The future and conditional are irregular in the radical letters, since they are *décherrai*, &c. *décherrais*, &c.
instead of *déchoirai*, &c. *déchoirais*, &c.

The other persons and tenses are regularly formed, according to the formation of tenses.

247. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	Devoir,	<i>To owe,</i> is an active and regular verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	Devant,	<i>Owing.</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	Dû, dûe,	<i>Owed.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	dois,	dois,	doit,	devons,	devez,	doivent.
<i>Imper.</i>	devais,	devais,	devait,	devions,	deviez,	devaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	dus,	dus,	dut,	dûmes,	dûtes,	durent.
<i>Future.</i>	devrai,	devras,	devra,	devrons,	devrez,	devront.
<i>Condit.</i>	devrais,	devrais,	devrait,	devrions,	devriez,	devraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	doive,	doives,	doive,	devions,	deviez,	doivent.
<i>Imper.</i>	dusse,	dusses,	dût,	dussions,	dussiez,	dussent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	dois,	doive,	devons,	devez,	doivent.

Although this verb is regularly conjugated after *recevoir*, it is given here because students are apt to mistake in conjugating it. However it is as easy as any other conjugation, and it must be found so, when we consider that it has only one radical letter, the *d*, which must be placed instead of the radical letters *rec* of the model *recevoir*, through all its tenses and persons.

248. When OUGHT or SHOULD are used before an infinitive to express the propriety, or the obligation of performing the ac-

tion expressed by that infinitive, they are generally rendered, in French, by the conditional of *devoir*, and the infinitive of the verb that follows OUGHT OR SHOULD ; as

We <i>ought</i> to do something for the unfortunate,	<i>Nous</i> devrions <i>faire quelque chose pour les infortunés.</i>
You <i>should</i> study a little better,	<i>Vous</i> devriez <i>étudier un peu mieux.</i>

249. When the verb TO BE is used in English, with an infinitive, to express the intention or obligation of performing the action expressed by that infinitive, and when MUST expresses the probability of the existence of that action, it is generally rendered, into French, by *devoir*, which must be in a tense corresponding to that of TO BE ; as

He <i>is to speak</i> in public,	<i>Il</i> doit <i>parler en public.</i>
We <i>were to pay</i> his expenses,	<i>Nous</i> devons <i>payer ses dépenses.</i>
That book <i>must be</i> very useful,	<i>Ce livre</i> doit être <i>très-utile.</i>

250. The form of expression WERE I, WERT THOU, &c. with an infinitive, is generally rendered by the imperfect subjunctive of *devoir*, without the conjunction *que*, and with the nominative pronoun after it, in the form of the interrogation ; as

<i>Were we</i> to lose our fortune, we should assist our friends,	<i>Dussions-nous perdre notre fortune, nous aiderions nos amis.</i>
<i>Were I</i> to expose myself to the reproaches of my friends, I should go and see her,	<i>Dussè-je m'exposer aux reproches de mes parents j'irais la voir.</i>

251. When THOUGH is used with WERE, thus, THOUGH I WERE, THOUGH THOU WERT, &c. both are also rendered in French by *dussè-je, dusses-tu, &c.* ; as,

<i>Though she were</i> to hate me, I should not go to her ball,	<i>Dût-elle me haïr je n'irais pas à son bal.</i>
<i>Though they were</i> to deceive me, I should give them employment,	<i>Dussent-ils me tromper, je leur donnerais de l'employ.</i>
<i>Though Mr. L. were</i> to refuse me, I should ask that favour of him,	<i>M. L. dût-il me refuser, je lui demanderais cette faveur.</i>

252. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>échoir,</i>	<i>To fall to,</i>	is a neuter and defective verb, conjugated with <i>être</i> .		
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>échéant,</i>	<i>Falling to.</i>			
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>échu, e,</i>	<i>Fallen to.</i>			

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	_____	_____	échoit,	_____	_____	_____
<i>Imper.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Pret.def.</i>	échus,	échus,	échut,	échûmes,	échûtes,	échurent.
<i>Future,</i>	écherrai,	écherras,	écherra,	écherrons,	écherez,	écherront.
<i>Condit.</i>	écherrais,	écherrais,	écherrait,	écherrions,	écheriez,	écherraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Imper.</i>	échusse,	échusses,	échût,	échussions,	échussiez,	échussent.
<i>Impera.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

This verb is very seldom used except in the third person singular of the present indicative, which is sometimes pronounced and written *échet*.

The imperfect indicative, present subjunctive, and imperative, are wanting.

The future and conditional are irregular in the radical letters, since these are *écherrai, &c. écherrais, &c.*
 instead of *échoirai, &c. échoirais, &c.* See the formation of tenses.

The preterite indicative and the imperfect subjunctive are regularly formed.

253. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Falloir,</i>	<i>To be necessary,</i>	is a unipersonal verb conjugated with <i>avoir</i> .		
<i>Pres.part.</i>	_____				
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Fallu.</i>				

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>pres.</i>	<i>imper.</i>	<i>pret. def.</i>	<i>future</i>	<i>condit.</i>
il faut,	il fallait,	il fallut,	il faudra,	il faudrait.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>pres.</i>	<i>imper.</i>
qu'il faille,	qu'il fallût.

This verb has no present participle, and is used only in the third person singular of each tense. It is used to translate MUST, TO BE NECESSARY, OR TO WANT, in the following manner :

254. The tense of *falloir*, which corresponds with the tense in which MUST, TO BE NECESSARY OR TO WANT, is employed, must be taken, and the pronoun *il* must be given to it as its nominative. The following verb must be in the subjunctive mood, always preceded by *que* and its nominative, which must be the French noun

or pronoun that corresponds to the nominative of **MUST**, or **TO WANT**, or to the object of **TO BE NECESSARY FOR**. The tense of the subjunctive of the following verb is determined by the rules given for the use of that mood, Nos. 110, 150, 153 ; as in

I must go, <i>or</i> I want to go,	<i>Il faut que je m'en aille.</i>
It will be necessary for thee to go,	<i>Il faudra que tu t'en ailles.</i>
That it may be necessary for us to go,	<i>Qu'il faille que nous nous en allions.</i>
He wanted, <i>or</i> it was necessary for him to go,	<i>Il fallait qu'il s'en allât.</i>
She wanted, <i>or</i> it was necessary for her to go,	<i>Il fallut qu'elle s'en allât.</i>
It would be necessary for us to go,	<i>Il faudrait que nous nous en allussions,</i>
That it might be necessary for you to go,	<i>Qu'il fallût que vous vous en allassiez.</i>
Those doors must be widened,	<i>Il faut que ces portes soient élargies.</i>

Explanation. In the first example, *il faut* is in the present indicative, because **MUST** or **WANT** is in the present indicative ; the nominative of the second verb is *Je*, because the nominative of **MUST** or **WANT** is **I** ; *aille* is in the present subjunctive, because *faut*, which requires that mood, is in the present indicative. In the second, *faudra* is in the future tense, because **IT WILL BE NECESSARY** is in that tense ; the nominative of the following verb is *tu*, because the object of **TO BE NECESSARY FOR** is **THEE**, a pronoun of the second person singular ; *ailles* is in the present subjunctive, because *faudra*, which requires that mood, is in the future tense. In the third, *faille* is in the present subjunctive, because it is the mood and tense of **THAT IT MAY BE NECESSARY** ; the nominative of the following verb is *nous*, because the object of **TO BE NECESSARY FOR** is **US**, a pronoun of the first person plural ; the following verb, *allions*, is in the present subjunctive, because *qu'il faille*, which requires that mood after it, is in the present subjunctive. In the fourth, *fallait* is in the imperfect indicative, because **WANTED** is in that tense ; the nominative of the following verb is *il*, because that of **WANTED** is **HE**, a masculine pronoun of the third person singular ; *allât* is in the imperfect subjunctive, because *fallait*, which requires that mood, is in the imperfect. In the sixth, *faudrait* is in the conditional, because it is the tense of **IT WOULD BE NECESSARY** ; the nominative of the following verb is *nous*, because the object of **TO BE NECESSARY FOR** is **US**, a pronoun of the second person plural ; *allussions* is in the imperfect subjunctive, because *faudrait*, which requires that mood, is in the conditional. In the last *il faut* is in the present indicative, because it is the tense of **MUST** ; the nominative of the following verb is *ces portes*, because it is the translation of that of **MUST**, that is, of **THOSE DOORS** ; *soient* is in the present subjunctive, because *faut*, which requires that mood, is in the present indicative.

255. *Falloir* is used also to translate **MUST HAVE**, or **TO WANT**, in the same sense, followed by a noun, by placing one of the passive verbal pronouns *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, correspond-

ing to the nominative of MUST or WANT, between *il* and *falloir* ; thus,

<i>I want money, or I must have money,</i>	<i>Il me faut de l'argent.</i>
<i>Thou wantest, or thou must have a coat,</i>	<i>Il te faut un habit.</i>
<i>He wants, or he must have a book,</i>	<i>Il lui faut un livre.</i>
<i>She wants, or she must have a gown,</i>	<i>Il lui faut une robe.</i>
<i>We want, or we must have your opinion,</i>	<i>Il nous faut votre avis.</i>
<i>You want, or you must have an occupation,</i>	<i>Il vous faut une occupation.</i>
<i>They want, or they must have a republic,</i>	<i>Il leur faut une république.</i>

Explanation. In the first example *ME* is used between *il* and *faut*, because the nominative of *WANT* or *MUST* is *I* ; in the second, *te* is used, because the English nominative is *THOU* ; in the third and fourth, *lui* is used, because the nominative of the English phrase is *HE* or *SHE*, &c. *Faut* is in the present indicative, because it is the tense of *MUST* or *WANT*.

256. Sometimes *falloir* is used with *s'en*, thus, *s'en falloir*, *il s'en faut*, *il s'en fallait*, &c. followed by *avoir* and a noun, or *TO BE* and an adjective, to translate *TO BE DEFICIENT IN* ; as in

<i>He is deficient in talent,</i>	<i>Il s'en faut qu'il ait du talent.</i>
<i>They are deficient in courage,</i>	<i>Il s'en faut qu'ils aient du courage.</i>
<i>She is deficient in amiability,</i>	<i>Il s'en faut qu'elle soit aimable, or qu'elle ait de l'amabilité.</i>

EXERCISE 150.

²⁵⁴ I want to send something to Mrs. B., and ^{254&150} she must receive it before to-morrow. You ²⁵⁴ must ¹⁵⁰ prepare it ; and it ^{ex 11} will be necessary for you to be more punctual to-day than yesterday.—I ²⁵⁴ was ⁹⁹ as ¹¹¹ punctual ⁶² as ¹¹¹ possible yesterday. It ²⁵⁴ was ¹⁵³ necessary ¹⁹⁵ for me to go and carry all your letters, and it ^{254 & 98} was ¹⁵³ necessary ¹³¹ also that they should be delivered before six o'clock. If I ²⁵⁴ must ¹⁵⁰ run through all the streets of the city, it ²⁵⁴ will be necessary for me to hire ¹⁵⁰ a horse.—I do not think so ; you ^{ex-12} only want ²⁶ more ²⁵⁵ diligence ⁹⁴ and good will, for you are deficient in those qualities ; and you should ³¹ be ¹⁵⁶ more ²⁴⁸ diligent ⁶⁰.

257. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Mouvoir,</i>	<i>To move,</i>	is an active verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Mouvant,</i>	<i>Moving.</i>	
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Mu, e,</i>	<i>Moved.</i>	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>meus,</i>	<i>meus,</i>	<i>meut,</i>	<i>mouvons,</i>	<i>mouvez,</i>	<i>meuvent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>mouvais,</i>	<i>mouvais,</i>	<i>mouvait,</i>	<i>mouvions,</i>	<i>mouviez,</i>	<i>mouvaient.</i>
<i>Pret. def.</i>	<i>mus,</i>	<i>mus,</i>	<i>mut,</i>	<i>mêmes,</i>	<i>mûtes,</i>	<i>murent.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>mouvrai,</i>	<i>mouvras,</i>	<i>mouvra,</i>	<i>mouvrons,</i>	<i>mouvrez,</i>	<i>mouvront.</i>
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>mouvrais,</i>	<i>mouvrais,</i>	<i>mouvrait,</i>	<i>mouvriens,</i>	<i>mouvriez,</i>	<i>mouvraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>meuve,</i>	<i>meuves,</i>	<i>meuve,</i>	<i>mouvions,</i>	<i>mouviez,</i>	<i>meuvent.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>meuve,</i>	<i>meuves,</i>	<i>mût,</i>	<i>mussions,</i>	<i>mussiez,</i>	<i>mussent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	—	<i>meus,</i>	<i>meuve,</i>	<i>mouvons,</i>	<i>mouvez,</i>	<i>meuvent</i>

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the three persons singular and third plural of the present indicative, which are *meus, meus, meut, meuvent*, instead of *mouvois, mouvois, mouvoit, mouvent*.

2d. In the three persons singular and third plural of the present subjunctive, which are *meuve, meuves, meuve, meuvent*, instead of *mouve, mouves, mouve, mouvent*. See formation of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated according to the formation of tenses.

The same irregularities are in *émouvoir*, TO MOVE, TO AFFECT, TO TOUCH THE FEELINGS ; *promouvoir*, TO PROMOTE.

EXERCISE 151.

⁵⁷ What means will you ¹²⁸ employ to move that large stone ?—We shall ^{ex. 11} move it with a large lever ; our workmen ⁹⁹ moved it ^{ex 11} very easily last year, and without doubt they ⁸⁷ will move it ^{ex. 11 111} as easily to-morrow.—By what power is ¹³⁵ your machine ¹³¹ moved ?—By two horses.—I ⁹⁸ thought that ^{87 98 131} it was moved by the wind.—Sometimes the wind moves it ; when there ^{ex. 11} is no wind, I employ horses.—Do horses move it as well as the wind ?—When the wind is strong, ⁸⁷ it moves it with more velocity ; but, when it is ^{ex. 12} not, the horses move it better. ^{ex 11}

258. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Pleuvor,</i>	<i>To rain,</i> is a unipersonal verb, conjugated with <i>avoir</i> .
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Pleuvant,</i>	<i>Raining.</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Plu,</i>	<i>Rained.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>pres.</i>	<i>imper.</i>	<i>pret. def.</i>	<i>future,</i>	<i>condit.</i>
<i>il pleut,</i>	<i>il pleuvait,</i>	<i>il plut,</i>	<i>il pleuvra,</i>	<i>il pleuvrait.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>pres.</i>	<i>imper.</i>
<i>qu'il pleuve,</i>	<i>qu'il plût.</i>

This verb may be conjugated with *y*, THERE; thus,

It rains *there*, . . . *Il y pleut.*

It has rained *there*, . . . *Il y a plu.*

EXERCISE 152.

Does it rain now?—Not yet; but it will rain soon.—Has it not rained already?—Yes, it has rained, but I perceive that it will rain again.—I am very sorry for it. Yesterday I was obliged to go out, and it was raining. I thought sometimes that the rain would stop, but it rained the whole day.—Had it not rained also the day previous?—Yes, it had rained. So it rained the day before yesterday; it rained yesterday; it has rained to-day, and, if the wind had not changed, it would rain to-morrow. I do not think that there was ever a winter more rainy than the present.

259. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, *Pouvoir*, *To provide*, is a neuter and active verb.

Pres. part. *Pourvoyant*, *Providing*.

Past part. *Pourvu*, *e*, *Provided*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>pourvois</i> ,	<i>pourvois</i> ,	<i>pourvoit</i> ,	<i>pourvoyons</i> ,	<i>pourvoyez</i> ,	<i>pourvoient</i> .
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>pourvoyais</i> ,	<i>pourvoyais</i> ,	<i>pourvoyait</i> ,	<i>pourvoyions</i> ,	<i>pourvoyiez</i> ,	<i>pourvoyaient</i> .
<i>Pret.</i>	<i>pourvus</i> ,	<i>pourvus</i> ,	<i>pourvut</i> ,	<i>pourvûmes</i> ,	<i>pourvûtes</i> ,	<i>pourvurent</i> .
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>pourvoirai</i> ,	<i>pourvoiras</i> ,	<i>pourvoira</i> ,	<i>pourverons</i> ,	<i>pourverez</i> ,	<i>pourvoiront</i> .
<i>Cond.</i>	<i>pourvoirais</i> ,	<i>pourvoirais</i> ,	<i>pourvoirait</i> ,	<i>pourvoirions</i> ,	<i>pourvoiriez</i> ,	<i>pourvoiraient</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>pourvoie</i> ,	<i>pourvoies</i> ,	<i>pourvoie</i> ,	<i>pourvoyions</i> ,	<i>pourvoyiez</i> ,	<i>pourvoient</i> .
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>pourvusse</i> ,	<i>pourvusses</i> ,	<i>pourvût</i> ,	<i>pourvussions</i> ,	<i>pourvussiez</i> ,	<i>pourvussent</i> .
<i>Impera.</i>	—	<i>pourvois</i> ,	<i>pourvoë</i> ,	<i>pourvoyons</i> ,	<i>pourvoyez</i> ,	<i>pourvoient</i> .

Although this verb is irregular according to the model *recevoir*, it is regularly conjugated according to the formation of tenses.

260. The preposition FOR, that is required after TO PROVIDE, is translated into French by *à*; and the preposition WITH, by *de*.

He will provide *for* his wants, *Il pourvoira à ses besoins.*

We were provided *with* provisions, *Nous étions pourvus de vivres.*

This verb may be conjugated with *y*, FOR IT; thus,

I provide *for it*, . . . *J'y pourvois.*

Thou providest *for it*, &c. *Tu y pourvois, &c.*

I have provided *for it*, &c. *J'y ai pourvu, &c.*

EXERCISE 153.

I should have been very unhappy if Mr. L. had not been our friend ; we had no money, but he provided for our wants. This year we have provided for them, and, with the help of God, we shall provide for them for the future. We have already provided ourselves with sufficient provisions for eight months.—Would you provide yourselves with all the necessary things for your trade, if I should lend you two thousand dollars ?—Yes, we could provide ourselves with the necessary utensils ; but it would be necessary for us to provide ourselves with stock and materials, and they are now scarce and very dear.

261. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Pouvoir,</i>	<i>To be able,</i> is an active and defective verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Pouvant,</i>	<i>Being able.</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Pu,</i>	<i>Been able.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>peux</i> or <i>puis,</i>	<i>peux,</i>	<i>peut,</i>	<i>pouvons,</i>	<i>pouvez,</i>	<i>peuvent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>pouvais,</i>	<i>pouvais,</i>	<i>pouvait,</i>	<i>pouvions,</i>	<i>pouviez,</i>	<i>pouvaient.</i>
<i>Pret.def.</i>	<i>pus,</i>	<i>pus,</i>	<i>put,</i>	<i>pûmes,</i>	<i>pûtes,</i>	<i>purent.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>pourrai,</i>	<i>pourras,</i>	<i>pourra,</i>	<i>pourrons,</i>	<i>pourrez,</i>	<i>pourront.</i>
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>pourrais,</i>	<i>pourrais,</i>	<i>pourrait,</i>	<i>pourrions,</i>	<i>pourriez,</i>	<i>pourraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>puisse,</i>	<i>puisses,</i>	<i>puisse,</i>	<i>puissions,</i>	<i>puissiez,</i>	<i>puissent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>puisse,</i>	<i>puisses,</i>	<i>pût,</i>	<i>puissions,</i>	<i>puissiez,</i>	<i>puissent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

262. This verb has two first persons singular, *puis* and *peux*, the use of which depends upon taste ; therefore, *puis* must be used instead of *peux* in an interrogation, thus, *puis-je* instead of *peux-je*. It requires the verb which follows it to be in the present infinitive without any preposition.

Can I help you ? . . . *Puis je vous aider ?*

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the three persons singular and third person plural of the present indicative,

which are	<i>puis</i> or <i>peux,</i>	<i>peux,</i>	<i>peut,</i>	<i>peuvent.</i>
instead of	<i>pouvois,</i>	<i>pouvois,</i>	<i>pouvoit,</i>	<i>pouvent.</i>

2d. In the future and conditional,

which are	<i>pourrai,</i> &c.	<i>pourrais,</i> &c.
instead of	<i>pouvrai,</i> &c.	<i>pourrais,</i> &c.

See formation of tenses.

3d. In the present subjunctive,
 which is *puisse, puisses, puisse, puissions, puissiez, puissent*,
 instead of *pouve, pouver, pouver, pouvions, pourriez, peuvent*.
 See the formation of tenses.

It has no imperative.

263. When a negation is used with *pouvoir*, the *pas* or *point*, that generally follows another verb, is generally omitted with this, especially if a present infinitive comes after it ; but this is as much a matter of taste as of grammar ; however, before an infinitive it is better to omit it.

I cannot walk, . . . Je ne puis marcher.

264. When CAN or MAY, COULD or MIGHT, are employed to express possibility or power they are translated by *pouvoir* ; as in
Can you lend me that money? Pouvez-vous me prêter cet argent?
Could we act differently? Pouvions-nous, or pourrions-nous
agir différemment?

Explanation. In the second example, COULD is translated by *pouvoir*, because it is used here for WERE WE ABLE, and not as the sign of the conditional, as is generally the case. This observation is very important, because COULD might be taken for the sign of the conditional, when it should be rendered by *pouvoir*, which is always the case when used in the sense of TO BE ABLE.

EXERCISE 154.

Can I charge myself with that suit without exposing myself to the
 censure of my friends?—Certainly you can.—But if I cannot find all the
 necessary proofs, it will be necessary for me to abandon it.—I have no
 doubt that you will be able to find them.—But I suppose that I shall not
 be able to procure a sufficient number of witnesses.—I am sure that you
 will be able to find more than a dozen.—Of how many can you give me
 the names?—I can now give you the names of at least seven.—Then
 you must give me all the particulars of the transaction, and I shall be able
 to commence advantageously your suit.

265. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Prévaloir,	<i>To prevail,</i> is a neuter verb, conjugated with <i>avoir</i> .
<i>Pres. part.</i>	Prévalant,	<i>Prevailing.</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	Prévalu, e,	<i>Prevailed.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	prévaut,	prévaut,	prévaut,	prévalons,	prévalez,	prévalent.
<i>Imper.</i>	prévalais,	prévalais,	prévalait,	prévalions,	prévaliez,	prévalaient.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pret.def.</i>	prévalus,	prévalus,	prévalut,	prévalûmes,	prévalûtes,	prévalurent.
<i>Future.</i>	prévaudrai,	prévaudras,	prévaudra,	prévaudrons,	prévaudrez,	prévaudront.
<i>Condit.</i>	prévaudrais,	prévaudrais,	prévaudrait,	prévaudirions,	prévaudriez,	prévaudraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	prévale,	prévale,	prévale,	prévations,	prévaliez,	prévalent.
<i>Imper.</i>	prévalusse,	prévalusses,	prévalût,	prévussions,	prévussiez,	prévalussent.
<i>Impera.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *prévaux*, *prévaux*, *prévaut*, instead of *prévalois*, *prévalois*, *prévaloit*.

2d. In the future and conditional, which are *prévaudrai*, &c. *prévaudrais*, &c. instead of *prevalrai*, &c. *précalrais*, &c. See the formation of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

EXERCISE 155.

The custom of educating youth prevails in America ; and when it shall prevail in Europe, liberal principles will prevail over tyranny and absolute power. Good principles always prevail when knowledge is generally diffused ; but when ignorance prevails, abuses also always prevail. They would certainly prevail in this country, were the inhabitants less enlightened ; but as all citizens know their rights, they can perceive the designs of their rulers, and those designs prevail only when they are favourable to the general welfare of the country.

266. *Ravoir*, TO GET AGAIN, is an active and defective verb, used only in the present infinitive.

267. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Savoir,	To know.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	Sachant,	Knowing.
<i>Past part.</i>	Su, sue.	Known.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	sais,	sais,	sait,	savons,	savez,	savent.
<i>Imper.</i>	savais,	savais,	savait,	savions,	saviez,	savaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	sus,	sus,	sut,	sûmes,	sûtes,	surent.
<i>Future.</i>	saurai,	sauras,	saura,	saurons,	saurez,	sauront.
<i>Condit.</i>	saurais,	saurais,	saurait,	saurions,	sauriez,	sauraient

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	sache,	saches,	sache,	sachions,	sachiez,	sachent.
<i>Imper.</i>	susse,	susses,	sût,	sussions,	sussiez,	sussent.
<i>Impera.</i>	_____	sache,	sache,	sachons,	sachez,	sachent.

This verb is irregular, 1st, in its present participle,
 which is *sachant*,
 instead of *savant*.

2d. In the present indicative,
 which is *sais, sais, sait, savons, savez, savent*,
 instead of *savois, savois, savoit, sachons, sachez, sachent*. For the plural see the
 formation of tenses.

3d. In the imperfect,
 which is *savais, savais, savait, savions, saviez, savaient*,
 instead of *sachais, sachais, sachait, sachions, sachiez, sachaient*. See the
 formation of tenses.

4th. In the future and conditional,
 which are *aurai, &c. aurais, &c.*
 instead of *saurai, &c. saurais, &c.* See the formation of tenses.

5th. In the second person singular and the first and second
 persons plural of the imperative,
 which are *sache, sachons, sachez*,
 instead of *sais, savons, savez*. See the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le, la* or *les*, IT, THEM; thus,

I know *it*, *Je le sais*.

Thou knowest *it*, &c. . . . *Tu le sais, &c.*

I have known *it*, &c. . . . *Je l'ai su, &c.*

Observations on *savoir*:—It is very difficult for a foreigner to learn when the verb TO KNOW should be rendered in French by *savoir*, and when by *connaître*. The following observations will prove useful in most instances, though sometimes, but seldom, their application may be difficult.

268. *Savoir* is to be used when TO KNOW has for its object a noun, the knowledge of which is residing in the mind, and obtained through study, report or observation; *connaître*, supposing merely acquaintance, should be used in other instances.

I know my lesson, . . . *Je sais ma leçon*.

Do you know the news? . . . *Savez-vous les nouvelles?*

Do you know Mr. G.? . . . *Connaissez-vous M. G.?*

269. When TO KNOW is followed by a verb that is preceded by the conjunction THAT, it must be rendered by *savoir*, and the conjunction THAT by *que*; but if, instead of THAT, there were another conjunction, that conjunction must be rendered by a corresponding one in French; and the following verb must be in

the indicative mood ; and if there are several verbs depending on that conjunction, *que* or the other conjunction must be repeated before every one ; as in

Do you not *know that* I read, write, and speak the French language ? *Ne savez-vous pas que je lis, que j'écris et que je parle le Français ?*

Do you *know whether* Miss C. will dance, and play on the piano ? *Savez-vous si Mademoiselle C. dansera, et si elle jouera du piano ?*

270. When after *TO KNOW* follows a verb in the infinitive, preceded by *HOW*, it must be rendered by *savoir* ; and *HOW* is not translated if the action expressed by that verb is the effect of the mind, or of any sense with which the mind is employed ; as in

Do you know how to sing and play ? *Savez-vous chanter et jouer ?*

271. But if the verb that follows *savoir* expresses an action, the execution of which requires mechanical skill, and also if that verb is either *devoir*, *pouvoir* or *falloir*, *HOW* is translated by *comment* ; and if *savoir* is used with a negation, *pas* is generally omitted and supplied by *comment*.

I know how I must execute it, *Je sais comment il faut que je l'exécute.*

Do you know how you ought to begin ? *Savez-vous comment vous devriez commencer ?*

He knows how he must cut it, *Il sait comment il faut qu'il le coupe.*

I did not know how I could split it, *Je ne savais comment je pouvais le fendre.*

272. Sometimes the verb *pouvoir* is not expressed, but merely understood, in which case *HOW* should be rendered by *comment* ; as in

I do not know how to find that reason, *Je ne sais comment trouver cette raison.*

Explanation. In this phrase *HOW* is expressed by *comment*, because *pouvoir* is certainly implied ; for, *I DO NOT KNOW HOW TO FIND*, means here, *I DO NOT KNOW HOW I CAN FIND*.

EXERCISE 156.

Do you ²⁶⁸know your lesson ?—^{ex. 11}I do not know it now ; yesterday I ^{ex. 11}studied it two hours, and I ^{268 & 139 ex. 11}knew it perfectly ; I have ^{179 ex. 11 & 179}forgotten it.—If

you knew it yesterday, you cannot have forgotten it entirely.—If you allow me ten minutes to study it, I shall know it.—Would you know it if you had only five minutes?—I do not know; but, as I have already known it, I think that I shall be able to know it in that time. Must I know it perfectly?—Yes; you must know it perfectly, and recite it without hesitation.—But do you not know that I am deficient in memory, and that often I do not know how to study my lessons and prepare my exercises?

273. *Seoir*, TO BEFIT, TO BECOME, is a neuter and defective verb, whose present participle is *seyant*. It requires the preposition *à* before its object, and is used only in the third persons singular and plural

Of the present indicative,	which are	.	.	il sied,	.	ils sièent.
Of the imperfect indicative,	which are	.	.	il seyait,	.	ils seyaient.
Of the future,	which are	.	.	il siéra,	.	ils siéront.
Of the conditional,	which are	.	.	il siérait,	.	ils siéraient.
Of the present subjunctive,	which are	.	.	qu'il siée,	.	qu'ils sièent.

274. The deficient tenses are supplied by *aller bien*, which is very often employed even instead of those that are not wanting; as in That coat *becomes* you, *Cet habit vous va bien*.

The neuter verb *messeoir*, TO BE UNBECOMING, is used and conjugated exactly like *seoir*.

EXERCISE 157.

That shawl fits you very well; where did you buy it?—At Mrs. C.'s store.—Did you notice yesterday the dress of Mrs. D.?—Yes, but it did not become her; however, her bonnet was very becoming.—How do you find my flowers?—I think that they become you very well; but, it seems to me, that they would become you better if they were smaller.—And my green shoes; do you not think that they fit me well?—I think so; but they will become you better with your green gown.—Does not my belt become me?—Yes, it becomes you perfectly well.

275. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present,	Surseoir,	To supersede, to postpone,	is an active verb.
Pres. part.	Sursoyant,	Superseding.	
Past part.	Sursis, e,	Superseded.	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>sursois,</i>	<i>sursois,</i>	<i>sursoit,</i>	<i>sursoyons,</i>	<i>sursoyez,</i>	<i>sursoient.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>sursoyais,</i>	<i>sursoyais,</i>	<i>sursoyait,</i>	<i>sursoyions,</i>	<i>sursoyiez,</i>	<i>sursoyaient.</i>
<i>Pret.def.</i>	<i>sursis,</i>	<i>sursis,</i>	<i>sursit,</i>	<i>sursimes,</i>	<i>sursîtes,</i>	<i>sursirent.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>surseoirai,</i>	<i>surseoiras,</i>	<i>surseoirà,</i>	<i>surseoirons,</i>	<i>surseoirez,</i>	<i>surseoiront.</i>
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>surseoirais,</i>	<i>surseoirais,</i>	<i>surseoirait,</i>	<i>surseoirions,</i>	<i>surseoiriez,</i>	<i>surseoiraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>surseoie,</i>	<i>surseoies,</i>	<i>surseoie,</i>	<i>sursoyions,</i>	<i>sursoyiez,</i>	<i>surseoient.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>sursisse,</i>	<i>sursisses,</i>	<i>sursît,</i>	<i>sursissions,</i>	<i>sursissiez,</i>	<i>sursissent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	————	<i>surseois,</i>	<i>surseoie,</i>	<i>sursoyons,</i>	<i>sursoyez,</i>	<i>surseoient.</i>

The irregularities of this are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *sursoyant*, instead of *surseoyant*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *sursis*, instead of *sursu*.

3d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *sursois*, *sursois*, *sursoit*, instead of *surseois*, *surseois*, *surseoit*.

4th. In the present subjunctive and imperative. But the dictionary of the French academy says that those tenses are not used. However, they are given in La Grammaire des Grammaires.

This verb is used only in judiciary business.

276. *Souloir*, TO BE WONT, is a neuter and defective verb. It is used very seldom, and only in the third person singular of the imperfect indicative, which is *il soulait*.

277. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Valoir,</i>	<i>To be worth,</i> is a neuter and defective verb, and is conju-
<i>Pres.part.</i>	<i>Valant,</i>	<i>Being worth.</i> [gated with <i>avoir</i> .
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Vulu,</i>	<i>Been worth.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>vaux,</i>	<i>vaux,</i>	<i>vaut,</i>	<i>valons,</i>	<i>valez,</i>	<i>valent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>valais,</i>	<i>valais,</i>	<i>valait,</i>	<i>valions,</i>	<i>valiez,</i>	<i>valaient.</i>
<i>Pret.def.</i>	<i>valus,</i>	<i>valus,</i>	<i>valut,</i>	<i>valûmes,</i>	<i>valûtes,</i>	<i>valurent.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>vaudrai,</i>	<i>vaudras,</i>	<i>vaudrà,</i>	<i>vaudrons,</i>	<i>vaudrez,</i>	<i>vaudront.</i>
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>vaudrais,</i>	<i>vaudrais,</i>	<i>vaudrait,</i>	<i>vaudrions,</i>	<i>vaudriez,</i>	<i>vaudraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>vaille,</i>	<i>vailles,</i>	<i>vaille,</i>	<i>valions,</i>	<i>valiez,</i>	<i>vailent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>valusse,</i>	<i>valusses,</i>	<i>valût,</i>	<i>valussions,</i>	<i>valussiez,</i>	<i>valussent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	————	————	————	————	————	————

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *vaux*, *vaux*, *vaut*, instead of *valois*, *valois*, *valoit*.

2d. In the future and conditional,
 which are *vaudrai, &c. vaudrais, &c.*
 instead of *valrai, &c. valrais, &c.* See formation of tenses.

3d. In the three persons singular and third plural of the present subjunctive,
 which are *vaille, vailles, vaille, vailent,*
 instead of *vale, vales, vale, valent.* See formation of tenses.

It has no imperative. The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

The same irregularities are in *équivaloir*, TO BE EQUIVALENT;
revaloir, TO RETURN THE LIKE TO.

278. The verb TO BE is often used in English unipersonally with the adverb BETTER ; thus, TO BE BETTER, IT IS BETTER, IT WAS BETTER, &c., in which case TO BE must be rendered in French by *valoir*, and BETTER by *mieux*, thus *valoir mieux*, which must be used according to the following directions :

279. If the verb that follows TO BE BETTER, is in the infinitive, without being preceded by any noun or pronoun, the corresponding verb must be, in French, in the present infinitive, without being preceded by any preposition ; as in

It is better to sing than weep, Il vaut mieux chanter que pleurer.

280. But if after TO BE BETTER follows the preposition FOR, having for its object a noun or a pronoun followed by a verb, TO BE BETTER FOR must be rendered in French, by *valloir mieux pour*, with a noun or a pronoun corresponding to the object of FOR, and the verb should be in the infinitive preceded by the preposition *de* ; or in the subjunctive preceded by the conjunction *que*, having for its nominative a pronoun corresponding to the object of FOR ; as in

It is better for thee to be enduring, *Il vaut mieux pour toi d'être endurant, or Il vaut mieux pour toi que tu sois endurant.*

It would be better for Mr. G. to commence sooner, *Il vaudrait mieux pour M. G. de commencer plus tôt, or Il vaudrait mieux pour M. G. qu'il commençât plus tôt.*

281. IT IS BETTER THAT is also rendered, in French, by *il vaut mieux que* with the following verb in the subjunctive.

It would be better that I should go there, *Il vaudrait mieux que j'y allasse.*

EXERCISE 158.

How much is that book worth?—It is worth five dollars.—How much would it be worth if it was bound?—It would be worth seven dollars.—Last year it was worth only four dollars.—I know it; but books are worth much more now.—If the price of books continues to increase, soon they will cost too much money.—I do not know how much they will be worth, but it is probable that they will be worth more next year than now.—Could you tell me whether this book is worth fifteen dollars?—I think it is worth that sum, because it is very scarce, and the remaining copies are worth a great deal.

282. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Voir, *To see,* is an active verb.
Pres. part. Voyant, *Seeing.*
Past part. Vu, e, *Seen.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	vois,	vois,	voit,	voyons,	voyez,	voient.
<i>Imper.</i>	voyais,	voyais,	voyait,	voyions,	voyiez,	voyaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	vis,	vis,	vit,	vîmes,	vîtes,	virent.
<i>Future,</i>	verrai,	verras,	verra,	verrons,	verrez,	verront.
<i>Condit.</i>	verrais,	verrais,	verrait,	verrions,	verriez,	verraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	voie,	vois,	voie,	voyions,	voyiez,	voient.
<i>Imper.</i>	visse,	visses,	vît,	vissions,	vissiez,	vissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	vois,	voie,	voyons,	voyez,	voient.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the preterite definite, which is *vis, vis, vit, vîmes, vîtes, virent*, instead of *vus, vus, vut, vûmes, vûtes, vurent*. See formation of tenses.

2d. In the future and conditional, which are *verrai, &c. verrais, &c.* instead of *vrai, &c. vrais, &c.* See formation of tenses.

The other tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

The same irregularities are in *revoir*, TO SEE AGAIN; *entrevoir*, TO HAVE A GLIMPSE AT; *prévoir*, TO FORESEE. See note, p. 239.

EXERCISE 159.

Do you sometimes see Mrs. M. when she is here?—Yes, I see her frequently; however, I have not seen her since last spring. And you, did you see her, when she came, last summer?—Yes, I saw her as she was going to set out for the country.—Shall you see her when she comes again to Boston?—I do not know; but I should see her if I should be here.—I must see her soon to speak to her of an important affair.—But, if she does not come, you will not see her soon.—O! then, I shall go and see her at her residence; but, when she was here, she hinted to me that she should come and see you this month.

283. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Vouloir, *To be willing, or to wish,* is a neuter, active, and defective verb.
Pres. part. Voulant, *Being willing, or wishing.*
Past part. Voulu, e, *Been willing, or wished.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	veux,	veux,	veut,	voulons,	voulez,	veulent.
<i>Imper.</i>	voulais,	voulais,	voulait,	voulions,	vouliez,	voulaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	voulus,	voulus,	voulut,	voulûmes,	voulûtes,	voulurent.
<i>Future.</i>	voudrai,	voudras,	voudra,	voudrons,	voudrez,	voudront.
<i>Condit.</i>	voudrais,	voudrais,	voudrait,	voudrions,	voudriez,	voudraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	veuille,	veuilles,	veuille,	voulions,	vouliez,	veillent.
<i>Imper.</i>	voulusse,	voulusses,	voulût,	voulussions,	voulussiez,	voulussent.
<i>Impera.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	veuillez,	_____

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the three persons singular and third plural of the present indicative,

which are *veux, veux, veut, veulent,*

instead of *voulois, voulois, vouloit, veulent.* See formation of tenses for the third person plural.

2d. In the future and conditional,

which are *voudrai, &c. voudrais, &c.*

instead of *voulrai, &c. voudrais, &c.* See the formation of tenses.

3d. In the three persons singular and third person plural of the present subjunctive,

which are *veuille, veuilles, veuille, veillent,*

instead of *voule, voules, voule, veulent.* See formation of tenses.

4th. The second person plural of the imperative is irregular, since it is *veuillez,*

instead of *voulez.* See the formation of tenses.

The dictionary of the French academy gives for the imperative of this verb, *veux, voulons, voulez,* and says that it is used

very seldom, only in certain circumstances, when one engages another to take a strong resolution or will. *Veuillez* is used politely in the sense of BE WILLING, BE SO GOOD AS TO, HAVE THE KINDNESS.

The use of this verb is sometimes difficult, on account of WILL and WOULD being taken for the signs of the future and conditional when they should not. The following observations are intended to remove the difficulties connected with it.

284. When the will of a person is expressed in English, by the word WILLING, preceded by the verb TO BE, the corresponding mode of expression, in French, is generally that tense and person of the verb *vouloir*, which corresponds with the tense and person of the verb TO BE, and the next French verb must be in the present infinitive without any preposition before it; but if, after TO BE WILLING, follows a verb preceded by the conjunction THAT, that verb must be, in French, in the subjunctive mood with the conjunction *que*, following the rules given at Nos. 109, 110, 150, 153, 154 and 155; as in

Are you willing that I should come this evening? *Voulez-vous que je vienne ce soir?*

Are you willing to pay for me? *Voulez-vous payer pour moi?*

He is willing to speak for you, *Il veut parler pour vous.*

285. But sometimes the same disposition of the mind is expressed simply by the word WILL or WOULD before an infinitive; by WILL, relating to the present tense or future, and by WOULD, relating to the past or conditional; and then WILL or WOULD should not be considered as the signs of the future nor conditional, but should be expressed in French by *vouloir*; as in

When we shall be in presence of the judges, will you speak for me? *Lorsque nous serons en présence des juges, voudrez-vous parler pour moi?*

Since you are here, will you give me my lesson? *Puisque vous êtes ici, voulez-vous me donner ma leçon?*

When we were in presence of the judges, why *would* you not *speak* for me ?

Lorsque nous étions en présence des juges, pourquoi ne vouliez-vous pas, or ne vûtes-vous pas parler pour moi ?

If we were in the presence of the judges, why *would* you not *speak* for me ?

Si nous étions en présence des juges, pourquoi ne voudriez-vous pas parler pour moi ?

Explanation. In the first example, *WILL* is used for *WILL YOU BE WILLING*, and not as the mere sign of the future of the verb *TO GIVE*, and is translated by *vouloir*, which is in the future, because it relates to a time yet to come. In the second example, *WILL* is used for *ARE YOU WILLING*, and not as the sign of the future of the verb *TO GIVE*, and is translated by *vouloir*, which is in the present indicative, because it relates to a time that is present. In the third example, *WOULD YOU NOT* is used for *WERE YOU NOT WILLING*, and not as the sign of the conditional of the verb *TO SPEAK*, is translated by *vouloir*, which is in the imperfect or the preterite indicative, because it relates to a time that is past. In the fourth example, *WOULD YOU NOT* is used for *WOULD YOU NOT BE WILLING*, and not as the mere sign of the conditional of the verb *TO SPEAK*, and is translated by *vouloir*, which is in the conditional, because the action expressed by that verb depends on a condition.

286. When *WILL* is used with *HAVE* and a noun that is its object, it is translated by *vouloir*, without expressing *HAVE* ; thus

Will you have an apple ? . . Voulez-vous une pomme ?

287. But if the following noun is the object of a requested favour, then both *WILL YOU* and *HAVE*, are expressed by *vouloir* and *avoir* ; thus,

Will you have the goodness to listen to me ? Voulez-vous avoir la bonté de m'écouter ?

EXERCISE 160.

²⁸⁵ Will you come with me ⁸⁴ ?—Yes, I will. ¹⁷⁴ Where will you go ²⁸⁵ ?—I would go to the museum, if you were willing. —But is your father willing that you should go there ¹⁵⁰ ?—O, yes ! he will be willing. —Why was he not willing yesterday ¹²⁴ ?—I do not know. —Perhaps he will not be willing to-day. —I know that he will be willing if you will have the goodness of asking his permission. —Certainly I will. ¹⁷⁴ Will you eat any thing before going out ¹²⁴ ?—No, I thank you ; but only a glass of water to drink, if you will give it to me. —Will you not have some wine ²⁸⁴ ?—No, I thank you. —Would you not have a cake ¹⁷⁸ ?—No, I thank you ; a glass of water is sufficient.

DEFECTIVE AND IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

288. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	Absoudre,	<i>To absolve, to acquit,</i> is an active and defec-
<i>Pres. part.</i>	Absolvant,	<i>Absolving, acquitting.</i> [tive verb.
<i>Past part.</i>	Absous, absoute, <i>Absolved, acquitted.</i>	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>j'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	absous,	absous,	absout,	absolvons,	absolvez,	absolvent.
<i>Imper.</i>	absolvais,	absolvais,	absolvait,	absolvions,	absolviez,	absolvaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Future,</i>	absoudrai,	absoudras,	absoudra,	absoudrons,	absoudrez,	absoudront.
<i>Condit.</i>	absoudrais,	absoudrais,	absoudrait,	absoudrions,	absoudriez,	absoudraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	absolve,	absolves,	absolve,	absolvions,	absolviez,	absolvent.
<i>Imper.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Impera.</i>	_____	absous,	absolve,	absolvons,	absolvez,	absolvent.

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle, which is *absolvant*, instead of *absoudant*.

See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *absous*, *absoute*, instead of *absoudu*, *absoudue*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *absous*, *absous*, *absout*, instead of *absouds*, *absouds*, *absoud*. See the model *vendre*.

It has no preterite definite, nor imperfect subjunctive.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

289. The same irregularities are in *dissoudre*, TO DISSOLVE. As to this verb, when the dissolution of the dissolved or to be dissolved object, happens by itself, or without the apparent agency of any particular individual or thing, it is rendered, in French, by the reflective verb *se dissoudre*; as in

Our society <i>was dissolved</i> at the beginning of this month,	<i>Notre société s'est dissoute au commencement de ce mois-ci.</i>
If you put that salt there, it will certainly <i>dissolve</i> ,	<i>Si vous mettez là ce sel, il se dissoudra certainement.</i>

EXERCISE 161.

That man was accused of a crime; but he was acquitted, because, in a doubtful case, it is better to acquit the guilty than to condemn the innocent. Mr. C. was acquitted of the crime of high treason, notwith-

standing the intrigues of his enemies. Do you think that our society will not soon be dissolved?—I do not know; but I think that it will not be dissolved before next month.—If it should not be dissolved, it would be better for me to leave it; and I should not now be a member of it, if I had thought that it would not be dissolved before this time.—I thought so also, but some members are unwilling to dissolve it.

290. *Accroire*, TO BELIEVE, is a neuter and defective verb, used only in the present infinitive with the verb *faire*; thus,

To make believe, . . . *Faire accroire*.

291. *Attraire*, TO ATTRACT, is an active and defective verb, used only in the present infinitive.

292. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Battre,</i>	<i>To beat,</i>	is an active verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Battant,</i>	<i>Beating.</i>	
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Battu, e,</i>	<i>Beaten.</i>	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>bats,</i>	<i>bats,</i>	<i>bat,</i>	<i>battons,</i>	<i>battez,</i>	<i>battent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>battais,</i>	<i>battais,</i>	<i>battait,</i>	<i>battions,</i>	<i>battiez,</i>	<i>battaient.</i>
<i>Pret.</i>	<i>battis,</i>	<i>battis,</i>	<i>battit,</i>	<i>battîmes,</i>	<i>battîtes,</i>	<i>battirent.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>battrai,</i>	<i>battras,</i>	<i>battrà,</i>	<i>battrons,</i>	<i>battrez,</i>	<i>battront.</i>
<i>Cond.</i>	<i>battrais,</i>	<i>battrais,</i>	<i>battrait,</i>	<i>battrions,</i>	<i>battriez,</i>	<i>battraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>batte,</i>	<i>battes,</i>	<i>batte,</i>	<i>battions,</i>	<i>battiez,</i>	<i>battent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>battisse,</i>	<i>battisses,</i>	<i>battît,</i>	<i>battissions,</i>	<i>battissiez,</i>	<i>battissent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	—	<i>bats,</i>	<i>batte,</i>	<i>battons,</i>	<i>battez,</i>	<i>battent.</i>

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the three persons singular of the present indicative,

which are *bats,* *bats,* *bat,*
instead of *batts,* *batts,* *batt.* See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the preterite definite, which is *battis*, &c.
instead of *battus*, &c. See forma. of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le*, *la*, or *les*, HIM OR IT, HER OR IT, THEM; thus,

I beat <i>him</i> ,	.	.	<i>Je le bats.</i>
Thou beatest <i>him</i> ,	&c.		<i>Tu le bats</i> , &c.
I have beaten <i>him</i> ,	&c.		<i>Je l'ai battu</i> , &c.

The same irregularities are in *abattre*, TO PULL DOWN, TO CUT DOWN ; *combattre*, TO FIGHT ; *débattre*, TO ARGUE ; *ébatte*, TO SPORT ; *rabattre*, TO ABATE PRICE ; *rebattre*, TO BEAT AGAIN ; *se débattre*, TO STRUGGLE ; *se battre*, TO FIGHT.

293. When TO FIGHT is used to express a private contest, it is generally translated by *se battre* ; as,

William and George *have* *Guillaume et George se sont*
fought, *battus.*

EXERCISE 162.

When I fight, I always beat my enemy.—But dost thou fight often ?
inquired a neighbour.—No, never, answered the boaster.—The fact
was, that once he was obliged to fight, and his adversary beat him very
severely ; and, after having been thus beaten, he ran away very fast ;
and he now pretends that he always beats his enemy.—John, hast thou
cut down the large elm ?—No, sir ; but James is cutting it down now.
—And the dead poplar ?—I shall cut it down to-morrow.—Why wouldst
thou not cut it down now ?—Because I must cut down several small
trees.—No ; it is better for you to cut down the poplar now, because
George can cut down the small trees.

294. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Boire, *To drink,* is an active verb.
Pres. part. *Buvant,* *Drinking.*
Past part. Bu, e, *Drunk.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	bois,	bois,	boit,	buvons,	buvez,	boivent.
<i>Imper.</i>	buvais,	buvais,	buvait,	buvions,	buviez,	buvaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	bus,	bus,	but,	bûmes,	bûtes,	burent.
<i>Future,</i>	boirai,	boiras,	boira,	boirons,	boirez,	boiront.
<i>Condit.</i>	boirais,	boirais,	boirait,	boirions,	boiriez,	boiraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	boive,	boives,	boive,	buvions,	buviez,	boivent.
<i>Imper.</i>	busse,	busses,	bût,	bussions,	bussiez,	bussent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	bois,	boive,	buvons,	buvez,	boivent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle,
which is *buvant*,*
instead of *boiant*.

See the model *rendre*.

* NOTE. In giving the regular form of these verbs under the irregular, the chief object of the author is to impress the mind of the student with the peculiarities of their several irregularities. It would perhaps sometimes be difficult for him to account for that regu-

2d. In the past participle, which is *bu*,
instead of *boiu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third persons singular and plural of the present indicative, which are *boit*, *boivent*,
instead of *boi*, *buvent*. See the model *vendre* and the formation of tenses.

4th. In the three persons singular and third plural of the present subjunctive,
 which are *boive*, *boives*, *boive*, *boivent*,
instead of *bue*, *bues*, *bue*, *buvent*. See the formation of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *en*, or *IT*; thus,

I drink *of it*, *J'en bois*.

Thou drinkest *of it*, &c. . . . *Tu en bois*, &c.

I have drunk *of it*, &c. . . . *J'en ai bu*, &c.

EXERCISE 163.

What sort of wine dost thou drink at thy meals?—I generally drink claret.—And thou?—Claret also; but I very often drink beer or cider.—I would drink cider, but I cannot find any of the first quality.—Why wouldst thou not drink beer?—Because I cannot drink it without being sick.—However, beer is a very healthy drink.—It is so, I know; but, if I drink any, I become stupid and sleepy.—It does not act thus upon me; for, last year I often drank a whole bottle at my dinner, when I had no wine.—Thou must drink more than I, for I could not drink even a bottle of water.

295. *Braire*, TO BRAY, is a neuter and defective verb, used only in the present infinitive, and the third person singular and plural of the present indicative, which are *il brait*, *ils braient*.
 of the future, which are *il braira*, *ils brairont*.
 of the conditional, which are *il brairait*, *ils brairaient*.

lar form, were he not told, that, in doing it, he must always consider the verb as being composed of two parts, the radical letters, that is, those letters that precede the termination, and the termination. In the model *vendre*, for instance, the three persons of the present indicative are formed thus: the first by the radical letters *vend* and an *s*; the second, in the same way; and the third, by only the radical letters *vend*. According to this principle, the verb *boire* is regular in the first and second persons singular of the present indicative, because they are formed with the radical letters, that is, those that precede the termination *re* and *s*; but the third is irregular, because it adds *t* to the radical letters, whereas in the model there is no such addition to them. It is according to this principle that all the irregularities of French verbs are accounted for in this Grammar.

296. *Bruire*, TO BUSTLE, is a neuter and defective verb, used only in the third person singular and plural

of the imperfect, which are . . . il bruyait, ils bruyaient.

297. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Circoncire, *To circumcise*, is an active verb.

Pres. part. Circoncisant, *Circumcising*.

Past part. Circoncis, *Circumcised*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	circoncis,	circoncis,	circoncit,	circoncisons,	circoncisez,	circoncisent.
<i>Imper.</i>	circoncisais,	circoncisais,	circoncisait,	circoncissions,	circoncissiez,	circoncissaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	circoncis,	circoncis,	circoncit,	circoncimes,	circoncîtes,	circoncirent.
<i>Future</i> ,	circoncirai,	circonciras,	circoncira,	circoncirons,	circoncirez,	circonciront.
<i>Condit.</i>	circoncirais,	circoncirais,	circoncirait,	circoncirions,	circonciriez,	circonciraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	circoncise,	circoncises,	circoncise,	circoncissions,	circoncissiez,	circoncissent.
<i>Imper.</i>	circoncisse,	circoncisses,	circoncît,	circoncissions,	circoncissiez,	circoncissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	circoncis,	circoncise,	circoncisons,	circoncisez,	circoncissent.

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle, which is *circoncisant*, instead of *circonciant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *circoncis*, instead of *circoncû*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *circoncit*, instead of *circonci*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses and the model *vendre*.

298. *Clore*, TO STOP, TO SHUT UP, is an active and defective verb, used only in the singular

of the present indicative, which is *je clos*, *tu clos*, *il clot*.

in the future and conditional, which are *je clorai*, &c. *je clorais*, &c.

in the past participle, which is *clos*, *close*, and in all its compound tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le*, *la*, *les*, IT, THEM; thus,

I stop, or shut it up, . . . *Je le*, or *la clos*.

I have stopped it, &c. . . *Je l'ai clos*, or *close*, &c.

The same irregularities are in *enclorre*, TO ENCLOSE.

299. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Conclure, *To conclude*, is an active verb.

Pres. part. Concluant, *Concluding*.

Past part. Conclu, e, *Concluded*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	conclus,	conclus,	conclut,	concluons,	concluez,	concluent.
<i>Imper.</i>	concluais,	concluais,	concluait,	concluions,	concluiez,	concluaient.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pret. def.</i>	conclus,	conclus,	conclut,	conclûmes,	conclûtes,	conclurent.
<i>Future,</i>	conclurai,	concluras,	conclura,	conclurons,	conclurez,	concluront.
<i>Condit.</i>	conclurais,	conclurais,	conclurait,	conclurions,	concluriez,	concluraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	conclue,	conclues,	conclue,	concluions,	concluez,	concluent.
<i>Imper.</i>	conclusse,	conclusses,	conclût,	conclussions,	conclussiez,	conclussent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	conclus,	conclue,	concluons,	concluez,	concluent.

This verb is irregular only in the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *conclut*,
instead of *conclu*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *en*, FROM IT; thus,

I conclude <i>from it</i> ,	.	.	<i>J'en conclus.</i>
Thou concludest <i>from it</i> , &c.	.	.	<i>Tu en conclus, &c.</i>
I have concluded <i>from it</i> , &c.	.	.	<i>J'en ai conclu, &c.</i>

Exclure, TO EXCLUDE, is conjugated like *conclure*; but besides its regular past participle *exclu*, *exclue*, it has another irregular, viz: *exclus*, *excluse*.

EXERCISE 164.

Did you ¹⁴⁴conclude your discourse yesterday?—No, sir.—When will you ^{ex. 11}conclude it?—I conclude it to-day.—And Mr. F., when will he ¹⁰¹conclude his defence?—He ^{104 & 135}concludes it this morning.—Did Mr. Victor ^{ex. 11}conclude his bargain with Mr. B.?—No, sir; but perhaps they will ¹⁰²conclude it this evening.—Why would they not ¹⁰²conclude it?—I do not know; but I foresee* that if they do not ¹⁰²conclude it this evening, they will ¹⁰²conclude it very soon.—I should be very glad if they would ¹⁰²conclude it.—Why?—Because, if they should ¹⁴²conclude it, I would ¹⁴⁸conclude something else myself.

300. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Conduire,</i>	<i>To conduct, to lead, to carry, to wait upon,</i>	<i>is an</i>
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Conduisant,</i>	<i>Conducting.</i>	<i>[active verb.</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Conduit, e,</i>	<i>Conducted.</i>	

* The verb *prévoir*, TO FORESEE, is conjugated like *voir*, except in the future and conditional, which are *je prévoirai, &c.* *je prévoirais, &c.*
instead of *je préverrai, &c.* *je préverrais, &c.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	conduis,	conduis,	conduit,	conduisons,	conduisiez,	conduisent.
<i>Imper.</i>	conduisais,	conduisais,	conduisait,	conduisions,	conduisiez,	conduisaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	conduisis,	conduisis,	conduisit,	conduisîmes,	conduisttes,	conduisirent.
<i>Future,</i>	conduirai,	conduiras,	conduira,	conduirons,	conduirez,	conduiront.
<i>Condit.</i>	conduirais,	conduirais,	conduirait,	conduirions,	conduiriez,	conduiraient

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	conduise,	conduises,	conduise,	conduisions,	conduisez,	conduisent.
<i>Imper.</i>	conduisisse,	conduisisse,	conduisît,	conduisissions,	conduisissiez,	conduisissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	conduis,	conduise,	conduisons,	conduisez,	conduisent.

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle, which is *conduisant*, instead of *conduiant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *conduit*, instead of *conduiu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *conduit*, instead of *condui*. See the model *vendre*.

4th. In the preterite definite, which is *conduisis*, &c. instead of *conduits*, &c. See forma. of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le, la, les*, HIM OR IT, HER OR IT, THEM ; thus,

I conduct *her*, . . . *Je la conduis*.
 Thou conductest *her*, &c. . . *Tu la conduis*, &c.
 I have conducted *her*, &c. . . *Je l'ai conduite*, &c.

The same irregularities exist in *construire*, TO CONSTRUCT ; *cuire*, TO COOK ; *déduire*, TO DEDUCT ; *détruire*, TO DESTROY ; *enduire*, TO PLASTER ; *induire*, TO INDUCE ; *instruire*, TO INSTRUCT ; *introduire*, TO INTRODUCE ; *produire*, TO PRODUCE ; *reconduire*, TO RECONDUCT ; *recuire*, TO COOK AGAIN ; *reconstruire*, TO BUILD UP AGAIN ; *renduire*, TO DAUB OVER AGAIN ; *réduire*, TO REDUCE ; *reproduire*, TO REPRODUCE ; *séduire*, TO SEDUCE ; *traduire*, TO TRANSLATE.

EXERCISE 165.

I must find a good lawyer to conduct an affair ; can you recommend one to me?—Mr. P. is now conducting my law-suit, and I have no doubt that he would conduct your affair perfectly well.—Is he a good lawyer ? —He is so. He has conducted and is now conducting the suits of several of my friends, and all speak of him very favourably.—Well, I

¹³³ am going to ¹⁹⁵ conduct these two children, and I shall go and see ¹⁹⁵ him very ^{ex. 9} soon.—Where do you conduct them?—^{ex. 15} To their school.—²⁶¹ Can they not ⁸⁷ go without being conducted?—They could; ¹⁷⁷ but, if I do not conduct ^{ex. 15} them, they will play, instead of going there. ¹⁰¹ ¹²⁴ ^{ex. 24}

201. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, *Confire*, *To pickle, to preserve*, is an active and defective verb.

Pres. part. *Confisant*, *Pickling, preserving*.

Past part. *Confit, e*, *Pickled, preserved*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>confis</i> ,	<i>confis</i> ,	<i>confit</i> ,	<i>confisons</i> ,	<i>confisez</i> ,	<i>confisent</i> .
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>confisais</i> ,	<i>confisais</i> ,	<i>confisait</i> ,	<i>confisions</i> ,	<i>confisiez</i> ,	<i>confisaient</i> .
<i>Pret. def.</i>	<i>confis</i> ,	<i>confit</i> ,	<i>confit</i> ,	<i>confimes</i> ,	<i>confîtes</i> ,	<i>confirent</i> .
<i>Future</i> ,	<i>confirai</i> ,	<i>confiras</i> ,	<i>confira</i> ,	<i>confirons</i> ,	<i>confirez</i> ,	<i>confiront</i> .
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>confirais</i> ,	<i>confirais</i> ,	<i>confirait</i> ,	<i>confirions</i> ,	<i>confiriez</i> ,	<i>confiraient</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>confise</i> ,	<i>confises</i> ,	<i>confise</i> ,	<i>confisons</i> ,	<i>confisiez</i> ,	<i>confisent</i> .
<i>Imper.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Impera.</i>	_____	<i>confis</i> ,	<i>confise</i> ,	<i>confisons</i> ,	<i>confisez</i> ,	<i>confisent</i> .

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle,

which is *confisant*,

instead of *confiant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *confit*,

instead of *confi*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person singular of the present indicative,

which is *confit*,

instead of *confi*. See the model *vendre*.

4th. In the preterite definite, which is *confis*, &c.

instead of *confits*, &c. See forma. of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le*, *la*, *les*, IT, THEM; thus,

I pickle *them*, . . . *Je les confis*.

Thou picklest *them*, &c. . . *Tu les confis*, &c.

I have pickled *them*, &c. . . *Je les ai confits*, or *confites*, &c.

302. The imperfect subjunctive is wanting, and supplied by the imperfect subjunctive of the verb *faire*, and the present infinitive *confire*; thus,

That I might pickle, . . . *Que je fisse confire*.

That thou mightest pickle, . . . *Que tu fisses confire*.

That he might pickle, . . . *Qu'il fît confire*.

That we might pickle, . . . *Que nous fissions confire*.

That you might pickle, . . . *Que vous fissiez confire*.

That they might pickle, . . . *Qu'ils fissent confire*.

EXERCISE 166.

I must ²⁵⁴ pickle my cucumbers; but as I do not know ²⁷¹ how to pickle them, you must ²⁵⁴ pickle them for me; can you ^{ex. 15} pickle them?—If you wish, ¹⁷⁴ I will ^{ex. 15} pickle them.—When will you ¹⁷⁸ pickle them?—If you give them to me next Friday, I shall ¹⁰⁰ pickle them next Monday. Could you not ¹²⁵ pickle them on Saturday?—No, I could not; because I have to ⁴⁴ pickle fruit for Mrs. C.—What fruit do you ⁵⁷ pickle for her?—I have already ⁴⁴ pickled pears for her, and next Saturday I shall ⁸⁴ pickle ⁴⁴ apricots and ⁴⁴ peaches.—Do you sometimes ⁹² pickle ⁴⁴ cabbages, ⁴⁴ onions and ⁴⁴ green beans together?—Yes; but to ¹²⁸ pickle them well they must be prepared ²⁵⁴ separately. ¹⁵⁰ ¹³¹

303. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Connaitre,</i>	<i>To know, to be acquainted with,</i>	<i>is an active</i>
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Connaisant,</i>	<i>Knowing.</i>	<i>[verb.]</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Connu, e,</i>	<i>Known.</i>	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>connais,</i>	<i>connais,</i>	<i>connait,</i>	<i>connaissons,</i>	<i>connaissez,</i>	<i>connaissent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>connais-sais,</i>	<i>connais-sais,</i>	<i>connais-sait,</i>	<i>connais-sions,</i>	<i>connais-siez,</i>	<i>connais-saient.</i>
<i>Pret.def.</i>	<i>connus,</i>	<i>connus,</i>	<i>connut,</i>	<i>connûmes,</i>	<i>connûtes,</i>	<i>connurent.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>connaitrai,</i>	<i>connaitras,</i>	<i>connaitra,</i>	<i>connaitrons,</i>	<i>connaitrez,</i>	<i>connaitront.</i>
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>connaitrais,</i>	<i>connaitrais,</i>	<i>connaitrait,</i>	<i>connaitrions,</i>	<i>connaitriez,</i>	<i>connaitraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>connaisse,</i>	<i>connais-ses,</i>	<i>connais-ses,</i>	<i>connais-sions,</i>	<i>connais-siez,</i>	<i>connais-sent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>connusse,</i>	<i>connusses,</i>	<i>connût,</i>	<i>connussions,</i>	<i>connussiez,</i>	<i>connussent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	———	<i>connais,</i>	<i>connais-ses,</i>	<i>connais-sions,</i>	<i>connais-siez,</i>	<i>connais-sent.</i>

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *connaissant*, instead of *connaissant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *connu*, instead of *connaitu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the first and second persons singular of the present indicative, which are *connais*, *connais*, instead of *connaits*, *connaits*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *les y*, THEM THERE; thus,
 I know *them there*, . . . *Je les y connais*.
 Thou knowest *them there*, &c. *Tu les y connais*, &c.
 I have known *them there*, &c. *Je les y ai connus*, or *connues*, &c.

The same irregularities are in *apparaître*, TO APPEAR; *comparaître*, TO APPEAR; *disparaître*, TO DISAPPEAR; *méconnaître*, TO FORGET, NOT TO RECOGNISE; *paraître*, TO APPEAR, TO SEEM; *reconnaître*, TO RECOGNISE.

The use of *connaître*, presents some difficulty on account of the analogy of its signification to *savoir*, which means also to KNOW.

304. Besides what has been said of *savoir*, at No. 267, to which the student is referred, it is necessary to notice that *connaître* is not used when a verb follows, whether that verb be used in the infinitive, or in any tense preceded by *que* or some other conjunction. *Connaître* implies merely acquaintance, whilst *savoir* implies a knowledge acquired by study or some other means.

I know Mr. D.; but I do not know whether he will come, *Je connais M. D.; mais je ne sais pas s'il viendra.*

305. However, when the expressed knowledge is the effect of perception through the senses, and not that of a previous consciousness, *connaître* should be used instead of *savoir*, although a verb might follow; as in

I knew by his countenance that he would be indulgent, *Je connus à sa contenance qu'il serait indulgent.*
He knew then that the danger was imminent, *Il connut alors que le danger était imminent.*

Explanation. In these examples, TO KNOW is evidently used for TO PERCEIVE. From which it may again be concluded that *savoir*, before a noun or verb, implies a thorough or previous knowledge; whilst *connaître* implies only acquaintance or perception.

EXERCISE 167.

Are you acquainted with Mr. F. ?—No; but I know his brother.—If you knew him, you would like to cultivate his acquaintance.—I shall soon know him, because he will come and see me next Sunday.—Do you know his works ?—I know two of them.—When you was in Cambridge, did you know Mr. L. ?—I knew him very slightly.—However, he knows you very well.—If he knows me, I am very glad of it, for I thought he had entirely forgotten me.—Have you ever been acquainted with a man named K ?—I have known him very well. I know that he is very interesting: he knew all the inhabitants of the village where he lived and their history.

306. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Contredire,	<i>To contradict,</i> is an active verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	Contredisant,	<i>Contradicting.</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	Contredit, e,	<i>Contradicted.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	contredis,	contredis,	contredit,	contredisons,	contredisez,	contredisent.
<i>Imper.</i>	contredisais,	contredisais,	contredisait,	contredisions,	contredisiez,	contredisaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	contredis,	contredis,	contredit,	contredîmes,	contredîtes,	contrediront.
<i>Future.</i>	contredirai,	contrediras,	contredira,	contredirons,	contredirez,	contrediront.
<i>Condit.</i>	contredirais,	contredirais,	contredirait,	contredirions,	contrediriez,	contrediraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	contredise,	contredises,	contredise,	contredisions,	contredisiez,	contredisent.
<i>Imper.</i>	contredisse,	contredisses,	contredit,	contredissions,	contredissiez,	contredissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	contredis,	contredise,	contredisons,	contredisez,	contredisent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *contredisant*,
instead of *contrediant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *contredit*,
instead of *contrediu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *contredit*,
instead of *contredi*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le*, *la* or *les*, HIM, HER or THEM; thus,

I contradict *him*, *Je le contredis*.
Thou contradictest *him*, &c. . . *Tu le contredis*, &c.
I have contradicted *him*, &c. . . *Je l'ai contredit*, &c.

The same irregularities are in *se dédire*, TO RECENT; *interdire*, TO FORBID; *médire*, TO SLANDER; *prédire*, TO FORTELL.

EXERCISE 168.

When you speak, you ought not to contradict yourself, because, when a man contradicts himself, he exposes himself to pass for a liar.—But do I contradict myself?—Yes, you contradict yourself very often.—You astonish me! Then, instead of contradicting myself, I shall contradict you.—Why would you contradict me? must you always contradict, and *can't you hold conversation without contradicting?—I assure you, that

* 'Can't you' is for 'can you not.'

I did not know that I had a contradicting disposition ; and I shall never more contradict you nor myself.—I am very glad of it ; and you will find it is better for you never to contradict.

307. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Coudre, *To sew*, is an active verb.

Pres.part. Cousant, *Sewing*.

Past part. Cousu, e, *Sewed*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	couds.	couds,	coud,	cousons,	cousez,	cousent.
<i>Imper.</i>	cousais,	cousais,	cousait,	cousions,	cousiez,	cousaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	cousis,	cousis,	cousit,	cousîmes,	cousîtes,	cousirent.
<i>Future,</i>	coudrai,	coudras,	coudra,	coudrons,	coudrez,	coudront.
<i>Condit.</i>	coudrais,	coudrais,	coudrait,	coudrions,	coudriez,	coudraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	couse,	couses,	couse,	cousions,	cousiez,	cousent.
<i>Imper.</i>	cousisse,	cousisses,	cousît,	cousissions,	cousissiez,	cousissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	couds,	couse,	cousons,	cousez,	cousent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *cousant*, instead of *coudant*. See the model *rendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *cousu*, instead of *codu*. See the model *rendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le, la, les*, IT, THEM ; thus,

I sew *it*, . . . *Je le, or la couds*.

Thou sewest *it*, &c. . . *Tu le, or la couds, &c.*

I have sewed *it*, &c. . . *Je l'ai cousu, or cousue, &c.*

The same irregularities are in *découdre*, TO UNSEW ; *recoudre*, TO SEW AGAIN.

EXERCISE 169.

Louisa, art thou sewing ? Hast thou sewed the handkerchiefs ?—Not yet ; but I am sewing them now.—And the apron ?—I sewed it yesterday.—And the napkins ?—Yesterday Jane sewed one of them, and now she is sewing another.—I thought that they were all sewed ; why dost thou not sew them now ? Thou knowest that they must be sewed before the handkerchiefs ?—I did not know it ; for, if I had known, I would sew them now ; but I shall sew them as soon as I have finished this hand-

kerchief.—No ; leave that handkerchief, and sew the napkins immediately, and Mary also must sew them with thee.

308. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Craindre, *To fear,* is an active verb.

Pres. part. Craignant, *Fearing.*

Past part. Craint, e, *Feared.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	crains,	crains,	craint,	craignons,	craignez,	craignent.
<i>Imper.</i>	craignais,	craignais,	craignait,	craignons,	craigniez,	craignaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	craignis,	craignis,	craignit,	craignîmes,	craignîtes,	craignirent.
<i>Future,</i>	craindrai,	craindra,	craindra,	craindrons,	craindrez,	craindront.
<i>Condit.</i>	craindraï,	craindrais,	craindrait,	craindrions,	craindriez,	craindraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	craigne,	craignes,	craigne,	craignons,	craigniez,	craignent.
<i>Imper.</i>	craignisse,	craignisses,	craignît,	craignissions,	craignissiez,	craignissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	crains,	craigne,	craignons,	craignez,	craignent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *craignant*, instead of *craindant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *craint*, instead of *craindu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *crains*, *crains*, *craint*, instead of *crainds*, *crainds*, *craind*. See the model *vendre*.

4th. In the preterite definite, which is *craignis*, &c. instead of *craints*, &c. See forma. of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le*, *la* or *les*, HIM, HER, THEM ; thus,

I fear <i>them</i> ,	.	.	.	<i>Je les crains.</i>
Thou fearest <i>them</i> , &c.	.	.	.	<i>Tu les crains, &c.</i>
I have feared <i>them</i> , &c.	.	.	.	<i>Je les ai craints, &c.</i>

The same irregularities are in *astreindre*, TO CONFINE ; *atteindre*, TO REACH ; *aveindre*, TO FETCH OUT ; *ceindre*, TO INCLOSE ; *contraindre*, TO FORCE ; *dépeindre*, TO DESCRIBE ; *enceindre*, TO INCLOSE ; *enfrendre*, TO TRESPASS ; *enjoindre*, TO PRESCRIBE, TO ORDER ; *déjoindre*, TO DISJOIN ; *êteindre*, TO PUT OUT ; *feindre*, TO FEIGN, TO PRETEND ; *joindre*, TO JOIN ; *oindre*, TO ANOINT ; *peindre*, TO PAINT ; *plaindre*, TO PITY ; *repeindre*,

TO PAINT ANEW ; *rejoindre*, TO JOIN AGAIN ; *restreindre*, TO LIMIT ; *teindre*, TO DIE ; *déteindre*, TO DISCOLOUR.

309. When the object of *craindre* is a verb, that verb should be in the subjunctive mood preceded by *ne*, without *pas* after it, if it is used affirmatively, and with *pas* after it, if it is used negatively ; as in

I fear Mr. L. will come, *Je crains que M. L. ne vienne.*
I feared Mr. L. would not come, *Je craignais que M. L. ne vint pas.*

EXERCISE 170.

"If thou dost not fear God, fear the wicked,"⁹⁸ was the advice of a desponding father to his ungrateful son. But the son, fearing nothing,²³ was soon ruined.⁹⁹ If he had feared God,¹⁰⁵ he would certainly have feared⁹² the temptations of the wicked,¹⁰⁸ and he would have been reformed.¹⁰³ *Don't you think so?^{ex.12}—Yes, I think so.—Do you not fear that the wicked will tempt you?^{150&309}—No, I do not fear it ; I fear only that God will not protect me against them.^{ex.1}—If you did not fear God,⁸⁴ would you fear that the wicked would influence you?¹⁴¹—I think that I should not fear it ; because I should be wicked myself.^{153 & 309 ex.7}—As for me, I have always feared them,¹⁰² I fear them now, and I shall always fear them.⁸⁶

* 'Don't you' is for 'do you not.'

310. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Croire, *To believe*, is an active verb.
Pres.part. Croyant, *Believing.*
Past part. Cru, *Believed.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	crois,	crois,	croit,	croyons,	croyez,	croient.
<i>Imper.</i>	croyais,	croyais,	croyait,	croyions,	croyiez,	croyaient,
<i>Pret. def.</i>	crus,	crus,	crut,	crûmes,	crûtes,	crurent.
<i>Future,</i>	croirai,	croiras,	croira,	croirons,	croirez,	croiront.
<i>Condit.</i>	croirais,	croirais,	croirait,	croirions,	croiriez,	croiraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	croie,	croies,	croie,	croyions,	croyiez,	croient.
<i>Imper.</i>	crusse,	crusses,	crût,	crussions,	crussiez,	crussent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	crois,	croie,	croyons,	croyez,	croient.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *croyant*, instead of *croiant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *cru*, instead of *croiu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *croit*, instead of *croi*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le, la, les*, HIM OR IT, HER OR IT, THEM ; thus,

I believe <i>her</i> , &c.	<i>Je la crois.</i>
Thou believest <i>her</i> , &c.	<i>Tu la crois, &c.</i>
I have believed <i>her</i> , &c.	<i>Je l'ai crue, &c.</i>

311. When TO BELIEVE is followed by a verb, preceded or not preceded by THAT, it is translated by *croire* in French, and the second verb, which must be preceded by *que*, is to be put in the indicative or subjunctive mood ; which case will be treated in the syntax of moods. In the following exercises the indicative mood only is to be used after *croire*.

312. When TO BELIEVE has IN before its object, that preposition should be translated into French by *à*, except with the words God, *Dieu* ; JESUS-CHRIST, *Jésus-Christ* ; before which it is translated by *en* ; thus,

Do you believe <i>in God</i> and <i>Jesus-Christ</i> ?	<i>Croyez-vous en Dieu et en Jésus-Christ ?</i>
Yes, I believe <i>in them</i> ,	<i>Oui, j'y crois.</i>
He does not believe <i>in the Holy-Ghost nor the Holy-Virgin</i> ,	<i>Il ne croit pas au Saint-Esprit ni à la Sainte-Vierge.</i>

313. Another peculiarity connected with this verb is, that the word *so*, which sometimes follows TO BELIEVE, is often translated by *que oui* after *croire*, and the word NOT by *que non* ; as in

I believe <i>so</i> ,	<i>Je crois que oui.</i>
I believe <i>not</i> ,	<i>Je crois que non.</i>

EXERCISE 171.

Do you believe ³¹¹in the immortality of the soul ?—Yes, and I believe also that we shall be rewarded or punished in another life according to our actions in this world. Does your brother believe the bible ?—Yes ; but he believes also ³¹¹in the infallibility of the Pope. But last year he ¹⁴¹did not believe ¹⁷⁵in it.—I know ²⁶⁷it ; and perhaps ³⁵next year he will believe

some other thing. ²¹ Has he yet adopted the catholic religion ?—I believe ³¹² so.—And your cousin, does he believe ³¹¹ in the infallibility of the Pope ?—I believe not. ³¹² However, he would perhaps believe in ⁹² it, if he did not ¹⁷⁵ believe the suggestions of his friend Mr. F. ; and I know ²⁶⁷ that Mr. F. does not believe even in the necessity ³¹¹ of religion. ³⁵

314. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Croître, *To grow*, is a neuter verb, conjugated with *être* and *avoir*.

Pres. part. Croissant, *Growing*.

Past part. Crû, *crue*, *Grown*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	crois,	crois,	croît,	croissons,	croissez,	croissent.
<i>Imper.</i>	croissais,	croissais,	croissait,	croissions,	croissiez,	croissaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	crûs,	crûs,	crût,	crûmes,	crûtes,	crurent.
<i>Future,</i>	croîtrai,	croîtras,	croîtrais,	croîtrons,	croîtrez,	croîtront.
<i>Condit.</i>	croîtrais,	croîtrais,	croîtrait,	croîtrions,	croîtriez,	croîtraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	croisse,	croisses,	croisse,	croissions,	croissiez,	croissent.
<i>Imper.</i>	crusse,	crusses,	crût,	crussions,	crussiez,	crussent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—————	crois,	croisse,	croissons,	croissez,	croissent.

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle, which is *croissant*, instead of *croîtant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *crû*, instead of *croîtu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the first and second persons singular of the present indicative, which are *crois*, *crois*, instead of *croîts*, *croîts*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

315. The compound tenses of this verb are formed with *être*, to express the situation, state, and quality of the growth ; and with *avoir*, to express the action of growing.

The same irregularities are in *accroître*, TO INCREASE ; *décroître*, TO DECREASE ; *recroître*, TO GROW AGAIN.

EXERCISE 172.

¹³⁵ Does not cotton grow in the Island of Cayenne ?—Yes, it grows there. ^{ex. 24}
¹³⁵ Does the coffee-tree grow there also ?—Yes ; and all the colonial products ²⁴
¹⁰² would grow there, if they were cultivated. ^{ex. 24} ⁸⁷ ⁹⁸ ¹³¹ ¹⁷⁴ ^{135 & 102} Would the grape vine grow
^{ex. 24} there ?—I believe so ; but it would not yield grapes. ^{ex. 12} ⁸⁷ ¹⁰² ¹⁷⁴ ⁵⁷ In what part of the

world does the grape vine grow?—¹³⁵It grows in almost all the countries of Europe.—³⁵Does it grow in England?—⁸⁷I believe not; but potatoes grow there perfectly well.—^{ex. 24}Do the trees of your country grow fast?—¹³⁵Generally not very fast; but it seems that they formerly grew faster, if we ¹³⁹believe the writings of our ancestors.

316. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Dire, To say, to tell, is an active verb.

Pres. part. Disant, Saying.

Past part. Dit, e, Said.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	dis,	dis,	dit,	disons,	dites,	disent.
<i>Imper.</i>	disais,	disais,	disait,	disions,	disiez,	disaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	dis,	dis,	dit,	dîmes,	dîtes,	dirent.
<i>Future.</i>	dirai,	diras,	dira,	dirons,	direz,	diront.
<i>Condit.</i>	dirais,	dirais,	dirait,	dirions,	diriez,	diraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	dise,	dises,	disc,	disions,	disiez,	disent.
<i>Imper.</i>	disse,	disse,	dît.	disions,	dissiez,	dissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	dis,	dise,	disons,	dites,	disent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *disant*,
instead of *diant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *dit*,
instead of *dîu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person singular and second plural of the present indicative, which are *dit*, *dites*,
instead of *di*, *disez*. See the model *vendre* and the formation of tenses.

4th. In the preterite definite, which is *dis*, &c.
instead of *dits*, &c. See forma. of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le*, *la*, *les*, *lui*, *leur*, IT, THEM, TO HIM OR TO HER, TO THEM; thus,

I say *it to them*, . . . *Je le leur dis*.

Thou sayest *it to them*, &c. *Tu le leur dis*, &c.

I have said *it to them*, &c. *Je le leur ai dit*, &c.

317. When the word YES, or NOT, or NO, follows after TO SAY, it must be translated by *que oui*, *que non*.

318. The verb TO TELL is often used, in English, in a passive form, that is, with the verb TO BE; as in, I AM TOLD, I

HAVE BEEN TOLD, HE IS TOLD, HE HAS BEEN TOLD, &c., which forms of expression are for SOME ONE TELLS ME, SOMEBODY HAS TOLD ME, SOME ONE TELLS HIM, SOME ONE HAS TOLD HIM, &c. In which case, the French use the active form instead of the passive, by giving to the word *dire* the indefinite pronoun *on* for its nominative, and using *dire* in the simple tenses, or in the compound tenses with *avoir*, corresponding to the simple or compound tenses of the verb TO BE, and using an objective verbal pronoun of the same number and person as the English nominative of the phrase, for the indirect object of *dire*; as

I am told that, *On me dit que.*
 Thou hast been told that, *On t'a dit que.*
 He was told that, *On lui disait que.*
 You had been told that, *On vous avait dit que.*
 They would have been told that, *On leur aurait dit que.*

Explanation. In the first example, *dit* is in the present indicative, because it is the tense of the verb TO BE, in the English example; and the objective verbal pronoun ME of the first person singular is used with *dire*, because the nominative of the English is I. In the second example, *a dit* is in the preterite definite, because it is the tense of TO BE, in the English phrase; and the objective verbal pronoun t' of the second person singular is used with *dire*, because the nominative of the English phrase is THOU, &c.

319. The verb *dire* always requires the conjunction *que* before the verb that is its object, although the conjunction THAT may not be expressed after TO SAY or TO TELL. If the following verb is in the infinitive, it should be preceded by the preposition *de* in French. *Redire*, TO SAY AGAIN, is like *dire*.

EXERCISE 173.

Mr. E. told me, that you said to him that you had books to sell.—Mr. E. told you, do you say, that I have books to sell? And when did he tell you that I had said it to him?—He told me last Monday.—Ah! very well! when I told him, I had, in fact, some to sell; but I have sold them all now.—Can you tell me where I shall find the works of Milton?—Mr. K. told me yesterday, that he had two copies of them.—Did he say that he wished to sell them?—No; but tell him that I have sent you to him, and he will sell one of them to you.—I thank you, I shall not fail to tell him.

320. *Éclore*, TO BE HATCHED, is a neuter and defective verb, conjugated with *être*. It is only used in the third persons singular and plural

Of the present indicative,	which are	.	.	il éclot,	.	ils éclosent.
Of the future,	which are	.	.	il éclora,	.	ils éclosent.
Of the conditional,	which are	.	.	il éclorait,	.	ils éclosaient.
Of the present subjunctive,	which are	.	.	qu'il éclosse,	.	qu'ils éclosent
And in the past participle,	which is	.	.	éclos, e,		

321. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>écrire,</i>	<i>To write,</i>	is an active verb
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>écrivait,</i>	<i>Writing.</i>	
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>écrit, e,</i>	<i>Written.</i>	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>j'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>écris,</i>	<i>écris,</i>	<i>écrit,</i>	<i>écrivons,</i>	<i>écrivez,</i>	<i>écrivent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>écrivais,</i>	<i>écrivais,</i>	<i>écrivait,</i>	<i>écrivions,</i>	<i>écriviez,</i>	<i>écrivaient.</i>
<i>Pret.</i>	<i>écrivis,</i>	<i>écrivis,</i>	<i>écrivit,</i>	<i>écrivîmes,</i>	<i>écrivîtes,</i>	<i>écrivirent.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>écrirai,</i>	<i>écriras,</i>	<i>écrira,</i>	<i>écrirons,</i>	<i>écrirez,</i>	<i>écriront.</i>
<i>Cond.</i>	<i>écrirais,</i>	<i>écrirais,</i>	<i>écrirait,</i>	<i>écririons,</i>	<i>écririez,</i>	<i>écriraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>écrive,</i>	<i>écrives,</i>	<i>écrive,</i>	<i>écrivions,</i>	<i>écriviez,</i>	<i>écrivent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>écrivisse,</i>	<i>écrivisses,</i>	<i>écrivît,</i>	<i>écrivissions,</i>	<i>écrivissiez,</i>	<i>écrivissent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	————	<i>écris,</i>	<i>écrive,</i>	<i>écrivons,</i>	<i>écrirez,</i>	<i>écrivent.</i>

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *écrivait*,
instead of *écriant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *écrit*,
instead of *écriu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *écrit*,
instead of *écri*. See the model *vendre*.

4th. In the preterite definite, which is *écrivis*, &c.
instead of *écrivis*, &c. See formation of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le leur*, IT TO THEM ; thus,

I write *it to them*, . . . *Je le leur écris*.

Thou writest *it to them*, &c. *Tu le leur écris*, &c.

I have written *it to them*, &c. *Je le leur ai écrit*, &c.

The same irregularities exist in *circonscrire*, TO CIRCUMSCRIBE ; *décrire*, TO DESCRIBE ; *inscrire*, TO INSCRIBE ; *prescrire*, TO PRESCRIBE : *proscrire*, TO PROSCRIBE ; *récrire*, TO WRITE AGAIN ; *souscrire*, TO SUBSCRIBE ; *transcrire*, TO TRANSCRIBE.

EXERCISE 174.

Have you written to your master that the turkeys are hatched?—I am writing to him now.—But do you not think that the ducks and goslings will be hatched next week?—I do not believe it; for, if I believed it, I would not write now.—Has he written to you lately?—He wrote to me yesterday.—If I were you, I would not write to him now; I would write to him only after the ducks and goslings shall be hatched.—Very well. Then I shall write to him next week or the following. Shall I write him something for you?—Yes. Write to him that he must write to me, and that I shall write to him very soon after.

322. *Être*, TO BE, is a substantive and auxiliary verb. It is very irregular, since only its imperfect indicative and subjunctive, its third person singular, and the three persons plural of the imperative, are regularly conjugated according to the formation of tenses. It is given at length at page 33.

323. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Faire, To make, or To do, is an active verb.
Pres. part. Faisant, Making, .. Doing.
Past part. Fait, e, Made, .. Done.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	fais,	fais,	fait,	faisons,	faites,	font.
<i>Imper.</i>	faisais,	faisais,	faisait,	faisons,	faisiez,	faisaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	fis,	fis,	fit,	fîmes,	fîtes,	fîrent.
<i>Future</i> ,	ferai,	feras,	fera,	ferons,	ferez,	feront.
<i>Condit.</i>	ferais,	ferais,	ferait,	ferions,	feriez,	feraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>fasse</i> ,	<i>fasses</i> ,	<i>fasse</i> ,	<i>fassions</i> ,	<i>fassiez</i> ,	<i>fassent</i> .
<i>Pres.</i>	fasse,	fasses,	fasse,	fassions,	fassiez,	fassent.
<i>Imper.</i>	fisse,	fisses,	fît,	fissions,	fissiez,	fissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	fais,	fasse,	faisons,	faites,	fassent.

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle, which is *faisant*, instead of *faiant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *fait*, instead of *faiu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the 3d person sing. 2d and 3d plur. of the pres. indicative, which are *fait*, *faites*, *font*, instead of *fai*, *faissez*, *faisent*. See the model *vendre*, and formation of tenses.

4th. In the preterite definite, which is *fis*, &c.

instead of *fais*, &c. See forma. of tenses.

5th. In the future and conditional,

which are *ferai*, &c.

ferais, &c.

instead of *fuirai*, &c.

fuirais, &c.

See formation of tenses.

6th. In the present subjunctive, which is *fasse*, &c.

instead of

fuisse, &c. See form. of tenses

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *leur y*, THERE TO THEM or FOR THEM; thus,

I make *for them there*,

Je leur y fais.

Thou makest *for them there*, &c.

Tu leur y fais, &c.

I have made *for them there*, &c.

Je leur y ai fait, &c.

The same irregularities are in *contrefaire*, TO COUNTERFEIT; *défaire*, TO UNDO; *parfaire*, TO COMPLETE; *redéfaire*, TO UNDO AGAIN; *refaire*, TO DO AGAIN; *satisfaire*, TO SATISFY; *surfaire*, TO ASK OR CHARGE TOO MUCH.

324. There is not a verb in the French language used with more acceptions than *faire*. It would require a volume to give its different meanings; therefore, it will be hereafter the subject of special observations. It will only be said here, that it is generally used to translate TO DO, when not employed as an auxiliary to another verb; TO MAKE, TO WALK, when used with a direct object; TO BE, to express the kind of weather, &c.; as in

I do nothing,

Je ne fais rien.

He *did* it according to your orders,

Il le fit selon vos ordres.

We will *make* a fortune in a short time,

Nous ferons fortune en peu de temps.

They *walked* fifty miles in a day,

Ils firent cinquante milles dans un jour.

It *was* fine weather; but it *was* too windy,

Il faisait beau temps; mais il faisait trop de vent.

325. But to do, without being used as an auxiliary, is not always translated by *faire*, especially in an answer, where it is employed to avoid the repetition of the verb of the question, in

which case it is sometimes rendered by *faire*, and at other times by the verb of the question ; as in

Did Henry carry the flowers into the garden?—He *did*, *Henry a-t-il porté les fleurs dans le jardin?*—*Il l'a fait, sir, monsieur, or il les y a portées.*

326. The verb *faire* is used unipersonally to translate TO BE, when this auxiliary is employed to express the temperature. or the weather ; as

It is fine weather, . . . *Il fait beau temps.*

It was very hot, . . . *Il faisait très-chaud.*

227. *Malfaire*, TO DO MISCHIEF, is a neuter and defective verb, used only in the present infinitive, and past participle *mal-fait*. In its compound tenses it is conjugated with *avoir*.

328. *Méfaire*, TO MISDO, is also a neuter and defective verb. used only in familiar conversation ; as in

We must neither *misdo* nor *slan-* *Il ne faut ni méfaire ni mé-*
der, *dire.*

EXERCISE 175.

²⁶⁴ Will you make that cord for me ?—I will do it to-morrow, if ⁸⁴ it is ^{ex. 11} fine ³²⁶ weather ; but, if it should ³²⁶ be damp, I cannot do ¹⁰² it.—Why ?—Because, ^{ex. 11} when it is damp, I never do that kind of work.—Do you not make these ³²⁶ things ?—I do sometimes.—Will you make a dozen for me ?—Yes.—⁹² When will you make them ?—I cannot make them to day, I am too much ³²⁴ fatigued ; for, yesterday, I walked at least twenty miles ; but I shall ¹⁷⁴ make them next week.—They must be made to-morrow ; if you cannot ^{133&22} make them, another person will make them for me.—I would make them ⁵⁶ if I could ; but I cannot.—I am sorry for it, because I know that the ³²⁴ other workmen do not make them very well. ^{ex. 15} ²⁶⁴ ^{ex. 15} ¹³¹ ³²⁴ ^{ex. 15} ³⁵ ⁸⁷ ²⁵⁴ ¹⁵⁰ ¹³¹ ^{ex. 15} ⁸⁴ ¹⁰² ^{ex. 15} ²⁶⁴ ¹⁷² ²⁶⁹ ¹³³ ^{ex. 15}

329. *Frيره*, TO FRY, is an active and defective verb, it is seldom used and only in the singular. *Faire frيره* is to supply it.

of the present indicative, which is je frيره, . tu frيره, . il frit.
In the future and conditional, which are je frirai, &c. je frirais, &c.
In the second person singular of the imperative, which is frيره.
And in the past participle. which is frit, . frite.

EXERCISE 176.

Jane, hast thou fried the meat for our dinner?—I am ¹³³ frying it now, madam.—And the fish?—John is ¹³³ frying it. ^{ex. 11}—Very well. Does he fry it well?—Yes, madam; yesterday he fried the eels, and he ³²⁴ did it very well.—When wilt thou fry the eggs?—As soon as we shall have fried the fish and the meat.—However, thou must not fry them too soon; it is ²⁷³ best not to fry them until we are at table. And the oysters, how are they?—I have fried the largest only; I would have fried the ¹¹⁸ smallest, if you had not told me not to do it. ^{ex. 2}—Very well; I think thou hast fried enough for to-day. ⁹²

341. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Lire,</i>	<i>To read, is an active verb.</i>
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Lisant,</i>	<i>Reading.</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Lu, e,</i>	<i>Read.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>lis,</i>	<i>lis,</i>	<i>lit,</i>	<i>lisons,</i>	<i>lisez,</i>	<i>lisent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>lisais,</i>	<i>lisais,</i>	<i>lisait,</i>	<i>lisions,</i>	<i>lisiez,</i>	<i>lisaient.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	<i>lus,</i>	<i>lus,</i>	<i>lut,</i>	<i>lûmes,</i>	<i>lûtes,</i>	<i>lurent.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>lirai,</i>	<i>liras,</i>	<i>lira,</i>	<i>firons,</i>	<i>lirez,</i>	<i>liront.</i>
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>lirais,</i>	<i>lirais,</i>	<i>lirait,</i>	<i>lirions,</i>	<i>liriez,</i>	<i>liraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>lise,</i>	<i>lises,</i>	<i>lise,</i>	<i>lisions,</i>	<i>lisiez,</i>	<i>lisent.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>lusse,</i>	<i>lusses,</i>	<i>lût,</i>	<i>lussions,</i>	<i>lussiez,</i>	<i>lussent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	—	<i>lis,</i>	<i>lise,</i>	<i>lisons,</i>	<i>lisez,</i>	<i>lisent.</i>

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle, which is *lisant*, instead of *liant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *lu*, instead of *liu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *lit*, instead of *li*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *la leur*, IT TO THEM; thus,

I read *it to them*, . . . *Je le leur lis.*
 Thou readest *it to them*, &c. . . *Tu le leur lis, &c.*
 I have read *it to them*, &c. . . *Je le leur ai lu, &c.*

The same irregularities are in *élire*, TO ELECT; *réélire*, TO REELECT; *relire*, TO READ AGAIN.

EXERCISE 177.

Are you reading the Journal, sir?—No, sir; I am reading the Gazette.—Have you read the great news of the day?—What news?—The news of the peace.—O! I read it yesterday.—Is it possible! In what paper did you read it?—In one of the last evening. And you, have you not read it?—Not yet; but I would read it with pleasure, if I could find a paper.—I can give you one; when will you read it?—I will read it in an hour.—You would oblige me much, if you read it sooner, because my son must read it, and he will come soon from his store.—Very well. I suppose he will read it fast, and I shall read it after him

342. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Maudire, *To curse*, is an active verb.
Pres. part. Maudissant, *Cursing*.
Past part. Maudit, e, *Cursed*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	maudis,	maudis,	maudit,	maudissons,	maudissez,	maudissent.
<i>Imper.</i>	maudissais,	maudissais,	maudissait,	maudissions,	maudissiez,	maudissaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	maudis,	maudis,	maudit,	maudîmes,	maudîtes,	maudirent.
<i>Future.</i>	maudirai,	maudiras,	maudira,	maudirons,	maudirez,	maudiront.
<i>Condit.</i>	maudirais,	maudirais,	maudirait,	maudirions,	maudiriez,	maudiraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	maudisse,	maudisses,	maudisse,	maudissions,	maudissiez,	maudissent.
<i>Imper.</i>	maudisse,	maudisses,	maudît,	maudissions,	maudissiez,	maudissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	maudis,	maudisse,	maudissons,	maudissez,	maudissent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *maudissant*,
 instead of *maudiant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *maudit*,
 instead of *maudiu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *maudit*,
 instead of *maudi*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le*, *la* or *les*, HIM, HER or THEM; thus, I curse *him*, . . . *Je le maudis*.

Thou cursest *him*, &c. . . *Tu le maudis*, &c.

I have cursed *him*, &c. . . *Je l'ai maudit*, &c.

EXERCISE 178.

When men became wicked, God cursed and punished them, and then they cursed their destiny. The custom of blessing and cursing is very ancient. Our ancestors blessed their children when they were good; but they cursed them when they were bad. Why do you curse me? said a son one day to his father.—I curse thee, because thou hast not done thy duty. If thou hadst done it, I would not curse, but I would bless thee. When thou wilt fulfil thy obligations towards God, towards thy father and mother, I shall not curse thee, but I shall bless thee. When I am obliged to curse thee, I am always sorry. Be good, and I shall never curse thee, I shall always bless thee.

343. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Mettre, *To put, or to place.* is an active verb.
Pres. part. Mettant, *Putting, or placing.*
Past part. Mis, e, *Put, or placed.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mets,</i>	<i>mets,</i>	<i>met,</i>	<i>mettons,</i>	<i>mettez,</i>	<i>mettent.</i>
<i>Impr.</i>	<i>mettais,</i>	<i>mettais,</i>	<i>mettait,</i>	<i>mettions,</i>	<i>mettiez,</i>	<i>mettaient.</i>
<i>Pret. def.</i>	<i>mis,</i>	<i>mis,</i>	<i>mit,</i>	<i>mîmes,</i>	<i>mîtes,</i>	<i>mirent.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>mettrai,</i>	<i>mettras,</i>	<i>mettra,</i>	<i>mettrons,</i>	<i>mettrez,</i>	<i>mettront.</i>
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>mettrais,</i>	<i>mettrais,</i>	<i>mettrait,</i>	<i>mettrions,</i>	<i>mettriez,</i>	<i>mettraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mette,</i>	<i>mettes,</i>	<i>mette,</i>	<i>mettions,</i>	<i>mettiez,</i>	<i>mettent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>misse,</i>	<i>misses,</i>	<i>mit,</i>	<i>missions,</i>	<i>missiez,</i>	<i>missent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	—	<i>mets,</i>	<i>mette,</i>	<i>mettons,</i>	<i>mettez,</i>	<i>mettent.</i>

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *mis*, instead of *mettu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *mets*, *metts*, *met*, instead of *metts*, *metts*, *mett*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *leur y en*, OF IT THERE FOR THEM; thus,

I put *of it there for them*, . . . *Je leur y en mets.*
 Thou puttest *of it there for them*, &c. *Tu leur y en mets, &c.*
 I have put *of it there for them*, &c. *Je leur y en ai mis, &c.*

The same irregularities are in *admettre*, TO ADMIT; *commettre*, TO COMMIT; *compromettre*, COMPROMISE; *démettre*, TO REMOVE; *s'entremettre*, TO MEDIATE; *omettre*, TO OMIT; *permettre*, TO PERMIT; *promettre*, TO PROMISE; *remettre*, TO PUT AGAIN, TO POSTPONE; *soumettre*, TO SUBMIT; *transmettre*, TO TRANSMIT.

EXERCISE 179.

John, art thou placing the dinner on the table?—No, madam; I am putting it on the fire. Hast thou not put it on the fire yet?—Not yet, madam. When wilt thou then put it on the table?—I shall put it there when it is cooked. Didst thou not put the meat on the fire earlier yesterday?—No, madam; I put it at the same hour as to-day; but I would generally put it earlier, if you were willing.—I tell thee now that thou must put the meat and other things on the fire, in order to have them ready to put upon the table at one o'clock.—It will be necessary for me then to put them on the fire earlier, and I shall do it, madam.

344. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Moudre, *To grind*, is an active verb.

Pres. part. Moulant, *Grinding*.

Past part. Moulu, e, *Ground*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	mouds,	mouds,	moud,	moulons,	moulez,	moulent.
<i>Imper.</i>	moulais,	moulais,	moulait,	moulions,	mouliez,	moulaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	moulus,	moulus,	moulut,	moulûmes,	moulûtes,	mou lurent.
<i>Future.</i>	moudrai,	moudras,	moudra,	moudrons,	moudrez,	moudront.
<i>Condit.</i>	moudrais,	moudrais,	moudrait,	moudrions,	moudriez,	moudraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	moule,	moules,	moule,	moulions,	mouliez,	mou lent.
<i>Imper.</i>	moulusse,	moulusses,	moulût,	moulussions,	moulussiez,	moulussent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	mouds,	moule,	moulons,	moulez,	mou lent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *moulant*, instead of *moudant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *moulu*, instead of *moudu*. See the model *vendre*

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le*, IT; thus,

I grind it, *Je le mouds.*

Thou grindest it, &c. . . . *Tu le mouds, &c.*

I have ground it, &c. . . . *Je l'ai moulu, &c.*

The same irregularities are in *émoudre*, TO WHET; *remoudre*, TO GRIND AGAIN.

EXERCISE 180.

Miller, art thou grinding my wheat?—Yes, sir, I am grinding it now. And my corn, hast thou ground it?—I ground it last Tuesday. Couldst thou grind two hundred bags of wheat next week?—I will grind four hundred for you, if you wish it. Very well; I have two hundred bags of it in my granary, thou must grind them at least in the current of next week; if thou didst not grind them within that time, thou wouldst disappoint me. Be not uneasy, I shall grind the whole before next Thursday, and I would grind more if I had it to grind.

345. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Naître, To be born, is a neuter verb, and is conjugated with *être*.

Pres. part. Naissant, Being born.

Past part. Né, née, Been born.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	naïs,	naïs,	naît,	naïssons,	naissiez,	naissent.
<i>Imper.</i>	naissais,	naissais,	naissait,	naissions,	naissiez,	naissaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	naquis,	naquis,	naquit,	naquîmes,	naquîtes.	naquirent.
<i>Future.</i>	naîtrai,	naîtras,	naîtra,	naîtrons,	naîtrez,	naîtront.
<i>Condit.</i>	naîtrais,	naîtrais,	naîtrait,	naîtrions,	naîtriez,	naîtraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	naisse,	naisses,	naisse,	naissions,	naissiez,	naissent.
<i>Imper.</i>	naquisse,	naquisses,	naquît,	naquissions,	naquissiez,	naquissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	naïs,	naisse,	naïssons,	naissiez,	naissent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *naissant*,

instead of *naissant*.

See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *né*,

instead of *naïtu*.

See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the first and second persons singular of the present indicative, which are *naïs*, *naïs*,

instead of

naïts,

naïts,

See the model *vendre*.

4th. In the preterite definite, which is *naquis*, &c.

instead of

nés, &c. See formation of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

The same irregularities are in *renaître*, TO BE BORN AGAIN.

346. It is necessary to notice that WAS BORN, &c., is always translated by the compound of the present indicative *je suis né*,

tu es né, &c., unless the day or precise date of the birth be expressed, and relates to a deceased person, in which case it is rendered by the preterite definite *il naquit, ils naquirent*, and sometimes by the compound of the present indicative *il est né, ils sont nés*.

What is the age of your children?

Quel est l'âge de vos enfants?

Lucy was born in September, eighteen hundred and twenty-two, and John in October, eighteen hundred and twenty-five,

Lucie est née en Septembre, mil huit cent vingt-deux, et Jean en Octobre, mil huit cent vingt-cinq.

Napoleon Bonaparte was born on the fifteenth of August, seventeen hundred and sixty-nine,

Napoléon Bonaparte naquit le quinze Août mil sept cent soixante-neuf.

EXERCISE 181.

Where ³⁴⁶ was you ¹³¹ born?—I was born in America. And your brother, where ³⁴⁶ was he born?—He was born in France. In ⁵⁷ what year?—I was born in the year eighteen hundred and ¹² twenty, and my brother was born in the year eighteen hundred and ¹² fifteen. You were ⁹⁸ born when Mr. Adams ⁹⁹ was elected president of the United-States?—Yes, I was. ¹⁷⁴ ⁵⁷ What day was you born?—I was born the first of January. And your brother?—My brother was born the first of February. Were ³⁴⁶ not your twin sisters ¹³¹ born after you?—No; they were born on the first of August. eighteen hundred and ¹² seventeen.

347. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Nuire, *To hurt,* is a neuter verb, conjugated with *avoir*.
Pres. part. Nuisant, *Hurting*.
Past part. Nui, *Hurt*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	nuis,	nuis,	nuit,	nuisons,	nuisez,	nuisent.
<i>Imper.</i>	nuisais,	nuisais,	nuisait,	nuisions,	nuissiez,	nuisaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	nuisis,	nuisis,	nuisit,	nuisîmes,	nuissîtes,	nuisirent.
<i>Future,</i>	nuirai,	nuiras,	nuira,	nuirons,	nuirez,	nuiront.
<i>Condit.</i>	nuirais,	nuirais,	nuirait,	nuirions,	nuiriez,	nuiraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	nuise,	nuises,	nuise,	nuisions,	nuissiez,	nuisent.
<i>Imper.</i>	nuississe,	nuississes,	nuisît,	nuissions,	nuississiez,	nuissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	nuis,	nuise,	nuisons,	nuisez,	nuisent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *nuisant*,
 instead of *nuiant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *nui*,
 instead of *nui*. See the model *vendre*

3d. In the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *nuit*,
 instead of *nui*. See the model *vendre*.

4th. In the preterite definite, which is *nuisis*,
 instead of *nuis*. See formation of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

348. This verb requires the preposition *à* before its object. It may be conjugated with *leur*, THEM; thus,

I hurt *them*, . . . *Je leur nuis*.
 Thou hurtest *them*, &c. . . *Tu leur nuis*, &c.
 I have hurt *them*, &c. . . *Je leur ai nuï*, &c.

The same irregularities are in *luire*, TO SHINE; *reluire*, TO SHINE AGAIN; which are defective verbs since they have no preterite definite nor imperfect subjunctive.

EXERCISE 182.

If Mr. P. comes and establishes himself in this city, will he hurt your interest?—If he opens his establishment in my vicinity, he will do it certainly.—Does Mr. R. hurt you now?—Yes, he does; I am sure that he hurts me very much; I would give several thousand dollars that he might not be there.—I thought he hurt you. But do you not hurt him also?—If he had established himself here before me, I would say that I hurt him; but as I was here before him, I think that I can reasonably say that he hurts me. If he had remained in the place where he was before, he would not have hurt me and I should not have hurt him; but, as we are, he must hurt me, and I must hurt him.

349. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Paître,</i>	<i>To graze,</i> is a neuter and defective verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Paissant,</i>	<i>Grazing.</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Pu,</i>	<i>Grazed.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>pais,</i>	<i>pais,</i>	<i>paît,</i>	<i>paissions,</i>	<i>païssez,</i>	<i>paissent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>paissais,</i>	<i>paissais.</i>	<i>paissait,</i>	<i>paissions,</i>	<i>paissiez,</i>	<i>paissaient.</i>

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pret.def.</i>						
<i>Future,</i>	paîtrai,	paîtras,	paîtra,	paîtrons,	paîtrez,	paîtront.
<i>Condit.</i>	paîtrais,	paîtrais,	paîtrait,	paîtrions,	paîtriez,	paîtraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	païsse,	païsses,	païsse,	païssions,	païssiez,	païssent.
<i>Imper.</i>						
<i>Impera.</i>			païsse		païssez,	païssent.

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle, which is *paissant*, instead of *paîtant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *pu*, instead of *paîtu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the first and second persons singular of the present indicative, which are *païs*, instead of *paîts*, *païs*, *paîts*. See the model *vendre*.

The preterite definite, the imperfect subjunctive, and the second person singular and first plural of the imperative are wanting; and the past participle is very seldom used.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

350. This verb is generally used with the verb *faire*, thus, *faire paître*, *je fais paître*, &c., to express the action of taking care of the cattle whilst they are grazing.

Repâître, TO FEED, is conjugated like *paître*, but has a preterite definite, which is *repus*, &c.

EXERCISE 183.

Where are the sheep now?—⁸⁷They are ¹³³grazing in the meadow. Where ¹⁰⁴did they ⁸⁷graze yesterday?—In the wood. When will they graze on the hill?—They would ¹⁰²graze ^{ex. 24}there now, if there was ¹⁶⁷any ⁴⁴grass. How! There is no grass! Art thou not ¹⁶⁷jesting? I think the hill is one of our best ¹³⁷pastures.—There is so little of it now, ¹¹⁵sir, that one ¹⁶⁷sheep could ^{ex. 24}not graze there a whole day. It is ²⁷⁸better to wait three or four weeks, and then not only the sheep, but the cows can graze there. Thou sayest that yesterday they were ¹⁴⁰grazing in the wood, and now they are ¹⁵¹grazing ¹³³in the meadow. Why are they not ¹³³grazing in the forest?—Because they ¹²⁵do not like to graze always in the same place.

351. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Plaire,</i>	<i>To please,</i>	<i>is a neuter verb, conjugated with avoir.</i>			
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Plaisant,</i>	<i>Pleasing.</i>				
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Plu, e,</i>	<i>Pleased.</i>				

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>plais,</i>	<i>plais</i>	<i>plaît,</i>	<i>plaisons,</i>	<i>plaisez,</i>	<i>plaisent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>plaisais,</i>	<i>plaisais,</i>	<i>plaisait,</i>	<i>plaisons,</i>	<i>plaisiez,</i>	<i>plaisaient.</i>
<i>Pret. def.</i>	<i>plus,</i>	<i>plus,</i>	<i>plut,</i>	<i>plûmes,</i>	<i>plûtes,</i>	<i>plurent.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>plairai,</i>	<i>plairas,</i>	<i>plaira,</i>	<i>plairons,</i>	<i>plairez,</i>	<i>plairont.</i>
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>plairais,</i>	<i>plairais,</i>	<i>plairait,</i>	<i>plairions,</i>	<i>plairiez,</i>	<i>plairaient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>plaise,</i>	<i>plaises,</i>	<i>plaise,</i>	<i>plaisons,</i>	<i>plaisiez,</i>	<i>plaisent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>plusse,</i>	<i>plusses,</i>	<i>plût,</i>	<i>plussions,</i>	<i>plussiez,</i>	<i>plussent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	————	<i>plais,</i>	<i>plaise,</i>	<i>plaisons,</i>	<i>plaisez,</i>	<i>plaisent.</i>

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *plaisant*, instead of *plaissant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *plu*, instead of *plaiu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *plaît*, instead of *plai*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

352. This verb requires the preposition *à* before its object, although TO PLEASE requires none. It may be conjugated with *lui*, TO HIM OR TO HER; thus,

I please *him* or *her*, . . . *Je lui plais.*
 Thou pleasest *him* or *her*, &c. . . *Tu lui plais, &c.*
 I have pleased *him* or *her*, &c. . . *Je lui ai plu, &c.*

Déplaire, is conjugated like *plaire*, and requires also *à* before its object.

EXERCISE 184.

Does the work of Mr. F. please you?—Yes, sir.—Do you know whether it pleases Mr. G.?—I believe it does not please him very well.—Does he know the author?—I believe not.—Does he like romances?—I believe that they do not please him at all.—If he did like them, I have no doubt that he would like Mr. F.'s book.—Did Mr. H. say yesterday whether it pleased or displeased him?—Yes, sir; he told me that

it pleased ^{ex. 13} him very much.—But did ^{104 & 192} Mr. G. complain of the subject or of the style?—He complained ^{104 & 192} of nothing in particular; but he said that ²³ it contained ¹³⁹ nothing ²³ to please ¹²⁸ him. ^{ex. 13}

353. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Prendre,</i>	<i>To take,</i>	is an active verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Prenant,</i>	<i>Taking.</i>	
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Pris, e,</i>	<i>Taken.</i>	

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	prends,	prends,	prend,	prenons,	prenez,	prennent.
<i>Imper.</i>	prenais,	prenais,	prenait,	prenions,	preniez,	prenaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	pris,	pris,	prit,	primes,	prîtes,	prirent.
<i>Future,</i>	prendrai,	prendras,	prendra,	prendrons,	prendrez,	prendront.
<i>Condit.</i>	prendrais,	prendrais,	prendrait,	prendrions,	prendriez,	prendraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	prenne,	prennes,	prenne,	prenions,	preniez,	prennent.
<i>Imper.</i>	prisse,	prisses,	prît,	prissions,	prissiez,	prissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	prends,	prenne,	prenons,	prenez,	prennent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *prenant*, instead of *prendant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *pris*, instead of *prendu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person plural of the present indicative, which is *prennent*, instead of *prenent*. See the formation of tenses.

4th. In the three persons singular and third person plural of the present subjunctive, which are *prenne*, *prennes*, *prenne*, *prennent*, instead of *prene*, *prenes*, *prene*, *prenent*. See formation of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *y en*, OF IT THERE; thus,

I take of it there, . . . *J' y en prends*.

Thou takest of it there, &c. . . *Tu y en prends, &c.*

I have taken of it there, &c. *J' y en ai pris, &c.*

The same irregularities are in *apprendre*, TO LEARN; *comprendre*, TO UNDERSTAND; *désapprendre*, TO UNLEARN; *entreprendre*, TO UNDERTAKE; *se méprendre*, TO MISTAKE; *rapprendre*, TO LEARN AGAIN; *reprendre*, TO TAKE AGAIN, TO CORRECT; *surprendre*, TO SURPRISE.

EXERCISE 185.

Does Miss A. learn music?—Yes, she takes lessons of Mr. K.—
 Does she continue to learn the French language?—Yes, sir; she
 takes lessons of Mr. P.—I thought that she was taking her lessons of
 Mr. B.?—She did; but as she was learning nothing with him, last month
 she took her lessons of Mr. P.—Does she learn better with Mr. P.?—I be-
 lieve not; but he gives more lessons than Mr. B., and she hopes that she
 shall learn faster.—If she does not learn faster, will she take another
 teacher?—I believe not; and although she learns music very well, she
 begins to believe that she cannot learn languages; and after she shall
 have left Mr. P., she will perhaps undertake some other study.

354. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Résoudre,</i>	<i>To resolve,</i> is an active verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	<i>Résolvant,</i>	<i>Resolving.</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	<i>Résolu, e,</i>	<i>Resolved.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>résous,</i>	<i>résous,</i>	<i>résout,</i>	<i>résolvons,</i>	<i>résolvez,</i>	<i>résolvent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>résolvais,</i>	<i>résolvais,</i>	<i>résolvait,</i>	<i>résolvions,</i>	<i>résolviez,</i>	<i>résolvaient.</i>
<i>Pret.def.</i>	<i>résolus,</i>	<i>résolus,</i>	<i>résolut,</i>	<i>résolûmes,</i>	<i>résolûtes,</i>	<i>résolurent.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>résoudrai,</i>	<i>résoudras,</i>	<i>résoudra,</i>	<i>résoudrons,</i>	<i>résoudrez,</i>	<i>résoudront.</i>
<i>Condit.</i>	<i>résoudrais,</i>	<i>résoudrais,</i>	<i>résoudrait,</i>	<i>résoudrions,</i>	<i>résoudriez,</i>	<i>résoudraient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>résolve,</i>	<i>résolves,</i>	<i>résolve,</i>	<i>résolvions,</i>	<i>résolviez,</i>	<i>résolvent.</i>
<i>Imper.</i>	<i>résolusse,</i>	<i>résolussés,</i>	<i>résolût,</i>	<i>résolussions,</i>	<i>résolussiez,</i>	<i>résolussent.</i>
<i>Impera.</i>	———	<i>résous,</i>	<i>résolve,</i>	<i>résolvons,</i>	<i>résolvez,</i>	<i>résolvent.</i>

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle,
 which is *résolvant*,
 instead of *résoudant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *résolu*,
 instead of *résoudu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative,
 which are *résous, résous, résout*,
 instead of *résouds, résouds, résoud*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, ac-
 cording to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le, la* or *les*, IT, THEM or
 HIM, HER, THEM; thus,

I resolve it,	.	.	.	<i>Je le résous.</i>
Thou resolvest it, &c.	.	.	.	<i>Tu le résous, &c.</i>
I have resolved it, &c	.	.	.	<i>Je l'ai résolu, &c.</i>

EXERCISE 186.

Have you resolved your mathematical questions ?—Not yet, sir.—
 When will you resolve them ?—I am resolving now the second in Ge-
 ometry.—When will you resolve the third ?—I would resolve it this
 evening, if I could finish early.—But you have also to resolve three
 questions in Algebra ; and you must resolve them before next Saturday.
 —I know it, sir ; but yesterday I resolved the first, and, as I found it
 easy, I thought that I would resolve the others another time.—Do you
 know whether the other scholars have resolved them ?—Eugene resolved
 them yesterday ; Victor and Leon are resolving them now ; and proba-
 bly the other scholars will not resolve them.

355. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	Rire,	<i>To laugh,</i> is a neuter and defective verb, conjugated
<i>Pres. part.</i>	Riant,	<i>Laughing.</i> [with <i>avoir</i> .]
<i>Past part.</i>	Ri,	<i>Laughed.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	ris,	ris,	rit,	rions,	riez,	rient.
<i>Imper.</i>	riaïs,	riaïs,	riaît,	riions,	riiez,	riaient.
<i>Pret. def.</i>	ris,	ris,	rit,	rîmes,	rîtes,	rirent.
<i>Future,</i>	rirai,	riras,	rira,	rirons,	rirez,	riront.
<i>Condit.</i>	rirais,	rirais,	rirait,	ririons,	iriez,	riraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	rie,	ries,	rie,	riions,	riiez,	rient.
<i>Imper.</i>	risse,	risses,	rit,	rissions,	rissiez,	riissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	ris,	rie,	rions,	riez,	rient.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the past partici-
 ple, which is *ri*,
 instead of *riu*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the third person singular of the present indicative,
 which is *rit*,
 instead of *ri*. See the model *vendre*.

The past participle is always invariable.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, ac-
 cording to the formation of tenses.

356. This verb requires the preposition *de* before the noun
 which is the cause of the laughter, although in English, TO LAUGH
 requires the preposition AT ; as in

Is he laughing at me, or at my observations ? *Rit-il de moi, ou de mes obser-
 vations ?*

357. However, TO LAUGH AT ONE TO HIS FACE is translated by *rire au nez à quelqu'un*; but this must be considered as an exceptional case.

Rire may be conjugated with *en*, AT HIM, HER, THEM OR IT; thus, I laugh *at it*, . . . *J'en ris*.

Thou laughest *at it*, &c. . . *Tu en ris, &c.*

I have laughed *at it*, &c. . . *J'en ai ri, &c.*

The same irregularities are in *sourire*, TO SMILE.

EXERCISE 187.

¹³³ Dost thou laugh ³⁵⁶ at my dress?—No; but I am ¹³³ laughing ³⁵⁶ at thy hat.—
Why?—Because it seems ¹²⁵ to have been made to laugh ¹⁷⁰ at.—Is it so ridiculous that you must laugh ²⁵⁴ at it?—I think it is; ¹⁷⁰ and I see that several persons laugh ¹⁷⁰ at it also; and, if thou dost not change it soon, they will laugh ³⁵⁶ at thee.—Would they not laugh, if I should not wear it?—I believe ³¹¹ they would laugh ³⁵⁶ at thy coat.—Perhaps they have a natural disposition to laugh; and, if they did not laugh ⁸⁷ at me, they would laugh ¹⁴¹ at another person.—Very well. Dost thou see, yesterday I was laughing ^{356 171} at them, to-day they laugh ⁸⁷ at me, and perhaps to-morrow we shall laugh ^{356 171} at thee.

358. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Rompre, *To break*, is an active and neuter verb.

Pres. part. Rompant, *Breaking*.

Past part. Rompu, e, *Broken*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	romps,	romps,	rompt,	rompons,	rompez,	rompent.
<i>Imper.</i>	rompais,	rompais,	rompait,	rompions,	rompiez,	rompaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	rompis,	rompis,	rompit,	rompîmes,	rompîtes,	rompirent.
<i>Future</i> ,	romprai,	rompras,	rompra,	romprons,	romprez,	rompront.
<i>Condit.</i>	romprais,	romprais,	romprait,	romprions,	rompiez,	rompraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	rompe,	rompes,	rompe,	rompions,	rompiez,	rompent.
<i>Imper.</i>	rompisse,	rompisses,	rompît,	rompissions,	rompissiez,	rompissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	romps,	rompe,	rompons,	rompez,	rompent.

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *rompt*,
instead of *romp*. See the model *vendre*

2d In the preterite definite, which is *rompis*, &c.

instead of *rompus*, &c. See formation of tenses.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le, la* or *les*, IT, THEM; thus,
I break *them*, . . . *Je les romps*.

Thou breakest *them*, &c. *Tu les romps*, &c.

I have broken *them*, &c. *Je les ai rompus*, or *rompues*, &c.

The same irregularities are in *interrompre*, TO DISTURB, TO INTERRUPT; *corrompre*, TO CORRUPT.

EXERCISE 188.

Joseph, where is John?—He is breaking the ice in the pond. Why art thou not breaking it with him?—Because he told me that he would break it without me, and now I am breaking the door of the cellar. Why art thou breaking it?—Because the key of the lock is lost, and I must break the door to enter.—Canst thou not enter without breaking it?—I cannot, sir; if I could, I would not break it.—Very well. Break it then.—I do it, sir.—However, before breaking the door, would it not be better to try to break the lock?—I did, sir; but I have not been able to succeed.

359. *Soudre*, TO RESOLVE, is an active and defective verb, used only in the present infinitive; as in

To resolve a question, . . . *Soudre une question*.

But this verb is out of use, and *résoudre* should be employed instead of it.

360. *Sourdre*, TO SPRING, is a neuter and defective verb, used only in the present infinitive, and in the third persons singular and plural of the present indicative, which are *il sourd*, *ils sourdent*; as in

The water *springs* abundantly from that rock, *L'eau sourd abondamment de ce rocher*.

The Rhine, Rhone and Po, *Le Rhin, Rhône et le Pô*, *spring* from the foot of the same mountain, *sourdent au pied de la même montagne*.

361. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Suffire, *To be sufficient*, is a neuter and defective verb, conjugated with *avoir*.
Pres. part. Suffisant, *Being sufficient*.
Past part. Suffi, *Been sufficient*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	suffis,	suffis,	suffit,	suffisons,	suffisez,	suffisent.
<i>Imper.</i>	suffisais,	suffisais,	suffisait,	suffisions,	suffissiez,	suffisaient.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pret. def.</i>	suffis,	suffis,	suffit,	suffîmes,	suffîtes,	suffirent.
<i>Future,</i>	suffirai,	suffiras,	suffira,	suffirons,	suffirez,	suffiront.
<i>Condit.</i>	suffirais,	suffirais,	suffirait,	suffirions,	suffiriez,	suffiraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	suffise,	suffises,	suffise,	suffissions,	suffissiez,	suffissent.
<i>Imper.</i>	suffisse,	suffisses,	suffit,	suffissions,	suffissiez,	suffissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	suffis,	suffise,	suffisons,	suffisez,	suffissent.

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle, which is *suffisant*,
instead of *suffiant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *suffi*,
instead of *suffiu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *suffit*,
instead of *suffi*. See the model *vendre*.

Its past participle is invariable.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

362. This verb requires the preposition *à* before its object, though TO SUFFICE requires FOR; it may be conjugated with *y*, FOR IT OR FOR THEM; thus,

I am sufficient *for it*, . . . *J'y suffis*.
Thou art sufficient *for it*, &c. . . *Tu y suffis, &c.*
I have been sufficient *for it*, &c. . . *J'y ai suffi, &c.*

Or with the indirect passive verbal pronouns *me, te, se, lui, nous, vous, leur*; thus,

That occupation *is sufficient for me*, *Cette occupation me suffit*.
That occupation *is sufficient for thee*, *Cette occupation te suffit*.
That occupation *is sufficient for him*, *Cette occupation lui suffit*.
That occupation *is sufficient for her*, *Cette occupation lui suffit*.
That occupation *is sufficient for us*, *Cette occupation nous suffit*.
That occupation *is sufficient for you*, *Cette occupation vous suffit*.
That occupation *is sufficient for them*, *Cette occupation leur suffit*.

EXERCISE 189.

²⁶²Can I do any thing for you ?—You are very good, sir; but my means
suffice to my wants; I thank you ^{ex 7} for your kindness.—Do they suffice
^{362 & 175}easily for them ?—Not very easily; but, as I do not spend much, a
⁹⁴little money is sufficient for me.—Are five hundred dollars sufficient for
³⁶²
^{132 & 135}

³⁶² your annual expenses?—Sir, I do not spend four hundred dollars; three hundred dollars are sufficient ³⁶² for me.—Will that ⁵⁵ sum ¹³⁵ be sufficient ³⁶² for you next year?—I believe not, sir; it would be sufficient, if my expenses did not increase.—Was it sufficient last year?—I did not spend more than two hundred and seventy-five dollars; but, if my expenses increase in the same proportion, three hundred will not be sufficient.

363. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Suivre, *To follow*, is an active verb.

Pres. part. Suivant, *Following*.

Past part. Suivi, e, *Followed*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	suis,	suis,	suit,	suivons,	suivez,	suivent.
<i>Imper.</i>	suivais,	suivais,	suivait,	suivions,	suiviez,	suivaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	suivis,	suivis,	suivit,	suivîmes,	suivîtes,	suivirent.
<i>Future.</i>	suivrai,	suivras,	suivra,	suivrons,	suivrez,	suivront.
<i>Condit.</i>	suivrais,	suivrais,	suivrait,	suivrions,	suivriez,	suivraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	suive,	suives,	suive,	suivions,	suiviez,	suivent.
<i>Imper.</i>	suivisse,	suivisses,	suivît,	suivissions,	suivissiez,	suivissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	suïs,	suïve,	suïvons,	suïvez,	suïvent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the past participle, which is *suivi*, instead of *suïvi*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *suis*, *suis*, *suit*, instead of *suïs*, *suïs*, *suïv*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *les y*, THEM THERE; thus, I follow *them there*, *Je les y suis*.

Thou followest *them there*, &c. *Tu les y suis*, &c.

I have followed *them there*, &c. *Je les y ai suivis*, or *suivies*, &c.

The same irregularities are in *poursuivre*, TO PURSUE; *s'ensuivre*, TO FOLLOW; but *s'ensuivre* is a unipersonal verb, used only in the third person singular of each tense.

EXERCISE 190.

Do you always follow the fashion?—I generally follow it when it is not ridiculous.—Did you follow it last year?—No.—Why?—Because it did not become me.—If it had become you, would you have followed

it?—Yes.—Your friend Mrs. C. follows it always, and she says she will
 101 92 always follow it.—She does very well to follow it, because she is rich
 ex.11 323 ex.11
 and so beautiful, that even a homely dress would become her. However,
 254 150 ex.11 269 261
 I must follow it this year.—As for me, you know that I cannot follow
 ex.11 35 101 55 174
 it?—You cannot now; but next month you will quit that dress, I hope,
 87 & 101
 and follow the fashion.

364. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Taire, *To keep secret, or Not to say.* is an active verb.
Pres. part. Taisant, *Keeping secret, or Not saying.*
Past part. Tu, tue, *Kept secret, or Not said.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	tais,	tais,	tait,	taisons,	taisez,	taisent.
<i>Imper.</i>	taisais,	taisais,	taisait,	taisions,	taisiez,	taisaient
<i>Pres. def.</i>	tus,	tus,	tut,	tûmes,	tûtes,	turent.
<i>Future.</i>	tairai,	tairas,	taira,	tairons,	tairez,	tairont.
<i>Condit.</i>	tairais,	tairais,	tairait,	tairions,	tairiez,	tairaient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	taise,	taises,	taise,	taisions,	taisiez,	taisent.
<i>Imper.</i>	tusse,	tusses,	tût,	tussions,	tussiez,	tussent.
<i>Impera.</i>	—	tais,	taise,	taisons,	taisez,	taisent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the present participle, which is *taisant*,
 instead of *taiant*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *tu*,
 instead of *tairu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *tait*,
 instead of *tai*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may conjugated with *le*, *la* or *les*, IT THEM; thus,

I keep *it* secret, &c. . . . *Je le tais.*
 Thou keepest *it* secret, &c. . . . *Tu le tais, &c.*
 I have kept *it* secret, &c. . . . *Je l'ai tu, &c.*

365. When *taire* has no direct object, it is never used without the passive verbal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, *se*, that is, without a reflective form, and then it means TO STOP TALKING OR SPEAKING; thus,

I keep silent, *Je me tais.*

Thou keepest silent, &c. . . . *Tu te tais, &c.*

I have kept silent, &c. . . . *Je me suis tu, &c.*

This verb means also TO BE SILENT, TO KEEP SILENCE, TO HOLD ONE'S TONGUE ; therefore HOLD YOUR TONGUE is translated by *taisez-vous*.

EXERCISE 191.

Those young men would oblige me, if they stopped talking.—Why do you not tell them to hold their tongues?—Because, I hope they will soon be tired and that they will stop speaking.—If they did not stop speaking, would you not tell them to hold their tongues?—I should like to do it, but I do not dare.—If you wish, I will tell them.—Very well, do it then.—Gentlemen, Mr. R. requests you to be silent.—We had only two words to say, now we are going to keep silence. If you are not silent, he cannot give you the lesson.—We know it. Therefore, you will not have to tell us again to hold our tongues.

366. *Tistre*, TO WEAVE, is an active verb, no longer used except in the compound tenses, formed with its past participle *tissu*, e.

367. INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Traire,	<i>To milk,</i> is an active and defective verb.
<i>Pres. part.</i>	Trayant,	<i>Milking.</i>
<i>Past part.</i>	Trait,	<i>Milked.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	trais,	trais,	trait,	trayons,	trayez,	traient.
<i>Imper.</i>	trayais,	trayais,	trayait,	trayions,	trayiez,	trayaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Future.</i>	trairai,	trairas,	traira,	trairons,	trairez,	trairont.
<i>Condit.</i>	trairais,	trairais,	trairait,	trairions,	trairiez,	trairaient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	<i>traie,</i>	<i>traies,</i>	<i>traie,</i>	<i>trayions,</i>	<i>trayiez,</i>	<i>traient.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	traie,	traies,	traie,	trayions,	trayiez,	traient.
<i>Imper.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Impera.</i>	_____	trais,	traie,	trayons,	trayez,	traient.

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle, which is *trayant*, instead of *traiant*.

See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the past participle, which is *trait*, instead of *traiu*. See the model *vendre*.

3d. In the third person singular of the present indicative, which is *trait*, instead of *trai*. See the model *vendre*.

The preterite definite, and imperfect subjunctive are wanting.

The same irregularities are in *abstraire*, TO ABSTRACT; *attirer*, TO ENTICE; *distraindre*, TO DISTRACT; *extraire*, TO EXTRACT; *entraîner*, TO DARN; *retirer*, TO REDEEM; *soustraire*, TO SUBSTRACT.

EXERCISE 192.

Jane, have you milked the cows?—No, sir; but Frances is milking them now.—Well! Then you must milk them to-morrow.—I would milk them now, if Frances was not milking them.—Was you not milking them when I came from the field yesterday?—No, sir; Frances was milking them.—When did you milk them last?—Last Tuesday.—It seems that you milk them very seldom; do you dislike to do it?—Not precisely; but, as I know that Frances likes to milk, I do not wish to deprive her of the pleasure of milking.—Did you ever milk a goat?—Never. Is their milk good for people?—It is very good; the French prefer it to cow's milk.

368. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Vaincre, *To conquer*, is an active verb.
Pres. part. Vainquant, *Conquering*.
Past part. Vaincu, *Conquered*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>ils</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	vains,	vains,	vainc,	vainquons,	vainquez,	vainquent.
<i>Imper.</i>	vainquais,	vainquais,	vainquait,	vainquions,	vainquiez,	vainquaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	vainquis,	vainquis,	vainquit,	vainquîmes,	vainquîtes,	vainquirent.
<i>Future.</i>	vaincrai,	vaincras,	vaincra,	vaincrons,	vaincrez,	vaincront.
<i>Condit.</i>	vaincrais,	vaincrais,	vaincrait,	vaincrons,	vaincriez,	vaincraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	vainque,	vainques,	vainque,	vainquions,	vainquiez,	vainquent.
<i>Imper.</i>	vainquisse,	vainquisses,	vainquît,	vainquissions,	vainquissiez,	vainquissent.
<i>Impera.</i>	———	vaincs,	vainque,	vainquons,	vainquez,	vainquent.

This verb is irregular, 1st, in the present participle, which is *vainquant*, instead of *vaincant*.

See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the preterite definite, which is *vainquis*, &c.

instead of *vaincus*, &c. See forma. of tenses

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

This verb may be conjugated with *le*, *la* or *les*, HIM, HER, THEM; thus,

I conquer him, . . . Je le vaincs.

Thou conquerest *him*, &c. . *Tu le vaincs*, &c.

I have conquered *him*, &c. . *Je l'ai vaincu*, &c.

The singular of the present indicative and the whole of the imperfect indicative should be used as seldom as possible.

The same irregularities are in *convaincre*, TO CONVINCE.

EXERCISE 193.

The French in the space of twenty years, conquered all the nations of Europe; but finally they were conquered by them. If they had to sustain a new war, would they not conquer now?—If they were obliged to sustain it against all the nations of Europe, they might conquer in the beginning; but finally they would be conquered. Perhaps they will soon have to fight against Russia, do you believe that they will conquer?—If there are only Russians, certainly they will conquer; but perhaps they will have with them all the other nations of Europe.—Well; but did they not conquer them all in the time of the republic?—I believe they did.

369. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Vivre, *To live*, is a neuter and defective verb, conjugated
Pres. part. Vivant, *Living*. [with *avoir*.]
Past part. Vécu, *Lived*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	vis,	vis,	vit,	vivons,	vivez,	vivent.
<i>Imper.</i>	vivais,	vivais,	vivait,	vivions,	viviez,	vivaient.
<i>Pret.def.</i>	vécus,	vécus,	vécut,	vécûmes,	vécûtes,	vécurent.
<i>Future</i> ,	vivrai,	vivras,	vivra,	vivrons,	vivrez,	vivront.
<i>Condit.</i>	vivrais,	vivrais,	vivrait,	vivrions,	vivriez,	vivraient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	vive,	vives,	vive,	vivions,	viviez,	vivent.
<i>Imper</i>	vécusse,	vécusses,	vécût,	vécussions,	vécussiez,	vécussent.
<i>Impera.</i>	_____	vis,	vive,	vivons,	vivez,	vivent.

The irregularities of this verb are, 1st, in the past participle, which is *vécu*, instead of *vivu*. See the model *vendre*.

2d. In the three persons singular of the present indicative, which are *vis*, *vis*, *vit*, instead of *vivs*, *vivs*, *viv*. See the model *vendre*.

The other persons and tenses are regularly conjugated, according to the formation of tenses.

370. The verb TO LIVE requires the preposition UPON, before the name of the food used, and in French the verb *vivre* requires the preposition *de*; thus,

I live upon vegetables, *Je vis de végétaux.*
 Apes and many other animals *Les singes et beaucoup d'autres*
 live upon fruit, *animaux vivent de fruit.*

This verb may be conjugated with *en*, OF IT, FROM IT, UPON IT; thus,

I live from it, *J'en vis.*
 Thou livest from it, &c. *Tu en vis, &c.*
 I have lived from it, &c. *J'en ai vécu, &c.*

The same irregularities are in *revivre*, TO REVIVE; *survivre*, TO SURVIVE, TO OUTLIVE.

EXERCISE 194.

¹³³ Dost thou live now exclusively upon ³⁷⁰ vegetables?—Not entirely; I
 live also upon ³⁷⁰ fish and meat. But last year didst thou not live upon
 crackers and vegetables only?—Yes; but I lived upon that food only
 one month. Why didst thou not continue?—Because, if I had continu-
 ed, I should not have lived two months. But Mr. E. says that one lives
 longer by living upon vegetables, than by living upon meat.—If I should
 not eat meat, I should die in less than two months, I am sure of it. How
 does your father live?—He lives and has always lived upon all the good
 things of this world, saying that God gave them to us not to poison us,
 but to do us good.

CHAPTER X.

POSSESSIVE, DEMONSTRATIVE, AND OTHER PRONOUNS.

POSSESSIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

As there are different kinds of articles to determine the extent of the signification of substantives, so there are several kinds of pronouns to represent them; and, as articles must agree in gen-

der and number with the nouns whose signification they determine, so pronouns must agree in gender and number with the nouns they represent.

371. We have seen that the possessive personal articles are, in English, MY, THY, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR ; in French, *mon, ton, son, son, son, notre, votre, leur, ma, ta, sa, sa, sa, mes, tes, ses, ses, ses, nos, vos, leurs;*

which, in English, take the gender and number of the POSSESSOR, and, in French, that of the POSSESSED OBJECT. See pages 71, and following.

372. The rule for the possessive personal pronouns is the same as that for the possessive articles; with this difference, that the articles are never used without a noun, and the pronouns never with a noun, except only when that noun, being understood, must be represented by them.

373. When the possessed object belongs to the individual who is speaking, that is, to the first person singular, we must use, if that object is

	Masculine singular,	Feminine singular,	Masc. plural,	Femin. plural,
FOR MINE,	<i>le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes.</i>
OF OR FROM MINE,	<i>du mien,</i>	<i>de la mienne,</i>	<i>des miens,</i>	<i>des miennes.</i>
TO OR AT MY OR MINE,	<i>au mien,</i>	<i>à la mienne,</i>	<i>aux miens,</i>	<i>aux miennes.</i>

Lend me *thy* book, and I shall *Prête-moi ton livre et je te*
lend thee *mine,* *prêterai le mien.*

Give me *of your* pears, and I *Donnez-moi de vos poires et je*
shall give you *of mine,* *vous donnerai des miennes.*

Do not speak of it *to your* *N'en parlez pas à vos amis et*
friends, and I shall not *to* *je n'en parlerai pas aux*
mine, *miens.*

Explanation. In the first example, *THY* is rendered by *ton*, because the word *book* is expressed; and *MINE* is rendered by *le mien*, because the word *book* is understood. In the second example, *YOUR* is translated by *vos*, because the word *poires* is expressed; and *OF MINE* by *des miennes*, because the word *poires* is understood. In the third example, *TO YOUR* is rendered by *à vos*, because the verb *amis* is expressed; and *TO MINE* by *aux miens*, because the word *amis* is understood.

374. When the possessed object belongs to the individual

spoken to, that is, to the second person singular, we must use, if that object is

	Masculine singular,	Feminine singu.	Masculine plu.	Feminine plu.
FOR THINE, . . .	<i>le tien,</i>	<i>la tienne,</i>	<i>les tiens,</i>	<i>les tiennes.</i>
OF or FROM THINE,	<i>du tien,</i>	<i>de la tienne,</i>	<i>des tiens,</i>	<i>des tiennes.</i>
TO or AT THINE,	<i>au tien,</i>	<i>à la tienne,</i>	<i>aux tiens,</i>	<i>aux tiennes.</i>

If thou returnest me *my* knife, *Si tu me rends mon couteau, il*
 he will return thee *thine*, *te rendra le tien.*

My friends are not so numerous *Mes amis ne sont pas si nom-*
 as *thine*, *breux que les tiens.*

My house is not far from *thine*, *Ma maison n'est pas loin de la*
tienne.

My sisters often see *thine*, *Mes sœurs voient souvent les*
tiennes.

Explanation. In the first example, *MY* is translated by *mon*, because the possessed object is expressed ; and *THINE* by *le tien*, because the possessed object is understood, &c.

This and the preceding explanations are sufficient for the use of the possessive personal pronouns, therefore they will be omitted for the following examples.

375. When the possessed object belongs to the individual spoken of, that is, to the third person singular, we must use, if that object is

	Mascu. singular,	Femin. singu.	Mascu. plu.	Femin. plu.
FOR HIS, HERS or ITS, . . .	<i>le sien,</i>	<i>la sienne,</i>	<i>les siens,</i>	<i>les siennes.</i>
OF or FROM HIS, HERS or ITS,	<i>du sien,</i>	<i>de la sienne,</i>	<i>des siens,</i>	<i>des siennes.</i>
TO or AT HIS, HERS or ITS,	<i>au sien,</i>	<i>à la sienne,</i>	<i>aux siens,</i>	<i>aux siennes.</i>

Thy history is not so interesting as *his*, *Ton histoire n'est pas si inté-*
ressante que la sienne.

My friends and *thine* are not *Mes amis et les tiens ne sont*
his, *pas les siens.*

By adding to *my* wealth, I add. *En ajoutant à mon bien j'ajoute*
to his and thine, *au sien et au tien.*

He took from *my* purse as much *Il prit de ma bourse autant que*
 as from *thine* and *his*, *de la tienne et de la sienne.*

376. When the possessed object belongs to several persons who are, or one of whom is speaking, that is, to the first person plural, we must use, if that object is

	Mascu. singu.	Femin. singu.	Mascu. or Femin. plu.
FOR OURS,	<i>le nôtre,</i>	<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres.</i>
OF or FROM OURS,	<i>du nôtre,</i>	<i>de la nôtre,</i>	<i>des nôtres.</i>
TO or AT OURS,	<i>au nôtre,</i>	<i>à la nôtre,</i>	<i>aux nôtres.</i>

I have gone to *your* garden,
but you never came to *ours*,

*Je suis allé à votre jardin, mais
vous n'êtes jamais venu au
nôtre.*

You have written that news to
his friends and to *ours*, and
you have received thanks
from *ours* and not from *his*,

*Vous avez écrit cette nouvelle à
ses amis et aux nôtres, et vous
avez reçu des remerciements
des nôtres et non pas des siens.*

He has offered us *his* library,
and he may dispose of *ours*,

*Il nous a offert sa bibliothèque,
et il peut disposer de la nôtre.*

377. When the possessed object belongs to several individuals spoken of, that is, to the second person plural, we must use, if that object is

For YOURS, Mascu. singu.
OF or FROM YOURS, du vôtre,
TO or AT YOUR, au vôtre,

Femin. singu.
la vôtre,
de la votre,
à la vôtre,

Mascu. or Femin. plu.
les vôtres.
des vôtres.
aux vôtres.

His opinion is different from
yours,

*Son opinion est différente de la
vôtre.*

My principles and *yours* are the
same,

*Mes principes et les vôtres sont
les mêmes.*

His credit is greater than *yours*
and *ours*,

*Son crédit est plus grand que
le nôtre et que le vôtre.*

378. When the possessed object belongs to several individuals spoken of, that is, to the third person plural, we must use, if that object is

For THEIRS, Mascu. singu.
OF or FROM THEIRS, du leur,
TO or AT THEIRS, au leur,

Femin. singu.
la leur,
de la leur,
à la leur,

Mascu. or Femin. plu.
les leurs.
des leurs.
aux leurs.

You have *your* enemies and
they have *theirs*,

*Vous avez vos ennemis et ils
ont les leurs.*

I do not receive as much benefit
from *your* goods as from
theirs,

*Je ne reçois pas autant de profit
de vos marchandises que des
leurs.*

It is not to *your* kindness that
I owe that information, but it
is to *theirs*,

*Ce n'est pas à votre bonté que
je dois cet avis, mais c'est à
la leur.*

379. When, in English, the possessive personal pronouns MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS, preceded by the proposition OF, immediately follow the noun to which they relate, as TWO FRIENDS OF MINE, A BOOK OF THINE, &c., the French

do not say, *deux amis des miens, un livre des tiens, &c.* but *deux de mes amis, un de tes livres, &c.* as if the English were, TWO OF MY FRIENDS, ONE OF THY BOOKS, &c.

But, if there are several possessive pronouns relating to the same noun, the first only is rendered in French by a possessive personal article, and the others by the possessive personal pronouns; as

Mr. C. is a friend <i>of mine</i> and <i>of yours</i> ,	<i>M. C. est un de mes amis et des vôtres.</i>
He brought not only three books <i>of his</i> , but also four <i>of yours</i> and five <i>of mine</i> ,	<i>Il apporta non seulement trois de ses livres, mais aussi quatre des vôtres et cinq des miens.</i>

380. If the noun to which the possessive personal pronoun relates does not immediately precede it, and is supplied by some cardinal number, or any other word expressing quantity, it is rendered in French by the corresponding possessive personal pronoun, and the passive verbal pronoun *en* must be used with the verb of which it is the object; as

Have you received any letters since your absence?—Yes, I have received two <i>of yours</i> and three <i>of your brother</i> ,	<i>Avez-vous reçu des lettres du- rant votre absence?—Oui, j'en ai reçu deux des vôtres et trois de votre frère.</i>
How many grammars have you sold?—I have sold several <i>of yours</i> and perhaps a dozen <i>of mine</i> ,	<i>Combien de grammaires avez- vous vendues?—J'en ai ven- du plusieurs des vôtres et peut-être une douzaine des miennes.</i>

381. When, in English, a possessive personal pronoun is used after the verb TO BE, it should be translated into French by the corresponding substantive pronoun preceded by the preposition *à*; as

That hat <i>is mine</i> , . . .	<i>Ce chapeau-là est à moi.</i>
This house <i>is thine</i> , . . .	<i>Cette maison-ci est à toi.</i>
Those books <i>are his</i> , . . .	<i>Ces livres-là sont à lui.</i>
That handkerchief <i>is hers</i> , . . .	<i>Ce mouchoir est à elle.</i>
Those horses <i>will soon be ours</i> ,	<i>Ces chevaux-là seront bientôt à nous.</i>

These fields *were yours*, . . . *Ces champs-ci étaient à vous.*
 Those coats *are theirs*, . . . *Ces habits sont à eux.*
 Those jewels *would have been theirs*, *Ces bijoux-là auraient été à elles.*

EXERCISE 195.

Mr. G. has given me his opinion on my affair with Messrs. P. and T. and I should like to receive yours.—I think, sir, that he is a very good judge, and that mine will not be as good as his on that subject. Have you consulted your two friends Messrs. B. and C.?—Yes, sir; they have given me their advice, and I wish to compare yours with theirs.—What other friends of yours have you seen?—I have seen Mr. D.; he is not only a friend of mine, but also one of yours.—Does the opinion of Messrs. B. and C. agree with his and yours?—Yes, sir; but will you not tell me yours?—Yes, I will. If I were you, I would not pay one cent of my debt, if they had not paid theirs entirely.

EXERCISE 196.

Louisa, are these books mine or thine?—They are yours, I think; but my sister says that they are hers.—Can we not know whether they are mine, hers or thine?—I know that they are not hers nor mine.—How dost thou know it?—I know it because I see no name in them, and that every lady of our school must have hers written in all her books.—And those six pens are they hers?—I think that there are two of yours, three of hers and one of mine.—Are hers cut like mine?—I believe not. Hers are much finer than yours.—And are thine finer than mine and hers?—Yes, sir, they are; and therefore it is very easy for me to know whether a pen is yours, hers or mine.

EXERCISE 197.

When do you sell our goods?—When we shall have sold ours.—Why will you not sell ours before yours?—Because we must sell ours as soon as possible.—Have you sold yet Messrs. B. and C.'s silks?—Not yet; but when we have sold ours we shall sell theirs.—Will you not sell mine before theirs?—I do not know.—You would render me a great service if you should sell mine soon.—I shall sell them as soon as I can;

but we had ³⁷⁸theirs before ³⁷⁷yours, and we cannot, without injustice, sell ³⁷⁷yours before ³⁷⁸theirs.—Do you think you will have sold ³⁷⁸theirs and ³⁷⁷yours before next month?—I do not know; but it is probable that we shall have sold not only ³⁷⁸theirs and ³⁷⁶ours but ³⁷⁷yours also.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

382. Demonstrative articles are in English **THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE**, and in French *ce, cet, cette, ces*; used in English according to the number and place of the noun; and in French according to the gender, number and orthography of that noun, the distinction of place being expressed only when it is absolutely necessary to avoid confusion, and that by placing *ci* or *là* after the noun, to which it must be linked by a hyphen. See Demonstrative Articles, page 77, 78.

383. The demonstrative pronouns in English are the same as the articles, but in French they are different, and divided into two classes, the definite and the indefinite.

384. The demonstrative indefinite pronouns are those that must be used when in English the demonstrative pronouns do not relate to any noun expressed before, and imply in themselves the word **THING**. They are

IN ENGLISH,	IN FRENCH,
THIS (for THIS THING),	<i>ceci</i> (for <i>cette chose-ci</i> .)
THAT (for THAT THING),	<i>cela</i> (for <i>cette chose-là</i> .)
Give me <i>that</i> , I shall give you <i>this</i> ,	<i>Donnez-moi cela, je vous donnerai ceci.</i>
I should like to change <i>this</i> for <i>that</i> ,	<i>J'aimerais à changer ceci pour cela.</i>
How much do you sell <i>this</i> for?	<i>Combien vendez-vous ceci ?</i>
<i>This</i> pleases me, but not <i>that</i> ,	<i>Ceci me plaît mais non pas cela.</i>
<i>That</i> is not worth as much as <i>this</i> ring,	<i>Cela ne vaut pas autant que cette bague.</i>

Explanation. In all these examples except the last, the words **THIS** and **THAT** are evidently employed for **THIS THING**, **THAT THING**, consequently they are translated into French, **THIS** by *ceci*, and **THAT** by *cela*. In the last example **THAT** is used for **THAT THING** and translated by *cela*; but **THIS**, being used with the noun *bague*, is a demonstrative article, and is translated by *cette*, because *bague* is of the feminine gender and in the singular number.

385. The definite demonstrative pronouns are those that must be employed when relating to, and representing a particular noun expressed before. In English they are the same as the demonstrative articles; but in French they differ from them. They are when the noun is

	Masc. singular.	Feminine singular
For THIS,	<i>celui-ci,</i>	<i>celle-ci.</i>
THAT,	<i>celui-là,</i>	<i>celle-là.</i>
	Masc. plural.	Feminine plural.
THESE,	<i>ceux-ci,</i>	<i>celles-ci.</i>
THOSE,	<i>ceux-là,</i>	<i>celles-là.</i>

386. These definite demonstrative pronouns are not used without having after them *ci* or *là* linked to them by a hyphen, unless they are followed by the preposition *de*, OF or FROM, which they require before a substantive, or by the adverb *où*, WHERE or WHEN, or a relative pronoun, by which they are represented to be the nominative or object of a following verb; in which cases *-ci* and *-là* are omitted as will be explained in the following observations.

387. The definite demonstrative pronouns are used with *-ci* or *-là* when they are the nominatives of verbs, or their object, without having any other word after them; as

Behold two fine hats! *this* *Voilà deux beaux chapeaux!*
pleases me, but I do not like *celui-ci me plaît, mais je*
that. *n'aime pas celui-là.*

This house is better built than *Cette maison-ci est mieux bâ-*
that. *tie que celle-là.*

Those books are mine, and *Ces livres-là sont à moi, et ceux-*
these are yours. *ci sont à vous.*

These flowers are from my *Ces fleurs-ci sont de mon jar-*
garden and *those* from yours. *din et celles-là du vôtre.*

Explanation. In the first example *THIS* is translated by *celui-ci*, because it relates to and represents one and the nearer of the hats already spoken of; and *THAT* is rendered by *celui-là* for the same reason, except it represents the more remote. In the second, *THIS* is expressed by *cette*, because it is used with the substantive *maison*, which is feminine singular; and *THAT* by *celle-là*, because it relates to, and represents the word *maison*. In the third, *THOSE BOOKS* is translated by *ces livres-là*; by *ces*, because the plural substantive *livres* is expressed, and with the particle *-là* to avoid confusion; *THESE* is rendered by *ceux-ci*, because it relates to, and represents the masculine plural noun *livres*. In the fourth, *THESE* is translated by *ces*, because it is used with a plural noun; *ci* is placed after the word *fleurs* to avoid confusion; *THOSE* is expressed by *celles-là*, because it relates to and represents the feminine plural noun *fleurs*.

388. *Celui-ci* or *celle-ci*, *ceux-ci* or *celles-ci*, is sometimes used to translate THE LATTER, and *celui-là* or *celle-là*, *ceux-là* or *celles-là*, to translate THE FORMER ; as

I have read Berquin and J. J. Rousseau ; <i>the latter</i> wrote for men, and <i>the former</i> for children,	<i>J'ai lu Berquin et J. J. Rousseau ; celui-ci a écrit pour les hommes, et celui-là pour les enfants.</i>
---	--

389. The definite demonstrative pronouns are used with *de* instead of *ci* or *là* after them, when the English use OF or FROM after them, or are supplied by the possessive case ; or to translate the word ONE, when employed in the sense of THAT OF after a noun expressing the matter with which the represented object is made ; as

Which of <i>those</i> dresses will you have, <i>the silk one</i> or <i>the woollen one</i> ?	<i>Lequel de ces deux habillements voulez-vous, celui de soie ou celui de laine ?</i>
--	---

The exercise of George is not so well done as <i>that of</i> William,	<i>Le thème de George n'est pas si bien fait que celui de Guillaume.</i>
---	--

The time of youth is <i>that of</i> study,	<i>Le temps de la jeunesse est celui de l'étude.</i>
--	--

The habit of well thinking leads to <i>that of</i> well doing,	<i>L'habitude de bien penser conduit à celle de bien faire.</i>
--	---

The best principles are <i>those of</i> the most honest man, and the best virtues are <i>those of</i> the best Christian,	<i>Les meilleurs principes sont ceux du plus honnête homme, et les meilleures vertus sont celles du meilleur Chrétien.</i>
---	--

His fortune is not so great as your <i>father's</i> , (<i>that of your father</i> ,)	<i>Sa fortune n'est pas si grande que celle de votre père.</i>
---	--

The carriages of John are more elegant than Mr. Lewis's, (<i>those of Mr. Lewis</i> ,)	<i>Les voitures de Jean sont plus élégantes que celles de M. Louis.</i>
---	---

390. It has already been said that *ce* is a demonstrative article, and a personal pronoun of the third person singular, used to translate IT when it is the nominative of the verb TO BE ; but its use presents difficulties which are explained in the following observations.

391. *Ce* is used as a nominative personal pronoun with *être* not only to translate *IT*, but also to translate *HE*, *SHE* or *THEY*, when either of these pronouns, being the nominative of the verb *TO BE*, relates to no particular noun expressed before, but relates to what follows that verb, and more especially when after it follows a personal, possessive or demonstrative pronoun, a proper name, or a common noun used with any of the articles; as

<i>It is my business,</i>	<i>C'est mon affaire.</i>
<i>Is this your work?—No, it is my sister's,</i>	<i>Ceci est-ce votre ouvrage?—Non, c'est celui de ma sœur.</i>
<i>Has Mr. G. done that portrait?—No, it is I,</i>	<i>M. G. a-t-il fait ce portrait? Non, c'est moi.</i>
<i>What is that establishment?—It is a college,</i>	<i>Quel est cet établissement?—C'est un collège.</i>
<i>Is your minister a very good man?—Yes, he is an excellent man,</i>	<i>Votre ministre est-il un homme très-bon?—Oui, c'est un excellent homme.</i>
<i>Is the instructress of your children young?—No, she is an aged woman,</i>	<i>L'institutrice de vos enfants est-elle jeune?—Non, c'est une femme âgée.</i>

Explanation. In the first example, *IT* is translated by *ce*, because it relates to what follows *être*, and also because it is used for *THAT*. In the 2d, *IT* is translated by *ce*, because after *TO BE* follows *celui*, a demonstrative pronoun. In the 3d, *IT* is translated by *ce*, because after the verb *TO BE* follows a personal pronoun. In the 4th, *IT* is translated by *ce*, because after the verb *TO BE* follows a common noun, *collège*, preceded by an article, *un*. In the 5th, *HE* is translated by *ce*, because after the verb *TO BE* follows a common noun preceded by an article, *un*. In the 6th, *SHE* is translated by *ce*, because after the verb *TO BE* follows a common noun preceded by an article, *une*.

392. After *IT* the verb is always in the singular number in English; but after *ce*, the verb *être* must be in the plural, whatever be the number of *TO BE*, when it is immediately followed by a pronoun of the third person plural, or by a plural noun preceded by an article which is not the object of any preposition; and in the singular, if what immediately follows is a verb, a pronoun of the 1st or 2d person, a preposition, a noun or a pronoun in the singular; as in

<i>Do I see coming our friends or our enemies?—It is our friends,</i>	<i>Vois-je venir nos amis ou nos ennemis?—Ce sont nos amis.</i>
---	---

What signs are those?—*They are those of civilization,* *Quels signes sont ceux-là?—Ce sont ceux de la civilisation.*
 What are the supporters of a good government?—*It is the good citizens, it is we,* *Quels sont les soutiens d'un bon gouvernement?—Ce sont les bons citoyens, c'est nous.*

Explanation. In the first example *IT* is translated by *ce*, because the verb *être* is followed by a noun preceded by an article, *nos*; *IS* is translated by the plural *sont*, because it is followed by a plural noun, *amis*. In the second, *THEY* is translated by *ce* because the verb is followed by a demonstrative pronoun, *ceux*; *ARE* is translated by *sont*, because it is followed by a pronoun of the third person plural, *ceux*. In the third, *IT* is translated by *ce*, because the verb is followed by a common noun in the plural; the second *IS* is translated by *est* because the verb is followed by a pronoun of the first person.

393. The pronouns *HE*, *SHE*, *IT* or *THEY*, are translated by *il*, *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, when relating to a special noun already expressed, and that after *être* follows an adjective or a noun expressing profession or trade, used without any article, or a noun or a personal pronoun preceded by a preposition; but if the pronoun *IT* should relate to what follows the verb *TO BE*, or if the noun that follows *être* were used with an article, *IT* should be rendered by *ce*; as

Is your father a lawyer?—No, *Votre père est-il avocat?—Non*
 he is a notary, *il est notaire, or c'est un notaire.*
 Is he a protestant or a catholic? *Est-il protestant ou catholique?*
 —He is a protestant, *—Il est protestant, or c'est un protestant.*
 How are those students?—*They* *Comment ces étudiants sont-ils?*
 are very attentive, *—Ils sont très-attentifs.*

Explanation. In the first example, *HE* is translated by *il* when the following noun, *notaire*, is not preceded by an article; and by *ce*, when preceded by an article, *un*. It is the same in the second example. In the third example, *THEY* is translated by *ils*, because it relates to a masculine plural noun expressed before; and that *TO BE* or *être* is not followed by a noun preceded by an article.

394. *IT* is also translated by *ce* when it is used in the sense of *THAT* or *THIS*; and vice versa, *THAT* or *THIS* is translated by *ce* when either is used in the sense of *IT*; as

It is my opinion, *C'est mon opinion.*
It is my book, *C'est mon livre.*
That is your opinion, *C'est votre opinion.*

Explanation. In the first two phrases *IT* is used in the sense of *THAT*, for they might be *THAT IS MY OPINION, THAT IS MY BOOK.* And in the third, *THAT* is used for *IT*; for

THAT IS YOUR OPINION is the same as IT IS YOUR OPINION. In the translation of such phrases *ce* may be considered as an abbreviation of *cela* or *ceci*.

EXERCISE 198.

Have you ever seen this?—No, never.—And that?—Yes.—Is not this beautiful?—Yes, it is; but I think that this is still more beautiful. Is this portrait yours?—No; it is my brother's.—But that miniature, is that of your sister?—Yes, it is.—Is this, that of your mother?—Yes, it is.—By what painter have those paintings been made?—A part of these by David, and almost all of those by Dubuf.—Did not Vernet paint those battles?—Not all; those of this side of the hall are by him; the others were painted by several artists.—Those seem to be executed as well as these of Vernet; do you not think so?—O, no! those of Vernet are superior.

EXERCISE 199.

All this begins to displease me, George.—Is it my fault?—If it is not thy fault, it is that of Mr. L.—Do you not like those exercises?—Not very well. I prefer those of Mr. P.—Why?—Because those of Mr. P. are not so difficult as these.—It is strange! for I find these much easier than those of Mr. P.—What is your opinion of those two teachers, Mr. L. and Mr. P.?—I think that they are pretty good; but the latter is a better grammarian than the former.—I did not know that; I thought that it was the contrary. Is your opinion that of the majority?—I think it is.—Very well. But although mine is that of the minority, I shall not change it.

EXERCISE 200.

Are those boots yours?—No, sir; they are those of Mr. G.; these are mine.—And those shoes?—They are Mr. B.'s.—Where are those of Mr. C.?—They are in the closet.—In what closet?—In that of his room.—I have looked in it; but I have found only those of Mr. D., and these; his were not there.—Have you looked in that of the next room?—But those, and not these, are Mr. G.'s.—It is true. Is this handkerchief yours?—No; it is that of Mr. R.—It is not that of Mr. R., because I have shown it to him and he says it is that of Mr. S., and Mr. S. says that he has no handkerchief like that; therefore, I think it is mine.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

395. As the interrogative articles must agree in gender and number with the noun with which they are employed, so the interrogative pronouns must agree in gender and number with the noun they represent.

The interrogative articles, as it has already been said, page 79, are

	masc. sing.	fem. sing.	masc. plural.	fem. plural.
FOR WHAT,	<i>quel,</i>	<i>quelle.</i>	<i>quels,</i>	<i>quelles.</i>

396 The corresponding interrogative pronouns are

FOR WHAT, WHAT ONE, OF MASC. SING.	fem. sing.	masc. plural.	fem. plural.
WHICH, WHICH ONE, <i>lequel,</i>	<i>laquelle,</i>	<i>lesquels,</i>	<i>lesquelles.</i>
OF, OF FROM WHICH, <i>duquel,</i>	<i>de laquelle,</i>	<i>desquels,</i>	<i>desquelles.</i>
TO, OF AT WHICH, <i>auquel,</i>	<i>à laquelle,</i>	<i>auxquels,</i>	<i>auxquelles.</i>
BY WHICH	<i>par lequel,</i>	<i>par lesquels,</i>	<i>par lesquelles.</i>

Which of those books do you prefer ? *Lequel de ces livres préférez-vous ?*

Which of those grammars do you make use of ? *De laquelle de ces grammaires vous servez-vous ?*

Do you know that my aunt is sick ?—*Which one ?* *Savez-vous que ma tante est malade ?—Laquelle ?*

To which of those ladies have you spoken ? *À laquelle de ces dames avez-vous parlé ?*

John, bring me my boots.—*Which ones* do you want, the old or the new ? *Jean apportez-moi mes bottes.—Lesquelles voulez-vous, les vieilles ou les neuves ?*

Two of my cousins have come back from France.—*Which ones ?* *Deux de mes cousins sont revenus de France.—Lesquels ?*

Explanation. In the first example, *WHICH* is translated by *lequel*, because it is intended to represent only one of the books spoken of afterwards, and because *livre* is a masculine noun. In the second, *WHICH* is translated by *de laquelle*, because it is used for *OF WHICH*, and because it is intended to represent a feminine singular noun, that is, one of the *grammaires* spoken of afterwards. In the fifth, *WHICH ONES* is translated by *lesquelles*, because it represents a feminine plural noun, *bottes*. In the sixth, *WHICH ONES* is translated by *lesquels*, because it represents a masculine plural noun, *cousins*. It should be particularly noticed that the *ONE* or *ONES* following *WHICH*, is never expressed in French.

Interrogative pronouns should be considered as definite and indefinite.

397. The definite are the preceding, *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c. They are called definite because they always relate to a noun spoken of before, or to one or several persons or things spoken

of collectively with other persons or things in the same phrase ; as may be seen in the preceding and following examples :

To which of your friends shall I write ? *Auquel de vos amis* écrirai-je ?

From which of your sisters do you expect letters ? *De laquelle de vos sœurs attendez-vous des lettres ?*

By which of those lawyers was he defended ? *Par lequel de ces avocats a-t-il été défendu ?*

The two sisters are beautiful. *Which one* do you prefer ? *Les deux sœurs sont belles. Laquelle préférez-vous ?*

Explanation. In the first, second and third examples, the interrogative pronoun relates to persons spoken of in the phrase ; and in the fourth, to a person already spoken of collectively with another.

398. The indefinite interrogative pronouns are those that must be employed when the object of the question is entirely unknown, and not named before the answer ; for which reason, without doubt, they are invariable ; that is, they do not change on account of gender or number. They are of two kinds, those that relate to persons, and those that relate to things.

The indefinite interrogative pronouns relating to persons, are

IN ENGLISH,	IN FRENCH,
WHO, . . .	<i>qui.</i>
WHOM, . . .	<i>qui.</i>
WHOSE, . . .	<i>de qui.</i>

Who is coming ? *Qui vient ?*

Whom do you want ? *Qui demandez-vous ?*

Whose protection do you wish ? *La protection de qui désirez-vous ?*

Of whom do you speak ? *De qui parlez-vous ?*

To whom do you write ? *A qui écrivez-vous ?*

With *whom* and against *whom* do you go ? *Avec qui et contre qui allez-vous ?*

Whose remark is that ? *De qui est cette remarque ?*

Explanation. In all these examples, the person which is the object of the question, is entirely unknown ; and consequently the indefinite interrogative pronoun *qui* is uniformly employed. The third example presents a difference of construction in both languages, and consequently it should be noticed, that, in the English phrase, the interrogative pronoun *whose* precedes the substantive *protection*, and that, in French, the interrogative pronoun *qui* is after the substantive *protection*. To know when such an inversion should be made, it is only necessary to substitute *OF WHOM* instead of *WHOSE*, and place it as it

should be and then translate literally. For instance, if *OF WHOM* is to be employed instead of *WHOSE*, the phrase must become *THE PROTECTION OF WHOM DO YOU WISH?* The last example also presents another difference, and the difficulty arising from it is removed by substituting *OF WHOM* instead of *WHOSE*, arranging the words of the phrase as they should be, and then translating literally : thus, by using *OF WHOM* instead of *WHOSE* in the phrase *WHOSE REMARK IS THAT*, that same phrase must become, *OF WHOM IS THAT REMARK?*

399. The indefinite interrogative pronouns relating to things are,

IN ENGLISH,

IN FRENCH,

WHAT,	<i>que.</i>
<i>of</i> or <i>from</i> WHAT,	<i>de quoi.</i>
<i>on</i> WHAT,	<i>sur quoi.</i>
<i>to</i> or <i>at</i> WHAT,	<i>à quoi.</i>

What do you want ?

Que voulez-vous ?

Of what is he sorry ?

De quoi est-il fâché ?

In what shall I put it ?

Dans quoi le mettrai-je ?

To what do they apply themselves ?

À quoi s'appliquent-ils ?

On what is it painted ?

Sur quoi est-il peint ?

OBSERVATION. From the preceding examples it may be perceived that the interrogative pronoun *que* is used only when no preposition is required before it ; and that, when it should be the object of a preposition, *quoi* must be employed instead of *que*.

400. The interrogative pronoun *quoi* is sometimes used without any preposition before it, but it is generally independently of any verb, or in an exclamatory sense ; in which case it has the meaning of *WHAT THING*, *quelle chose*, and requires the preposition *de* after it, thus *quoi de*, which means in English *WHAT IS* ; as

What is more interesting in the world !

Quoi de plus intéressant dans le monde !

What is more noble than benevolence ! *What* is more base than ingratitude !

Quoi de plus noble que la bienveillance ! Quoi de plus vil que l'ingratitude !

Who has made that ?—*What* ?

Qui a fait cela ?—Quoi ?

401. There is another kind of indefinite interrogative pronouns that might be called compound interrogative pronouns.

They are, relating to persons,

for the nominative	WHO,	<i>qui est-ce qui,</i>	literally	WHO IS THAT WHO?
for the object	WHOM,	<i>qui est-ce que,</i>	literally	WHO IS THAT WHOM?

Who loves you ? *Qui est-ce qui vous aime ?*

Whom do you love ? *Qui est-ce que vous aimez ?*

402. Relating to things,

for the nominative	WHAT,	<i>qu'est-ce qui,</i>	literally	WHAT IS THAT WHICH?
for the object	WHAT,	<i>qu'est-ce que,</i>	literally	WHAT IS THAT WHICH?

What torments him ? *Qu'est-ce qui le tourmente ?*

What dost thou desire ? *Qu'est-ce que tu désires ?*

403. Of the compound interrogative pronouns, *qu'est-ce qui*, that is the nominative relating to things, must necessarily and exclusively be employed to translate WHAT OR WHAT THING, when it is the nominative of the verb of the question, there being no other pronoun for this particular case. As to the use of the others it is dictated more by taste than by grammar: the question asked with them is less abrupt and more polite. The preceding examples might be translated

Who loves you ? by *Qui vous aime ?*

Whom do you love ? by *Qui aimez-vous ?*

What dost thou desire ? by *Que désires-tu ?*

But there is no other way to translate

What torments him ? than *Qu'est-ce qui le tourmente ?*

What makes you cry ? than *Qu'est-ce qui vous fait pleurer ?*

404. From what precedes on the interrogative pronouns it may be noticed, that when an interrogative pronoun, or a noun with an interrogative article, is the nominative of the verb of the question, that verb does not take the interrogative form as it does when it is not its nominative.

405. When in English the verb to BE is preceded by an interrogative pronoun followed by the noun which is the object of the question, that interrogative pronoun must be rendered by the interrogative article *quel, quelle, quels, or quelles*; and if there follows another verb to complete the question, that verb must be preceded by a relative pronoun, though in English no relative pronoun is expressed, but is evidently implied; as

What are the books you read ? *Quels sont les livres que vous lisez ?*

What is the malady you have? *Quelle est la maladie que vous avez?*

What are the rules you follow? *Quelles sont les règles que vous suivez?*

However, it would be as well, if not better, to translate those phrases by

Quels livres lisez-vous?

Quelle maladie avez-vous?

Quelles règles suivez-vous?

406. But, if there follows no verb after TO BE, the phrase is translated literally; as,

What are those books?

Quels sont ces livres?

What is your malady?

Quelle est votre maladie?

What are the rules of your conduct?

Quelles sont les règles de votre conduite?

407. When, in English, after the interrogative pronoun WHICH, immediately follows a cardinal number with a noun, which is the object of the question, that pronoun is rendered in French by the interrogative article, *quel, quelle, quels, or quelles* followed by the verb *être*; the definite article must precede the cardinal number, and the verb which completes the action must be preceded by *que*; as

Which two of those flowers do you prefer?

Quelles sont les deux de ces fleurs que vous préférez?

Which three pair of shoes do you take?

Quelles sont les trois paires de souliers que vous prenez?

It is perhaps proper to observe here that the HE, SHE, IT, or THEY which is at the beginning of an answer is sometimes translated by *ce*, and at other times by *il, elle, ils, or elles*. See Nos. 391, 392, 393, 394.

EXERCISE 201.

³⁹⁹ Of what are you speaking?—Of that gentleman.—Of which?—Of Mr. ¹³³ R.—What do you say of him?—That he understands several languages. —Which ³⁹⁶ ones?—The French, the Spanish and the Italian.—With whom ³⁹³ has he studied them?—With the professors of the college.—Of what ^{ex. 15} college?—Of Cambridge.—Who are those professors?—I do not know ³⁹⁸ them all.—Which ones do you know?—I know Mr. B. and Mr. S.—³⁰⁴ What do they teach?—Mr. B. teaches the Italian, and Mr. S. the Spanish.

—With what books do they give their lessons?—I do not know.—Do you know Mr. Lewis?—Which one, the doctor or the merchant?—The doctor.—I know him very well.

EXERCISE 202.

Who has made that?—What?—That vase.—Which one?—That of marble.—It is a workman of this city.—Which one?—Mr. Joseph.—In what street is his shop?—It is in Washington street. But there are two shops of the same kind, which one is it?—It is not that on* this side of the street, but it is that on* the other.—Which of the two workmen is the best?—(it is) Mr. J.; however, I believe that he does not work now.—What prevents him (from it)?—I believe that his mind is affected.—What afflicts him?—I think it is the loss of one of his daughters.—Of which one?—Of the oldest.—Do you know to whom she was engaged?—I believe it was to Mr. A.

EXERCISE 203.

Who is coming?—It is your scholars.—Which ones?—Those of the first class. What do they wish?—They wish to speak to you.—Of what?—Of a grammatical difficulty.—On what rule of the grammar?—On that of pronouns.—What pronouns?—I do not know, but will go and ask them.—What embarrasses them?—It is the use of the demonstrative pronouns.—But what is the difficulty?—They do not know how they must use them.—In what case?—They have not told (it to) me.—Who has spoken to you?—It is Mr. M.—What has he said?—He said for himself and the others, that they wish to speak to you.—Tell them to come again.—What day and what hour?—To-morrow at noon.

* ON, in this and similar instances, should be translated by *de*; as in,
On this side, . . . De ce côté-ci.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The relative pronouns, as has already been said, are those which represent nouns or pronouns, that they may stand for them as nominatives or objects of a verb. Those nouns or pronouns are called antecedents, because they are expressed before them, or at least are most certainly implied.

407. The relative pronouns correspond to any article which determines the extent of the signification of their antecedent noun, which generally is the definite, the indefinite, or a cardinal number. They are,

IN ENGLISH		IN FRENCH		} for both genders and numbers.	
WHO, THAT,	.	<i>qui,</i>			
WHOSE, OF OR FROM WHOM,		<i>de qui, dont,</i>			
WHOM, THAT,	.	<i>qui,</i>			
WHAT, THAT,	.	<i>que,</i>			
OF OR FROM, WHAT OR THAT,		<i>de quoi, dont,</i>			
TO OR AT WHAT OR THAT,		<i>à quoi,</i>			
WHICH,	.	<i>lequel,</i>	<i>laquelle,</i>	<i>lesquels,</i>	<i>lesquelles.</i>
OF OR FROM WHICH,		<i>duquel,</i>	<i>de laquelle,</i>	<i>desquels,</i>	<i>desquelles.</i>
TO OR AT WHICH,		<i>auquel,</i>	<i>à laquelle,</i>	<i>auxquels,</i>	<i>auxquelles.</i>

From what precedes it may be noticed that, in French, all the interrogative pronouns are also relative pronouns, but that all relative pronouns are not interrogative, since *dont* is not interrogative.

For the use of the relative pronouns the following rules should be attended to.

408. When the relative pronoun, representing persons or things, stands for the nominative of a verb, it is

IN ENGLISH	IN FRENCH
WHO, THAT OR WHICH,	<i>qui.</i>
The man <i>who</i> is speaking,	<i>L'homme qui parle.</i>
The girls <i>who</i> are laughing,	<i>Les filles qui rient.</i>
The law <i>which</i> pleases,	<i>La loi qui plaît.</i>
The things <i>that</i> happen,	<i>Les choses qui arrivent.</i>

409. When the relative pronoun, representing persons or things, stands for the direct object of a verb, it is

IN ENGLISH	IN FRENCH
WHOM, THAT OR WHICH,	<i>que ;</i>

and, if the verb of which it is the object is in a compound tense, the past participle must be of the same gender and number as the noun represented by *que*.

The aunt <i>whom</i> or <i>that</i> I love,	<i>La tante que j'aime.</i>
The friends <i>that</i> I have had,	<i>Les amis que j'ai eus.</i>
The church <i>that</i> you see,	<i>L'église que vous voyez.</i>

The jewels *that* or *which* you have expected, *Les bijoux que vous avez attendus.*

410. When the relative pronoun, relating to persons or things, should be used as the object of the preposition OF or FROM, it is

IN ENGLISH

IN FRENCH

WHOSE, OF OR FROM WHOM, OF OR FROM WHICH, *dont.*

The lady <i>of whom</i>	} he is speaking,	<i>La dame dont</i>	} <i>il parle.</i>
The man <i>of whom</i>		<i>L'homme dont</i>	
The book <i>of which</i>		<i>Le livre dont</i>	
The things <i>of which</i>		<i>Les choses dont</i>	

The judge *whose* impartiality we admire is very learned, *Le juge dont nous admirons l'impartialité est très-instruit.*

411. Remark that, in the English of the last example, IMPARTIALITY is placed before the verb of which it is the object, whilst in French, it is, as it must always be in similar instances, after that verb, because it is its object.

412. But, if the relative pronoun which is the object of the preposition OF or FROM, in English, is not placed immediately after its antecedent, being separated from it by any other word than an adjective, it must be translated into French by *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles*; as,

The Seine in <i>whose</i> channel the Yonne throws itself,	<i>La Seine dans le lit de laquelle l'Yonne se jette.</i>
The animals <i>which</i> we destroy, and <i>from whose</i> spoils we make our shoes and clothes, generally have claims on our gratitude,	<i>Les animaux que nous détruisons et de la dépouille desquels nous faisons notre chaussure et nos vêtements ont généralement des droits à notre reconnaissance.</i>

413. When the relative pronoun should be used with any other preposition than OF or FROM, in French *de*, and relates especially to persons, it is

IN ENGLISH

IN FRENCH

WHOM, *qui* or *lequel, laquelle, &c.*

TO WHOM, *à qui, or auquel, à laquelle, &c.*

FOR WHOM, *pour qui, or pour lequel, pour laquelle, &c.*

The son *to whom* I write, *Le fils auquel or à qui j'écris.*

The daughter *to whom* I spoke, *La fille à laquelle or à qui je parlai.*

The lady *with whom* you sung yesterday is my cousin, *La dame avec laquelle or avec qui vous chantâtes hier est ma cousine.*

414. But, if the relative pronoun used with any other preposition than OF OR FROM, *de*, relates to things, or to any other antecedent but persons, it is

IN ENGLISH

IN FRENCH

WHICH,

lequel, laquelle, &c., but never qui.

The animal *to which* I give food, *L'animal auquel je donne de la nourriture.*

The means *with which* he succeeded, *Les moyens avec lesquels il réussit.*

The horses *by which* he was drawn, *Les chevaux par lesquels il était traîné.*

415. When the English relative pronoun WHAT is used in an indefinite sense, that is, when it relates to the word THING not expressed, it is rendered into French by *que* or *quoi*; by *que* when no preposition is required before it; and by *quoi* when a preposition is required before it; as,

Do you know *to what* he applies himself? *Savez-vous à quoi il s'applique ?*

I do not know *what* to do, *Je ne sais que faire.*

Mr. L. has not announced *on what* he will speak next time, *M. L. n'a pas annoncé sur quoi il parlera la prochaine fois.*

Ask of Mr. S. *with what* he has made that, *Demandez à M. S. avec quoi il a fait cela.*

In the second example however WHAT might be translated by *quoi*; thus, *je ne sais quoi faire*; but *que* should be preferred.

416. It often happens in English that the relative pronoun is not expressed, but is undoubtedly implied, when it should never be omitted in French. This is the case when a noun is used before a verb as its apparent object or nominative, when it

is in fact the object of another verb whether expressed or understood ; as,

He procures me *the things* I like, *Il me procure les choses que j'aime.*

The *lessons* I have given are not too long, *Les leçons que j'ai données ne sont pas trop longues.*

You have detained the *men* I was expecting, *Vous avez retenu les hommes que j'attendais.*

He is the *president* I like, *C'est le président que j'aime.*

Explanation. In all these phrases the relative pronoun is not expressed in English, but it is implied; for **THE THINGS I LIKE** is for **THE THINGS THAT I LIKE**; **THE LESSONS I HAVE GIVEN** is for **THE LESSONS THAT I HAVE GIVEN**; **THE MEN I WAS EXPECTING** is for **THE MEN THAT I WAS EXPECTING**; **THE PRESIDENT I LIKE** is for **THE PRESIDENT WHOM I LIKE**, but in such instances the relative pronoun is always expressed in French.

417. When an interrogative or a relative pronoun, or indeed any other word, is used in English as the object of a preposition, which preposition is not placed before its object, but sometimes at the end of the phrase, the corresponding French preposition should always precede its own object ; as,

Whom are you speaking of ? *De qui parlez-vous ?*

Which of those men were you speaking to ? *Auquel de ces hommes parliez-vous ?*

What were you laughing at ? *De quoi riez-vous ?*

What object are you quarrelling for ? *Pour quel objet vous disputez-vous ?*

Explanation. In these examples the word **WHOM**, **WHICH**, **WHAT**, **WHAT OBJECT**, are the objects of the prepositions **OF**, **TO**, **AT**, **FOR**, which are placed at the end of the phrases ; but in the French, the corresponding prepositions *de*, *à*, (combined in the word *auquel* which is for *à lequel*) *de*, *pour*, are placed, as they must always be in such instances, before their respective objects *qui*, *lequel*, *quoi*, *quel objet*.

EXERCISE 204.

Do you know the gentlemen of whom we speak?—Do you speak of the minister who preached last Sunday?—Yes ; what do you think of the discourse which he pronounced?—I think that it was very beautiful, and that the text on which he has written is also very fine.—Do you remember which it was?—Yes.—Have you read the new work which has appeared lately?—Not yet ; of what does it treat?—It contains among other things, good lessons to persons towards whom fortune has not been

very favourable.—Do you know by whom it is published?—It is by Messrs M. and F.—The work must be good, because all the books they publish are so. Is it not?

EXERCISE 205.

Who is that gentleman who is coming?—It is Mr. D., a painter whom I esteem much, and of whom I have spoken to you.—Has he made any paintings that have any celebrity?—He has made two, which have been admired by all persons who can appreciate the merits and detect the imperfections which exist in paintings.—What are those two paintings?—They are Adam and Eve, which were painted for the king of France, who did not take them, because his people, who did not like to bear the effects of his political crimes, chased him from his throne, on which they put another man whom they do not like much better.

EXERCISE 206.

For whom are you doing that?—For a person for whom I have the greatest consideration.—Will you tell me what her name is?—You may guess what it is, if I tell you that I owe to her the happiness I enjoy.—Is it not Mr. X., who was your mother's best friend?—Precisely. She is one of the best women in the world.—Where is her son, who was in the army last year?—He is now the general in chief of the army, which is destined for the south.—Was he not one of the officers who distinguished themselves in the last war?—Yes, he was; and our government, which always rewards true merit, gave him the grade he has now.

DEMONSTRATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS USED TOGETHER.

When a verb follows a demonstrative pronoun, a relative pronoun must be used to represent that demonstrative pronoun and stand for it as nominative or object to the verb; but as a distinction between the definite and the indefinite demonstrative pronouns is necessary, the same distinction should be made in their use with the relative pronouns.

418. These pronouns are used in an indefinite sense when they do not relate to any particular noun expressed before, but merely to the implied word THING, in English, and *chose*, in French; and then the English demonstrative pronoun is THAT, and the relative is WHICH, or both combined in the word WHAT, and in French, the demonstrative pronoun is *ce* instead of *cela*, and the relative pronoun is either *qui*, *que*, *dont* or *quoi*; thus

419. When the relative pronoun is the nominative of the verb, we must translate

WHAT, OR THAT WHICH	by	<i>ce qui</i> .
OF WHAT, OR OF THAT WHICH,	by	<i>de ce qui</i> .
TO WHAT, OR TO THAT WHICH,	by	<i>à ce qui</i> .
WITH WHAT, OR WITH THAT WHICH,	by	<i>avec ce qui</i> .

His modesty is *that which* or *what* pleases me, *Sa modestie est ce qui me plaît.*

Your industry is *what* or *that which* inspires him with confidence, *Votre industrie est ce qui lui inspire de la confiance.*

420. When the relative pronoun is the object of a verb requiring no preposition before it, we must translate

THAT WHICH, OR WHAT, OR THAT,	by	<i>ce que</i> .
-------------------------------	----	-----------------

Their frankness is *what* I like, *Leur franchise est ce que j'aime.*

Our courage is *what* or *that which* they admire, *Notre courage est ce qu'ils admirent.*

421. When the relative pronoun is the object of a verb requiring the preposition OF or FROM before it, in French *de*, we must translate

THAT OF WHICH,	by	<i>ce dont</i> .
----------------	----	------------------

That of which we are speaking is interesting, *Ce dont nous parlons est intéressant.*

That from which he drew some liquor was a kind of gourd, *Ce dont il tira de la liqueur était une espèce de gourde.*

422. When the relative pronoun is the object of a verb requiring any other preposition than *de*, the relative pronoun is *quoi*; therefore we should translate

THAT TO WHICH,	by	<i>ce à quoi</i> .
THAT WITH WHICH,	by	<i>ce avec quoi</i> .

That gun is <i>that of which</i> I have spoken to you,	<i>Ce fusil est celui dont je vous ai parlé.</i>
That door is <i>that by which</i> he has come in,	<i>Cette porte est celle par laquelle or par où il est entré.</i>
The time of peace is <i>that in which</i> kings prepare themselves for war,	<i>Le temps de la paix est celui où or dans lequel les rois se préparent à la guerre.</i>
I know all the paths of the forest, except <i>that by which</i> you have passed,	<i>Je connais tous les sentiers de la forêt, excepté celui par où or par lequel vous êtes passé.</i>
The moment <i>when</i> he will enter is <i>that when</i> I shall arrive,	<i>Le moment où il entrera est celui où j'arriverai.</i>

425. By these examples it may be seen that when the demonstrative pronoun relates to time or place, the adverb *où*, WHERE OR WHEN is used instead of the relative pronouns.

To render more striking the use of the demonstrative pronouns with *de* before a substantive, or with a relative pronoun before a verb, the following examples are given :

That table is <i>that of</i> my brother,	<i>Cette table est celle de mon frère.</i>
That table is <i>that which</i> belongs to my brother,	<i>Cette table est celle qui appartient à mon frère.</i>
Those sheets are <i>those of</i> my book,	<i>Ces feuilles sont celles de mon livre.</i>
Those sheets are <i>those that</i> have been torn from my book,	<i>Ces feuilles sont celles qui ont été déchirées de mon livre.</i>

426. It often happens that in English the antecedent of a relative pronoun is not a noun nor a demonstrative pronoun, but is one of the personal pronouns HE, HIM, SHE, HER, or THE ONE OR ONES, but it is evident that they are used for THE PERSON OR THAT PERSON ; then in French the antecedent is *celui*, *celle*, *ceux* or *celles*, according to the gender and number of the personal pronoun ; and the relative pronoun is as it should be, according to the directions that relate to its use when it has a noun representing persons for antecedent. See No. 408, 409, &c.

Of all the music-masters that I have had, Mr. Keller is <i>the one that</i> teaches the best,	<i>De tous les maîtres de musique que j'ai eus, M. Keller est celui qui enseigne le mieux.</i>
I heard two preachers last Sunday, the first is <i>the one whom</i> I prefer,	<i>J'entendis deux prédicateurs dimanche dernier, le premier est celui que je préfère.</i>
<i>He, who</i> studies the most, improves the best,	<i>Celui qui étudie le plus, apprend le mieux.</i>
Yesterday I was with <i>him to whom</i> you have just spoken,	<i>Hier j'étais avec celui à qui vous venez de parler.</i>
I shall give this reward to <i>her who</i> will have written the best composition,	<i>Je donnerai cette récompense à celle qui aura écrit la meilleure composition.</i>
The figure 5 is the mark for <i>her who</i> (or <i>the one who</i>) recites best, and 4, 3, 2, or 1, for <i>those who</i> do not recite so well,	<i>Le chiffre 5 est la marque de celle qui récite le mieux, et 4, 3, 2, ou 1, de celles qui ne récitent pas si bien.</i>
This is for <i>him who</i> is speaking,	<i>Ceci est pour celui qui parle.</i>
<i>He whom</i> you expect will not come,	<i>Celui que vous attendez ne viendra pas.</i>
That belongs to <i>him whom</i> you see,	<i>Cela appartient à celui que vous voyez.</i>
<i>Those whose</i> virtue is great always do great things,	<i>Ceux dont la vertu est grande, font toujours de grandes choses.</i>

427. But if the personal pronouns HE, SHE, HIM, HER, THEY, THEM, are preceded by the verb TO BE, having IT for its nominative, they may be translated by *lui* or *elle* for the singular, and by *eux* or *elles* for the plural :

Mr. L. is a very ingenious man, <i>it is he who</i> invented that machine,	<i>M. L. est un homme très-ingénieux, c'est lui qui a inventé cette machine.</i>
Those women are very charitable, <i>it is they who</i> maintain several poor families,	<i>Ces femmes sont très-charitables, ce sont elles qui entretiennent plusieurs pauvres familles.</i>

REMARK ON THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE INTERROGATIVE
AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

It has already been said that all relative pronouns are not interrogative, although all that are interrogative are also relative ; the only difference that exists among them is in the manner of using them ; for the relative pronouns always have an expressed or implied antecedent, and the interrogative pronouns have none.

EXERCISE 207.

I wish to know what torments you ; will you not tell it to me ?—It is that of which you complained yesterday.—If it is that, I am sorry for it ; but then you must do what I desire.—I would do it, if it was not contrary to what Mr. C. expects from me.—I know very well that what I require is not what will favour Mr. C.'s interest ; but it is that to which he has no pretensions, and what I can exact from you.—That is true, and it is that on account of which I am embarrassed ; because, if I do what you desire, he will think that I have not been willing to do what I have promised him ; and, if I do what I have promised him, you will not believe that it is that with which I could not dispense.

EXERCISE 208.

The book you are reading seems to interest you much ; which is it ?—It is that which you lent me.—Did you subscribe yesterday for that which Mr. G. showed you ?—No, sir.—Why ?—Because I know the principles of him who is the author of it, and I do not like them.—But he, who is the author of it, is the same as he who has written that which you are now reading.—I think he is not, and that you are mistaken.—What is the religion that is most in favour of the principles of justice and equality ?—I believe that it is the Christian.—Why ?—Because it proclaims these principles : “Render to Cæsar what belongs to Cæsar. There will be among you neither first nor last.”

EXERCISE 209.

You know for what I come ?—Very well ; but that, which you propose to me, is a thing to which I shall never consent.—Why ? Is it because it is different from what I have done for you ?—Sir, I have always been

grateful for all that⁴²⁰ you have done for me¹⁷¹; but I never would have⁹² thought, that, for what⁴¹⁹ can be called an act of pure kindness, you would have required a sacrifice of duty by which an honest man exposes him-¹⁹⁰self to the contempt of his fellow citizens.—You astonish me!⁴²⁰ and what I propose to you,^{ex. 8} far from being dishonorable,¹²⁴ deserves the consideration of all those who follow the principles of justice, delicacy and religion.—³⁹⁴That is your opinion, but what⁴²⁰ I think is very different.

DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS.

428. The distributive articles in English, are EACH, EVERY, and in French, *chaque*; but the distributive pronouns, are,

IN ENGLISH,

IN FRENCH,

EACH ONE, EVERY ONE, . *chacun*, for mas. *chacune*, for fem.

Each one in his turn will come to recite, *Chacun à son tour viendra réciter.*

Ladies, *every one* must remain at her seat, *Mesdemoiselles, chacune doit rester à sa place.*

These pronouns, the same as the preceding, are never used with a noun.

INDEFINITE, COLLECTIVE AND NEGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The indefinite pronouns are those that are used to represent persons or things, without relating to any particular one.

As the words that are considered as indefinite pronouns have been differently classified by grammarians, they will be treated in this chapter according to the principles adopted in this Grammar; that is, those that represent the noun, as pronouns, and those that determine the extent of its signification, without expressing its quality, as articles.

429. ONE. The English word ONE is sometimes used in an indefinite sense, that is, without relating to any person in particular, and as the nominative of a verb; then it is translated by the nominative verbal pronoun *on*. See No. 87 and 157.

One cannot be always successful, *On ne peut pas être toujours heureux.*

One likes to conceal his defects, *On aime à cacher ses défauts.*

430. The word **PEOPLE** is also often used in the same sense as **ONE**, and should be rendered in French by *on*, with the verb of which it is the nominative, in the singular number; and, if there is in the same phrase another verb having for its nominative an active verbal pronoun, such as **HE** or **THEY**, relating to the same person or persons as **PEOPLE** or **ONE**, that **HE** or **THEY** should be rendered in French by *on*.

People like to talk, *On aime à parler.*

One is happy when he has done good, *On est heureux quand on a fait du bien.*

People like to revenge, when they have been insulted, *On aime à se venger, lorsqu' on a été insulté.*

431. When several verbs are together, having for their nominative the word **ONE** or **PEOPLE**, although **ONE** or **PEOPLE** is expressed but once, before the first verb in English, *on* must be repeated before every one in French; as

One thinks, speaks and acts, according to his principles and opinion, *On pense, on parle et on agit, selon ses principes et ses opinions.*

People often approve, disapprove, like and dislike a thing without any reason, *Souvent on approuve, on désapprouve, on aime et on hait une chose sans raison.*

432. If *on* was to be placed after *et*, **AND**; *ou*, **OR**; *si*, **IF**; it should be preceded by *l'*, thus, *et l'on*, *ou l'on*, *si l'on*, unless the word that follows *on* should begin with an *l*. This *l'* is used before *on* merely to avoid the hard sound produced by *et on*, *ou on*, *si on*; as

One loves or hates without knowing why, *On aime ou l'on hait sans savoir pourquoi.*

If one see you, *Si l'on vous voit.*

And one will do, *Et l'on fera.*

If one say so, *Si on le dit.*

If one see her, *Si on la voit.*

433. When *no* is used with a noun, it is translated, in French, by either of the negative articles,

For the masculine,

For the feminine,

<i>nul,</i>	.	.	.	<i>nulle ;</i>
<i>pas un,</i>	.	.	.	<i>pas une ;</i>
<i>aucun,</i>	.	.	.	<i>aucune ;</i>

which require *ne* before the verb of which that noun is the nominative or the object. See No. 60.

434. Of these, *nul*, *nulle* is the only one that is generally employed as a nominative pronoun, to translate *NO ONE*, *NONE*, or *NOBODY*, used in an absolute manner, relating to persons, like *on*, and meaning *NOBODY*, as *on* means *ANY BODY* ; as,

No one or *nobody* shall be excepted, *Nul ne sera excepté.*

No one or *nobody* is satisfied with his fortune, *Nul n'est satisfait de sa fortune.*

435. *NO ONE*, or *NOBODY*, used in an indefinite sense, is often translated by *personne*, than by *nul*, which requires also *ne* before the verb of which it is the nominative or the object, and *de* before the following adjective or adverb ; as

We met *nobody*, *Nous ne rencontrâmes personne.*

No one wanted to do it, *Personne ne voulait le faire.*

I know no one rich enough to do that, *Je ne connais personne d'assez riche pour faire cela.*

436. But in an interrogative sentence *ne* is generally omitted, and then *personne* is used in the sense of *quelqu'un*, *ANY ONE*, *ANY BODY*, *SOMEBODY*, whilst in the answer it means *NO ONE*, *NOBODY* ; as

Would *any one* dare to do it ? *Personne oserait-il le faire ?—*
 —Nobody, *Personne.*

However, if there was a verb in the answer, *ne* should be expressed before it.

Would *any one* dare to do it ? *Personne oserait-il le faire ?—*
 —Nobody would dare to do it, *Personne n'oserait le faire.*

437. *Pas un*, *pas une*, *aucun*, *aucune* are used as pronouns when they relate to some pronoun or substantive that precedes

or follows, before which they require the preposition *de* ; also when used without a noun as objects of a verb, before which verb the verbal objective pronoun *en* must be expressed ; as

None of those who went there have come back, *Pas un de ceux qui y sont allés n'est revenu.*

Have you any French books ? *Avez-vous des livres Français ?*
—I have *not a single one*, —*Je n'en ai pas un seul.*

What ! you have none ? — I have *not a single one*, I tell you, *Comment ! vous n'en avez aucun ? — Je n'en ai pas un seul, vous dis-je.*

None of your sisters could please nor displease him, since he saw *none of them*, *Aucune de vos sœurs ne put lui plaire ni lui déplaire, car il n'en vit aucune.*

I saw *none of* your friends there, *Je n'y vis pas un de vos amis.*

REMARK. In the use of these expressions, the student should be careful not to employ *pas* after the verb with either *nul* or *aucun*, or indeed any other negative adjective or adverb ; and he should consider, that *pas un* denies more strongly than *aucun*. See No. 23.

438. When *ONE* is used after *ANY* or *SOME*, in an indefinite sense, that is, relating to no particular noun, and meaning *ANY BODY* or *SOMEBODY*, the French translation is *quelqu'un* ; as

Has *any one* come ? . . . *Quelqu'un est-il venu ?*

I have seen *some one* in the garden, *J'ai vu quelqu'un dans le jardin.*

Some one or *somebody* told it to me, *Quelqu'un me l'a dit.*

439. But when *quelqu'un* is not used in an indefinite sense, it may relate to persons or things ; then it is used with *en* before the verb of which it is the object, or with the preposition *de* before the noun, pronoun, or even the adjective or past participle that follows it ; and when it relates to a feminine singular noun, it becomes *quelqu'une*, and *quelques uns*, *quelques unes*, for the plural ; but then it is for *ANY*, *SOME* or *SEVERAL*, with or without *ONE* or *ONES* ; as

Do you know *any of those gentlemen* ? *Connaissez-vous quelques uns de ces messieurs ?*

One of my sisters is married, Une *de mes sœurs est mariée*,
 another is engaged, and the une autre *est engagée*, et les
 others are in a convent, autres *sont dans un couvent*.
 To day I have seen only one of Aujourd'hui je n'ai vu qu'un
 my cousins, but to-morrow I de mes cousins, mais demain
 shall see the other, je verrai l'autre.

442. Sometimes SOME is used in certain phrases in opposi-
 tion with OTHERS, without an article, when SOME is rendered by
les uns, and OTHERS by *les autres* ; thus,

All men are not alike, some are Tous les hommes ne sont pas
 good, others are bad, semblables, les uns sont bons,
 les autres sont mauvais.

443. SOME is sometimes repeated in the same phrase, in the
 sense of SOME OF THEM, SOME OTHERS, then the first must be ren-
 dered by *quelques uns* or *unes*, and the others by *d'autres*, in
 which case it is evident that they are used in a partitive sense ; as

Among the members of that so- Parmi les membres de cette so-
 ciety, some are Calvinists, ciété, quelques uns sont Cal-
 some Lutherans and some vinistes, d'autres sont Luthé-
 Catholics, riens et d'autres Catholiques.

444. The word EITHER, which means THE ONE OR THE OTH-
 ER, is rendered into French, thus,

	Mascu. singu-	Femin. singu.	Mascu. plu.	Femin. plu.
EITHER,	<i>l'un ou l'autre,</i>	<i>l'une ou l'autre,</i>	<i>les uns ou les autres,</i>	<i>les unes ou les autres.</i>
OF OF FROM EITHER, <i>de l'un ou de</i>	<i>de l'une ou de</i>	<i>des uns ou des</i>	<i>des unes ou des</i>	
	<i>l'autre,</i>	<i>l'autre,</i>	<i>autres,</i>	<i>autres.</i>
TO OF AT EITHER, <i>à l'un ou à</i>	<i>à l'une ou à</i>	<i>aux uns ou aux</i>	<i>aux unes ou aux</i>	
	<i>l'autre,</i>	<i>l'autre,</i>	<i>autres,</i>	<i>autres.</i>

I shall take *either*, . Je prendrai l'un ou l'autre.

Send me *either* of your diction- Envoyez-moi l'un ou l'autre de
 aries, vos dictionnaires.

I shall write to *either* of your J'écirai à l'un ou à l'autre de
 professors, vos professeurs.

Either suits me, L'un ou l'autre me convient.

It may be noticed, that when EITHER is the object of a prepo-
 sition, the corresponding preposition in French must be express-
 ed before *l'un* and *l'autre*.

445. NEITHER, whose meaning is NOT THE ONE AND NOR THE
 OTHER, which always requires the verb of which it is the subject

in the singular number in English, is translated into French, by

Mascu. singu.	Femin. singu.	Mascu. plu.	Femin. plu.
<i>ni l'un ni l'autre,</i>	<i>ni l'une ni l'autre,</i>	<i>ni les uns ni les autres,</i>	<i>ni les unes ni les autres ;</i>

which requires sometimes the singular and sometimes the plural of the verb, according to the meaning intended to be conveyed ; thus, if all the individuals to which NEITHER relates were negatively and together the nominative of the verb, that verb should be in the plural ; if it were only one of them, the verb should be in the singular, and always *ne* before it ; and, if NEITHER were the object of a preposition, that preposition should be repeated in the French phrase, and placed between *ni* and *l'un*, and *ni* and *l'autre* ; as,

I have read your two compositions, *neither* is good, (both are not good,)

J'ai lu vos deux compositions, ni l'une ni l'autre ne sont bonnes.

He spoke to me of *neither*,

Il ne m'a parlé ni de l'un ni de l'autre, or ni des uns ni des autres.

Neither of those young men will get the prize, (only one being able to get it,)

Ni l'un ni l'autre de ces jeunes gens n' obtiendra le prix.

I have written to *neither*,

Je n'ai écrit ni à l'un ni à l'autre.

Explanation. In the first example, *ni l'un ni l'autre* requires the verb in the plural, because the two objects that are represented are together the nominative of the verb. In the third, *ni l'un ni l'autre* requires the verb in the singular, because, there being only one prize, only one person will be able to get it.

446. BOTH, whose meaning is THE ONE AND THE OTHER, THE ONES AND THE OTHERS, is translated into French, by

Mascu. sing.	Femin. sing.	Mascu. plu.	Femin. plu.
<i>l'un et l'autre,</i>	<i>l'une et l'autre,</i>	<i>les uns et les autres,</i>	<i>les unes et les autres ;</i>

and when it is the object of a preposition, the French preposition should be repeated before *l'un*, *l'autre*, &c. ; as,

In America, *both* parties would unite against a common enemy,

En Amérique, l'un et l'autre partis se réuniraient contre un ennemi commun.

He gave rewards to *both* antagonists,

Il donna des récompenses aux uns et aux autres antagonistes.

447. OTHER is sometimes used with the word EACH OR ONE ; thus, EACH OTHER, ONE ANOTHER, conveying to the mind an idea of reciprocity : then they are rendered in French by

Masc. sing.	Fem. sing.	Masc. plu.	Fem. plu.
<i>l'un l'autre,</i>	<i>l'une l'autre,</i>	<i>les uns les autres,</i>	<i>les unes les autres;</i>

and if EACH OTHER, or ONE ANOTHER, is the object of a preposition, the French preposition should be expressed only once, before *l'autre*, and the verb should be conjugated reciprocally ; that is, with an objective verbal pronoun, of the same number and person as the nominative ; as,

Augustus and Sophia love <i>each other</i> ; and I know that they write <i>to each other</i> ,	<i>Auguste et Sophie s'aiment l'un l'autre ; et je sais qu'ils s'écrivent l'un à l'autre.</i>
The soldiers encouraged <i>each other</i> ,	<i>Les soldats s'encourageaient les uns les autres.</i>
We promised <i>each other</i> to sustain <i>each other</i> ,	<i>Nous nous promîmes les uns aux autres de nous soutenir les uns les autres.</i>

However, this last phrase would be better thus: *Nous nous promîmes de nous soutenir les uns les autres.*

448. OTHERS, being used as the object of a preposition and relating to persons in an indefinite sense, is rendered in French by *autrui* ; as,

One should respect the property of <i>others</i> ,	<i>On doit respecter le bien d'autrui.</i>
Expect from <i>others</i> what you do <i>to others</i> ,	<i>Attendez d'autrui ce que vous faites à autrui.</i>

449. SUCH is sometimes used in English with AS, and sometimes with the indefinite article A or AN, and must be translated into French, by

	Masc. sing.	Fem. sing.	Masc. plu.	Fem. plu.
	<i>tel,</i>	<i>telle,</i>	<i>tels,</i>	<i>telles.</i>

AS should be translated by *que*, and the indefinite article A or AN by *un, une*, placed before *tel, telle*, for the singular ; and by *de*, also placed before *tels, telles*, for the plural ; as,

When a man fears to see himself <i>such as</i> he is, it is because he is not <i>such as</i> he ought to be,	<i>Lorsqu'un homme craint de se voir tel qu'il est, c'est parce qu'il n'est pas tel qu'il devrait être.</i>
I shall take that music <i>such as</i> it is,	<i>Je prendrai cette musique telle qu'elle est.</i>
<i>Such a</i> man deserves consideration, but not <i>such</i> women as those,	<i>Un tel homme mérite de la considération, mais non pas de telles femmes que celles-là.</i>

I have already seen *such* things, *J'ai déjà vu de telles choses.*
Such manners do not please me, *De telles manières ne me plaisent pas.*

SUCH A ONE is rendered in French by

Masculine,

un tel,

Feminine,

une telle ; as,

You must go to Mr. *such a one's*, *Il faut que vous alliez chez*
 and there you will see Mrs. *Monsieur un tel, et vous y*
such a one, *verrez Madame une telle.*

450. When SUCH A is used with an adjective, it should not be translated into French by *un tel*, &c. but by *un si* ; also, if VERY is used with the adjective, it is not translated in French ; and, if there were several adjectives together, *si* should be repeated before every one of them ; as

Such a very good man enjoys *Un homme si bon jouit toujours*
 always the esteem of his fel- *de l'estime de ses concitoyens.*
 low citizens,

Such lovely persons are scarce, *De si aimables personnes sont*
rares.

451. When SUCH is used, in English, for SUCH PERSON, SUCH MAN, SUCH WOMAN, OR SUCH PERSONS, SUCH MEN, SUCH WOMEN, it is rendered, in French, by *tel, telle, or tels, telles*, and the conjunction AS by a relative pronoun ; as

Such as laugh on Saturday will *Tel qui rit Samedi Dimanche*
 cry on Sunday, *pleurera.*

452. EVERY, used in the sense of ONE AND ALL and not in the sense of EACH, is rendered in French by *tous les* or *toutes les* ; and, if there were several nouns together, *tous les* or *toutes les* should be repeated before each one of them ; as,

Every man was put to the *Tous les hommes furent passés*
 sword ; but *every* woman *au fil de l'épée ; mais toutes*
 and child was respected, *les femmes et tous les enfants*
furent respectés.

453. EVERY THING, ANY THING, is generally translated by *toutes choses*, when used in an indefinite sense ; but it would be as proper and perhaps better, to translate it merely by *tout* ; which *tout* should be placed before or after the verb of which it

is the nominative or object, and *toutes choses* after that verb when it is its object, and before, when it is its nominative ; as,

I told him *every thing*, . . . *Je lui ai tout dit.*
Every thing falls, perishes and . . . *Tout tombe, p  rit et se confond*
 is confounded around us, . . . *autour de nous.*

454. NOTHING is translated into French by *rien*, which requires *ne* before the verb with which it is used, and *de* before the following noun, pronoun, adjective or past participle ; as,

I have seen *nothing*, . . . *Je n'ai rien vu.*
 She said *nothing* of thee, . . . *Elle ne dit rien de toi.*
 You sent *nothing pretty* to . . . *Vous n'envoy  tes rien de joli   *
 your cousin, . . . *votre cousine.*
Nothing good is expected from . . . *On n'attend rien de bon de ce*
 that quarter, . . . *c  t  -l  .*
 She told him *nothing disagree-* . . . *Elle ne lui dit rien de d  sagr  -*
 able, . . . *able.*

No SUCH THING is rendered, in French, by *rien de tel*.

455. WHOEVER OR WHOMSOEVER, being used in an indefinite sense and relating to persons is, in French, *quiconque* ; as

Whoever does not observe that . . . *Quiconque n'observe pas cette*
 law is punished, . . . *loi est puni.*
 I promised to protect him a- . . . *J'ai promis de le prot  ger*
 gainst *whomsoever* should . . . *contre quiconque l'attaque-*
 attack him, . . . *rait.*

456. When WHOSOEVER, WHOMSOEVER OR WHATEVER, is used with a noun, it is in French *quelconque* ; as,

There is no man *whosoever* or . . . *Il n'y a pas d'homme quelcon-*
whatever, who does not know . . . *que qui ne sache cela.*
 that, . . .

In no way *whatever*, . . . *En nulle fa  on quelconque.*

457. WHOEVER, used in the sense of WHOEVER IT MAY BE, is often rendered in French, by *qui que ce soit qui*, and WHOMSOEVER, used in the same sense, by *qui que ce soit que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood ; as

Whoever has done that, he is . . . *Qui que ce soit qui ait fait cela,*
 a skilful man, . . . *c'est un habile homme.*

I shall inquire about it of *whomsoever* I shall meet, *Je m'en informerai à quiconque je rencontrerai, or à qui que ce soit que je rencontre.*

458. *WHATEVER*, relating to things, is differently rendered in French; sometimes by *quelque* or *quelques*, with *que* after the following noun, and the following verb in the subjunctive; as

Whatever fortune you may have, you should never be proud, *Quelque fortune que vous ayez vous ne devriez jamais être orgueilleux.*

Whatever good actions you have done, you will be rewarded for them, *Quelques bonnes actions que vous ayez faites, vous en serez récompensé.*

459. *WHATEVER* is sometimes rendered by *quoique*; *quoique ce soit qui*, for the nominative; *quoique ce soit que*, for the object; *tout ce qui*, for the nominative, and *tout ce que*, for the object: which expressions require the following verb in the subjunctive mood; except *tout ce qui* and *tout ce que*, which require no particular mood; as,

Whatever I may do, I shall never succeed, *Quoique je fasse je ne réussirai jamais.*

Whatever afflicts you, I am very sorry for it, *Quoique ce soit qui vous afflige, j'en suis bien fâché.*

Whatever you may say, you will not alter my opinion, *Quoique ce soit que vous disiez, vous ne changerez pas mon opinion.*

Whatever displeases me, it is his ingratitude, *Tout ce qui me déplaît, c'est son ingratitude.*

Whatever I desire, it is his consent, *Tout ce que je désire, c'est son consentement.*

EXERCISE 210.

I have often been told, that one should never undertake more than he can perform. But no one thinks, that, when he has done something, he cannot do more; and I know nobody wise enough to say: 'I want nobody's assistance, I am now rich enough; I shall do no more business, I shall only apply myself to do good to others.'—Of all the men that we have seen, no one is in favour of that decision; but not a single one, of those who proposed it, is of our party.—How do you know it?—

⁴³⁸ Some one told it to me ; and I am sure of it.—⁴³⁸ Have you seen any of our friends lately ?—Yes ; I have seen several.—¹⁷⁴ When ?—To-day.

EXERCISE 211.

Where are the penknives that I bought yesterday ?—I have one, my brother another, ⁴⁴⁰ my sister another, and the others are in the drawer of your table.—Have your brother and sister learnt their lessons ?—Yes ; and they have recited them to each other.—Do all the scholars of your class always know their lessons well ?—Some know them very well ; others tolerably well ; and others sometimes cannot recite a single word.—Are they all good ?—Some are pretty bad, but the others are generally very good.—I have been told, that several were not only lazy, but even disobedient, and sometimes insolent.—There are some, but they are few in number.

EXERCISE 212.

Which of those two boys shall I send you ?—You may send them both ; but, if you cannot, either will fulfil my object.—And these two girls, would you not like them as well as either of those boys ?—No ; they are both too young ; neither could perform what I have to do.—But you will not have to pay as much for those two girls as for either of those boys.—No matter ! These girls would probably disturb one another by talking to each other.—You think so, because you do not know them ; I assure you, that, among all the girls of this establishment, there is not a single one more industrious than these two ; they may sometimes help each other, but they will never hinder each other.

EXERCISE 213.

Times are such now that every one is obliged to be prudent and economical ; and such, as are not economical, will soon have spent their fortune. Such individuals are incapable of doing much business. But the man, who deprives himself of the most necessary things, when he is rich, is a miser ; and such an individual does not deserve the least consideration.—Do you know Mr. C. ?—Yes ; but he is such an avaricious man, that I do not cultivate his acquaintance.—So, you do not like such men as Mr. C. ; and I think also that no one should like them ; be-

cause every miser, as well as every bad man and bad woman, should be despised by every good citizen.

EXERCISE 214.

What have you done to-day?—Not knowing whether there was any thing to do, I have done nothing.—So, if you have done nothing good, you have done nothing bad.—Yes, sir.—I hope that, another time, you will not remain idle, because I dismiss from my house whomsoever does not employ his time profitably; this is my rule, and whoever does not like it must not come to my house. I am going to write, and, whoever may come, say that I am very much engaged, and that I can see nobody.—But if it were an officer?—No matter! Whatever office he may fill, whatever fortune he may have, whatever consideration he may enjoy, tell him that I can see nobody.

TABLE OF PRONOUNS,

AND IMPORTANT OBSERVATIONS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Substantive Personal.	Active Verbal.	Passive Verbal
<i>moi,</i> . . .	<i>je,</i> . . .	<i>me.</i>
<i>toi,</i> . . .	<i>tu,</i> . . .	<i>te.</i>
<i>lui,</i> . . .	<i>il,</i> . . .	<i>le, lui.</i>
<i>elle,</i> . . .	<i>elle,</i> . . .	<i>la, lui.</i>
<i>soi,</i> . . .	<i>on,</i> . . .	<i>se.</i>
<i>nous,</i> . . .	<i>nous,</i> . . .	<i>nous.</i>
<i>vous,</i> . . .	<i>vous,</i> . . .	<i>vous.</i>
<i>eux,</i> . . .	<i>ils,</i> . . .	{ <i>se, les, leur.</i>
<i>elles,</i> . . .	<i>elles,</i> . . .	
		<i>y, en.</i>

For using correctly these pronouns, it is especially necessary to remember that the first, the Substantive Personal, are used as independent nominatives, that is, when they are not immediately connected with a verb, and as objects of prepositions; but not as nominatives or objects of any verb. The second, the Active Verbal, are always used as nominatives to verbs and connected

with them, and never as independent nominatives. The third, the Passive Verbal, are never used except as objects of verbs.

From which it may be perceived, that the distinction of Substantive and Verbal Pronouns is properly made; since the former are used independently of the verb, and the two others are never used without it. Therefore, when the object of a verb is a pronoun, the passive verbal pronouns should be employed instead of the substantive personal; though *moi* and *toi* are sometimes used as objects of a verb; but it is only with the imperative and for *à moi*, *à toi*, and in a few other exceptional instances. And when the object of a preposition is a personal pronoun, the passive verbal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, &c. should never be made use of.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

<i>le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes,</i>	mine.
<i>le tien,</i>	<i>la tienne,</i>	<i>les tiens,</i>	<i>les tiennes,</i>	thine.
<i>le sien,</i>	<i>la sienne,</i>	<i>les siens,</i>	<i>les siennes,</i>	his, hers, its.
<i>le nôtre,</i>	<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>		ours.
<i>le vôtre,</i>	<i>la vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>		yours.
<i>le leur,</i>	<i>la leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>		theirs.

In using *le nôtre*, *la nôtre*, *les nôtres*, *le vôtre*, *la vôtre*, *les vôtres*, one should be careful to put the accent circumflex over the *o*, and not to put it in *notre*, *votre*, the possessive articles.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

INDEFINITE.

<i>ceci,</i>	.	.	.	this (for this thing.)
<i>cela,</i>	.	.	.	that (for that thing.)

DEFINITE.

<i>celui,</i>	<i>celle,</i>	<i>ceux,</i>	<i>celles,</i>	this, that, these, those,	{ used before a preposition or a relative pronoun.
<i>celui-ci,</i>	<i>celle-ci,</i>	<i>ceux-ci,</i>	<i>celles-ci,</i>	this, these,	{ used when not followed by a preposition or a
<i>celui-là,</i>	<i>celle-là,</i>	<i>ceux-là,</i>	<i>celles-là,</i>	that, those,	relative pronoun.
<i>ce,</i>	.	.	.	this, that,	used as a nominative verbal pronoun.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

DEFINITE.

<i>lequel</i> ,	<i>laquelle</i> ,	<i>lesquels</i> ,	<i>lesquelles</i> ,	which, which one.
<i>duquel</i> ,	<i>de laquelle</i> ,	<i>desquels</i> ,	<i>desquelles</i> ,	of <i>or</i> from which, or which one.
<i>auquel</i> ,	<i>à laquelle</i> ,	<i>auxquels</i> ,	<i>auxquelles</i> ,	to <i>or</i> at which, <i>or</i> which one.

INDEFINITE.

<i>qui</i> ,	. . .	who,	} when relating to persons.
<i>qui est-ce qui</i> ,		who,	
<i>qui est-ce que</i> ,		whom,	
<i>que</i> ,	. . .	what,	when not the object of any preposition.
<i>quoi</i> ,	. . .	what,	when the object of any preposition.
<i>qu'est-ce qui</i> ,		what,	as a nominative.
<i>qu'est-ce que</i> ,		what,	as an object.

The last four relating to things only.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

<i>qui</i> ,	. . .	who, whom, that.
<i>de qui</i> ,	<i>dont</i> ,	. . . whose, of <i>or</i> from whom.
<i>que</i> ,	. . .	what, that.
<i>de quoi</i> ,	<i>dont</i> ,	. . . of <i>or</i> from what <i>or</i> that.
<i>à quoi</i> ,	. . .	to <i>or</i> at what.

<i>lequel</i> ,	<i>laquelle</i> ,	<i>lesquels</i> ,	<i>lesquelles</i> ,	which.
<i>duquel</i> ,	<i>de laquelle</i> ,	<i>desquels</i> ,	<i>desquelles</i> ,	of <i>or</i> from which.
<i>auquel</i> ,	<i>à laquelle</i> ,	<i>auxquels</i> ,	<i>auxquelles</i> ,	to <i>or</i> at which.

It may be noticed, that *dont* is the only relative pronoun that is not interrogative.

Qui, *dont*, and *que*, are used relating either to persons or things ; but *quoi* is used only when, relating to things, it is the object of a preposition.

DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS.

Masculine.

Feminine.

chacun,*chacune*,

. each one, every one.

INDEFINITE, COLLECTIVE AND NEGATIVE PRONOUNS.

<i>On</i> , . . .	one, used only as nominative verbal pronoun.
<i>nul, nulle...ne</i> ,	no one, nobody, is both an article and a pronoun, but never used as an object when a pronoun.
<i>personne...ne</i> ,	no one, nobody, any one, any body.
<i>quelqu'un</i> ,	some one, any one, somebody, (<i>indefinite</i> .)
<i>l'un, l'une</i> ,	one, the one,
<i>les uns, les unes</i> ,	ones, the ones.
<i>l'autre</i> ,	the other.
<i>les autres</i> ,	the others.
<i>l'un ou autre, l'une ou l'autre</i> ,	} either.
<i>les uns ou les autres, les unes ou les autres</i> ,	
<i>ni l'un ni l'autre, ni l'une ni l'autre</i> ,	} neither.
<i>ni les uns ni les autres, ni les unes ni les autres</i> ,	
<i>l'un et l'autre, l'une et l'autre</i> ,	} both,
<i>les uns et les autres, les unes et les autres</i> ,	
<i>l'un l'autre, l'une l'autre</i> ,	} each other, one another.
<i>les uns les autres, les unes les autres</i> ,	
<i>autrui</i> , . . .	others, used only after a preposition.
<i>tel qui, telle qui</i> ,	} such as.
<i>tels qui, telles qui</i> ,	
<i>tout</i> , . . .	every thing.
<i>rien</i> , . . .	nothing.
<i>quiconque</i> , . . .	whoever, whosoever, whomsoever.
<i>qui que ce soit qui</i> ,	whoever.
<i>qui que ce soit que</i> ,	whomsoever.
<i>quiconque</i> , . . .	whoever, whomsoever.
<i>quoique ce soit qui</i> ,	} whatever.
<i>quoique ce soit que</i> ,	
<i>tout ce qui</i> ,	
<i>tout ce que</i> ,	

COMPARATIVE AND PRACTICAL TABLE OF ARTICLES AND PRONOUNS.

ARTICLES.

Articles définis.

le, la, l', les,
du, de la, de l', des,
au, à la, à l', aux.

Articles indéfinis.

un, une,
quelque, quelques, des.

Article collectif.

plusieurs.

Articles partitifs.

du, de la, de l', des.

Articles possessifs.

mon, ma, mes.

ton, ta, tes.
son, sa, ses.
notre, nos.
votre, vos.
leur, leurs.

Articles démonstratifs.

ce, cet, cette, ces.

Articles interrogatifs.

puel, quelle, quels, quelles,

PRONOMS.

Pronoms relatifs.

qui, dont, que, *quoi,
lequel, laquelle, lesquels,
lesquelles.

Pronoms indéfinis.

quelqu'un, *relating only to persons.*
...quelqu'un, ...quelqu'une, ...quel-
ques uns, ..quelques unes.

Pronom collectif.

...plusieurs.

Pronoms partitifs.

...un peu, ...un morceau, ...une
partie, &c., ...quelques uns,
...quelques unes.

Pronoms possessifs.

le mien la mienne, les miens, les
miennes.
le tien, &c.
le sien, &c.
le nôtre, &c.
le vôtre, &c.
le leur, &c.

Pronoms démonstratifs.

ceci, cela, *indéfinis.*
celui, celle, ceux, celles, *définis,*
used when a relative pronoun or
a preposition follows.
celui-ci, celle-ci, &c. } *used when*
celui-là, celle-là, &c. } *no relative*
pronoun nor preposition follows.

Pronoms interrogatifs.

lequel, laquelle, lesquels, les-
quelles, *définis.*
qui, que, quoi, *indéfinis.*

* It should be remembered, that *quoi* is not used without a preposition. — Although the

ARTICLES.

PRONOMS.

*Articles distributifs.**Pronoms distributifs.*

chaque.

| chacun, chacune.

*Articles négatifs.**Pronoms négatifs.*

nul, nulle, nuls, nulles.

| nul, *in an indefinite sense for no-body.*

aucun, aucune, aucuns, aucunes.

| ...aucun, ...aucune.

| ...pas un, ...pas une.

The practical advantage that can be derived from this comparative table is the greater, as it renders the distinction of articles and pronouns more striking. To use it advantageously it is only necessary to remember that *all* the articles, or adjective pronouns, no matter for the name, that is, those of the column on the left are never used, unless the noun to which they relate is expressed with and after them, and that *all* must agree in gender and number with that following noun ; and if there are several nouns together, used as nominatives or objects of the same verb or preposition, they must *all* be repeated before every noun, and agree in gender and number with each one. In a word, the use of *them all* is regulated by the same rules. The pronouns, on the contrary, are used only when the nouns to which they relate are not expressed with them.

It may be noticed, that every article has a corresponding pronoun ; however, it is necessary to observe, that those, that are preceded by several dots, always require the passive verbal pronoun *en* before the verb of which they are the object.

With this passive verbal pronoun, used with the verb that has for object an adverb of quantity, or a cardinal number, that adverb or cardinal number become pronouns, and they cannot be used as such without *en* ; as,

Have you any books ?

Avez-vous des livres ?

I have a great many,

J'en ai beaucoup.

relative pronouns are placed opposite the definite articles, they should not be considered as being their corresponding pronouns more than of any other articles.

I have four,	.	.	<i>J'en ai quatre.</i>
I have some,	.	.	<i>J'en ai quelques uns.</i>
I have good ones,	.		<i>J'en ai de bons.</i>
I have beautiful ones,	.		<i>J'en ai de beaux.</i>

The two last examples show, that adjectives too become pronouns with *en* before the verb to which they are the object, but that they require the preposition *de* before them, whether they are preceded or not by a cardinal number or an adverb of quantity, or a noun of quantity :

Have you tulips ?	<i>Avez-vous des tulipes ?</i>
I have many very beautiful ones,	<i>J'en ai beaucoup de belles.</i>
I have twelve red ones, and about twenty yellow ones,	<i>J'en ai douze de rouges, et une vingtaine de jaunes.</i>

Participles become pronouns in the same way. Perhaps this idea concerning adverbs, numbers, adjectives, and participles becoming pronouns may not be well received by scrupulous grammarians ; but, in adopting it, we only mean, that those parts of speech are made to represent nouns, when used with *en* before the verb of which they are the object.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

460. Nouns have generally but one gender; however, there are some that take either gender, according as they are used in the singular or plural, and also according to the meaning they are intended to convey.

461. *Amour*, LOVE; *délice*, DELIGHT; *orgue*, ORGAN (an instrument for music); are masculine in the singular, and feminine in the plural; as

He was instigated by a foolish love, but foolish affections are generally violent,	<i>Il fut poussé par un fol amour, mais les folles amours sont généralement violentes.</i>
--	--

There is a beautiful organ in that church,	<i>Il y a un bel orgue, or de belles orgues dans cette église.</i>
--	--

You found the greatest delight in living together,	<i>Vous trouviez les plus grandes délices en vivant ensemble.</i>
--	---

462. NOTE. *Amours* is feminine only when used in the sense of affection; it would be masculine, if it meant CUPIDS, or representations of them, or, by analogy, of little children.

463. *Aigle* is feminine, when it means AN ENSIGN; as

The American eagle, . . .	<i>L'aigle Américaine.</i>
---------------------------	----------------------------

The imperial eagle, . . .	<i>L'aigle impériale.</i>
---------------------------	---------------------------

464. But it is masculine when used in any other sense; as

The proud and courageous eagle is the emblem of power,	<i>L'aigle fier et courageux est l'emblème de la puissance.</i>
--	---

465. *Automne*, AUTUMN, is of either gender; but the masculine is preferred by all grammarians, the names of the other seasons being masculine.

466. *Couple*, A COUPLE, is of the masculine gender when it especially represents a male and a female of any living beings ; but it is often used, in French, instead of the number *deux*, two, without reference to sex, and then it is feminine.

Une couple de pigeons, means merely TWO PIGEONS, perhaps both male or female.

Un couple de pigeons, means especially A MALE AND A FEMALE.

467. *Enfant*, CHILD, is masculine when a little boy is meant, and feminine when a little girl.

468. *Exemple*, EXAMPLE, is of the masculine gender ; but when it is used to represent A COPY OR MODEL for writing, it is feminine.

469. *Foudre*, meaning THE LIGHTNING, is feminine when used without an adjective ; but if it is used with an adjective, it is either masculine or feminine.

470. *Gens*, PEOPLE, PERSONS, requires in the feminine the adjectives or pronouns which precede it, and in the masculine those that follow it ; as

Old people are generally suspicious,	<i>Les vieilles gens sont généralement soupçonneux.</i>
--------------------------------------	---

471. However, the masculine *tous* is used instead of the feminine *toutes*, 1st, when that adjective is the only one that precedes the noun *gens* ; as

All persons who think well act well,	<i>Tous les gens qui pensent bien agissent bien.</i>
--------------------------------------	--

472. 2d. When *gens* is preceded by an adjective that ends in the masculine with a silent *e*, as *aimable*, *utile*, *brave*, &c.

All honest men are esteemed,	<i>Tous les honnêtes gens sont estimés.</i>
------------------------------	---

All skilful people find employment,	<i>Tous les habiles gens trouvent de l'emploi.</i>
-------------------------------------	--

473. *Hymne*, A HYMN sung in church, is feminine ; as
Santeuil and Coffin composed the beautiful hymns of the breviary of Paris,
Santeuil et Coffin ont composé les belles hymnes du bréviaire de Paris.

But in any other acceptation, it is masculine ; as

The Marseillaise is one of the most beautiful hymns that were ever sung, *La Marseillaise est un des plus beaux hymnes qui aient été chantés.*

474. *Chose*, preceded by *quelque*, forming a kind of compound word that means SOMETHING, is masculine ; but, without being preceded by *quelque*, it is always feminine ; and, if after SOMETHING follows an adjective or a past participle, *quelque chose* requires the preposition *de* before it ; as

He has done something that should be reproved, *Il a fait quelque chose qui devrait être blâmé.*

He has done a thing that should be reproved, *Il a fait une chose qui devrait être blâmée.*

I have seen something very astonishing, *J'ai vu quelque chose de bien étonnant.*

I have something good to give you, *J'ai quelque chose de bon à vous donner.*

Something new was announced for this evening, *On a annoncé quelque chose de nouveau pour ce soir.*

475. Remark that, in the last example, the construction of the French phrase is different from the English ; for the literal translation of *on a annoncé quelque chose de nouveau pour ce soir* is, ONE HAS ANNOUNCED SOMETHING NEW FOR THIS EVENING. The English SOMETHING NEW WAS ANNOUNCED, might be translated literally and yet be correct, thus, *quelque chose de nouveau a été annoncé*, but this form is not considered so good as that with *on*. From which we conclude, that when an English passive phrase might be changed into an active, it is often best to do it, using for nominative of the French verb the object of the preposition *BY* ; or the pronoun *ON*, if there be no preposition expressed.

The world was made by God, *Dieu a créé le monde.*

Something is expected from you, *On attend quelque chose de vous.*

EXERCISE 215.

NOTE. When a number that refers to the gender of a substantive is placed over an adjective or a participle, it is to show the student in what gender that adjective or participle must be.

Although the first organs are of a very ancient origin, all historians relate, that the first that were heard in France were given to Pepin by

the Emperor Constantine Copronymé, in seven hundred and fifty-seven.¹²
 —What delight can be compared to that which a good action procures!^{461 461 461}
 —Vertumnus presided over the gathering of fruit; that is the reason³⁹⁴
 why poets sometimes take him for Autumn itself.⁴⁶⁵—Pygmalion did not
 know good people; for such people do not approach an immoral king.—^{470 470}
 I want a couple of books for a young couple lately married.^{466 466 466 466}

EXERCISE 216.

‘My dear child,’ said a mother to her young daughter, ‘you must²⁵⁴
 follow the example of your sister; she is always attentive to the⁴⁶⁸
 lessons of her teachers, and copies perfectly well all the best
 models in calligraphy, in order to learn perfectly the art of writing.’^{468 118 128 124}
 Certain persons spend all their life in studying; and when they die,
 they have learnt almost every thing, except how to think.^{132 125}—Almost
 every Christian country has its own national hymn;⁴⁷³ but very few are
 more beautiful than the religious hymns that are sung in churches.^{474 473 473 475} I
 have seen a thing that seems very complicated; but in that thing^{474 474 474}
 there is something that is particularly astonishing on account of its
 beauty, simplicity, and perfection.

PLURAL OF NOUNS.

476. There are nouns that never take a plural termination, although sometimes they are used to convey a plural meaning. They are, 1st, proper names, whose orthography should not be altered; as

Spain prides itself in having given birth to the two
Senecas, *L'Espagne se glorifie d'avoir donné naissance aux deux Sénèque.*

The two *Corneilles* were born in Rouen, *Les deux Corneille sont nés à Rouen.*

477. Except, however, when they are used as common nouns, that is, to represent individuals like those whose names are employed; as

France has had her *Cæsars* and *Pompeys,* *La France a eu ses Césars et ses Pompées.*

478. 2d. Nouns taken from foreign languages, and that are

not yet considered as French words: as *des alléluia*, ALLELUIAS; *des avé*, AVES (prayers to the virgin); *des auto-da-fé*, AUTODAFES; *des alinéa*, PARAGRAPHS; *des te deum*, TE DEUMS; *des post-scriptum*, POST SCRIPTUMS; &c. However, it is proper to write *des factums*, CASES (reports of cases before a court of justice); *des débets*, DEBITS; *des bravos*, BRAVOS; *des opéras*, OPERAS; because these words are so frequently used that they have become French words.

479. 3d. Words that are always invariable, such as adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, &c.

480. Compound nouns, that is, those that are composed of several words, take the mark of the plural, according to the kind and sense of the words of which they are formed.

481. 1st RULE. When a noun is composed of a substantive and an adjective, both take the plural termination; as

un gentilhomme, a gentleman, *des gentilshommes*, gentlemen.
une basse-taille, a counter-tenor, *des basses-tailles*, counter-tenors.
un plain chant, a plain chant, *des plains chants*, plain chants.

482. Except

des blanc seings, . blank papers with a signature on them.
des terre-pleins, . . platforms of earth.
des cheveu-légers, . light-horses.
des grand'mères, . grandmothers, and all grand relations.
des grand'messes, . high masses.

483. NOTE. When into a compound noun enters a word that is never used alone, both take a plural termination; as

une pie-grièche, . . . a speckled magpie.
des pies-grièches, . . . speckled magpies.
un loup-garou, . . . a ware-wolf.
des loups-garous, . . . ware-wolves.

484. 2d RULE. When the compound noun is formed of two substantives, without any other word between them, both take the plural termination; as

un chef-lieu, . . . a shire-town.
des chefs-lieux, . . . shire-towns.

<i>un chou-fleur,</i>	.	.	.	.	a cauliflower.
<i>des choux-fleurs,</i>	.	.	.	.	cauliflowers.

485. Except

<i>un becfigue,</i>	.	.	.	.	a fig-pecker.
<i>des becfigues,</i>	.	.	.	.	fig-peckers.
<i>un appui-main,</i>	.	.	.	.	a maul-stick.
<i>des appuis-main,</i>	.	.	.	.	maul-sticks.
<i>un brèche-dent,</i>	.	.	.	.	a toothless.
<i>des brèche-dents,</i>	.	.	.	.	several toothless.
<i>un hôtel-Dieu,</i>	.	.	.	.	a hospital.
<i>des hôtels-Dieu,</i>	.	.	.	.	hospitals.

486. 3d RULE. When a compound noun is formed of two substantives and a preposition between them, the first only takes the plural termination ; as,

<i>un ciel-de-lit,</i>	.	.	.	.	a tester of a bed.
<i>des ciels-de-lit,</i>	.	.	.	.	testers of beds.
<i>un chef-d'œuvre,</i>	.	.	.	.	a master-piece.
<i>des chefs-d'œuvre,</i>	.	.	.	.	master-pieces.

487. Except

<i>des coq-à-l'âne,</i>	.	.	idle discourses, nonsense.
<i>des pied-à-terre,</i>	.		places to stop at.
<i>des tête-à-tête,</i>	.	.	tete-a-tetes, private conversations.

488. 4th RULE. When a compound noun is formed of a substantive and a verb, a preposition or an adverb, the substantive alone takes the plural termination, if it conveys a plural idea by representing several individuals or objects ; as,

<i>des avant-coureurs,</i>	.	.	forerunners ;
<i>des arrière-saisons</i>	.	.	latter end of autumn ;

in which the words *coureurs*, *saisons*, convey the idea of several runners and several seasons. The following are written without the mark of the plural ; thus,

<i>des serre-tête,</i>	.	.	.	.	night-caps ;
<i>des réveille-matin,</i>	.	.	.	.	alarm-bells ;
<i>des contre-poison,</i>	.	.	.	.	antidotes ;

because the words *tête*, *matin*, and *poison*, convey to the mind the idea of only ONE HEAD, ONE MORNING, and ONE POISON.

489. But, *essuie-mains*, . . . towel ;
cure-dents, . . . tooth-pick ;
porte-clefs, . . . key-ring ;
porte-mouchettes, . . . snuffers-pan ;

whether in the singular or plural, have a plural termination, because *mains*, *dents*, *clefs*, *mouchettes*, convey to the mind the idea of several HANDS, TEETH, and KEYS ; MOUCHETTES is plural because it is never used in the singular.

490. 5th RULE. When a compound noun is formed of invariable words, such as a verb, a preposition, an adverb or a conjunction, neither takes the plural termination ; as,

- des pour-boire*, . presents in money.
des pince-sans-rire, . sulky, malicious, designing men.
des passe-passe, . juggler's tricks.
des passe-partout, &c. master-keys.

EXERCISE 217.

There is no doubt that, in the most remote antiquity, there have been
⁴⁷⁷Alexanders and ⁴⁷⁷Cæsars, whose exploits have been forgotten.—Spain
prides herself of her ⁴⁷⁶Seneques, the same as France does of her ⁴⁷⁶Racines
and ⁴⁷⁶Rousseaus.—There is often more information in small books, than
in large ⁴⁷⁸folios.—Flying ⁴⁸¹fish are seen only in the Atlantic ⁴⁷⁵ocean.—
There are in France eighty-six shire-towns of ⁴⁸⁴prefecture.—Are not the
Cid, ⁴⁸⁶Athalie, ⁴⁸⁶Alzire, and ⁴⁸⁶Merope, dramatic master-pieces ?—They are.—
There are persons who at first appear witty, and who are found very
ignorant and stupid after two or three ⁴⁸⁷tête-à-têtes.—Silk-worms are raised
on mulberry-trees in Italy.—Idleness and indolence are the ⁴⁸⁸forerunners
of misery.—The Indians of America are armed with tomahawks.—
Though the beauties of Virgil are great, Christian poetry presents some-
thing superior.—⁴⁸¹Owls are generally found in the woods and in the ruins
of old buildings.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF ARTICLES.

OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLES.

491. The definite article must be expressed before common nouns which are used in a definite sense, that is, which represent or bring to the mind a whole species of individuals or objects, or a particular individual or object; see No. 35; although in English, the definite article is used only before common nouns, whose signification is determined by being limited to one, or to a certain number of particular individuals or objects.

Man is rather feeble than wicked, *L'homme est plutôt faible que méchant.*

The diseases of the soul are more difficult to cure than those *of the body*, *Les maladies de l'âme sont plus difficiles à guérir que celles du corps.*

Explanation. In the first example, the definite article is used in French, though it is not expressed in English, because the word *homme* is used to convey to the mind the idea of the whole species of men, for it means here *tous les hommes*, ALL MEN. In the second, the definite article is used, both in French and in English, before *maladies*, DISEASES, *âme*, SOUL, and *corps*, BODY, because the extent of their signification is determined, being limited by the words that follow them.

492. The definite article is also used before the names of countries, provinces, rivers, seas and mountains.

Europe, Asia, and Africa were the only parts of the world known by the ancients, America having not been discovered till fourteen hundred and ninety-two, *L'Europe, l'Asie, et l'Afrique étaient les seules parties du monde connues des anciens, l'Amérique n'ayant été découverte qu'en quatorze cent quatre-vingt-douze.*

Explanation. In this example, the definite article is used, in French, before the words *Europe*, *Asie*, *Afrique* and *Amérique*, according to the rule 492, although it is not expressed in English.

493. When any other part of speech except a noun is used as a noun, it always takes, in French, the masculine definite article; as,

We must prefer the useful to the agreeable, *Nous devons préférer l'utile à l'agréable.*

Whatever fools may say, knowledge has its value, *Quoique disent les sots le savoir a son prix.*

494. When a proper name is used with an adjective, the definite article must be used before that adjective, whether that adjective be placed before or after the name ; as,

Little Frances had not yet come, *La petite Françoise n'était pas encore venue.*

Napoleon the great died at St. Helena, *Napoléon le grand est mort à Ste. Hélène.*

The great Washington was the father of America, *Washington le grand est le père de l'Amérique.*

495. The definite article is used in French with nouns expressing MEASURE, WEIGHT, OR NUMBER, although the English use the indefinite article A OR AN ; as,

That cheese is worth twenty cents a pound, *Ce fromage vaut vingt sous la livre.*

The cloth of my coat cost me ten dollars a yard, *Le drap de mon habit me coûte dix dollars l'aune.*

Chickens are sold now for thirty cents a pair, *Les poulets se vendent à présent trente sous la paire.*

496. But the article is supplied by the preposition *par* before nouns expressing any division of TIME OR LABOUR ; as,

That French teacher has one dollar a lesson, and he comes three times a week, *Ce maître de Français a un dollar par leçon, et il vient trois fois par semaine.*

Our mason charges for that wall twenty-five cents a foot, *Notre maçon fait payer pour ce mur vingt-cinq sous par pied.*

497. It has already been said, that when an adjective is placed before a noun used in a partitive sense, the partitive article instead of being *du, de la, de l',* or *des,* is merely the preposition *de,* the definite article not being expressed ; as,

Give me some good bread, *Donnez-moi de bon pain.*

I drink excellent beer, *Je bois d'excellente bière.*

You have beautiful horses, *Vous avez de beaux chevaux.*

498. But, if the noun used in a partitive sense and the adjective placed before it were connected by the sense, in such a manner as to form a kind of compound noun, such as *petits-pois,* GREEN PEAS ; *petit-pâté,* PETTY PATEE ; *petit-maître,* FOP ; *petite-maîtresse,* COQUETTE ; *bon-mot,* WITTICISM ; *jeunes gens,* YOUNG

PEOPLE ; *petite-maison*, MAD-HOUSE ; *grand homme*, GREAT MAN ; &c. then it takes the definite article with the preposition *de* ; as I know nothing so tedious as *Je ne connais rien d'aussi ennuyeux que des petits-mâitres.*

A grandfather feels proud when he is surrounded by *grand-sons*, and *grand-daughters*, *Un grand père se sent fier lorsqu'il est entouré par des petits-fils et des petites-filles.*

499. The definite article is not used before common nouns whose signification is not determined, or which do not represent a whole kind or species of individuals or objects, or a certain part of that kind or species, or a certain individual or object ; (See No. 35.) ; as,

A *marble* table, *Une table de marbre.*

A *wooden* house, *Une maison de bois.*

A man without *merit*, *Un homme sans mérite.*

To behave with *prudence*, *Se conduire avec prudence.*

Explanation. In these examples, no particular kind or species of MARBLE, WOOD, MERIT, or PRUDENCE, is meant rather than any other, therefore the words MARBLE, WOOD, MERIT, and PRUDENCE, are in an entirely vague and indefinite sense.

500. For the same reason the definite article is not used before a noun that is preceded by the preposition *de*, when it is the object of a collective noun or an adverb of quantity ; as,

He was assaulted by a multitude of persons, and he had much difficulty to escape, *Il fut assailli par une multitude de personnes, et il eut beaucoup de peine à s'échapper.*

501. However, when the extent of the signification of the noun is determined by what follows, the definite should be used with the preposition *de* ; as

A great number of the persons that I have seen had straw hats, *Un grand nombre des personnes que j'ai vues avaient des chapeaux de paille.*

I have sold many of the books that I bought last week, *J'ai vendu beaucoup des livres que j'achetai la semaine dernière.*

Explanation. In the first example, *des* is used before *personnes*, because the extent of the signification of that noun is determined by what follows, namely, *que j'ai vues* ; no article is used before *paille*, because that word is employed in an indefinite sense, since it represents neither a whole kind or species of objects, nor any particular part of any kind or

species of objects. In the second example, *livres* is preceded by the preposition and article *des*, because the extent of its signification is determined by what follows, namely, *que j'achetai, &c.*

502. The definite article is also used after *la plupart de*, MOST OF THE GREATER PART OF ; *bien*, MANY, MUCH ; as,

Most men are industrious, . *La plupart des hommes sont industriels.*

Many countries are not yet civilised, *Bien des pays ne sont pas encore civilisés.*

503. The preposition *de* is used without the definite article before a noun which is the object of an active verb used with a negation ; as,

I shall not make you any reproach, *Je ne vous ferai pas de reproches.*

504. Except when the noun is followed by an adjective or relative pronoun that determines the extent of its signification ; as, I shall not make you frivolous *Je ne vous ferai pas des reproches frivoles.*

505. However, the definite article should also be used with the preposition *de*, before the object of a verb that is used interrogatively, although it were with a negation, because then that noun is used in a partitive or limited sense ; as,

Has he not money ? . . *N'a-t-il pas de l'argent ?*

Are we not exposed to misfortunes ? *Ne sommes-nous pas exposés à des malheurs ?*

506. The definite article is used before names of countries when employed in a definite sense, see Nos. 35 and 492, but is omitted before them when used in an indefinite sense. The names of countries are employed in a definite sense when they bring to the mind the idea of the whole territory or nation, and in an indefinite sense when they do not bring to the mind the whole territory or nation, but seem to be employed as adjectives to determine the signification of the preceding noun ; as

The nobility of France, . *La noblesse de France.*

The greatness of France, . *La grandeur de la France.*

Explanation. In the first example, OF FRANCE is used as an adjective, merely to qualify the preceding noun NOBILITY, to distinguish it from any other nobility ; therefore it does not bring to mind the idea of the whole FRANCE as a substantive, and is used in an indefinite sense, and consequently without article. In the second example, OF FRANCE brings

to the mind the whole of France as a substantive, to which the expressed greatness belongs ; it is therefore used in a definite sense, and accordingly the definite article is expressed before it.

507. The definite article is never omitted before those names of countries of which it is itself a part ; as *La Guadeloupe, La Martinique, La Jamaïque, La Grenade, La Barbade, La Trinité, La Dominique, Le Milanais, &c.*

508. The definite article is generally omitted, in French, before the titles of books, chapters, memoirs, &c. and the names of places and residence, when limited to streets courts, squares, &c. of cities, although it may be expressed in English ; and, in this last instance, the preposition *IN* is not to be expressed.

General observations on the state of Europe,	<i>Observations générales sur l'état de l'Europe.</i>
---	---

Preface,	<i>Préface.</i>
--------------------	-----------------

Mr. C. lives in Washington street, No. 24, and Mr. D. in Otis place, No. 12,	<i>M. C. demeure rue Washington, No. 24, et M. D. place Otis, No. 12.</i>
--	---

The adventures of Telema- chus, seventh book, third par- agraph,	<i>Aventures de Télémaque, livre septième, paragraphe troi- sième.</i>
--	--

NOTE. It may be noticed in the second example, that the prepositions *IN* and *AT* are not expressed in French.

509. The definite article is not expressed, in French, as it is in English, before adverbs of comparison, or rather of quantity, when those adverbs are repeated, or used in opposition with other adverbs ; as,

<i>The more</i> a miser possesses, <i>the</i> <i>less</i> he spends,	<i>Plus un avare possède, moins il dépense.</i>
---	---

<i>The less</i> a scholar studies, <i>the</i> <i>less</i> he learns,	<i>Moins un écolier étudie, moins il apprend.</i>
---	---

<i>The sooner</i> Mr. L. sets out, <i>the</i> <i>sooner</i> he will come back,	<i>Plus tôt M. L. partira, plus tôt il reviendra.</i>
---	---

510. The definite article is not expressed before nouns used in a vocative sense, nor before those that are used as in a kind of parenthesis, expressing the profession, relationship, &c. of a noun expressed before ; as,

Alexander, <i>the son</i> of Philip,	<i>Alexandre, fils de Philippe.</i>
--------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

Mr. O. <i>the mayor</i> of the city,	<i>M. O. maire de la ville.</i>
Beautiful flowers, by you na- ture is adorned !	<i>Fleurs charmantes, par vous la nature est embellie !</i>
Soldiers ! The fate of your country is in your hands,	<i>Soldats ! Le salut de votre patrie est dans vos mains.</i>

511. When several nouns come together in a kind of enumeration, in order to give more vivacity and energy to the expression, the article is often omitted ; as

Citizens, strangers, enemies, na- tions, kings and emperors pity and reverence him,	<i>Citoyens, étrangers, ennemis, nations, rois et empereurs le plaignent et le révèrent.</i>
---	--

512. The article is omitted, in French, before nouns that are employed as adjectives after the verb *etre* ; as,

Falsehood is baseness, . . .	<i>Le mensonge est bassesse.</i>
Severity in the laws is human- ity towards the people,	<i>La sévérité dans les lois est humanité envers le peuple.</i>

513. The definite article, and indeed any article, should be repeated before every noun, when several are together the nominative or the object of a verb or a preposition, although either is expressed but once in English ; as,

<i>The</i> heart, mind, and manners, every thing, improves by cultivation,	<i>Le cœur, l'esprit, les mœurs, tout gagne à la culture.</i>
--	---

Therefore we must not say, as in English, THE OFFICERS AND SOLDIERS, *les officiers et soldats* ; MY FATHER AND MOTHER, *mon père et mère* ; HIS BROTHERS AND SISTERS, *ses frères et sœurs*, &c. ; but we should say for

<i>The</i> officers and soldiers, . . .	<i>Les officiers et les soldats.</i>
<i>My</i> father and mother, . . .	<i>Mon père et ma mère.</i>
<i>His</i> brothers and sisters, . . .	<i>Ses frères et ses sœurs.</i>

514. When two adjectives united by the conjunction AND, *et*, do not qualify the same noun, the article which is used with that noun should be repeated before every adjective, though it is expressed but once in English ; as

<i>The</i> old and young soldier,	<i>Le vieux et le jeune soldat.</i>
<i>My</i> large and small room,	<i>Ma grande et ma petite chambre.</i>

Explanation. In these phrases, TWO SOLDIERS and TWO ROOMS are meant, since they

are for THE OLD SOLDIER and THE YOUNG SOLDIER, *le vieux soldat et le jeune soldat* : THE LARGE ROOM AND THE SMALL ROOM, *la grande chambre et la petite chambre* ; therefore the articles are repeated.

515. But, if the two adjectives should relate to the same noun, the article should not be repeated ; as

The old and brave soldier, . *Le vieux et brave soldat.*

My large and beautiful room, *Ma grande et belle chambre.*

Explanation. In these phrases, it is evident that only one soldier who is old and brave, and one room which is large and beautiful, are meant ; therefore the articles are not repeated.

516. The definite article is omitted before nouns that are not taken in a definite sense after the prepositions *avec*, WITH ; *en*, IN ; *sans*, WITHOUT ; *par*, BY, &c. ; but if the nouns were qualified by an adjective, the indefinite article *un* or *une* should be used before them ; as,

He did it *with* complacency, *Il le fit avec complaisance.*

He received us *with* kindness, *Il nous reçut avec bonté.*

Mr. C. was *in* a passion, *M. C. était en colère.*

I shall receive you *without* ceremony, *Je vous recevrai sans cérémonie.*

I gave that to him *by* charity, *Je lui donnai cela par charité.*

The mole lives *under* ground, *La taupe vit sous terre.*

She answered me *with* great politeness, *Elle me répondit avec une grande politesse.*

He was waiting *with* apparent anxiety, *Il attendait avec une anxiété apparente.*

Explanation. In the two last examples, the indefinite article *une* is used after the preposition *avec*, because the following noun is qualified by an adjective.

517. When a preposition is preceded by a noun and followed by the same repeated noun, no article should be used before either ; as,

The miser's whole delight is to hoard up crown over crown, *Tout le plaisir de l'avare est d'accumuler écu sur écu.*

I have translated my exercise word by word, *J'ai traduit mon exercice mot à mot.*

The two champions were foot against foot, hand against hand, *Les deux champions étaient pied contre pied, main contre main.*

518. When a verb and a noun are used together, and bring to the mind but one idea, the article is omitted before the noun; as, *ajouter foi*, TO BELIEVE; *avoir envie*, TO MIND OR FANCY; *avoir besoin*, TO WANT; *faire peur*, TO FRIGHTEN; *faire tort*, TO WRONG; *prendre garde*, TO TAKE CARE OR TO BE CAREFUL, &c.; but, when the noun is qualified by an adjective or participle, it generally takes the indefinite article *un*, *une*, before it.

519. When a noun is used in an indefinite sense after the conjunction *ni*, NEITHER; *comme*, AS; *ne....que*, ONLY, BUT; it should be without an article; as,

Each of the two parties could endure <i>neither</i> magistrates <i>nor</i> authority in the opposite party,	<i>Chacun des deux partis ne pouvait souffrir ni magistrats ni autorité dans le parti opposé.</i>
---	---

Mr. C. has <i>neither</i> money <i>nor</i> credit,	<i>M. C. n'a ni argent ni crédit.</i>
--	---------------------------------------

I was announced <i>as a</i> member of that society,	<i>Je fus annoncé comme membre de cette société.</i>
---	--

I found there <i>but</i> wickedness, egotism, injustice, oppression and disorder,	<i>Je n'y trouvai que méchanceté, égoïsme, injustice, oppression et désordre.</i>
---	---

520. Sometimes to express the profession of certain individuals the English place before the words MASTER, TEACHER, MAKER, &c. a noun, an adjective, or a present participle, denoting the object of that profession; in which case, the French first write the word corresponding to MASTER, &c. and after it a noun corresponding to the present participle or noun that is first expressed in English, with the preposition *de* before it; as

A French teacher,	. . .	<i>Un maître de Français.</i>
A dancing master,	. . .	<i>Un maître de danse.</i>
A hat maker,	. . .	<i>Un fabriquant de chapeaux.</i>

Remark that in the last example the singular noun HAT is rendered by the plural *chapeaux*, because in English the singular number is evidently used for the plural HATS. But the preceding rule is not observed, when there is in French a word expressing the two words of the English; as

Shoe-maker, . is in French . *Cordonnier*.
 Boot-maker, . is in French . *Bottier*.
 Book-binder, &c. . is in French . *Relieur, &c.*

521. The English often use two nouns together, the first of which expresses the use of the second, or the matter of which the second is made.

522. When the first expresses the matter of which the second is made, the French place first that which is the second in English, and use the preposition *de* without an article before the second, which is the first in English ; as

A brick house, . . . *Une maison de brique*.
 An iron fence, . . . *Une barrière de fer*.
 A gold watch, . . . *Une montre d'or*.
 A silver box, . . . *Une boîte d'argent*.

523. But, sometimes in English, an adjective is used to express the matter of which the object, represented by the following noun, is made ; in which case, the French use the same form as in the preceding examples, by rendering the adjective by a corresponding noun ; as

A wooden house, . . . *Une maison de bois*.
 A golden pin, . . . *Une épingle d'or*.

524. When the first of the two nouns does not express the matter of which the object represented by the second is made, the French, the same as in the preceding examples, place the second noun of the English first, and the first of the English is placed the second preceded by the preposition *à*, instead of *de*, with or without the definite article, according to the idea they are intended to convey.

525. If the first noun is designed to represent the use for which the second, as an object of capacity, is intended ; the peculiar thing after which it is made, as forming a part of its composition ; or the business of certain persons ; the peculiarity by which one person may be distinguished from other persons ; the second noun, in French, is preceded in such cases by the preposition *à*, and the definite article ; as,

1 The water-pot, . *Le pot à l'eau*.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|-------|-----------------------------------|
| 2 The <i>oil-bottle</i> , | . . . | <i>La bouteille à l'huile.</i> |
| 3 The <i>tea-box</i> , | . . . | <i>La boîte au thé.</i> |
| 4 The <i>hay-market</i> , | . . . | <i>Le marché au foin.</i> |
| 1 A <i>cabbage-soup</i> , | . . . | <i>Une soupe aux choux.</i> |
| 2 <i>Tomato-sauce</i> , | . . . | <i>De la sauce aux tomates.</i> |
| 3 <i>Butter-sauce</i> , | . . . | <i>De la sauce au beurre.</i> |
| 4 A <i>fruit-tart</i> , | . . . | <i>Une tarte au fruit.</i> |
| 5 <i>Rose-pomatum</i> , | . . . | <i>De la pommade à la rose.</i> |
| 1 The <i>oyster-woman</i> , | . . . | <i>La femme aux huîtres.</i> |
| 2 The <i>fish-man</i> , | . . . | <i>L'homme au poisson.</i> |
| 3 The <i>cake-boy</i> , | . . . | <i>L'enfant aux gâteaux.</i> |
| 1 The <i>black-hair lady</i> , | | <i>La dame aux cheveux noirs.</i> |
| 2 The <i>blue-eyed girl</i> , | . . . | <i>La fille aux yeux bleus.</i> |
| 3 The <i>big-head woman</i> , | | <i>La femme à la grosse tête.</i> |
| 4 The <i>whiskered man</i> , | | <i>L'homme aux favoris.</i> |

Explanation. In the four first examples, the first words WATER, OIL, TEA, and HAY, are intended to express the use for which the second words POT, BOTTLE, BOX, and MARKED are employed.

In the next five, the first words CABBAGE, TOMATO, BUTTER, FRUIT, and ROSE, express a peculiar part which enters into the composition of the things represented by the second words SOUP, SAUCE, SAUCE, TART, and POMATUM, which distinguish these peculiar kinds of things from others of nearly the same kind.

In the next three, the first words OYSTER, FISH, and CAKE, express a kind of business exercised by the persons represented by the second words WOMAN, MAN, and BOY.

In the three last, the first words BLACK-HAIR, BLUE-EYED, and BIG-HEAD express peculiarities by which the individuals represented by the second words LADY, GIRL, and WOMAN are distinguished from other persons with whom they might otherwise be confounded. Wherefore the definite article is used with the preposition *à* before all these nouns.

526. It sometimes happens in English that to distinguish one or several persons from one or several others, the noun that represents the objects of distinction is preceded by the preposition WITH, when in French that preposition is rendered by the preposition *à* and the definite article ; as

The lady *with the* green gown, *La dame à la robe verte.*

The man *with the* hundred crowns, *L'homme aux cent écus.*

The hill *with* large trees, *La colline aux grands arbres.*

The soldier *with* large mustachios, *Le soldat aux grosses moustaches.*

527. However, if the second word were FACTORY, it should

be placed first in French, and followed by the preposition *de*, instead of *à*, and the following noun must be in the plural if it conveys to the mind a plural meaning, and in the singular if it conveys a singular meaning; as in

A gas-factory,	.	<i>Une manufacture de gaz.</i>
A hat factory,	.	<i>Une manufacture de chapeaux.</i>
A cloth factory,	.	<i>Une manufacture de drap.</i>
A boot-factory,	.	<i>Une manufacture de bottes.</i>

Explanation. *Chapeaux* and *bottes* are in the plural, because the idea of several *HATS* and *BOOTS* is conveyed to the mind. *Gaz* and *drap* are in the singular, because the idea of several *GAS* or *SEVERAL CLOTHES* is not intended to be conveyed to the mind.

528. If the first noun expresses the thing that merely distinguishes the second from any other objects of the same kind, whether relating to form, means or object of use, a propensity, and even a distinctive quality expressed by an adjective that has no corresponding one in French, which adjective must be rendered by a noun, the order of the phrase is the same as in the preceding examples, in French, and the preposition *à* without any article must be used; as

A percussion-gun,	.	<i>Un fusil à piston.</i>
A bed with posts, or a post-bed,	.	<i>Un lit à colonnes.</i>
Furbelowed-curtains,	.	<i>Des rideaux à falbala.</i>
A bonnet with flowers,	.	<i>Un chapeau à fleurs.</i>
A wind-mill,	.	<i>Un moulin à vent.</i>
A water-mill	.	<i>Un moulin à eau.</i>
A coffee-mill,	.	<i>Un moulin à café.</i>
A saw-mill,	.	<i>Un moulin à scie.</i>
A flour-mill,	.	<i>Un moulin à farine.</i>
A rice-mill,	.	<i>Un moulin à riz.</i>
A fire-arm,	.	<i>Une arme à feu.</i>
A pasture-country,	.	<i>Un pays à pâturages.</i>
A talented man,	.	<i>Un homme à talents.</i>
An ingenious man,	.	<i>Un homme à imagination.</i>
A light-hair child,	.	<i>Un enfant à cheveux blonds.</i>

Explanation. To know when, in such phrases as the preceding, whether the definite article should be used with the preposition *à* or not, it is only necessary to notice, that, when the article is expressed, the noun is employed in a definite or partitive sense; and when it is not expressed, the noun is employed in an indefinite sense. A few examples will explain the difficulty.

When we say *THE OIL-BOTTLE*, *la bouteille à l'huile*, we mean a particular bottle in which

we are accustomed to put THE OIL THAT IS USED, and then it is employed in an entirely definite sense ; but we might very properly say, AN OIL-BOTTLE, *une bouteille à huile*, without article, but then it would mean any one bottle that was made to put oil in. Upon the same principle, we easily perceive that THE TEA-BOX, *la boîte au thé*, means the particular box, in which we put the tea which is used ; and that *une boîte à thé* means A BOX MADE ON PURPOSE TO PUT TEA IN.

In the phrases *une soupe aux choux*, *de la sauce aux tomates*, *de la sauce au beurre*, *une tarte au fruit*, *de la pommade à la rose*, the article is expressed, because the words *choux*, *tomate*, *beurre*, *fruit*, and *rose*, are employed in a partitive, and therefore in a limited sense : for *une soupe aux choux* is for *une soupe avec des choux* ; *de la sauce aux tomates* is for *de la sauce avec des tomates* ; *de la sauce au beurre* is for *de la sauce avec du beurre* ; *une tarte au fruit* is for *une tarte avec du fruit* ; *de la pommade à la rose* is for *de la pommade avec de la rose* ; the words *aux*, *aux*, *au*, *à la*, should be considered as abbreviations of the partitive article and the preposition *avec*, since *aux* is instead of *avec des*, *au* instead of *avec du*, *à la* instead of *avec de la*.

In the phrases *la femme aux huîtres*, *l'homme au poisson*, *la fille aux yeux bleus*, &c. the words *huîtres*, *poisson*, *yeux bleus*, &c. are used in a partitive sense ; for *la femme aux huîtres* is for *la femme qui vend des huîtres* ; *l'homme au poisson* is for *l'homme qui vend du poisson* ; *la fille aux yeux bleus* is for *la fille avec des yeux bleus*, which, in these phrases, the same as in the preceding, *aux* and *au* are abbreviations, and are used instead of *qui vend des* or *du*, or instead of *qui à des* or *du*, *avoir* being instead of *vendre*.

In the phrases *la femme à la grosse tête*, *l'homme aux favoris*, the words *grosse tête* and *favoris* are used in a definite sense, because they represent a particular head, or some kind of particular whiskers, therefore the article is used before them. It would be very proper to say, *une femme à grosse tête*, *un homme à favoris*, without the article, but then they would mean ANY WOMAN WITH A BIG HEAD, ANY MAN WITH WHISKERS, and would be used in an indefinite sense, and therefore without article ; as in *un fusil à piston*, *un moulin à café*, *un moulin à vent*, *une arme à feu*, &c. the words *piston*, *café*, *vent*, *feu*, &c. are used in an indefinite sense, because they represent no particular PERCUSSION, no particular COFFEE, no particular WIND nor FIRE, therefore the article is very properly not expressed.

529. The definite article is never used with a noun when the extent of its signification is determined by any of the other articles, commonly called, by other grammarians, adjective pronouns, or determinative adjectives.

530. The article *le*, *la* or *les*, is used before the adverbs *plus*, MORE ; *mieux*, BETTER ; *moins*, LESS ; when they are employed to express a superlative relative, that is, a superlative in comparison with other persons or things ; as,

Of all those ladies your sister *De toutes ces dames, votre sœur*
is the most afflicted, *est la plus affligée.*

Of all my scholars, your sons *De tous mes élèves, vos fils sont*
are the most studious, *les plus studieux.*

531. But, if *plus*, *mieux* or *moins*, is used to express the highest degree of signification, without comparison with other

persons or things, the definite article *le* should be always employed and never *la* or *les*; as

Your sister does not weep even when she is *the most* afflicted, *Votre sœur ne pleure pas, même lorsqu'elle est le plus affligée.*

Explanation. In the examples of rule 230, the article agrees in gender and number with the implied nouns *dame*, *écoliers*, to which they relate, and in the last it is invariable, because it relates to no particular object of comparison.

EXERCISE 218.

⁴⁹⁴ Little John was a studious boy, but his grandmother, ⁴⁹⁴ old Nancy, was too poor to educate him; however, he was employed in a nail factory, where he received two dollars ⁴⁹⁶ a week, with which he sometimes bought ⁴⁹⁷ good books to study in his leisure time.—I have known ⁴⁹⁸ fops, who in conversation used ⁴⁸¹ witticisms; but very few did it with ⁵¹⁶ modesty.—When the liberator of this country arrived here, he was surrounded by a crowd ⁵⁰⁰ of citizens, who called him their father, and his piercing eye could distinguish among them a great number ⁵⁰⁰ of soldiers, who had fought under his command. He said to them, ⁴²⁰ what he had often repeated, “defend your liberty, but never undertake ⁵⁰³ conquest.”

EXERCISE 219.

The population ⁵⁰⁶ of Russia is greater than that ⁵⁰⁶ of France; but the civilisation ⁴⁹² of France is more advanced than that ⁴⁹² of Russia.—That quotation is taken from the work of Montesquieu, entitled, “⁵⁰⁸ Greatness and Fall of the Romans.”—The more ⁵⁰⁹ a man spends money, the more ⁵⁰⁹ he acquires consideration, though he does not increase his fortune.—The ⁵⁰⁹ sooner we begin our work, the ⁵⁰⁹ sooner we finish it.—The soldiers ⁵¹³ and citizens of a nation should have but one object in view, that of the general interest of their country.—The superior officers of that insubordinate regiment have neither power nor influence over the old nor young ⁴⁹¹ soldiers.—Good Christians generally return ⁴⁹¹ good for evil; but other persons generally return ⁵¹⁷ evil for ⁵¹⁷ evil, or good for ⁵¹⁷ good, and too ⁴⁹¹ often evil for ⁴⁹¹ good.

EXERCISE 220.

I was received in the large hall of a stone ⁵²² building, in which were ⁵²² marble tables, mahogany chairs and arm-chairs, ⁵²² brass andirons, ⁵²² bronze lamps, &c. I sat on a velvet settee. I waited for a quarter of

an hour, after which a black-whiskered gentleman came in ; he was elegantly dressed, and, among other things, he wore a beautiful diamond⁵²² pin, and several diamond⁵²² rings ; on his shoes he had silver⁵²² buckles with precious⁴⁴ stones. He rung a bell, and a young⁵²⁵ black-eyed servant-maid came in, bringing two china tea cups, two silver⁵²² spoons, a sugar-dish, and a silver tea-pot. Soon another servant brought in apple-pies, small cream-tarts, and several other kinds of cakes. I soon perceived that the gentleman was very amiable and learned ; he showed me very elegant flower⁵²⁸ pots, marble statues, fire-arms, percussion⁵²⁸ pistols, a small sword⁵²⁸ with a silver handle, and a double-barrelled gun. From his window we could see two wind-mills on the hill, and two water-mills on the river ; and yet these objects were but²⁶ a small part of his fortune.

SYNTAX OF THOSE ARTICLES

CALLED BY NOËL AND CHAPSAL DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES, AND BY OTHER GRAMMARIANS ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

532. Sometimes the possessive articles of the English are rendered in French by the definite articles ; this is the case when the sense leaves no doubt about the possessor, that is, when the possessed object belongs to the person which is the nominative of the verb of the phrase ; as,

Peter has broken *his* arm, *Pierre s'est cassé le bras*, not *son bras*.
I have a pain in *my* head, *J'ai mal à la tête*, not *à ma tête*.

Explanation. In these examples, the definite article is used instead of the demonstrative, because *ma* and *son* would add nothing to the sense.

533. But the possessive articles are used before nouns that represent common things, or things of a common occurrence ; as

My megrim has taken me, . *Ma migraine m'a repris*.
His gout torments him, . *Sa goutte le tourmente*.

534. When a possessive article, in English, is used with a noun, and relates to a person or thing which is the possessor, it is translated by the corresponding possessive article in French : see Nos. 45, &c. But, if the noun that represents the possessor is not expressed in the same phrase with the English possessive

article, that possessive article is rendered in French by the pronoun *en* before the verb, and the definite article before the possessed object ; as

The country has *its* charms, *La campagne a ses agréments.*

Those languages have *their* beauties, *Ces langues ont leurs beautés.*

I reside in the country, *its* charms are numberless, *J'habite la campagne, les agréments en sont sans nombre.*

Those languages are rich, I admire *their* beauties, *Ces langues sont riches, j'en admire les beautés.*

Explanation. In the two first examples, the possessive articles of the English are rendered by their corresponding possessive articles in French, because the possessor and the possessed object are in the same phrase ; but, in the two last examples, *ITS* and *THEIR* are translated by *en* and the definite article *les*, because the nouns COUNTRY and LANGUAGES, which represent the possessors, are not in the same phrase with them, or because they are not the nominatives of the verb of which the possessed objects are the regimen or object.

535. However, when the possessed object is the object of a preposition, although the noun that represents the possessor be not in the same phrase with it, the French possessive article must be used ; as

Paris is a remarkable city, *Paris est une ville remarquable,*
foreigners admire the beauty *les étrangers admirent la*
of *its* buildings, *beauté de ses édifices.*

536. When *WHATEVER*, *HOWEVER* or *HOWSOEVER*, is used with a noun, whether qualified or not by an adjective, it is translated into French by the single word *quelque* or *quelques*, according to the number of that noun ; and, if a verb follows. it must be in the subjunctive mood, preceded by the conjunction *que* ; as,

Whatever reasons you may allege, *Quelques raisons que vous alléguiez.*

Whatever protection you may have, you will not succeed, *Quelque protection que vous ayez, vous ne réussirez pas.*

537. When *WHATEVER* is used with *TO BE*, whether preceded or followed by a noun, it is translated by *quel que*, in two words, *quel* become *quels*, *quelle* or *quelles*, according to the gender and number of the nominative of the verb *être* of the French, and *que* remains invariable and precedes the auxiliary *être*,

which must be put in the subjunctive mood and placed before the noun.

Whatever men may be, we must live with them, *Quels que soient les humains, il faut vivre avec eux.*

Whatever be your riches, make a good use of them, *Quelles que soient vos richesses, faites-en un bon usage.*

538. When **HOWEVER** or **HOWSOEVER** is used with either an adverb, a participle, or an adjective, without a noun, it is translated into French by *quelque* in a single word, without ever varying, and *que* before the following verb which must be in the subjunctive mood :

However skilfully you may act, you will not succeed at the first time, or at the first trial, *Quelque adroitement que vous agissiez, vous ne réussirez pas à la première fois.*

However considerate we may be, we sometimes mistake, *Quelque considérés que nous soyons, nous nous trompons quelque fois.*

However powerful they may be, they will be conquered, *Quelque puissants qu'ils soient, ils seront vaincus.*

However fine those ladies may be, *Quelque belles que soient ces dames.*

539. **EVERY** with a noun in the singular, used for the plural, that is, for the whole individuals of the class it represents, and **ALL** used in the same sense, are rendered, **EVERY** by *tout* or *toute*, and **ALL** by *tous* or *toutes*, according to the gender and number of the noun.

Every man must serve his country, *Tout homme doit servir son pays.*

Every woman should have modesty, *Toute femme devrait avoir de la modestie.*

All men should be free, *Tous les hommes devraient être libres.*

All women should love their protectors, *Toutes les femmes devraient aimer leurs protecteurs.*

540. **THOUGH** or **ALTHOUGH** is sometimes rendered in French by *quoique*, with the verb in the subjunctive mood: see No. 109. But it is often rendered by *tout*, which is invariable when the adjective before which it is used commences with a vowel or

silent *h*, even if it should relate to a feminine noun, and variable when it commences with a consonant and relates to a feminine noun, otherwise it remains invariable; the verb that follows should be in the indicative mood; as,

Although virtue is amiable, all men do not love it, *Tout aimable qu'est la vertu, tous les hommes ne l'aiment pas.*

Although that man is very rich, he has very few friends, *Tout riche qu'est cet homme, il a bien peu d'amis.*

541. HOWEVER or QUITE is also rendered by *tout*, following the same rules as when used to translate ALTHOUGH, given in the preceding paragraph.

Mrs. L. was *quite* stupefied at her reception, *Mme. L. fut toute stupéfaite de sa réception.*

However witty those ladies are, they are sometimes very ridiculous, *Toutes spirituelles que sont ces dames, quelque fois elles sont très-ridicules.*

Though those men are great and those ladies learned, they exert very little influence in this country, *Tout grands que sont ces hommes et tout instruites que sont ces dames, ils exercent bien peu d'influence dans ce pays.*

EXERCISE 221.

Praises are like riches : It is because we do not know their value that we are lavish of them.—The court of Napoleon was brilliant; all foreigners admired its magnificence.—Philadelphia is one of the best productions of taste that a city can present to the traveller. All those who see it are struck with the regularity and cleanliness of its streets, and the simplicity and beauty of its buildings. The hydraulic engines, which supply its inhabitants with excellent water, are remarkable for their solidity and power; they throw one thousand gallons (of it) a minute into the reservoirs, which are one hundred and five feet above the level of the river.—Jesus-Christ died only to bear testimony to truth; he was its first martyr: he taught mankind how to make themselves worthy of heaven, and opened its gates to them.

EXERCISE 222.

⁵³⁶ Whatever thing we may do to oblige an ungrateful man, he will never
 find it worth his gratitude. ⁵³⁶ Whatever great talents we may ⁵³⁶ have, the
 least of ⁵³⁸ our virtues has more value in the eyes of God. ⁵³⁸ However pure
 their intentions may be, ⁵³⁶—whatever light they may have acquired,—
⁵³⁷ whatever their experience may be, ⁵³⁷ men may ²⁶⁴ mistake. ⁵⁴⁰ Although cer-
 tain books are bad, one ²⁶⁴ may find in them something that deserves to be
 read. ⁵⁴⁰ Though men are wicked, ⁶⁷⁹ God wishes us to ¹⁰⁹ love them. ⁵³⁹ Every
 man is subject to death. ⁵³⁶ Whatever efforts you may make, you will not
 succeed. ⁵³⁸ How great soever may be the actions he has done before his
 crime, his memory will be an object of ⁵³⁸ contempt in the minds of those
 who know him. ⁵⁴¹ Though the distress of the merchants of this country
 is great, the government does nothing to help them.

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES AND NUMERALS.

542. When an adjective or a past or present participle is used in a phrase, it must always relate to a word expressed in that same phrase, and must never cause any equivocation or double meaning. Therefore we should not say,

Jealous of the rights of his crown, his only care was to transmit it to his successors, *Jaloux des droits de sa couronne, son unique soin était de la transmettre à ses successeurs ;*

because the adjective *jaloux* does not relate to any noun in the phrase. It would also be improper to say,

Loving study above all things, your father will provide you with the means of giving yourself to it, *Aimant l'étude par dessus tout, votre père vous fournira les moyens de vous y livrer.*

Explanation. There is an equivocation, or double meaning, in this phrase, since the present participle *aimant*, *LOVING*, may be considered as relating to *THE SON*, as well as to *THE FATHER*. The difficulty is obviated by changing the phrase, thus :

As your father *loves* study above all things, he will provide you with, &c. *Or* *Comme votre père aime l'étude par dessus tout, il vous fournira, &c.*

As you love study above all things, your father will provide you with, &c. *Comme vous aimez l'étude par dessus tout, votre père vous fournira, &c.*

The adjective, in French, must agree in gender and number with the noun or pronoun to which it relates : see No. 62.

543. If several nouns or pronouns are qualified by an adjective, that adjective must be in the plural and in the masculine gender, if the nouns or pronouns are of different genders : see No. 63.

The rich and poor are equal before God, *Le riche et le pauvre sont égaux devant Dieu.*

By a continual application and labour one surmounts many obstacles, *Par une application et un travail continuel on surmonte bien des obstacles.*

544. When two nouns qualified by an adjective are of different genders, the ear requires that the masculine noun should be expressed the last, especially if the adjective has a different termination for each gender, otherwise the place of the two nouns is unimportant.

He has shown an astonishing courage and prudence, *Il a montré une prudence et un courage étonnants.*

He has shown an admirable courage and prudence, *Il a montré un courage et une prudence admirables.*

Explanation. In the first example, COURAGE is placed after PRUDENCE, because it is masculine, and that the adjective *étonnant* has a different termination in the feminine than in the masculine. In the second, the word COURAGE is before PRUDENCE, though it might just as well be placed after, because the adjective *admirable* has the same termination for the masculine and feminine.

EXCEPTIONS.

545. 1ST EXCEPTION. The adjective placed after two nouns that are synonymous, that is, when they have nearly the same signification, agrees in gender and number only with the last noun ; as

He has shown a praiseworthy circumspection and prudence, *Il a montré une réserve et une prudence digne d'éloges.*

All his life was but a continual labour and occupation, *Toute sa vie n'a été qu'un travail et une occupation continuelle.*

Explanation. The reason of this is, that there is but one word to be qualified, since but one idea is expressed, and it is with the last noun, which strikes more powerfully the imagination, that it must agree.

546. The adjective must agree with the last noun only, when they are connected by the conjunction *ou*, OR; as,

He must have an *astonishing* *Il faut qu'il ait un courage ou*
courage or prudence, *une prudence étonnante.*

Explanation. The adjective agrees with the last noun, because the conjunction *ou* excludes the first, and because it fixes the attention the most.

547. 2D EXCEPTION. The adjective *nu*, BARE; *demi*, HALF; *excepté*, EXCEPT; *supposé*, SUPPOSE OR SUPPOSED; are invariable when they precede the noun, and variable when they follow it; as

Bare head, . . . *Nu-tête, or tête nue.*

Bare feet, or bare footed, *Nu-pieds, or pieds nus.*

Half an hour, . . . *Une demi-heure.*

One hour and a half, . . . *Une heure et demie.*

Except those persons, *Excepté ces personnes, or ces per-*
sonnes exceptées.

Suppose those facts, . . . *Supposé ces faits, or ces faits*
supposés.

Notice that the indefinite article *A* OR *AN*, used before *HALF* in English, is not expressed in French before *demi*, when preceded by a cardinal number.

548. Though the adjective *demi* never varies, it should be borne in mind that the French word *demie* is a noun that by itself means *HALF AN HOUR*, and that it varies for the plural.

This clock strikes the hours, *Cette horloge sonne les heures,*
 but not the *half-hours,* *mais non pas les demies.*

Half past three o'clock, *Trois heures et demie.*

Two feet and a half, . . . *Deux pieds et demi.*

Every half an hour, . . . *Toutes les demi-heures.*

549. 3D EXCEPTION. The adjective *feu*, LATE, DECEASED, agrees with the noun only when it precedes immediately, and does not agree, if it is separated from it, even by an article; as,

The *late* queen, . . . *La feue reine, or feu la reine.*

Your *late* mother, . . . *Votre feue mère, or feu votre mère.*

550. 4TH EXCEPTION. When an adjective is used adverbially with a verb, it never varies; as,

Those books cost *dear,* . . . *Ces livres coûtent cher.*

Those men walk *fast,* . . . *Ces hommes marchent vite.*

551. The adjective is governed by the noun, but does not govern it ; that is, two or more adjectives qualifying a noun, that noun should not on that account be in the plural ; but on the contrary those adjectives must take the gender and number of that noun ; as,

The first and second *stories*, *Le premier et le second étage*,
not étages.

The ancient and modern *his-* *L'histoire ancienne et moderne*,
tories, not *les histoires*.

552. When two adjectives are together, the first of which is qualified by the second, both remain invariable ; as,

Light chesnut hair, *Des cheveux chatain-clair*.

Dark blue clothes, *Des étoffes bleu-foncé*.

553. One should be careful not to apply to persons those adjectives that can properly be used only with things ; as *pardonnable*, *impardonnable*, *déplorable*, *contestable*, *inestimable*, &c., nor to things those adjectives that can properly be used only with persons ; as *consolable*, *inconsolable*, &c. Therefore we should not say,

You see before you a *deplorable* prince, *Vous voyez devant vous un déplorable prince* ;

Her grief was *inconsolable*, *Sa douleur était inconsolable* ;
because a person cannot be deplored, nor a thing be consoled ;
but then the phrase should be altered thus,

A prince *whose fate is deplorable*, *Un prince dont le sort est déplorable*.

A person *inconsolable in her grief*, *Une personne inconsolable dans sa douleur*.

554. When the adjectives HIGH, LONG, WIDE and DEEP, are used with a noun of measure, they are rendered either by the French corresponding adjectives *haut*, *long*, *profond*, *large*, or by their corresponding substantives *hauteur*, *longueur*, *largeur*, and *profondeur*. By the corresponding adjectives with the preposition *de* before the number that precedes the noun of measure, when the verb *être* is employed ; and by the corresponding substantives, preceded by the preposition *de*, when the verb *avoir* is used instead of the verb *être* ; as,

That tower is one hundred and twenty-five feet *high*, *Cette tour est haute de cent vingt-cinq pieds, or cette tour a cent vingt-cinq pieds de hauteur.*

This well is thirty-six feet *deep*, *Ce puits est profond de trente-six pieds, or ce puits a trente-six pieds de profondeur.*

555. But, if there are two nouns of measure in the same phrase, the construction of *avoir* should be employed ; as in

The walls of that fort are fifteen feet *thick*, and forty-one feet *high*, *Les murs de ce fort ont quinze pieds d'épaisseur et quarante et un de hauteur.*

NOTE. The construction with the verb *avoir* should be preferred, because it is more generally and commonly used.

556. When the adjective GREAT is used in the sense of MUCH, it is generally rendered in French by *beaucoup de*, especially if that adjective qualifies more than one noun, in which case *beaucoup de* must be placed before the first noun, and the preposition *de* repeated before the others.

He treated us with *great* kindness and indulgence, *Il nous traitait avec beaucoup de bonté et d'indulgence.*

She saw me with *great* pleasure, *Elle me vit avec beaucoup de plaisir.*

The adjective LITTLE, when used in the sense of NOT MUCH, A LITTLE QUANTITY, is rendered by *peu de* ; and, if that adjective qualifies several nouns, *peu de* should be expressed only before the first, and the preposition *de* repeated before all the others.

With a *little* patience, *Avec un peu de patience.*

I took a *little* wine and water, *Je pris un peu de vin et d'eau.*

557. Sometimes the English give to a phrase an exclamative form, that its expression may be more forcible than it would otherwise be, as in BEAUTIFUL WERE THEY, THOSE LITTLE CHILDREN THAT WE SAW YESTERDAY ! but this form of exclamation is differently expressed in French, and to translate it, it should be changed thus, THEY WERE BEAUTIFUL, THOSE LITTLE CHILDREN THAT WE SAW YESTERDAY, *Ils étaient beaux ces enfants que nous vîmes hier*, not commencing the phrase with the adjective, as it

is done in English, because when in French an adjective is used with the verb *être* it is never placed before, but is always placed after that verb ; as,

How interesting that man was ! *Que cet homme était intéressant !*

And dreadful it was, the time of that government ! *Et il était terrible le temps de ce gouvernement !*

558. Adjectives are sometimes used to represent nouns, as pronouns do ; but then they are preceded by the definite article *THE*, and generally, though not always, followed by the word *ONE* in English ; in French they are also preceded by the definite article *le, la, l' or les*, agreeing in gender and number with the represented noun, but there is nothing after the adjective to supply or translate the word *ONE* of the English.

The red tulip is more beautiful than *the white one*, *La tulipe rouge est plus belle que la blanche.*

The last lessons are less difficult than *the first*, *Les dernières leçons sont moins difficiles que les premières.*

Which coat do you wish to put on to-day, sir ?—The *black one*, *Quel habit désirez-vous mettre aujourd'hui, monsieur ?—Le noir.*

559. Adjectives are often used in English with or without the word *MAN* or *MEN* to represent a particular class of individuals. In translating into French the phrases in which they are thus employed, the word *MAN* or *MEN* is generally omitted, and the adjective which is used as a noun must be in the plural, if it is intended to represent more than one individual, and in the singular, if a single individual is meant, though this singular is sometimes intended for the plural.

The rich man should do something for *the poor*, *Le riche devrait faire quelque chose pour le pauvre, or pour les pauvres.*

Fear the wicked, *Craignez les méchants.*

560. Among the different kinds of numerals are the Cardinal and Ordinal numbers, which are differently used in French and in English.

561. The use of the Cardinal Numbers is very nearly, though not entirely, the same in French as in English; as may be seen in Nos. 1, and following. But that of the Ordinal Numbers is very different, as may be seen by the following rules.

562. In speaking of EMPERORS, KINGS, &c. the English uniformly use the Ordinal Numbers; but in French, the Ordinal Numbers are employed only for the FIRST and SECOND, and the Cardinal Numbers for all the others; and the article, which is used in English, is omitted in French; as,

Napoleon <i>the first</i> ,	.	.	.	<i>Napoléon</i> premier.
Louis <i>the second</i> ,	.	.	.	<i>Louis</i> second.
Richard <i>the third</i> ,	.	.	.	<i>Richard</i> trois.
Henry <i>the fourth</i> ,	.	.	.	<i>Henri</i> quatre.
Leon <i>the tenth</i> .	.	.	.	<i>Léon</i> dix.

563. In speaking of the days of the months, THE FIRST day excepted, the French use the Cardinal Numbers, though the English uniformly use the Ordinal; and the preposition *or*, which is expressed before the name of the month in English, may be rendered in French by *de*, or may be omitted, both ways being equally correct; as,

The <i>first of</i> January,	<i>Le premier Janvier,</i>	or <i>de Janvier.</i>
The <i>second of</i> February,	<i>Le deux Février,</i>	or <i>de Février.</i>
The <i>third of</i> April,	<i>Le trois Avril,</i>	or <i>d'Avril.</i>
The <i>fourth of</i> July,	<i>Le quatre Juillet,</i>	or <i>de Juillet.</i>
The <i>eighteenth of</i> October,	<i>Le dix-huit Octobre,</i>	or <i>d'Octobre.</i>

564. However, if the word *jour*, DAY, is used, the Ordinal Numbers should be employed, and the preposition *de* should be expressed :

I shall be at your house <i>on the</i>	<i>Je serai chez vous le quinzième</i>
<i>fifteenth day of</i> April,	<i>jour d'Avril.</i>

But it is better, or at least more generally practised, to use the form without the word *jour*.

565. In speaking of BOOKS, CHAPTERS, PARAGRAPHS, PAGES, &c. the French sometimes use the Ordinal Numbers before the noun; but when the noun is expressed first, which is most commonly the case, the Cardinal Numbers should be used, except for the FIRST and SECOND, for which the Ordinal should be employed; as,

<i>First book,</i>	.	.	.	<i>Livre premier.</i>
<i>Second chapter,</i>	.	.	.	<i>Chapitre second.</i>
<i>Third paragraph,</i>	.	.	.	<i>Paragraphe trois.</i>
<i>Twentieth page,</i>	.	.	.	<i>Page vingt.</i>

566. As may be seen in Nos. 9, 10, the conjunction AND is not expressed in French before *cent* and *mille*; and that in the reckoning of years the word THOUSAND is rendered by *mil* instead of *mille*; as,

In the year *one thousand eight hundred and thirty-eight.* *Dans l'an mil huit cent trente-huit.*

EXERCISE 223.

Being desirous of promoting that science, the government will place you at the head of that institution. The astonishing courage and constancy of that man have been proved on a very important and dangerous occasion. The great lords of Tonquin appear in court barefooted. —Nature has for sensitive souls a charm and a beauty always new. — The late empress was as remarkable for her benevolence, as for the charms of her person and mind; my late aunt received several proofs of her goodness. Saint-Louis followed the standard of the cross bare-footed. Great men undertake great things because they are great, and fools undertake them only because they believe them easy. Except two or three persons, all those who were present were of the same party. If you will wait for me, I shall be here in half an hour; but if you do not, I shall be absent two hours and a half. Vain and proud persons are like stalks of wheat; those that rear the head highest are the worst, because they contain nothing good.

EXERCISE 224.

Dark green clothes become you much better than those that are light-blue. Of all those vests, the black one pleases me most. Ambitious men are seldom satisfied. The fourth of July, and fourth of May, are very memorable days ; the former being the anniversary of the independence of America, and the latter that of the death of the greatest man that ever lived.—Charles the Tenth, having displeased the French, was dethroned on the 27th July, 1830, and Louis Philip the First put in his place ; and perhaps the latter will experience the fate of the former.—We read, in one of Montesquieu's works, entitled ' Considerations on the causes of the greatness and downfall of the Romans,' twentieth chapter, page one hundred and eighty-nine, second paragraph, that " Belisarius took Carthage, Rome, and Ravenna ; and sent prisoners to Constantinople the kings of the Goths and Vandals."

 OBJECT OF ADJECTIVES.

567. There are adjectives that are used absolutely, that is, without any object ; they are such as by themselves have an independent signification ; as INTREPID, *intrépide* ; VIRTUOUS, *vertueux*, &c.

568. There are other adjectives that, when used, generally have an object, either a noun or a verb ; which object must be preceded by the prepositions TO, AT, OF OR FROM, IN, FOR, &c. in English, and in French by *à, de, dans, en, pour*, &c. But as the prepositions required before the object of adjectives, in English, is not always to be translated by a corresponding preposition in French ; and as there are adjectives that require a different preposition before a common noun, a noun of persons or a verb, the following Table will show what preposition should be used in French, without regard to the preposition required by the English adjective.

539. TABLE OF ADJECTIVES

SHOWING THE PREPOSITIONS THEY REQUIRE BEFORE THEIR OBJECT.

French adjectives. Before a verb. Before a common noun. Before a noun of person. English adjectives.

<i>Abondant</i>		<i>en</i>		<i>Abundant</i>
<i>Absent</i>		<i>de</i>		<i>Absent</i>
<i>Accessible</i>		<i>à</i>		<i>Accessible</i>
<i>Adhérent</i>		<i>à</i>		<i>Adherent</i>
<i>Adroit</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à, dans</i>		<i>Artful</i>
<i>Affable</i>			<i>à, envers</i>	<i>Affable</i>
<i>*Affaîssé</i>		<i>sous,* de</i>		<i>*Sunk</i>
<i>Affamé</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>		<i>Greedy</i>
<i>Affranchi</i>		<i>de</i>		<i>Freed</i>
<i>Agréable</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>Agreeable</i>
<i>Alarmant</i>		<i>pour</i>	<i>pour</i>	<i>Alarming</i>
<i>Altéré</i>		<i>de</i>		<i>Thirsty</i>
<i>Amoureux</i>		<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>In love</i>
<i>Animé</i>		<i>de, pour</i>		<i>Animated</i>
<i>Antérieur</i>		<i>à</i>		<i>Anterior</i>
<i>Approchant</i>		<i>de</i>		<i>Near akin</i>
<i>Apré</i>		<i>à</i>		<i>Rough, hard</i>
<i>Ardent</i>		<i>à</i>		<i>Ardent</i>
<i>Arrière</i>		<i>de</i>		<i>In arrears</i>
<i>Assidu</i>		<i>à</i>	<i>auprès de</i>	<i>Assiduous</i>
<i>Assortissant</i>		<i>à</i>		<i>Matching</i>
<i>Attenant</i>		<i>à</i>		<i>Contiguous</i>
<i>Attentif</i>		<i>à</i>		<i>Attentive</i>
<i>Aucun</i>		<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>None</i>
<i>Aveuglé</i>		<i>de</i>		<i>Blinded</i>
<i>Aveugle</i>		<i>sur, dans</i>		<i>Blind</i>
<i>Avide</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>		<i>Eager</i>
<i>Capable</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>		<i>Capable</i>
<i>Célèbre</i>	<i>pour</i>	<i>en, par</i>		<i>Celebrated</i>
<i>Cher</i>		<i>à</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>Dear</i>
<i>Chiche</i>		<i>de</i>		<i>Sparing</i>
<i>Civil</i>			<i>envers, à l'é-</i>	<i>Civil</i>
<i>Commensurable</i>		<i>à</i>	<i>[gard</i>	<i>Commensurable</i>
<i>Commun</i>		<i>à</i>	<i>parmi</i>	<i>Common</i>
<i>Comparable</i>		<i>a, avec</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>Comparable</i>
<i>Compatible</i>		<i>avec</i>		<i>Compatible</i>
<i>Complice</i>		<i>dans</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>Accomplice</i>
<i>Comptable</i>		<i>de</i>	<i>à, envers</i>	<i>Accountable</i>
<i>Conforme</i>		<i>à</i>		<i>Conform</i>
<i>Confus</i>		<i>de</i>		<i>Confused</i>
<i>Connu</i>			<i>de</i>	<i>Known</i>
<i>Consolant</i>			<i>pour</i>	<i>Consoling</i>
<i>Constant</i>		<i>dans, en</i>	<i>auprès de</i>	<i>Constant</i>
<i>Content</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>Contented</i>
<i>Contraire</i>		<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>Contrary</i>
<i>Convenable</i>		<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>Convenient</i>

* When the word SUNK is used with the preposition UNDER, that preposition is translated by *sous* ; but, if after the object of UNDER should follow a noun of measure preceded by the preposition BY, that preposition should be rendered by *de* ; as

The floor has sunk by two inches, . . . *Le plancher s'est affaîssé de deux pouces.*

French adjectives.	Before a verb.	Before a common noun.	Before a noun of person.	English adjectives
<i>Couronné</i>		<i>de</i>	<i>par</i>	Crowned
<i>Cruel</i>		<i>à, envers</i>	<i>à, envers</i>	Cruel
<i>Curieux</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de, en</i>		Curious
<i>Dangereux</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>pour, par</i>	<i>pour</i>	Dangerous
<i>Dédaigneux</i>	<i>de</i>			Disdainful
<i>Dénué</i>		<i>de</i>		Destitute
<i>Désireux</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>		Desirous
<i>Différent</i>		<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	Different
<i>Difficile</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>sur</i>		Difficult
<i>Digne</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	Worthy
<i>Dissolu</i>		<i>dans</i>		Dissolute
<i>Docile</i>		<i>à</i>		Docile
<i>Dur</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à, envers, pour</i>	<i>envers, pour</i>	Hard
<i>Enchanté</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>par, de</i>	<i>de</i>	Enchanted
<i>Enclin</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>		Inclined
<i>Endurci</i>		<i>à, par, dans</i>		Inured
<i>Enivré</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>		Intoxicated
<i>Envieux</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>		Envious
<i>Étonné</i>		<i>de</i>		Astonished
<i>Étranger</i>		<i>à, en, dans</i>	<i>à</i>	Stranger
<i>Exact</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>		Exact
<i>Exempt</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>		Exempt
<i>Expert</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>en, dans</i>		Expert
<i>Faible</i>	<i>pour</i>	<i>dans</i>		Feeble
<i>Fameux</i>		<i>par en</i>		Famous
<i>Favorable</i>	<i>pour</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	Favourable
<i>Fécond</i>		<i>en</i>		Productive
<i>Fertile</i>		<i>en</i>		Fertile
<i>Fidèle</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à, en</i>	<i>à</i>	Faithful
<i>Formidable</i>		<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>	Formidable
<i>Fort</i>	<i>pour</i>	<i>de, pour</i>		Strong
<i>Fou</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	Crazy
<i>Furieux</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>		Furious
<i>Glorieux</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>		Glorious
<i>Gonflé</i>		<i>de</i>		Puffed up
<i>Gros</i>		<i>de</i>		Big
<i>Habile</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>en, dans</i>		Skilful
<i>Hardi</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à, dans</i>		Bold
<i>Heureux</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de, en</i>		Happy
<i>Heureux</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>à</i>		Lucky
<i>Honteux</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>		Ashamed
<i>Ignorant</i>		<i>en, sur, de</i>		Ignorant
<i>Impénétrable</i>		<i>à</i>		Impenetrable
<i>Inabordable</i>		<i>à</i>		Inaccessible
<i>Inaccessible</i>		<i>à</i>		Inaccessible
<i>Incapable</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>		Incapable
<i>Incertain</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>		Uncertain
<i>Incompatible</i>		<i>avec</i>		Incompatible
<i>Inconcevable</i>		<i>à</i>		Inconceivable
<i>Inconciliable</i>		<i>avec</i>		Irreconcilable
<i>Inconsolable</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de, sur</i>		Disconsolate
<i>Indigne</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	Unworthy
<i>Indocile</i>		<i>à</i>		Indocile
<i>Indulgent</i>		<i>pour, dans</i>	<i>à, pour, envers</i>	Indulgent
<i>Inébranlable</i>		<i>à, contre</i>		Immovable
<i>Inexorable</i>		<i>à</i>		Inexorable
<i>Inexplicable</i>		<i>à</i>		Inexplicable

French adjectives.	Before a verb.	Before a common noun.	Before a noun of person.	English adjectives.
<i>Infatigable</i>	à			Indefatigable
<i>Inférieur</i>		à, en	à	Inferior
<i>Infidèle</i>	à	à	à	Unfaithful
<i>Ingénieux</i>	à	pour		Ingenious
<i>Ingrat</i>			envers	Ingrate
<i>Injurious</i>		à	pour	Injurious
<i>Inquiet</i>	de	de, sur		Uneasy
<i>Insatiable</i>		de		Insatiable
<i>Insensible</i>		à		Insensible
<i>Inséparable</i>		de	de	Inseparable
<i>Insolent</i>		dans, en, avec	envers	Insolent
<i>Invincible</i>		à		Invincible
<i>Invulnérable</i>		à		Invulnerable
<i>Ivre</i>		de		Intoxicated
<i>Jaloux</i>	de	de, sur	de	Jealous
<i>Las</i>	de	de	de	Tired
<i>Lent</i>	à	à, dans		Slow
<i>Libre</i>	de	de, dans	avec	Free
<i>Mécontent</i>	de	de	de	Discontented
<i>Ménager</i>		de		Sparing
<i>Miséricordieux</i>			envers	Merciful
<i>Mourant</i>	pour	de, pour	pour	Dying
<i>Nécessaire</i>	pour	à, pour	pour	Necessary
<i>Nuisible</i>		à		Hurtful
<i>Odieux</i>		à	à	Odious
<i>Officieux</i>			envers	Officious
<i>Orgueilleux</i>	de	de		Proud
<i>Paresseux</i>	pour	à, de		Lazy
<i>Plein</i>		de		Full
<i>Précieux</i>		à	à	Precious
<i>Préliminaire</i>		à		Preliminary
<i>Préférable</i>		à		Preferable
<i>Préjudiciable</i>		à	à	Hurtful
<i>Prêt</i>	à, pour	à		Ready
<i>Prodigue</i>		de	envers	Prodigal
<i>Prompt</i>	à	dans		Prompt
<i>Propice</i>		à	à	Propitious
<i>Propre</i>	à	à	à	Proper
<i>Rayonnant</i>		de		Radiant
<i>Rebelle</i>		à	à	Rebellious
<i>Reconnaissant</i>		de	envers	Grateful
<i>Redevable</i>		de	à	Indebted
<i>Redoutable</i>		à	à	Dreadful
<i>Réfractaire</i>		à		Refractory
<i>Remarquable</i>		par		Remarkable
<i>Respectable</i>		par	pour	Respectable
<i>Responsable</i>		de	à, envers, pour	Responsible
<i>Riche</i>		de, en, par		Rich
<i>Satisfait</i>	de	de	de	Contented, satis- fied
<i>Sensible</i>		à		Sensible
<i>Sévère</i>		sur	envers, à l'è-	Severe
<i>Soigneux</i>	de	de	[gard de	Careful
<i>Sourd</i>		à		Deaf
<i>Sujet</i>	à	à		Subject
<i>Supportable</i>		à		Supportable
<i>Terrible</i>			à	Terrible
<i>Tributaire</i>		de	de	Tributary

French adjectives.	Before a verb.	Before a common noun.	Before a noun of person.	English adjectives.
<i>Utile</i> .	<i>pour</i>	<i>à, en, dans</i>	<i>à</i>	Useful
<i>Victorieux</i> .		<i>de</i>		Victorious
<i>Vide</i> .		<i>de</i>		Empty
<i>Vif</i> .	<i>à</i>			Quick
<i>Voisin</i> .		<i>de</i>	<i>de</i>	Neighbouring

570. When, after the verb *être*, used unipersonally, follows an adjective that has a verb for its object, that object must be preceded by the preposition *de*, even if that adjective should require another preposition before its object, according to the preceding Table.

It is difficult to conduct such an enterprise, *Il est difficile de conduire une telle entreprise.*

It is hard to be obliged to pay the debts of others, *Il est dur d'être obligé de payer les dettes des autres.*

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS IN GENERAL.

571. Pronouns, being always employed in a definite sense, should never represent a noun, whose signification is not determined by an article. Therefore, the following phrases are not correct :

He asks for *pardon*, though he does not deserve *it*, *Il demande grâce, quoiqu'il ne la mérite pas.*

He received us with *politeness* which delighted us, *Il nous reçut avec politesse qui nous a charmés.*

If he has *right* to command, who gave *it* to him ? *S'il a droit de commander, qui le lui a donné ?*

Explanation. These phrases are incorrect, because the nouns *grâce*, *politesse* and *droit*, are not determined in their signification. To correct them it would be necessary to use articles with those nouns ; thus,

He asks for *his* *pardon*, though he does not deserve *it*, *Il demande sa grâce, quoiqu'il ne la mérite pas.*

He received us with *a* *politeness* which delighted us, *Il nous reçut avec une politesse qui nous charma.*

If he has *the* *right* to command, who gave *it* to him ? *S'il a le droit de commander, qui le lui a donné ?*

But, were there no word before HE SAID, the French should be *Il dit, je ne serai jamais heureux, &c.*

578. Except, 4th. When the verb is preceded by one of the words *aussi*, SO, ALSO ; *peut-être*, PERHAPS ; *encore*, YET ; *toujours*, ALWAYS ; *en vain*, IN VAIN ; *du moins, au moins*, AT LEAST : although, in English, after these words, the nominative pronoun is placed before the verb.

So *he* is not here, . . . *Aussi n'est-il pas ici.*
 Perhaps *you* are right, . . . *Peut-être avez-vous raison.*
 In vain *we* would pretend, *En vain prétendrions-nous.*

However, this exception is not necessarily observed, for we might say *aussi il n'est pas ici ; peut-être vous avez raison ; en vain nous prétendrions.* But these expressions have not the grace nor energy of the former.

579. The passive verbal pronouns are placed before the verb : See Nos. 169, 179, 180.

580. However, when a verb in the infinitive is governed by another verb, the pronoun that is the object of the infinitive may be placed either before that infinitive, or before the verb that precedes it ; as,

One cannot reproach *me* that I *On ne saurait me reprocher, or*
 am ungrateful, *on ne me saurait reprocher*
que je suis un ingrat.

581. But if the first verb is used in a compound tense, the passive or objective verbal pronoun cannot be placed before it ; it must be immediately before the infinitive of which it is the object.

I would have wished *to procure* *J'aurais voulu me procurer ce*
 that pleasure *to myself,* *plaisir, not Je m'aurais voulu*
procurer ce plaisir. .

582. When the verb is in the second person singular, the first or second person plural of the imperative, and is not used with negation, the passive verbal pronouns must be placed after it : See No. 181.

583. But, if there were two imperatives in succession united by the conjunction *et*, AND, or *ou*, OR, the passive verbal pronouns of the second imperative might be placed before as well as after it; as,

Leave that chain *to me*, or take away *my life*, *Laissez-moi cette chaîne, ou m'arrachez le jour, or arrachez-moi le jour.*

Polish *it* without ceasing, and polish *it* again, *Polissez-le sans cesse, et le repolissez, or repolissez-le.*

584. It is said at page 96, that the passive verbal pronouns are always used as objects to verbs, and never to prepositions. But the prepositions *voici*, BEHOLD HERE, *voilà*, BEHOLD THERE, are excepted; for, when their object is a personal pronoun or even several, instead of the substantive personal pronouns, the passive verbal pronouns must be employed, and placed before them the same as if those prepositions were verbs; as in

Behold here *some of them*, *En voici.*

Behold *them* there, *Les voilà.*

Behold *him*, *Le voici, or le voilà.*

Behold *her*, &c. *La voici, or la voilà, &c.*

The cause of this exception must be that the prepositions *voici*, *voilà*, are a compound of the verb *voir*, TO SEE, and *ici*, HERE, or *là*, THERE.

585. SEE HERE and SEE THERE are translated by *voici*, *voilà*; HERE IS OR ARE, THERE IS OR ARE, when followed by a noun, are also rendered by *voici*, *voilà*; and if TO BE, used in the sense of BEHOLD, is preceded by HERE OR THERE and a nominative pronoun, that nominative pronoun is rendered by a corresponding objective pronoun in French; as,

Here is your book, *Voici votre livre.*

There they are, *Les voilà.*

Here I am, *Me voici.*

Here we are, *Nous voici.*

There they are, *Les voilà.*

586. The nominative verbal pronouns must be repeated; 1st. When the two parts of the phrase in which the verbs are employed are united by any other conjunction than *et*, AND; *ou*, OR; *ni*, NOR; *mais*, BUT.

We detest the wicked, *because we* fear them, *Nous détestons les méchants parce que nous les craignons.*
 He is learned *though he* is very young, *Il est savant quoiqu'il soit bien jeune.*

587. 2d. When we pass from a negative part of a phrase to an affirmative.

I do not bend, but I *break*, . *Je ne plie pas et je romps.*
 But we could not say,

I bend, but I do not break, . *Je plie et je ne romps pas;*
 because the first verb is not used with a negation, the phrase should be,

I bend, but do not break, . . *Je plie et ne romps pas.*

In these examples, *BUT* is rendered by *et*, merely for the sake of illustration, since *mais* would be perfectly correct.

588. The passive verbal pronouns must always be repeated before each verb that governs them, though they are expressed but once in English; as,

His odious face vexes and *Son visage odieux m'afflige et*
 haunts *me*, *me poursuit.*
 He turns away his eyes, pities *Il détourne les yeux, le plaint*
 and reveres *him*, *et le révère.*

589. The pronoun *soi*, ONE'S SELF, HIMSELF, ITSELF, is always of the singular number and relates both to persons and things; but, when it relates to persons, it is always used in a vague and indefinite sense; as *on*, ONE; *chacun*, EVERY ONE, EACH ONE; *personne*, ANY ONE; *quiconque*, WHOEVER; as,

One should seldom speak of *On doit rarement parler de*
one's self, *soi.*

Whoever ascribes every thing to *Quiconque rapporte tout à soi,*
himself, has not many friends, *n'a pas beaucoup d'amis.*

To live only for *one's self*, is to *Ne vivre que pour soi, c'est être*
 be already dead, *déjà mort.*

The loadstone attracts iron to *L'aimant attire le fer à soi.*
itself,

590. Even if there be no vague expression in the phrase, the pronoun *soi* is sometimes used to avoid an equivocation; but then it always relates to the nominative of the verb; as,

By fulfilling the orders of his father, that young man works for himself, *En remplissant les orders de son père, ce jeune homme travaille pour soi.*

Explanation. *Pour soi* is employed in this phrase, because if *pour lui* had been used, one could not see for whom the work was done, whether for the father or for the son ; the same equivocation would exist in the English phrase, if, instead of *for* **FOR HIMSELF, FOR HIM** were employed.

591. When the pronouns *lui, leur, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles*, are used as objects of a verb, they should relate only to persons, or personified things, but never to things that are not personified ; for should they relate to things that are not personified, *en* should be used instead of *d'elle, d'eux, d'elles*, and *y* instead of *lui* and *leur* ; thus,

That house is ready to fall, do not approach it, *Cette maison menace ruine, n'en approchez pas, not approchez pas d'elle.*

That horse is bad, do not touch him, *Ce cheval est méchant, n'y touchez pas, not ne lui touchez pas.*

Those buildings not being large enough, I shall add a wing to them, *Ces bâtiments n'étant pas assez grands, j'y ferai ajouter une aile, not je leur ferai ajouter une aile.*

592. It is observed in the Remark, page 178, that the objective verbal pronouns *lui* and *leur* are never used in combination with the passive or objective verbal pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous* ; therefore when the objects of a verb are **TO HIM, TO HER, OR TO THEM**, with either **ME, THEE, ONE'S SELF, US OR YOU, TO HIM** should be translated by *à lui* ; **TO HER**, by *à elle* ; **TO THEM**, by *à eux* for the masculine, and by *à elles* for the feminine plural ; as in

I have sent *you to him* that you may speak to him, *Je vous ai envoyé à lui pour que vous lui parliez.*

Before they sent *us to her*, they had written to her, *Avant de nous envoyer à elle, ils lui avaient écrit.*

When I arrived at the regiment, my friend had seen the officers and had recommended *me to them*, *Lorsque j'arrivai au régiment, mon ami avait vu les officiers et m'avait recommandé à eux.*

Explanation. In the first example, the first **TO HIM** is rendered by *à lui* after the verb, because it cannot be combined with *vous*, and therefore it would be wrong to say *je vous*

lui *ai* *envoyé* ; the second **TO HIM** is rendered by the passive verbal pronoun *lui* placed before the verb, because it is not used with either of the passive verbal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*. In the second, the first **TO HER** is rendered by *à elle*, placed after the verb instead of *lui* placed before the verb, because *lui* cannot be used with *nous* ; the second **TO HER** is rendered by *lui* placed before the verb, according to Rule 169, because it is not combined with either of the passive verbal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*. These explanations will answer for the third example.

593. When a personal pronoun relating to persons is the object of *penser*, **TO THINK**, or of a reflective verb, or of a verb expressing motion or tendency to, that requires the preposition *à* before its object,—instead of using the passive verbal pronouns without a preposition before that verb, the substantive pronouns with the preposition *à* should be used and placed after it.

He came <i>to me</i> ,		<i>Il vint à moi.</i>
First I went <i>to him</i> , and then		<i>D'abord j'allai à lui, et ensuite</i>
<i>to you</i> ,		<i>à vous.</i>
When you are gone, I shall		<i>Lorsque vous serez parti, je</i>
often think <i>of you</i> ,		<i>penserai souvent à vous.</i>
They presented <i>themselves to me</i> ,		<i>Ils se présentèrent à moi.</i>

594. The passive turn is often employed, in English, to express that a thing is customary, or that a thing is, was or will be done without expressing by whom or by what ; in which case the verb, which is in the past participle in English, must be in French in the same tense, number and person as the verb **TO BE**, and preceded by the passive verbal pronoun *se* ; as,

That <i>was</i> often <i>done</i> ,		<i>Cela se faisait souvent.</i>
Such things <i>are</i> often <i>seen</i> ,		<i>De telles choses se voient sou-</i>
		<i>vent.</i>
That was sold for so much,		<i>Cela se vendait tant.</i>

EXERCISE 225.

Had we less pride, we should speak less of that of others. The prudent man is always disposed to ask for advice and to follow it. — Good men should always protect the unfortunate, even if they are their enemies. In the beginning of the world, every father governed his own family with an absolute power ; punishing or rewarding his children the same as a king punishes or rewards his own subjects. Men like to render justice to the dead, because they hope that one day it will be ren-

dered to them. The man ⁵⁷³ who fears God, ⁵⁷³ who knows our most secret thoughts, does nothing that is contrary to virtue.

When a man is accused of a crime and is innocent, the fear of not being able to prove his innocence ⁵⁸⁸ pursues, ⁵⁸⁸ torments, and overwhelms him. ⁵⁸⁸—The soil, that is naturally fruitful, would be much more so, ⁵⁷⁶ were it cultivated.—Are you the wife of Mr. C. ? I asked her. ⁵⁷⁷—I am, she replied. ⁵⁷⁷—Pardon me my fault, and restore your friendship to me ; ⁵⁸³ and be assured that if I have done such a thing, it was because I was not conscious that it was wrong. ⁴⁴⁹

EXERCISE 226.

The impulses of the heart are seldom deceitful : abandon yourself to them, ⁵⁹¹ if you wish to be happy. You are not happy, although you enjoy ¹⁰⁹ an immense fortune and have many friends. ^{586 & 109} To be too much dissatisfied with one's ⁵⁸⁹ self is weakness, and to be too much satisfied is folly.—Virtue is lovely of itself, ⁵⁸⁹ nevertheless there are men who dislike it. ¹⁶⁷ The excellence of the senses is a gift from nature, but art and habit may add ²⁶⁴ to them a degree of perfection. ⁵⁹¹ If, in this country, crimes are punished ⁵⁹⁴ according to just laws, good actions are rewarded. ⁵⁹⁴ If you wish to speak to Mr. D., I shall go and present you to ¹⁹³ him, although you have not been announced to him. ⁵⁹²—I am much obliged to you, but I should prefer that you would announce me to him first. ¹⁰⁹—Very well ; I shall do it.—After having consulted me, he went to you in order to obtain your advice, ⁵⁹³ which I hope you gave him.

SYNTAX OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

595. It has already been said that the word *ce* is sometimes a demonstrative article, used to translate THIS or THAT, (see No. 55,) and sometimes a personal pronoun, used to translate IT, see No. 391.

596. When there are two verbs in the same phrase, the first of which is preceded by THAT WHICH, or any other nominative, or WHAT, and the second, which is TO BE, has for its nominative the pronoun IT, whether expressed or understood, THAT WHICH or

WHAT must be translated by *ce qui* for the nominative, and by *ce que* for the object of the first verb; and the verb *être* must be preceded by *ce*, and be in the singular, if it is followed by a verb or a pronoun whether singular or plural of the first or second person, a preposition, a noun or a pronoun in the singular; and in the plural, if it be immediately followed by a plural pronoun of the third person, by a plural or by several nouns in the singular, provided those plural or singular nouns are preceded by an article.

<i>What</i> I desire most <i>is</i> to go and see you,	<i>Ce que je désire le plus, c'est d'aller vous voir.</i>
<i>That which</i> vexes me <i>is</i> that I am interrupted at every instant,	<i>Ce qui me fâche, c'est qu'on m'interrompt à chaque instant.</i>
<i>That which</i> attaches me to life <i>is</i> you,	<i>Ce qui m'attache à la vie, c'est vous.</i>
<i>What</i> provokes me <i>is</i> the injustice of men,	<i>Ce qui m'indigne ce sont les injustices des hommes.</i>
<i>What</i> we should esteem most <i>is</i> virtue and science,	<i>Ce que nous devrions le plus estimer, ce sont la vertu et la science.</i>

597. But when the verb TO BE is followed by a noun in the singular number, the pronoun IT may or may not be rendered in French, or rather *ce* may or may not be used in the French phrase. Therefore, it is equally proper to translate,

<i>That which</i> deserves our admiration most <i>is</i> virtue,	<i>Ce qui mérite le plus notre admiration est la vertu, or c'est la vertu.</i>
--	--

598. When TO BE, having for its nominative the pronoun IT, is followed by an adjective, if that adjective is followed by a verb preceded by *que*, THAT, or *de* being the translation of TO or any other preposition, the nominative pronoun IT must be rendered by *il*.

<i>It is</i> certain <i>that</i> you have acted generously,	<i>Il est certain que vous avez agi généreusement.</i>
<i>It is</i> prudent <i>to</i> do so, .	<i>Il est prudent de le faire.</i>

sometimes expressed with a noun in the style of the courts of justice and deeds, and also sometimes to avoid confusion ; as in,

That house is sold for ten	<i>Cette maison est vendue pour</i>
thousand dollars, <i>which</i>	<i>dix mille dollars, laquelle</i>
<i>house</i> will be occupied im-	<i>maison sera immédiatement</i>
mediately by the buyer,	<i>occupée par l'acheteur.</i>

601. A relative pronoun always requires the same gender, number and person of the following adjective, past participle and verb, as its antecedent ; and, if there are several verbs having the same relative pronoun for nominative, it must be repeated before every one in French.

<i>I who</i> am esteemed, .	<i>Moi qui suis</i> estimé or estimée.
<i>Thou who</i> art esteemed, .	<i>Toi qui es</i> estimé or estimée.
<i>He who</i> is esteemed, .	<i>Lui qui est</i> estimé.
<i>She who</i> is esteemed, . .	<i>Elle qui est</i> estimée.
<i>We who</i> are esteemed, .	<i>Nous qui sommes</i> estimés or estimées.
<i>You who</i> are esteemed, .	<i>Vous qui êtes</i> estimés or estimées.
<i>They who</i> are esteemed, .	<i>Eux qui sont</i> estimés.
<i>They who</i> are esteemed, . .	<i>Elles qui sont</i> estimées.

602. The relative pronoun must always be placed next to its antecedent.

The Goddess <i>who</i> , on enter-	<i>La Déesse qui, en entrant, voit</i>
ing, saw the table cloth	<i>la nappe mise.</i>
spread,	

Therefore, Boileau was wrong when he wrote *la Déesse, en entrant, qui voit la nappe mise* ; because the relative pronoun *qui* should not be separated from its antecedent *Déesse*.

603. The relative pronouns *lequel, laquelle, &c.* are used instead of *qui, que, dont*, to avoid an equivocation ; as in,

I have seen the husband of	<i>J'ai vu le mari de votre sœur,</i>
your sister, <i>who</i> is to ob-	<i>lequel doit obtenir cette</i>
tain that office,	<i>place.</i>

The goodness of God, <i>of</i>	<i>La bonté de Dieu, de laquelle</i>
<i>which</i> I know the great-	<i>je connais la grandeur, me</i>
ness, reassures me,	<i>rassure.</i>

Explanation. If in the first example, *qui* were employed instead of *lequel*, it would be

it would be doubtful whether it related TO THE HUSBAND, *au mari*, OR TO THE SISTER, *ou à la sœur* ; and in the second, if *dont* were used instead of *de laquelle*, it would be doubtful whether it relates TO THE GOODNESS, *la bonté*, OR TO GOD, *à Dieu*.

SYNTAX OF THE DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS.

604. When after EACH ONE OR EVERY ONE, *chacun, chacune*, follows a possessive article of the third person, that possessive article is rendered in French, by *son, sa, ses*, or by *leur, leurs* ; thus,

605. When *chacun* or *chacune* is placed after the direct object of a verb, or when the verb with which it is used has no direct object, it requires *son, sa* or *ses* ; as

They have carried *their* offerings, *each one* according to *his* means, *Ils ont apporté leurs offrandes, chacun selon ses moyens.*

The two kings have retired, *each one* into *his* tent, *Les deux rois se sont retirés, chacun dans sa tente.*

They have voted, *every one* in *his* turn, *Ils ont voté, chacun à son tour.*

606. When *chacun* or *chacune* is placed before the object of the verb, it requires *leur* or *leurs* before that object ; as in,

They have brought *each one* *his* offerings, *Ils ont apporté chacun leurs offrandes.*

They have given, *every one* *his* opinion, *Ils ont donné chacun leurs avis.*

EXERCISE 228.

Such was the terror ¹⁶⁷ *with which we were struck, that there were only ⁶⁰¹ ⁶⁰¹ two of us who dared to speak in favour of oppressed innocence. There is an air of affectation in that ⁶⁰² author, which spoils all his writings.— How much gratitude do we owe for the goodness of God, ⁶⁰³ who has engraved in our hearts the love of virtue and the hatred of vice. Yes, ⁶⁰¹ ⁶⁰¹ Cæsar, you are the hero who has won most victories over yourself, and ⁶⁰¹ are most worthy of dictating laws to the world. The ⁶⁰⁵ Æneid of Virgil, and the Poetical Art of Horace, are perfect, each one in its kind. Nature seems to have given different talents to men, ¹⁰⁹ that every one may

* WITH should be rendered by *de*.

have ⁶⁰⁶his own occupation. The scholars of that class were examined each one in ⁶⁰⁵his turn, and afterwards they gave to their teacher each one ⁶⁰⁶his own books.

SYNTAX OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

607. The indefinite personal pronoun ONE is translated into French by *on*, which is also used to translate WE, PEOPLE, PERSONS, THEY, &c. when employed in an indefinite sense. According to the gender and number of the speaker, or of the person spoken to, or rather of the person or persons alluded to, the pronoun *on* requires the following adjective or past participle in the masculine or feminine singular, if that person is masculine or feminine singular, and in the masculine or feminine plural, if both those persons are masculine or feminine, and if the persons were of different genders, the masculine plural should be used, though the verb of which *on* is the nominative should always be in the third person singular; and the possessive case of ONE, thus, ONE'S or ONE'S OWN is rendered by the possessive personal article *son, sa, ses*; and if after the verb should follow such an objective pronoun as HIMSELF, HERSELF, ITSELF, ONE'S SELF, THEMSELVES, relating to the nominative represented by *on*, it should be rendered by *soi* or *soi-même*.

When *one* is married, one is not always mistress of *one's* actions,

Quand on est mariée on n'est pas toujours maîtresse de ses actions.

When *persons* love each other sincerely, *they* are not happy when they are separated,

Quand on s'aime sincèrement, on n'est pas heureux quand on est séparés.

Explanation. In the first example, *on* undoubtedly relates to a woman, and therefore the past participle *mariée* is in the feminine singular. In the second, *on* evidently relates to at least one gentleman and one lady, therefore the past participle *séparés* is in the masculine plural; should it relate to two or more ladies without any gentleman, the past participle should be *séparées*, that is, in the feminine plural.

608. At the beginning of a phrase *on* should be used and not *l'on*. See No. 432.

609. BOTH is sometimes translated by *l'un et l'autre*, and sometimes by *tous deux* or *tous les deux*; by *tous deux*, without

the definite article *les*, when the two persons or objects they represent have simultaneously performed or received the action expressed by the verb; and by *tous les deux*, with the definite article, when they have performed or received it at different times.

Have you seen my brothers? *Avez-vous vu mes frères?—Oui,*
 —Yes, *they both* came to tous deux *sont venus me voir*
 see me this morning, *ce matin*, or tous les deux
sont venus me voir ce matin.

Explanation. Both translations are equally correct; but, by the first, it is intended to express that both brothers came together, at the same time; whilst by the second it is intended to express that both came, but one after the other, not at the same time.

610. BOTH is often used with the nouns to which it relates; as *both the father and mother* TOLD ME so; in which case it should not be rendered in French, unless they were the objects of a verb; as in,

I have seen them *both*, the *Je les ai vues l'une et l'autre, la*
 mother and the daughter, *mère et la fille.*

Were the pronoun THEM omitted in English, it should be expressed in French, as if it were not omitted.

EXERCISE 228.

⁶⁰⁷ One is happy when one ⁶⁰⁷ is a mother, and beloved by ⁶⁰⁷ one's children.—
⁶⁰⁷ One may sometimes be a fool with much mind, and one may not always
 be a fool with a little mind. ⁴³² If one is disposed to do good, he generally
 finds opportunities of exercising his benevolence; but, ⁴³² if one is not so,
 he probably often meets unfortunate people without even perceiving
 their misery. ⁶⁰⁷ People esteem life above every thing, and they waste it ^{432 607}
 as if it were to last for ever. ⁶⁰⁷ People use several words to express the
 same thing; however, if ^{607 432} they examine attentively all those words,
⁴⁴¹ one after the other, they will find that they have each one ⁶⁰⁷ its particular ⁶⁰⁶
 signification. Have you not met my two brothers in coming from that
 place?—I met them ⁶⁰⁹ both at the foot of a tree, under which they were
 seated —And my cousins Lucy and Julia, when did you see them?—I
 saw them ⁶⁰⁹ both yesterday, Julia at about twelve o'clock, and Lucy at three
 o'clock.

CHAPTER V. SYNTAX OF VERBS.

ON THE NOMINATIVE AND AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

611. Every verb used in a personal* mood must have a nominative, and every nominative must have a verb ; as in,

Pride does not blind those *L'orgueil n'aveugle pas ceux*
that *honour enlightens,* *que l'honneur éclaire.*

Explanation. In this phrase there are two nominatives, PRIDE, *l'orgueil*, and HONOUR, *l'honneur*; there are also two verbs, BLIND, *aveugle*, and ENLIGHTEN, *éclaire*; *l'orgueil* is the nominative of *aveugle*, and *l'honneur* that of *éclaire*.

612. The nominative of a verb should not be expressed twice when once is sufficient. Therefore, this phrase is wrong:

Louis, at this instant, taking *Louis, en ce moment prenant*
his diadem, on the head of *son diadème, sur le front du*
the conqueror *he* placed it *vainqueur il le posa lui-*
himself, *même.*

Explanation. This phrase is wrong, because PLACED, *posa*, has two nominatives, *Louis* and *il*, HE, though one only is sufficient. The phrase should be *Louis, en ce moment prenant son diadème sur le front du vainqueur le posa lui-même*, without the pronoun *il*.

613. When the nominative of a verb is composed of several nouns or pronouns, that verb must be in the plural: See Nos. 89, 90.

614. But if the nouns that compose the nominative are synonymous and not united by *et*, AND, the verb agrees in number and person only with the last; as,

His intrepidity, his courage, *Son intrépidité, son courage,*
astonish the most brave, *étonne les plus braves.*

615. When the words that compose the nominative, are placed in a gradual order so that the signification of the last is greater than that of the preceding, the verb agrees with the last, in French; as,

As to that sacrifice, your in- *Quant à ce sacrifice, votre in-*
terest, your honour; God *térêt, votre honneur, Dieu*
requires it, *l'exige.*

* A personal mood is that which agrees in number and person with its nominative. The indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative, are personal moods. The infinitive is not.

616. When the words that form the nominative of a verb, are represented all together by another word, such as *ALL, tout* ; *NOTHING, rien* ; *NO ONE, NOBODY, personne* ; &c. the verb agrees with that word, in French ; as,

Words and looks, <i>all are</i>	<i>Paroles et regards tout est</i>
charms in you,	<i>charme dans vous.</i>
Time, goods, life, <i>all belong</i>	<i>Le temps, les biens, la vie, tout</i>
to the country,	<i>est à la patrie.</i>
Neither personal considera-	<i>Ni la considération personnelle,</i>
tion, dangers of life, nor	<i>ni les dangers de la vie, ni</i>
even the laws of the coun-	<i>même les lois du pays, rien</i>
try, <i>nothing will stop him,</i>	<i>ne l'arrêtera.</i>

617. When the nouns that compose the nominative of a verb are united by the conjunction *ou*, OR, the verb agrees only with the last ; and if they are united by *comme*, LIKE ; *de même que*, THE SAME AS, LIKE ; *ainsi que*, LIKE ; *aussi bien que*, AS WELL AS ; the verb agrees only with the first.

Virtue as <i>well as</i> talents <i>has</i>	<i>La vertu aussi bien que les</i>
its value,	<i>talents a son prix.</i>
Weakness <i>or</i> inexperience,	<i>La faiblesse ou l'inexpérience</i>
<i>causes</i> us to make many	<i>nous fait commettre bien des</i>
mistakes,	<i>fautes.</i>

618. However, if the words united by *ou*, OR, estate to different persons, the verb should be in the plural and in the person that has the priority : See No. 90.

You or I shall <i>speak</i> ,	<i>Vous ou moi parlerons.</i>
You or your brother <i>will come</i> ,	<i>Vous ou votre frère viendrez.</i>

618. When two or several nouns are preceded by *NEITHER*, in English, the French use sometimes the conjunction *ni* before every noun, and *ne* before the verb of which they are the nominative ; and if both nouns perform together the action of the verb, that verb should be in the plural ; but if only one noun was to perform that action, the verb should be in the singular, in French.

<i>Neither</i> the Duke <i>nor</i> the	<i>Ni le Duc ni le Cardinal ne</i>
Cardinal <i>will be</i> appointed	<i>sera nommé ambassadeur.</i>
ambassador,	

*Neither gold nor greatness Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous
make us happy, rendent heureux.*

Explanation. In the first example, as there is only one ambassador to be appointed, only one of the two nouns can perform the action expressed by the verb, which verb is therefore in the singular. In the second, on the contrary, both nouns perform the action of the verb, which consequently is in the plural.

620. When a verb has for its nominative a collective noun, or a noun representing several individuals, that verb is generally put in the plural, in English ; but in French, it is always put in the singular, unless that noun has a plural termination ; the same rule is to be followed as regards articles, adjectives or pronouns that relate to any noun of multitude.

*The committee have made Le comité a fait son rapport.
their report,*

*The legislature have made La législature a fait cette loi.
that law,*

Explanation. In the first example, COMMITTEE being a noun representing the several persons of which the committee is composed, the verb HAVE is in the plural agreeing in number with those persons ; but as comité is in the singular number, in French, the verb *a* of which it is the nominative is in the singular ; it would be very wrong to have it in the plural. The same observation should be made for the translation of THEIR by *son* instead of *leur*. In the second, *a* is in the singular for the same reason. Were there several COMMITTEES or LEGISLATURES, then the plural nouns *comités*, *législatures*, should require the verb in the plural.

621. Any verb that has for its nominative a collective noun agrees with that noun, if it be general, that is, if it represent a whole class of beings ; and with the noun that follows the collective noun, if the collective noun be partitive, that is, if it represent but a part of a class of beings ; as,

*The infinity of the perfec- L'infinité des perfections de
tions of God fills me with Dieu me remplit d'admira-
admiration, tion.*

*A multitude of barbarians Une multitude de barbares
ravaged the country, ravagèrent le pays.*

Explanation. In the first example the verb agrees with the collective noun, because it represents in its signification all the PERFECTIONS OF GOD. In the second, the verb agrees with the following noun, because the collective noun implies but a part of THE BARBARIANS.

622. The verb that has for its nominative a noun preceded by an adverb of quantity, agrees with that noun ; as,

*Few people neglect their Peu de gens négligent leurs
own interest, intérêts.*

623. When *peu*, FEW OR A FEW, *beaucoup*, MANY, and *la plupart*, MOST, MOST OF THEM, relate to a plural noun previously expressed or understood, the verb of which they are the nominative, as well as the adjective or participle, must be in the plural, because then it agrees with an implied plural noun ; as,

Most are apt to mistake, La plupart sont sujets à se tromper.

Few like study, . . . Peu aiment l'étude.

Explanation. In these phrases *MOST*, *la plupart*, is for *la plupart des hommes*, *MOST OF MEN*. And *FEW*, *peu*, is for *peu de personnes*, *FEW PERSONS*.

624. When a verb has for its nominative several infinitives, it must be in the singular and preceded by the pronoun *ce*, whether it is expressed or not, in English ; as,

To eat, drink and sleep is *Manger, boire et dormir c'est*
their only occupation, *leur unique occupation.*

625. However, if there is but one infinitive, the pronoun *ce* may be expressed or omitted, according to the taste of the writer ; as,

To be pleased in all places is *Se plaire en tous lieux c'est*, or
the secret of the wise, *est le secret du sage.*

EXERCISE 229.

Alexander, having sent for Darius's mother, wife, and children,
⁶¹² he spoke to them with kindness. From the centre of the flower rise
 several little columns rounded or pointed at the end ; ³⁹⁴ those are the
 pistils. The good man is too confident ; his candour, his innocence
⁶¹⁴ render him the dupe of the wicked. Great men stand in no need of
 efforts, nor study to win hearts : a single word, a graceful smile, a
⁶¹⁵ glance is sufficient for them. ⁵¹¹ Old men, ⁵¹¹ women, ⁵¹¹ children, ⁶¹⁶ no one esca-
 ped the slaughter. The happiness or unhappiness of the people
⁶¹⁷ are in the hands of those who govern. If you do not think so, you
⁸⁸ or I ^{618 & 249} must be wrong. The virtuous man is he whom neither the
 enticement of riches ⁶¹⁹ nor the fear of death ⁶¹⁹ can induce to perpe-
 trate a criminal action. Cincinnatus and Fabius honoured their
 gods. ^{619 & 445} Neither used ^{619 & 139} to engage in an enterprise without consulting
 them. ⁶²¹ The multitude of men, that surround ⁶²¹ princes, is the cause that
¹⁶⁷ there are few who make a deep impression upon them. Many persons

⁶²²like knowledge, but few ⁶²³like study. ⁵⁹⁸It is difficult to know men :
⁶²³most of them, like plants, have concealed virtues, which chance makes
known. ¹²³To drink, to eat, to sleep, ⁶²⁴are the lot of brutes ; to think freely,
to feel with delicacy, to act courageously, ⁶²⁴are the lot of man. ⁶¹⁹Neither
you nor I ^{88 618}have passed through the trials of envy or ambition ; perhaps
we should have been like many ⁹⁴others, ⁴⁹⁷false friends or vile flatterers.
⁵¹⁰Gelon, the king of Syracuse, having conquered the Carthaginians, ⁶¹²he re-
quired of them, as ⁵¹⁹the chief condition of peace, to renounce human
sacrifices.

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF THE OBJECT OF VERBS.

626. When the object of a verb is a noun, it should be preceded by an article, in French ; by the definite, if the noun is used in a definite sense, according to the definition given at No. 35 ; by the partitive, if it were used in a partitive sense ; and generally by the indefinite *un* or *une*, if, being without an article in English, it were qualified by an adjective or a participle.

The chief of a nation should	<i>Le chef d'une nation devrait</i>
have power, but he should	<i>avoir du pouvoir, mais il ne</i>
not have absolute power,	<i>devrait pas avoir un pouvoir</i>
	<i>absolu.</i>

Explanation. The first word *pouvoir* is preceded by the partitive article *du*, because POWER is for SOME POWER ; the second is preceded by the indefinite article *un*, because it is qualified by an adjective.

627. A verb cannot have two direct or indirect objects. Therefore, it would be wrong to say :

Do not trouble yourself that	<i>Ne vous inquiétez pas ce que</i>
which I shall do,	<i>je ferai.</i>

Because the verb TROUBLE, *inquiétez*, should not have the two direct objects YOURSELF, *vous*, and THAT, *ce*. The phrase should be thus :

Do not trouble yourself about	<i>Ne vous inquiétez pas de ce que</i>
what, or that which I shall	<i>je ferai.</i>
do,	

Again, we should not say :

It is <i>to him to whom</i> I write,	<i>C'est à lui à qui j'écris.</i>
It is <i>of you of whom</i> we speak,	<i>C'est de vous dont nous parlons.</i>
It is <i>to the city where</i> I am going,	<i>C'est à la ville où je vais.</i>

Explanation. These phrases are wrong, because there being only one verb there should be only one object of the same kind, relating to the same noun. The indirect object of *écris*, WRITE ; *parlons*, SPEAK ; and *vais*, GO ; being *à lui*, TO HIM ; *de vous*, OF YOU ; and *à la ville*, TO THE CITY ; it is unnecessary to use *à qui*, TO WHOM, relating to the same noun as *à lui*, TO HIM ; *dont*, OF WHOM, relating to the same noun as *de vous*, OF YOU ; and *où*, WHERE, which is for *à laquelle*, TO WHICH, relating to *à la ville*, TO THE CITY, which being expressed does not require to be represented. To render these phrases correct we should use *que*, THAT, instead of *à lui*, TO HIM ; instead of *dont*, OF WHOM ; instead of *où*, WHERE ; thus,

It is <i>to him that</i> I write,	<i>C'est à lui que j'écris.</i>
It is <i>of you that</i> we speak,	<i>C'est de vous que nous parlons.</i>
It is <i>to the city that</i> I am going,	<i>C'est à la ville que je vais.</i>

For the same reason we should not say :

It is <i>here where</i> I live,	<i>C'est ici où je demeure.</i>
It is <i>there where</i> I am going,	<i>C'est là où je vais.</i>

But we should say :

It is <i>here that</i> I live,	<i>C'est ici que je demeure.</i>
It is <i>there that</i> I am going,	<i>C'est là que je vais.</i>

628. When a noun is the object of two verbs that require different objects, that is, when the one requires a direct object and the other an indirect object, or when the one requires one preposition before its object and the other another preposition, each verb must have its own particular object, the first verb having the noun and the second a pronoun representing it. Therefore, it would be wrong to say :

He <i>attacked and took possession</i> of the city,	<i>Il attaqua et s'empara de la ville.</i>
A great number of vessels <i>enter and go out from</i> that harbour every month,	<i>Un grand nombre de bâtiments entrent et sortent de ce port tous les mois.</i>

Explanation. The first example is wrong, because *ATTACKED*, *attaqua*, requires a direct object, and *TOOK POSSESSION*, *s'empara*, require the preposition *OF*, *de*, before its indirect object. The second is wrong also, because the verb *TO ENTER* requires no preposition before its object, though *entrer* requires the preposition *dans*, and *TO GO OUT*, *sortir*, require the preposition *FROM*, *de*. The above phrases should be thus :

He <i>attacked the city</i> and took possession of it,	<i>Il attaqua la ville et s'en empara.</i>
A great number of vessels <i>enter that harbour and go out from it</i> every month,	<i>Un grand nombre de bâtiments entrent dans ce port et en sortent tous les mois.</i>

629. This rule is also applicable to adjectives, and even to prepositions. Therefore, we should not say,

He is *attentive* and *satisfied* *Il est assidu et satisfait de son*
with his work, *travail.*

But we should say:

He is *attentive* to his work and is *satisfied* with it, Il est assidu à son travail et en est satisfait ;

because the adjectives ATTENTIVE, *assidu*, and SATISFIED, *satisfait*, require different prepositions before the noun that is their object.

630. Although the following phrase is correct in English, it is wrong in French.

He has spoken at the same time *against* and *in favour* of our friend, *Il a parlé en même temps contre et en faveur de notre ami.*

Explanation. The French phrase is wrong, because *contre* requires no other preposition before its object, whilst *en faveur* requires *de*. The phrase should be *il a parlé en même temps contre notre ami et en sa faveur*. We do not feel qualified to criticise the English phrase, but we should think that it would be as well, if not better, if it were thus, **HE HAS SPOKEN AT THE SAME TIME AGAINST OUR FRIEND AND IN HIS FAVOUR.**

631. When a verb has two indirect objects, it is necessary to avoid placing them in such a manner as to cause any equivocation. Therefore, we should not say,

The masters who scold at those who serve them *with passion*, are the worse served.

Les maîtres qui grondent ceux qui les servent avec passion, sont les plus mal servis.

Explanation. This phrase is wrong, because it is doubtful to what the words **WITH PASSION**, *avec passion*, relate, whether it is to **SCOLD**, *grondent*, or **SERVE**, *servent*. The phrase should be thus :

The masters, who scold *with passion* at those who serve them, are the worse served,
Les maîtres, qui grondent avec passion ceux qui les servent, sont les plus mal servis.

632. When a verb has for its objects several words that are united by one of the conjunctions *et*, AND; *ni*, NOR; *ou*, OR; those words should belong to the same class, that is, if the first word is a noun, the second must be also a noun; if it is a verb, the second must also be a verb; if it were several words forming a kind of a phrase, the conjunction should be followed by a similar phrase. Therefore, the following phrases are wrong:

He likes *play* and *to study*, *Il aime le jeu et à étudier.*

They spend their time *at the chase*, or *in fishing*, *Ils passent leur temps à la chasse, ou à pêcher.*

It is not necessary to learn *to shoot with a bow*, nor *the handling* of the javelin, *Il n'est pas nécessaire d'apprendre à tirer de l'arc, ni le maniement du javelot.*

Explanation. These phrases are wrong, because in the first the word that precedes *et*, *AND*, is a noun, and that which follows is a verb, when it should also be a noun. In the second, the word that precedes *ou*, *OR*, is a verb, and that which follows is a noun, when it should also be a verb. In the third, the words that precede *ni*, *NOR*, form a phrase with a verb, and those that follow are nouns joined with a preposition, when they should be such words as to form a phrase like that which precedes the conjunction *ni*, *NOR*. These phrases should be corrected thus :

He likes *play* and *study*, or he likes to *play* and to *study*, *Il aime le jeu et l'étude, ou il aime à jouer et à étudier.*

They spend their time *at the chase*, or *at the fishery*, or they spend their time *in hunting* or *in fishing*, *Ils passent leur temps à la chasse ou à la pêche, ou ils passent leur temps à chasser ou à pêcher.*

It is not necessary to learn *how to shoot with a bow*, nor *how to handle* the javelin, *Il n'est pas nécessaire d'apprendre à tirer de l'arc, ni à manier le javelot.*

633. Sometimes a verb is used, in English, without any apparent object, when the corresponding French verb should have one expressed, and to determine which one, it is only necessary to ask what is or should be the object upon which the action of that verb is exercised, and then the answer determines that object, which generally is a personal pronoun.

He turned towards us, *Il se tourna vers nous.*

Explanation. What did he turn ?—HIMSELF, therefore. HIMSELF implied is the object of TO TURN, in English, and is expressed in French by the objective verbal pronoun *se*.

EXERCISE 230.

History is a theatre, where politics the same as morality are put into action ; it is there that men occupy a place only according to their virtue and the services they have rendered. The first crime of man was to revolt against his creator, and to use the advantages he had received from him, to offend him. The second crusade was announced by Foulques, a curate from Neuilly ; he selected the moment when the grandes and nobility were collected together in a tournament, to preach it. The good man does not fear calumny, nor that it will be able to attack his reputation ; the testimony of his conscience is sufficient for him. It is to Jenner that we are indebted for the discovery of vaccine, the first experiments with* which were made in Scotland in the year one thousand seven

* WITH should be rendered by *de* ; and therefore WITH WHICH by *dont*, which is for *duquel, desquels, &c.*

hundred and ninety-six. Consider ⁶³²virtue preferable to riches, and that ⁴²⁴God rewards those who practise it. Observe with what care Plato tries to conquer his own passions, and the austere ⁶³²rule to which he submits virtue.

CHAPTER VII.

SYNTAX OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

634. The verb *avoir* is used with a past participle to express an action done by the nominative; and the verb *être* is used with a past participle or an adjective to express the state of the nominative. Whence it follows that most neuter verbs which express an action have their compound tenses formed with *avoir*; as, I *have* REIGNED, *j'ai régné*; WE *have* SLEPT, *nous avons dormi*; YOU *have* WALKED, *vous avez marché*, &c.

Except *aller*, . to go; *devenir*, . to become;
arriver, to arrive; *mourir*, . to die;
choir, . to fall to; *naître*, . to be born;
décéder, to de cease; *parvenir*, . to attain;
tomber, to fall; *revenir*, . to come again;
venir, . to come; all of which take *être* in French,
 though they take to HAVE in English.

635. Those neuter verbs that are conjugated with either *avoir* or *être*, see No. 163, take *avoir* when the action of the verb is to be expressed, and *être* when the state of the nominative of the verb is the main object. Therefore, we must use *avoir* in the following phrases:

Mr. P. *has disappeared* on a sudden, *M. P. a disparu subitement.*

The fever *ceased* this morning, *La fièvre a cessé ce matin.*

The river *has risen* rapidly, *La rivière a monté rapidement.*

Mr. B. *passed* to America at such a time, *M. B. a passé en Amérique en tel temps.*

636. But in all the following phrases *être* should be used in French, though to HAVE may be used in English.

The fever *is stopped* some time since, *La fièvre est cessée depuis quelque temps.*

Mr. P. <i>has disappeared</i> these	<i>M. P. est disparu depuis quinze</i>
fifteen days,	<i>jours.</i>
He <i>is gone up</i> , he <i>is gone</i>	<i>Il est monté, il est descendu,</i>
<i>down</i> , an hour since,	<i>depuis une heure.</i>
The heat <i>is gone</i> ,	<i>Les chaleurs sont passées.</i>
The troops <i>have set out</i> for	<i>Les troupes sont parties pour</i>
six months,	<i>six mois.</i>

637. Sometimes neuter verbs are used as active verbs with a direct object, and then they take *avoir*.

We <i>have taken</i> him from a	<i>Nous l'avons sorti d'une affaire</i>
disagreeable affair,	<i>désagréable.</i>
They <i>have ascended</i> the	<i>Ils ont monté la montagne.</i>
mountain,	

638. Some neuter verbs change their meaning as they change their auxiliary; as, *convenir* with *avoir*, means TO BE CONVENIENT, TO SUIT; and with *être*, it means TO AGREE UPON.

That house <i>suited</i> me, and I	<i>Cette maison m'a convenu, et je</i>
<i>agreed</i> to the price,	<i>suis convenu du prix.</i>

639. *Demeurer* takes *être* when the nominative is not to change its state, and *avoir* when the nominative might have changed its state; as,

Two hundred soldiers <i>have</i>	<i>Deux cents soldats sont restés</i>
<i>remained</i> on the field of	<i>sur le champ de bataille.</i>
battle,	

Mr. B. <i>has remained</i> ten	<i>M. B. a resté dix ans en Amé-</i>
years in America,	<i>rique.</i>

640. *Ce mot m'est échappé*, means THAT WORD HAS DROPPED FROM ME, that is, IT HAPPENED TO ME TO SPEAK THAT WORD; and *Ce mot m'a échappé*, means THAT WORD ESCAPED MY NOTICE, that is, I DID NOT NOTICE IT.

641. *Expirer*, TO EXPIRE, takes *être* when it relates to things, and *avoir* when it relates to persons.

The truce <i>is expired</i> ,	<i>La trêve est expirée.</i>
That man <i>expired</i> this morn-	<i>Cet homme a expiré ce matin.</i>
ing,	

642. THERE IS, THERE ARE, THERE WAS, &c. instead of being translated by *il y a*, *il y avait*, &c. is translated by *il en est*,

il en était, &c. especially if what follows is a relative pronoun, an adverb of quantity with *SOME* either expressed or understood.

Among the Indians *there are* *Parmi les Indiens* *il en est qui*
some that have courage, *ont du courage.*

243. IT IS WITH, IT WAS WITH, &c. is also translated by *il en est*, *il en était*, &c. if the object of WITH is a personal pronoun, a proper name, or a noun of person or thing, or a demonstrative pronoun, and that object must be preceded by *de*; and, if there is a comparison, the second WITH is also rendered by *de*; as,

It is with you as with all *Il en est de vous comme de tous*
those who do such things, *ceux qui font de telles choses.*

It is with that, as with *Il en est de cela comme de ce*
what we saw yesterday, *que nous vîmes hier.*

EXERCISE 231.

All the republics of Greece have fallen from liberty into slavery. In
the beginning of the christian era the city of ^{104 & 635} *Herculaneum* disappeared
under the lava of ⁴⁹² *Vesuvius*. Although the Chinese take pride in being
the ¹¹⁸ most ancient people on the earth, they are far from being the ¹¹⁸ most
enlightened; they have remained stationary in most sciences. Men
who have passed through the trials of adversity can alone know ⁴²⁰ what
happiness is. Among the planets known at this day, there are several ⁶⁴²
that escaped the researches of the ancient astronomers. It is through ⁸⁹¹
the Phenicians that the sea has become the link of society between most
of the nations of the earth. The waters of the Loire having risen sud-
denly, ¹⁰⁴ *inundated* the fertile country of *Touraine*. It will be with this
nation as it was with all the nations of antiquity that acquired ⁶⁴³ *celebrity*
and power; it will prosper only as long as the conduct of its citizens shall
be directed by principles of union, justice and prudence.

SYNTAX OF MOODS.

The Indicative is the mood of affirmation; the Subjunctive is the mood of doubt. The Indicative is an independent mood; but the Subjunctive is a subordinate mood which is employed after some conjunctions and certain verbs: see No. 109 for the conjunctions, and the following rules for the other words that

require the subjunctive mood after them. And for the clearness of their application let it be established that a phrase, in which the subjunctive mood is employed, is generally composed of two parts, viz. the first, that is that which includes the verb or words after which the subjunctive mood is required, and the second, that is that which includes the verb to be put in the subjunctive.

644. 1ST RULE. The verb of the second part of a phrase must be in the subjunctive mood, when the verb that precedes expresses SURPRISE, ADMIRATION, WILL, WISH, CONSENT, FORBID-DANCE, DOUBT, FEAR, APPREHENSION, COMMAND, because that verb then expresses nothing like affirmation, or certainty, concerning the action of the following verb.

<i>I tremble, I apprehend, I fear</i>	<i>Je tremble, j'apprends, je</i>
<i>he will come,</i>	<i>crains qu'il ne vienne.</i>
<i>I wait till he comes,</i>	<i>J'attends qu'il vienne.</i>
<i>You wish me to run away,</i>	<i>Vous voulez que je fuie et que</i>
<i>and to avoid you,</i>	<i>je vous évite.</i>
<i>Obey, if thou wishest to be</i>	<i>Obéis, si tu veux qu'on t'obéisse</i>
<i>obeyed one day,</i>	<i>un jour.</i>
<i>I doubt that it is,</i>	<i>Je doute que cela soit.</i>
<i>The rain prevented that we</i>	<i>La pluie empêcha que nous</i>
<i>should go take a walk,</i>	<i>allassions nous promener.</i>
<i>I consent that you should do</i>	<i>Je consens que vous le fassiez.</i>
<i>it,</i>	
<i>I am astonished that he does</i>	<i>Jem'étonne qu'il ne voie pas le</i>
<i>not see the danger in</i>	<i>danger où il est.</i>
<i>which he is,</i>	
<i>I am very glad that it is so,</i>	<i>Je suis ravi que cela soit ainsi.</i>
<i>Give me leave to tell you,</i>	<i>Souffrez que je vous dise.</i>

Explanation. The second verb of these examples is in the subjunctive mood, because the first expresses SURPRISE, ADMIRATION, WISH or WILL, &c. that is, something UNCERTAIN, DOUBTFUL.

645. But in the following, the second verb is in the indicative mood, because the first verb expresses an affirmation in a direct and positive manner :

<i>I think, I suspect, I believe, I</i>	<i>Je pense, je soupçonne, je crois,</i>
<i>say, I maintain, I presume,</i>	<i>je dis, je soutiens, je présume,</i>
<i>I suspect you have learnt</i>	<i>j'imagine que vous avez ap-</i>
<i>mathematics,</i>	<i>pris les mathématiques.</i>

I <i>bet</i> that it is,	<i>Je parie que cela est,</i>
<i>Think</i> that they <i>wish</i> to ruin you,	<i>Songez qu'on veut vous perdre.</i>
I <i>believe</i> he <i>will come</i> ,	<i>Je crois qu'il viendra.</i>

646. 2D RULE. When the first part of a phrase is negative or interrogative, the verb of the second part must be in the subjunctive, because then the negation or interrogation imply or express DOUBT, UNCERTAINTY, &c.

I <i>do not think</i> , I <i>do not suspect</i> , I <i>do not believe</i> you have <i>learnt</i> mathematics,	<i>Je ne pense pas, je ne soupçonne pas, je ne crois pas que vous ayez appris les mathématiques.</i>
---	--

I <i>do not bet</i> that it is,	<i>Je ne parie pas que cela soit.</i>
I <i>did not know</i> you <i>were</i> friends,	<i>Je ne savais pas que vous fussiez amis.</i>

<i>Do you think</i> that, in creating the republic of bees, God <i>has not wished</i> to teach kings how to command with kindness ?	<i>Pensez-vous qu'en formant la république des abeilles, Dieu n'ait pas voulu instruire les rois à commander avec douceur ?</i>
---	---

<i>Do you suspect, do you believe, do you suppose</i> that it is my brother who <i>has</i> written to me ?	<i>Soupçonnez-vous, croyez-vous, présumez-vous que ce soit mon frère qui m'ait écrit ?</i>
--	--

I <i>do not believe</i> , or <i>do you believe</i> he <i>will come</i> ?	<i>Je ne crois pas, ou croyez-vous, qu'il vienne ?</i>
--	--

647. REMARK. Sometimes the interrogation is made use of, not to ask a question, but only to give more force to the expression, and then the second verb should not be in the subjunctive, on account of that interrogative form ; as in,

Madam, <i>do you forget</i> that Théseus <i>is</i> my father and that he <i>is</i> your husband ?	<i>Madame, oubliez-vous que Thé-sée est mon père et qu'il est votre époux ?</i>
---	---

<i>Do you believe</i> that Parisians <i>are</i> fools ?	<i>Croyez-vous que les Parisiens sont fous ?</i>
---	--

648. 3D RULE. The verb that follows *prétendre*, used in the sense of TO MAINTAIN, and *entendre* used in the sense of TO HEAR, TO UNDERSTAND, must be in the indicative mood ; but when

prétendre and *entendre* are used in the sense of TO REQUIRE, TO MEAN, TO INTEND, TO ORDER, they require the following verb in the subjunctive.

I <i>maintain</i> that it <i>is</i> not true,	<i>Je prétends que cela n'est pas vrai</i> (indicative.)
By the sound of the voice, I <i>hear</i> that it <i>is</i> your brother,	<i>Au son de la voix j'entends que c'est votre frère</i> (indicative.)
I <i>require</i> that they <i>shall perform</i> their duty,	<i>Je prétends que l'on fasse son devoir</i> (subjunctive.)
I <i>mean</i> that you <i>shall obey</i> him,	<i>J'entends que vous lui obéissiez</i> (subjunctive.)

649. 4TH RULE. A unipersonal verb, or a verb used unipersonally, requires the following verb in the subjunctive mood.

It <i>is important</i> that you <i>should be</i> there,	<i>Il importe que vous y soyez.</i>
It <i>is better</i> that he <i>may not come</i> ,	<i>Il vaut mieux qu'il ne vienne pas.</i>
It <i>is just</i> that a murderer <i>should die</i> ,	<i>Il est juste qu'un meurtrier périsse.</i>

650. From the preceding rule must be excepted *il s'ensuit*, IT FOLLOWS ; *il résulte*, IT FOLLOWS ; *il arrive*, IT HAPPENS ; and those unipersonal verbs in the formation of which enters an adjective which expresses a positive idea, such as *évident*, EVIDENT ; *certain*, CERTAIN ; *sûr*, SURE, CERTAIN ; *vrai*, TRUE, &c. which verb requires the subjunctive mood only when they are employed negatively or interrogatively.

It <i>is true</i> , it <i>is certain</i> that you <i>are</i> my friend,	<i>Il est vrai, il est certain que vous êtes mon ami</i> (indicat.)
It <i>is not true</i> , it <i>is not certain</i> that you <i>are</i> my friend,	<i>Il n'est pas vrai, il n'est pas certain que vous soyez mon ami.</i>

651. 5TH RULE. When *sembler*, TO SEEM, TO APPEAR, is used with the pronouns *me*, *te*, *lui*, *nous*, *vous*, *leur*, without an interrogation or a negation, it requires the next verb in the indicative mood ; but when it is used without those pronouns, it requires the following verb in the subjunctive.

It <i>seems to me</i> , that I <i>see</i> him,	<i>Il me semble, que je le vois</i> (indicative.)
--	---

It seems that that disease is *Il semble que ce mal soit sans remède* (subjunctive.)
without a remedy,

However, some of the best writers have employed the subjunctive mood after *il semble*, though without the pronouns *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur* ; but these authors are few in number.

652. 6TH RULE. When the second part of the phrase is connected with the first by one of the relative pronouns *qui, que, dont, où* for TO WHICH TIME OR PLACE, &c. the verb of that second part will be in the indicative mood if it expresses a positive thing, and in the subjunctive if what it expresses is doubtful.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1st. I shall marry a girl that will please me, | <i>J'épouserai une fille qui me plaira,</i> | <i>J'épouserai une fille qui me plaise.</i> |
| 2d. I shall go to a retired place, where I shall be tranquil, | <i>J'irai dans une retraite où je serai tranquille,</i> | <i>J'irai dans une retraite où je sois tranquille.</i> |
| 3d. I shall give thee reasons that will convince thee, | <i>Je te donnerai des raisons qui te convaincront,</i> | <i>Je te donnerai des raisons qui te convainquent.</i> |
| 4th. I am looking for some one who will render me that service, | <i>Je cherche quelqu'un qui me rendra ce service,</i> | <i>Je cherche quelqu'un qui me rende ce service.</i> |

Explanation. In the phrase, *j'épouserai une femme qui me plaira*, the indicative is employed to express that the idea is positive, certain. It means, that "I shall marry a girl whom I know positively, and that I am certain that she will please me." In the phrase, *j'épouserai une femme qui me plaise*, the subjunctive *plaise* is used to express that "I shall marry a girl whom I do not know, and whom I wish to please me." The same explanation may be applied to the other examples.

653. 7TH RULE. The verb of the second part of the phrase must be in the subjunctive, when it has for its nominative a relative pronoun ; and that in the first part of the phrase is a superlative, expressed by *le plus, le moins, le meilleur, le mieux, la plus, &c.* : see No. 118 ; either of the words *nul, aucun, pas un, premier, second, troisième, &c.* ; *dernier*, or such words as have a negative sense like *personne*, NOBODY ; *peu*, LITTLE ; *guère*, NOT MUCH ; *rien*, NOTHING ; *aucun*, NONE, NO ONE ; &c.

The bible is *the greatest* present that God could make to man, *La bible est le plus beau présent que Dieu ait pu faire à l'homme.*

It is one of *the last* epistles that St. Paul wrote, *C'est une des dernières épîtres que St. Paul ait écrites.*

He is *the first* man who went to that country, *C'est le premier homme qui soit allé dans ce pays-là.*

There is *nothing* that refreshes the blood like a good action, *Il n'y a rien qui rafraîchisse le sang comme une bonne action.*

There are few kings who know how to seek true glory,
Il y a peu de rois qui sachent chercher la vraie gloire.

It may be said that the dog is the only animal whose fidelity is proved,
On peut dire que le chien est le seul animal dont la fidélité soit à l'épreuve.

NOTE. There are other instances, in which the subjunctive mood is employed ; but they are explained in their proper places. (See the Table of Contents.)

CHAPTER VIII.

SYNTAX OF THE TENSES.

654. The present indicative (see No. 97) is often used, in French, instead of the past, to make a narration more animated, and expressive ; as,

I saw, my lord, I saw your unfortunate son dragged by the horses that his own hand fed, he tries to call them back and his voice frightens them, &c.
J'ai vu, seigneur, j'ai vu votre malheureux fils traîné par les chevaux que sa main a nourris, il veut les rappeler et sa voix les effraie, &c.

655. When the present is used instead of the past, if there are several verbs together with the same nominative, they all must be in the present. Therefore, it would be wrong to say :

He rushes upon his enemy and threw him down,
Il s'élançe sur son ennemi et le terrassa.

Explanation. This phrase is wrong, because the first verb RUSHES, *s'élançe*, being in the present indicative, the second verb THREW, *terrassa*, should also be in the present indicative. That phrase should be,

He rushes upon his enemy and throws him down, or he rushed upon his enemy and threw him down,
Il s'élançe sur son ennemi et le terrasse, ou Il s'élança sur son ennemi et le terrasse.

656. The present indicative is used instead of the future, to express that a thing will take place in a short time ; as,

I come back in a moment, *Je reviens dans un instant.*

657. The present indicative is also used for the future, when the conjunction *si*, IF, is employed, this conjunction being never used before a future, unless when that future is preceded by such verbs as *demander*, TO INQUIRE ; *douter*, TO DOUBT ; &c. these verbs are sometimes implied, but then *si* is used in the

sense of WHETHER, and not of IF. In the same sense, and after the same verbs, *si* is sometimes used before a conditional.

If he comes, *if* he marries *S'il* vient, *s'il* l'épouse, *je* pars.
her, I go away,

You ask *whether* I shall do *Vous demandez si je ferai cela?*
that?

You doubt *whether* I should *Vous doutez si je vendrais ma*
sell my house, if I were *maison si j'étais embarrassé.*
embarrassed,

658. The present (see No. 98 and 139) should be employed instead of the imperfect or any past tense, to express an action which takes place, or a thing that exists in the instant one speaks or at any time. Therefore, we must not say:

I told you that wisdom *was* *Je vous ai dit que la sagesse*
better than eloquence, *valait mieux que l'éloquence.*

Explanation. This phrase is wrong, because the thing, being such at all times, is so at the present instant. The phrase should be,

I told you that wisdom *is better* than elo- *Je vous ai dit que la sagesse vaut mieux que*
quence. *l'éloquence.*

659. The preterite indefinite (see No. 104) or the compound of the present indicative, is sometimes used to express a future; as,

Shall you soon *have done*? *Avez-vous bientôt fini?*

Wait, I *shall have done* in a *Attendez, j'ai fini dans un in-*
moment, *stant.*

Noël and Chapsal say that the preterite indefinite may be employed, like the preterite definite, to express that a thing has taken place in a specified and entirely elapsed epoch, and that it is proper to say,

I *received* your letter last *J'ai reçu votre lettre l'année*
year, last month, last week, *dernière, le mois dernier, la*
yesterday, *semaine dernière, hier.*

But La Grammaire des Grammaires says that the preterite definite and the preterite indefinite should not be employed indiscriminately: See Nos. 99, 104, 143.

660. The pluperfect (see No. 105) should not be employed instead of the preterite indefinite, (see No. 104) as it is often erroneously done. Therefore, we should not say:

I have heard that you had *J'ai appris que vous aviez*
travelled, *voyagé.*

I wrote to you that the minister *had spoken* to me of you, *Je vous ai écrit que le ministre m'avait parlé de vous.*

Explanation. These phrases are wrong, because, instead of the pluperfect *aviez voyagé* and *avait parlé*, the preterite indefinite *avez voyagé* and *a parlé* should be used, since they relate to a past but not specified time. (See No. 104.)

661. The present conditional (see No. 102) should not be employed for the future, unless there be a condition expressed or implied : (see No. 101.) Therefore, we should not say :

I am told that you *would travel* very soon, *On m'a dit que vous voyageriez incessamment.*

Explanation. This phrase is wrong, because the conditional *voyageriez* is used without a condition being expressed. The phrase should be,

I am told that you *will travel* very soon, *On m'a dit que vous voyagerez incessamment.*

662. The past conditional (see No. 108,) should not be employed for the present conditional. Therefore, we should not say :

I would have wagered that you *would have come*, *J'aurais parié que vous seriez venu.*

This phrase should be thus :

I would have wagered that you *would come*, *J'aurais parié que vous viendriez.*

663. The syntax of the present participle is given in Nos. 130, 156.

664. It has already been said that when the past participle is conjugated with *être*, or used as an adjective, it agrees in gender and number with its nominative in French ; it must be added here that it does so, whether that nominative precedes or follows it.

That bold action was more *admired* than *esteemed*, *Cette action hardie fut plus admirée qu'estimée.*

More *admired* than *esteemed*, *Plus admirée qu'estimée* *cette* *that bold action* of your *action hardie* of your *ami* friend established his reputation as a courageous man, *établit sa réputation d'homme courageux.*

665. When the past participle is conjugated with *avoir*, TO HAVE, it does not agree with its nominative, but agrees with its direct object, provided that object precedes it, and is represented by one of the pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous, le, la, les* or *que* : See Nos. 131, 156, 179, 192, 201, 202, 203, 409.

666. The past participle, conjugated with *avoir*, TO HAVE, agrees in gender and number with its direct object, though not

represented by either of the pronouns given in the preceding paragraph, when the noun is preceded by *combien de*, HOW MUCH, HOW MANY, or by one of the interrogative articles *quel, quelle, quels* or *quelles*; also when that direct object is either of the interrogative or relative pronouns *lequel, laquelle, lesquels* or *lesquelles*.

How many lessons have you taken? *Combien de leçons avez-vous prises?*

What promises have you made? *Quelles promesses avez-vous faites?*

My sister and I have written all those invitations.— *Ma sœur et moi avons écrit toutes ces invitations.—*

Which ones have you written yourself? *Lesquelles avez-vous écrites vous-même?*

EXERCISE 232.

Suddenly a dark tempest covered the sky, and agitated the waves of the sea; the day was changed into night, and death presented itself to us; the pilot, confused, cried that he could not resist the waves; a sudden squall broke our mast, and soon afterward we heard that the bottom of our vessel struck and was opening against the top of the rocks. Wo to the rich who could forget that they owed a part of their fortune to the poor. Bion used to say that riches almost always prevailed over merit. At the commencement of this century, we saw many so extraordinary things, that posterity will not believe them. As soon as I am appointed to execute that enterprise, I shall procure the necessary funds, and commence it immediately. Astronomers have announced that there will be an eclipse of the sun on Thursday, the eighteenth day of September next, beginning at three o'clock and twenty-seven minutes post meridian.

CHAPTER IX.

REMARKS ON THE USE OF CERTAIN VERBS.

667. The verb *être* is used to translate the verb TO HAVE.

1st. When it forms the compound tenses of certain neuter verbs: See No. 162.

He *has* arrived, *Il est arrivé.* | We *have* set out, *Nous sommes partis.*

668. 2d. When it forms the compound tenses of reflective and reciprocal verbs : See No. 192.

We *have* repented, - - *Nous nous sommes repentis.*
 They *have* fought, - - *Ils se sont battus.*

669. *Avoir* is used to translate TO BE, when it is used with an adjective, which should be rendered by a French noun ; as,

Thou *art* right, - - *Tu as raison.*
 He *is* wrong, - - *Il a tort.*
 I *am* thirsty, - - *J' ai soif.*
 We *are* hungry, - - *Nous avons faim.*
 Are you *warm* ? - - *Avez-vous chaud ?*
 Are they *cold* ? - - *Ont-ils froid ?*

670. REMARK. The English adjective should be rendered by a noun, 1st, when it expresses physical feelings or wants ; 2d, when the English adjective has no corresponding adjective in French ; 3d, when it relates to the age of persons or things, and in this last case we must distinguish a question from an answer. For instance, to translate the questions HOW OLD ARE YOU ? HOW OLD IS SHE ? HOW OLD IS IT ? &c. ; HOW must be rendered by the interrogative article *quel* ; OLD by *âge*, and ARE YOU, IS SHE, IS IT, &c. by *avez-vous, a-t-elle, a-t-il, &c.* In the answer, TO BE must be rendered by *avoir* ; the number of years by a corresponding cardinal number ; and the words YEARS OLD, whether expressed or understood in English, by the word *ans* ; as

How old *are* they ? - - *Quel âge ont-ils ?*
 The one *is* twenty years old, and *L'un a vingt ans, et l'autre vingt-*
 the other four and twenty, *quatre.*
 How old *is* she ? - - *Quel âge a-t-elle ?*
 She *is* eighteen, - - *Elle a dix-huit ans.*

Explanation. In the phrase " thou art right " the adjective RIGHT has no corresponding adjective in French, at least for the sense in which it is used ; for the French adjectives *juste* or *droit*, which are given for its translation in any dictionary, would not convey its precise meaning,—since *juste* means JUST, and *droit* means ERECT. In the phrase " I am thirsty," THIRSTY might be rendered by *altéré*, thence the translation *je suis altéré* might be very properly used ; but as *altéré* is generally employed in a figurative sense, as in *Il est altéré de sang*, HE IS BLOOD-THIRSTY ; *Napoléon était altéré de gloire*, NAPOLEON WAS GREEDY OF GLORY,—when the French wish to express the feeling expressed by the want of drink, they use *avoir soif*, literally in English to HAVE THIRST. In the phrase " I am hungry," the adjective HUNGRY has no corresponding adjective in French, for the word *affamé*, which is given for its translation in all dictionaries, means FAMISHED, STARVING. In the phrase " he is cold," the adjective COLD, having a corresponding adjective in French, that is *froid*, it would be very proper to translate that phrase by *Je suis froid*, but

this expression relates, not to the feeling of cold as derived from temperature, but to the state of the disposition or temper of the individual. The same observation may be made for the phrase "we are warm."

671. *Avoir* is used to translate TO BE when it is used unipersonally with the adverb THERE, (see No. 167) in which case it requires the preposition *de* before the following adjective or past participle, and *que* before the nominative of the following verb.

There to be, *Y avoir.*

There is a man in the garden, *Il y a un homme dans le jardin.*

There are thirty-three millions of souls in France, *Il y a trente trois millions d'âmes en France.*

672. The verb *y avoir* is used to translate, besides THERE TO BE, most of those English phrases in which a certain quantity, relating TO TIME, SPACE and NUMBER, is expressed; especially those in which SINCE or AGO is used or implied; and those in which THERE TO BE might be employed; and if HOW is used in a question, it is generally rendered by *combien*, or by *combien de temps*.

He died thirty years ago. *Il y a trente ans qu'il est mort.*

He has been sick these three years, *Il y a trois ans qu'il est malade.*

My brother has waited for me these six weeks, *Il y a six semaines que mon frère m'attend.*

Is it long since? *Y a-t-il long-temps?*

How long is it since he came? *Combien y a-t-il qu'il est venu? or combien y a-t-il de temps qu'il est*

It is three weeks, *Il y a trois semaines. [venu?]*

Long since, or long ago, *Il y a long-temps.*

How far is Paris from London? *Combien y a-t-il de Paris à Londres.*

It is 360 miles from Paris to London, *Il y a 360 milles de Paris à Londres,*

There are 360 miles between Paris and London, *Il y a 360 milles entre Paris et Londres.*

Paris is 360 miles from London, *Il y a 360 milles de Paris à Londres, or Paris est à 360 milles de Londres.*

673. NOTE. In the phrase *Paris est à 360 milles de Londres*, it may be noticed that the preposition *à* is used after *être*, before the number of miles, as it must be in such phrases; as, Salem is sixteen miles from Boston, *Salem est à seize milles de Boston, ou Il y a seize milles de Salem à Boston.*

However, it should be observed that of these two forms of expression, the first is used to express the relative situation of a

smaller place to a larger one, and the second one indiscriminately. It is better to say *Salem est à seize milles de Boston*, Salem is sixteen miles from Boston, than *Boston est à seize milles de Salem*, Boston is sixteen miles from Salem. But it is equally proper to say, *il y a seize milles de Boston à Salem*, or *de Salem à Boston*.

674. *Avoir* is employed to translate TO BE when used unipersonally with the words IN VAIN FOR; but the construction of the French phrase is different from that of the English; for, the object of IN VAIN FOR must be the nominative of *avoir*, and IN VAIN FOR must be rendered by *beau*; as,

It is in vain for you to pray,	<i>Vous avez beau prier.</i>
It is in vain for them to try, they will not succeed,	<i>Ils ont beau essayer, ils ne réussiront pas.</i>
It is in vain for Mr. L. to protest, he will not justify himself,	<i>M. L. a beau protester, il ne se justifiera pas.</i>

675. To express that a thing has recently happened, the English use TO HAVE JUST, with the past participle of the following verb; to translate this kind of past tense, the French use *venir de* with the next verb, which is the past participle in English, in the present infinitive in French; as,

I have just received a letter from France,	<i>Je viens de recevoir une lettre de France.</i>
My sister had just written when I received it,	<i>Ma sœur venait d'écrire lorsque je l'ai reçue.</i>
You had just gone out when he came in,	<i>Vous veniez de sortir lorsqu'il entra.</i>

676. CAN OR COULD are sometimes used negatively with an infinitive, not to express WANT OF POWER, but to express merely that the nominative is not QUALIFIED, INCLINED OR DISPOSED to do a thing, and then they are generally rendered by the conditional of *savoir*; as,

I can or could not do that,	<i>Je ne saurais faire cela.</i>
I could not grant that permission,	<i>Je ne saurais accorder cette permission.</i>
He could not teach you that science,	<i>Il ne saurait vous enseigner cette science.</i>

677. TO BE CONSCIOUS OF is rendered, in French, by *savoir* or *sentir*, or some other appropriate verb, with *que* before the next verb. By *savoir*, when the consciousness is the effect of

knowledge or previous information, and by *sentir*, when it is the effect of feeling or perception.

I was not conscious of that,	<i>Je ne savais pas cela.</i>
He was not conscious that they were operating upon him,	<i>Il ne sentait pas qu'on opérât sur lui.</i>
She was not conscious that he was speaking to her,	<i>Elle n'entendait pas qu'il lui parlât.</i>

678. TO DESIRE or TO WISH is generally rendered, in French, by *désirer*; but it is rendered by *faire*, when, being used in the imperative, it has for its direct object a personal pronoun or the name of a person followed by a verb in the infinitive; as,

Desire them to enter,	<i>Faites-les entrer.</i>
-----------------------	---------------------------

679. When TO DESIRE or TO WISH are translated by *désirer*, the next verb must, in French, be in the subjunctive mood, having for its nominative the noun or pronoun corresponding to that of the object of TO DESIRE or TO WISH, with the conjunction *que* before it; as,

I wish you to read that book,	<i>Je désire que vous lisiez ce livre.</i>
Did you desire me to write that letter?	<i>Désiriez vous que j'écrivisse cette lettre?</i>
I wish Mr. N. would come this evening,	<i>Je désire que M. N. vienne ce soir?</i>

680. When after such verbs as TO ORDER, *ordonner*; TO COMMAND, *commander*; and such others as require after them an infinitive, with or without a preposition or the conjunction *que*, with either the indicative or the subjunctive mood, if the form with the conjunction *que* is employed, the noun or pronoun, which is the object or regimen of those verbs, must become the nominative of the verb that follows.

I have ordered them to go to your house,	<i>Je leur ai ordonné d'aller chez vous, or J'ai ordonné qu'ils allassent chez vous.</i>
I wanted you to come to my house.	<i>Je voulais que vous vinssiez chez moi.</i>
I expected them to do that,	<i>J'espérais qu'ils feraient cela.</i>

681. The preceding rule should be followed, especially when the nominative of the first verb does not perform the action of the second; as in the examples I WANTED YOU TO COME TO MY HOUSE, I EXPECTED THEM TO DO THAT.

682. To BE is rendered, in French, by *faire*, when it is used to express the state of the WEATHER, ATMOSPHERE, STREETS, WAYS, &c. and the nature, state, and quality of things ; as,

It is fine weather, - - - *Il fait beau temps.*
 Yesterday it *was* very warm, - *Hier il faisait, or il fit très-chaud.*
 After the rain it *will be* cold, - *Après la pluie il fera froid.*
 In winter it *is* night at six o'clock, *En hiver il fait nuit à six heures.*
 It is very dirty, or muddy, - *Il fait très-crotté.*
 It *was* very windy, - - - *Il faisait beaucoup de vent.*
 It is dear living in London, - *Il fait cher vivre à Londres.*
 It is dangerous at sea, - - *Il fait dangereux à la mer.*
 It is good being here, or it is comfortable here, *Il fait bon ici.*

REMARK. "It is very dirty" or "muddy" might be translated by *il y a beaucoup de boue*, as if the English were, THERE IS MUCH MUD. This example shows that the adverb VERY, which is before the adjective MUDDY, is translated into French by the adverb of quantity *beaucoup*, because *très* cannot be used before a noun. The same observation relates also to the next example "it was very windy," which is translated by *il faisait beaucoup de vent*. VERY should however be translated by *très* before an adjective ; as,

It was very warm, . . . *Il faisait très-chaud.*

683. To BE is rendered by *faire*, when it is used in the sense of TO CAUSE ; as,

That is all my delight, - - *Cela fait toutes mes délices.*
 Her child *was* all her happiness, *Son enfant faisait tout son bonheur.*
 That is nothing to the affair, *Cela ne fait rien à l'affaire.*
 What is that to you ? *Qu'est-ce que cela vous fait.*
 What is that to me, when I am perfectly aware of what is to be done ? *Qu'est-ce que cela me fait, quand je sais parfaitement ce qui doit être fait ?*

684. The verb *faire*, TO MAKE, TO DO, is used in French in a great many instances besides the purpose of translating TO MAKE, TO DO. The following paragraphs will explain its different uses : See No. 323.

685. To express that a person is accustomed or trained to a thing, or the effect produced on persons by certain things, the English sometimes use TO INURE, TO BE USED, TO ACCUSTOM, and the French generally employ *faire*, with the preposition *à* ; as,

Travel has inured him to fatigue, *Les voyages l'ont fait à la fatigue.*
 He is used to heat and cold, *Il est fait au chaud et au froid.*
 Mr. G. is accustomed to her jokes, *M. G. est fait à son badinage.*

686. To express that a person does constantly one thing to the exclusion of another, the English use TO DO NOTHING BUT, or

TO BE CONSTANTLY, &c. and the French *ne faire que*, with the next verb in the present infinitive ; as,

He does nothing but play,	<i>Il ne fait que jouer.</i>
They are constantly going forward and backward,	<i>Ils ne font qu'aller et venir.</i>
She is always asleep, or she does nothing but sleep,	<i>Elle dort toujours, ou elle ne fait que dormir.</i>
They do nothing else,	<i>Ils ne font que cela.</i>

687. To express that a thing has very recently taken place the English use TO HAVE JUST, and the French *venir de* : (see No. 675.) But the English use also TO DO BUT, TO HAVE ONLY, and the French *ne faire que de*, with the next verb in the present infinitive ; as,

We do but begin,	<i>Nous ne faisons que de commencer.</i>
You had just gone out,	<i>Vous ne faisiez que de sortir.</i>

NOTE. *Ne faire de que* expresses an action somewhat more recently past than *venir de*, at least the expression is stronger.

688. To express that a person does not want to use or employ a person or thing, is not in need of a person or thing, does not know what to do with a person or thing, or does not care about a person or thing, the English use several expressions, which are rendered, in French, by *n'avoir que faire* with *de* before the following word.

I do not want him, or that,	<i>Je n'ai que faire de lui, ou de cela.</i>
I need not go thither,	<i>Je n'ai que faire d'y aller.</i>
I go where you have no business,	<i>Je vais où vous n'avez que faire.</i>
You don't care about what he says,	<i>Vous n'avez que faire de ce qu'il dit.</i>

689. To express some military duties, the practice of a thing or of a profession, the acting of the different parts of the theatre, the pretence of persons to show what they are not or what they pretend to be, the real actions or conduct of persons, the English use several verbs which are generally translated, in French, by *faire* ; as,

To mount guard,	<i>Faire la garde.</i>
To muster an army,	<i>Faire la revue d'une armée.</i>
To practise the profession of a lawyer,	<i>Faire la profession d'avocat.</i>
To fence,	<i>Faire des armes.</i>
To drive, or carry on a great trade,	<i>Faire un grand commerce.</i>

To cook (without an object, <i>or</i> regimen),	<i>Faire la cuisine.</i>
To exercise a trade,	<i>Faire un métier.</i>
To personate the king,	<i>Faire le roi.</i>
To act the lover,	<i>Faire l'amant.</i>
His wife, although horribly ugly, affected the airs of a beauty, and said a thousand foolish things,	<i>Sa femme, quoique horriblement laide faisait la belle et disait mille sottises.</i>
To sham an illness, <i>or</i> to pretend to be ill,	<i>Faire le malade.</i>
To pretend to be afflicted, religious,	<i>Faire l'affligé, le devot.</i>
To carry it high, <i>or</i> to take state upon one's self,	<i>Faire le grand.</i>
To act sily, cautiously,	<i>Ne faire semblant de rien.</i>
To carry it cunningly,	<i>Faire le fin.</i>
To be froward, <i>or</i> refractory,	<i>Faire le méchant.</i>

690. To express that a thing has caused or produced some effect, the English use several expressions that are generally rendered by *faire*, in French ; as,

That raised him many enemies,	<i>Cela lui a fait beaucoup d'ennemis.</i>
His tongue has brought him into a bad affair,	<i>Sa langue lui a fait une méchante affaire.</i>
That was the cause that I could not come,	<i>Cela a fait que je n'ai pu venir.</i>
This medicine promotes perspiration,	<i>Cette médecine fait suer.</i>
To bid a person to come in,	<i>Faire entrer une personne.</i>
To order a man to be put to death,	<i>Faire mettre un homme à mort.</i>
She has caused her husband to be rewarded,	<i>Elle fit récompenser son mari.</i>

691. On the preceding examples it is observed, (in the French and English Dictionary of Boyer, Chambaud, Gardner, des Carrières et Fain,) 1st, That when after *faire* follows an infinitive, the SUBJECT of that verb becomes either the OBJECT or the TERM of the verb *faire*;—THE TERM, if the verb in the infinitive is active, that is, if it has a simple regimen ; THE OBJECT, if the verb in the infinitive is neuter, that is, if it is used absolutely or without a regimen, or has a compound regimen.

692. 2d. That the subject of the verb in the infinitive, though become the object of *faire*, follows the verb in the infinitive immediately when it is expressed by a noun, or immediate-

ly precedes the verb *faire*, not the other verb, when it is expressed by a relative or a supplying pronoun. If the verb in the infinitive is accompanied by a regimen either simple or compound, or by both, this regimen, when expressed by a supplying pronoun, precedes also immediately the verb *faire*. These rules are explained in the following examples :

These imprudent measures of the minister, made the king lose the love of his subjects, *Ces démarches imprudentes du ministre, firent perdre au roi l'affection de ses sujets.*

Explanation. *Roi*, subject of *perdre*, and term of *faire*, follows *perdre*.

I have procured a good situation for your friend. *J'ai fait avoir à votre ami un bon emploi.*

Explanation. *Ami*, subject of *avoir*, and term of *faire*, follows *avoir*.

I have procured him a good situation, *Je lui ai fait avoir un bon emploi.*

Explanation. *Lui*, subject of *avoir*, and term of *faire*, precedes *faire*.

I have procured it for him, *Je le lui ai fait avoir.*

Explanation. *Le*, regimen of *avoir*, precedes the term *lui*.

They made him renounce, or give up his pretensions, *On le fit renoncer à ses prétentions.*

Explanation. *Le*, subject of *renoncer*, and object of *faire*, precedes *faire*.

He will have his citizens enjoy their rights, *Il veut faire jouir les citoyens de leurs droits.*

He wishes to make them enjoy their rights, *Il veut les faire jouir de leurs droits.*

Explanation. *Citoyens* follows *jouir*, whereas *les* precedes *faire*.

693. In the following examples are some illustrations of the use of *faire* with another verb, which it is very important to remember, since the English phrases, which are opposite, could not be differently rendered in French.

To set a machine going,	<i>Faire aller une machine.</i>
To march troops,	<i>Faire marcher des troupes.</i>
To order goods,	<i>Faire venir des marchandises.</i>
To hear one recite his lesson,	<i>Faire dire une leçon à quelqu'un.</i>
To cause the death of some one,	<i>Faire mourir quelqu'un.</i>
To engage to take,	<i>Faire prendre.</i>
To give to understand,	<i>Faire entendre, or donner à entendre.</i>
To show,	<i>Faire voir, or montrer.</i>
To let one know,	<i>Faire savoir à quelqu'un.</i>
Let me hear from you,	<i>Faites-moi savoir de vos nouvelles.</i>

694. TO BESPEAK, TO GET, TO ORDER, when used in the

sense of having a thing made, are rendered, in French, by *faire faire*; as,

I have bespoken, or ordered a gold chain, *Je fais faire une chaîne d'or.*

I shall get a coat made, *Je ferai faire un habit.*

695. The French use also *faire faire* in the sense of TO OBLIGE, TO COMPEL TO DO A THING, TO HAVE A THING DONE; as,

I shall put, or set him about it, *Je le lui ferai faire.*

Necessity puts one upon many things, *La nécessité fait faire bien des choses.*

I shall have him to do it in spite of his reluctance, *Je le lui ferai faire malgré sa répugnance.*

696. There are many verbs and forms of expressions, in English, whose exact meaning can be rendered, in French, but by *faire* with a noun without an article. This is especially the case when English verbs have no corresponding verbs in French; and though sometimes English verbs might be rendered by a corresponding verb in French, for some reason or other the use of *faire* with a noun is preferred. The following list contains most of them, with the corresponding French verb, if there is any.

To abjure, to recant, . . . *Faire abjuration, ou abjurer.*

To fast, . . . *Faire abstinence, ou jeûner.*

To welcome, . . . *Faire accueil.*

To make an end of a business, *Faire affaire.*

To affront, to injure, . . . *Faire affront.*

To take in fresh water, . . . *Faire aigade.*

To make an alliance, . . . *Faire alliance.*

To heap up, . . . *Faire amas, ou amasser.*

To show one's self kind to one, or to make much of one, *Faire amitié, à quelqu'un.*

To raise money, . . . *Faire argent.*

To make an arrest upon one, . . . *Faire arrêt.*

To attend, to mind, . . . *Faire attention.*

To break, to turn bankrupt, *Faire banqueroute.*

To feast, to live, to feed luxuriantly, daintily, to junket, *Faire bombance, faire bonne chère, faire grande chère.*

To put a good or bad face on the matter, *Faire bonne ou mauvaise mine.*

To cut, *Faire brèche.*

To keep lent, *Faire carême.*

To have a value for, to make account of, to value,	<i>Faire cas de.</i>
To raise compassion,	<i>Faire compassion.</i>
To trust a secret with one,	<i>Faire confidence à quelqu'un.</i>
To scruple,	<i>Faire scrupule.</i>
To defend, to forbid, to prohibit,	<i>Faire défense, ou défendre.</i>
To spite, to vex,	<i>Faire dépit.</i>
To disgrace,	<i>Faire déshonneur, ou déshonorer.</i>
To diet,	<i>Faire diette.</i>
To make a scruple,	<i>Faire difficulté.</i>
To divorce,	<i>Faire divorce, ou divorcer.</i>
To make haste,	<i>Faire diligence, ou se dépêcher, se hâter.</i>
To give as a present,	<i>Faire don.</i>
To break out, to come abroad,	<i>Faire éclat.</i>
To operate,	<i>Faire effet, ou opérer.</i>
To buy, to buy up, to purchase, to market, to bargain,	<i>Faire achat, faire emplette, ou acheter.</i>
To raise envy,	<i>Faire envie.</i>
To experiment,	<i>Faire épreuve, ou éprouver.</i>
To beg pardon,	<i>Faire excuse, ou demander pardon.</i>
To face,	<i>Faire face.</i>
To break, to become a bankrupt,	<i>Faire faillite.</i>
To pretend, to dissemble,	<i>Faire semblant, faire feinte, ou feindre.</i>
To fire, to shoot,	<i>Faire feu.</i>
To flash in the pan,	<i>Faire long feu.</i>
To make a fortune, to grow rich,	<i>Faire fortune, ou s'enrichir.</i>
To pride, to take pride in a thing, to value one's self upon a thing,	<i>Faire gloire d'une chose.</i>
To eat flesh,	<i>Faire gras.</i>
To abstain from flesh,	<i>Faire maigre.</i>
To halt,	<i>Faire halte.</i>
To shame,	<i>Faire honte.</i>
To strike with horror,	<i>Faire horreur.</i>
To make an impression,	<i>Faire impression.</i>
To do an injury, to offend,	<i>Faire injure.</i>
To abuse, to insult,	<i>Faire insulte, ou insulter.</i>
To make way, to break through,	<i>Se faire jour.</i>
To make a reading,	<i>Faire lecture.</i>
To make the law,	<i>Faire loi.</i>
To make a bargain, an agreement,	<i>Faire marché.</i>
To look as if, to seem,	<i>Faire mine de.</i>
To make a parade, a show,	<i>Faire montre, faire parade, ou montrer.</i>

To suffer shipwreck, to be wrecked,	<i>Faire naufrage.</i>
To give umbrage,	<i>Faire ombrage.</i>
To offer,	<i>Faire offre, ou offrir.</i>
To make a contract, to league,	<i>Faire pacte.</i>
To bet, to lay a wager,	<i>Faire pari, faire gageure, ou parier.</i>
To impart, to communicate,	<i>Faire part, ou communiquer.</i>
To make a part of,	<i>Faire partie de.</i>
To make uneasy,	<i>Faire peine.</i>
To please,	<i>Faire plaisir, ou plaire.</i>
To atone for,	<i>Faire pénitence de.</i>
To affright,	<i>Faire peur, ou effrayer.</i>
To move, or raise pity, compassion,	<i>Faire pitié, faire compassion.</i>
To make room,	<i>Faire place.</i>
To do a pleasure,	<i>Faire plaisir.</i>
To present with,	<i>Faire présent ou don de.</i>
To prove,	<i>Faire preuve de.</i>
To profess,	<i>Faire profession, ou professer.</i>
To provide, or supply one's self with,	<i>Faire provision de.</i>
To give quarter, to spare,	<i>Faire quartier.</i>
To be offended at, to be enraged against, to make great havock,	<i>Faire rage.</i>
To reflect,	<i>Faire réflexion, ou réfléchir.</i>
To make satisfaction,	<i>Faire satisfaction.</i>
To fly back again, to be sprung,	<i>Faire ressort.</i>
To feast, to junket,	<i>Faire ripaille (somewhat vulgar.)</i>
To sail, to be bound to (sea term),	<i>Faire route vers.</i>
To make a stay,	<i>Faire séjour.</i>
To make an oath,	<i>Faire serment.</i>
To make a sign, to beckon, to nod, to wink,	<i>Faire signe.</i>
To cope with, to oppose, to resist,	<i>Faire tête à, tenir tête à, résister.</i>
To wrong,	<i>Faire tort.</i>
To glory in a thing, to pride one's self in a thing,	<i>Faire trophée d'une chose.</i>
To use, to make use of,	<i>Faire usage de, se servir de.</i>
To lead a merry life,	<i>Faire bonne vie, faire vie joyeuse.</i>

697. NOTE. In all the preceding expressions with *faire*, it should be noticed that the nouns that are used with that verb are employed in an indefinite sense, and therefore are preceded by no article; but there are instances in which these same nouns should be used in a definite sense with the same verb *faire*, and then such an article as is indicated by the meaning of the phrase should be employed.

698. *Faire* enters into a number of SEA-TERMS, among which are the following:

To take in a provision of wood, biscuit, wine, flour, water, &c. or to furnish a vessel with wood, biscuit, &c.	<i>Faire du bois, du biscuit, du vin, de la farine, de l'eau, &c.</i>
To take in fresh water for a vessel, to water a vessel,	<i>Faire aiguade, faire de l'eau.</i>
To scud, to run before the wind,	<i>Faire vent arrière.</i>
To take a good board, or to tack when to windward,	<i>Faire bon bord, faire une bordée, ou louvoyer.</i>
To sail through a strait, or narrow channel,	<i>Faire canal.</i>
To let run, or overhaul any rope,	<i>Faire courir une corde.</i>
To hang out lanterns as signals of distress,	<i>Faire des feux.</i>
To leak, water makes in, to be leaky,	<i>Faire eau.</i>
To touch at any intermediate place in the course of a voyage,	<i>Faire escale.</i>
To cannonade, or fire from both sides,	<i>Faire feu des deux bords.</i>
To pay out a larger scope of cable,	<i>Faire filer le cable.</i>
To sail, to set sail, to make sail, to get under sail, to depart,	<i>Faire voile.</i>
To crowd sail,	<i>Faire force de voiles.</i>
To crowd sail and exert all the force of the oars,	<i>Faire force de voiles et de rames.</i>
To carry little sail, to be under small sail,	<i>Faire petites voiles.</i>
To make more sail,	<i>Faire plus de voiles.</i>
To bear up to a ship,	<i>Faire voile sur un vaisseau.</i>
To steer a vessel, to superintend and direct the helmsman,	<i>Faire gouverner.</i>
To stand to the northward, southward, &c.	<i>Faire le nord, le sud, &c.</i>
To carry a broad pennant,	<i>Faire pavillon.</i>
To put out a tricolored flag,	<i>Faire pavillon tricolor.</i>
To get every thing clear, to come to an anchor,	<i>Faire penau, ou pennaut.</i>
To perform quarantine,	<i>Faire quarantaine.</i>
To stand onward on a course,	<i>Faire route.</i>
To carry the head to a current, or wind,	<i>Faire tête au courant, ou au vent.</i>
To run ashore,	<i>Faire côte.</i>
Keep her full,	<i>Fais courir.</i>

Fixed, steady, *or* set in weather, *Temps fait, vent fait, &c.*
wind, &c.

699. There are several verbs or forms of expression in English, some of which have corresponding verbs or forms of expression in French; but which are often rendered by *faire* and a noun preceded by an article; as,

To complain,	<i>Faire des plaintes, se plaindre.</i>
To go to and fro, to go up and down, to go forward and backward,	<i>Faire des allées et des venues.</i>
To reprimand,	<i>Faire des reprimandes, reprimander.</i>
To reproach,	<i>Faire des reproches, reprocher.</i>
To collect alms,	<i>Faire la quête.</i>
To make faces,	<i>Faire la grimace, ou faire des grimaces.</i>
To resolve,	<i>Faire une résolution, résoudre.</i>
To project,	<i>Faire un projet, projeter.</i>
To enact laws,	<i>Faire des lois.</i>
To eat a good dinner, <i>or</i> hearty dinner,	<i>Faire un bon dîner.</i>
To take an afternoon's nap,	<i>Faire la méridienne.</i>
To bid adieu,	<i>Faire ses adieux, dire adieu.</i>
To receive the communion, <i>or</i> sacrament,	<i>Faire ses dévotions.</i>
To receive the sacrament at Easter	<i>Faire ses pâques.</i>
To keep the passover,	<i>Faire la pâque.</i>
To make love,	<i>Faire l'amour.</i>
To pay one's respects, to court,	<i>Faire sa cour, courtoiser.</i>
To bring an action against one,	<i>Faire un procès à quelqu'un.</i>
To try one, to arraign one,	<i>Faire le procès à quelqu'un.</i>
To make an apology,	<i>Faire des excuses, s'excuser.</i>
To present civilities,	<i>Faire des civilités.</i>
To make a noise, much noise,	<i>Faire du bruit, grand bruit.</i>
To ask <i>or</i> to put a question,	<i>Faire une question.</i>
To go <i>or</i> to walk the rounds,	<i>Faire la ronde.</i>
To contract debts,	<i>Faire des dettes, s'endetter.</i>
To suffer a loss,	<i>Faire une perte.</i>
To wage war with,	<i>Faire la guerre à.</i>
To oppose vices, to withstand vices,	<i>Faire la guerre aux vices.</i>
To clean a room,	<i>Faire une chambre.</i>
To turn the bed down,	<i>Faire la couverture.</i>
To dress a garden,	<i>Faire un jardin.</i>
To make sums, (in arithmetic.)	<i>Faire des règles.</i>

700. To render the expressions TO SEE THAT, TO BE SURE THAT, TO DO, TO CONTRIVE IT IN SUCH A MANNER THAT, TO MANAGE MATTERS SO THAT, LET, &c. the French use *faire que*, or *faire en sorte que*, with the next verb in the subjunctive mood; as,

See that he is satisfied,	<i>Faites qu'il soit satisfait.</i>
Let us exert yourselves so that he may leave the best part of his estate to me,	<i>Faisons en sorte qu'il me laisse la meilleure partie de son bien.</i>
See that I may find him again,	<i>Fais que je le retrouve.</i>

701. When TO TURN OR TO BECOME have for object a noun of profession, it is generally rendered by *faire* or *se faire*; as,

He turned a doctor into a priest,	<i>Il fit d'un médecin un prêtre.</i>
To turn a monk,	<i>Se faire moine.</i>
To become a physician, a barister,	<i>Se faire médecin, avocat.</i>

702. Sometimes when CAN or COULD are used with a verb, if they express the possibility of performing the action of that verb on account of the means, ability, skill or information, rather than on account of power possessed by their nominative, they are rendered by *savoir*; and if the condition, WERE I WILLING, WERT THOU WILLING, &c. were implied, the conditional of *savoir*, with *ne* before it and without *pas* after it, should be employed to translate either CANNOT OR COULD NOT; as,

I cannot bring it about,	<i>Je ne sais en venir à bout.</i>
He could not do what you desire, (were he willing, implied.)	<i>Il ne saurait faire ce que vous désirez.</i>
I cannot tell you that, (were I will- ing, implied.)	<i>Je ne saurais vous dire cela.</i>

703. The verb *aller* is often used, in French, before an infinitive to express an immediate future, the same as TO BE GOING is used to express the same tense, in English; as,

I am going to tell you,	<i>Je vais vous dire.</i>
I was going to write when you came in,	<i>J'allais écrire lorsque vous êtes entré.</i>

704. The verb *venir*, with the preposition *de* before an infinitive, is often used to express that the action of that infinitive has just taken place, expressing an immediate past, the same as *aller* before an infinitive expresses an immediate future; as,

I have just concluded my work,	<i>Je viens de finir mon ouvrage.</i>
--------------------------------	---------------------------------------

EXERCISE 233.

Did you not walk with Miss D. on the Common this morning ?—Yes, I did ; are you surprised at it ?—Not precisely. But I think it was too cold and windy for a lady who does not enjoy very good health.—I do not think so.—How old is she ?—I suppose she is nineteen.—I should have thought her older.—O no ! you are wrong. She completed her nineteenth year on the fifteenth of last January, two months ago.—How far is it from here to her mother's residence ?—I think it is seventy-nine or ninety-nine miles ; but I am not sure of it.—When is she to set out to return home ?—She will set out on the twenty-third of this month, if it is fair weather ; but if it should be too cold or too damp, she will stay with us a few days longer.—But suppose it is fair weather, if she were urged to stay, would she not ?—I think that she wants so much to see her mother again, that it would be in vain for any one, even her best friends, to ask such a favour of her ; besides, she just told me, that she has just received a letter from her mother, in which she writes to her that she has just had a visit from an intimate friend who wishes also to see her.—I should like to know who that friend is ?—I cannot tell you, because she did not tell me who he is.—I wish you would try to find out his name. Will you do it for me ?

EXERCISE 234.

When did you go last to your country house ?—I went the day before yesterday, immediately after the shower.—Was it not very muddy ?—No ; but it was very windy.—Did you not find it disagreeable ?—No.—I suppose you are inured to any sort of bad weather : Are you not ?—Yes, I am.—Does your brother play much on the violin ?—Some time ago he used to do nothing else, but now he does nothing but read.—Has he finished reading the book you have promised me ?—I think he has only begun it ; but if you wish for it, I am notwithstanding going to give it to you.—I do not want it now, because I am reading another book.—What one ?—It is entitled “ Instructions on Military Duties.”—Do you belong to any company ?—Yes, sir.—Do you often mount guard ?—Not very often.—Do you know how to fence ?—Not very well.—When have

you seen Mr. Dui ?—I have ⁶⁸⁷ just ⁷⁰⁴ seen him.—How is he ?—I do not think he is sick ; I believe that he pretends to be insane, in order not to be obliged to comply with the orders of the government.—Don't you think that will cause him to lose his office ?—I do not know ; but certainly it will hurt him in the opinion of many persons.

CHAPTER X.

SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

705. The place of adverbs, in French, is before the adjective, after the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and past participle in compound tenses, except *davantage*, MORE, which is generally placed after the past participle, and which should never be used for *plus*, with *que* or *de*, in a comparison. Sometimes adverbs are placed before the verb, but never between the nominative and the verb, as it is often done in English : (see Nos. 82, 92.)

His conduct was very much praised, *Sa conduite a été louée, mais celle de*
but that of his brother was more so, *son frère l'a été davantage.*

706. There are adjectives, such as *juste*, TRUE, PROPERLY, RIGHT, WELL ; *faux*, WRONG, OUT OF TUNE ; *clair*, CLEAR ; *bon*, GOOD ; &c. that are used as adverbs ; and as such do not vary on account of gender or number ; as,

To sing <i>true</i> , or correct,	•	<i>Chanter juste.</i>
To speak <i>properly</i> ,	•	<i>Parler juste.</i>
They sing false, out of tune,	•	<i>Ils chantent faux.</i>
To see plain, clear, or distinctly,	•	<i>Voir clair.</i>
It is <i>good</i> living in France,	•	<i>Il fait bon vivre en France.</i>

707. The adverb *dessus*, ABOVE ; *dessous*, UNDER ; *dedans*, WITHIN ; and *dehors*, OUT ; are used without an object, except when they are used in opposition, and when they are preceded by a preposition ; but in this last case, both the preposition and the adverb may be considered as a compound preposition.

The enemies are within and with- *Les ennemis sont dedans et dehors la*
out the city, *ville.*

They threw stones above the wall, *Ils jetaient des pierres par dessus le*
mur.

We have taken that from under the *Nous avons tiré cela de dessous la table.*
table.

708. So...is often used as an adverb and is translated by *si*, which *si* is employed as such before adjectives, participles, and those adverbs that do not imply quantity; but it should not be used before the adverb *très*, nor adverbs implying quantity, nor an adverbial expression, that is, a compound adverb. In this latter case, instead of *très*, the adverb *fort* or *bien* should be placed after *si*, before the adverbial expression, *bien* modifying the signification of the expression in a sense of perfection, and *fort* in a sense of strength.

He was so much in trouble,

Il était si fort en peine.

We were so well at our ease,

Nous étions si bien à notre aise.

Mr. L. was so very feeble that he could not come,

M. L. était si faible qu'il n'a pu venir.

Mrs. N. was so much fatigued that she could sing no longer,

Madame N. était si fatiguée qu'elle ne put plus chanter.

709. VERY is rendered, in French, by *très*, when used with an adjective, a participle or an adverb, provided that adverb does not imply quantity, because, the same as *si*, it is not expressed before adverbs of quantity; as,

That lady is very amiable, and so very amiable that every one likes her,

Cette dame est très-aimable, et si aimable que tout le monde l'aime.

I am very much pleased with your conduct, and I shall reward you for it,

Je suis très-satisfait de votre conduite, et je vous en récompenserai.

Explanation. In the first example, VERY AMIABLE is rendered by *très-aimable*, because *très* is not preceded by *si*; and so VERY AMIABLE by *si aimable*, without *très*, because *très* is never expressed after *si*. In the second, VERY MUCH is rendered by *très*, without rendering MUCH, because MUCH is an adverb of quantity.

710. VERY or VERY MUCH is often used alone, in English; but *très* cannot be used without an adjective, a participle, or an adverb, after it; therefore, when VERY or VERY MUCH, being alone, is to be translated into French, the implied adjective, past participle, or adverb, to which it relates, should be expressed, and preceded by *très*; or the answer should be made by the verb or the question.

Is the lesson very difficult?—Very ;
or, It is so,

La leçon est-elle très-difficile ?—Très-difficile. (Très alone would be wrong.) Or e/le l'est.

Have you been very much embarrassed in your translation?—
Very much,

Avez-vous été très-embarrassé dans votre traduction ?—Très-embarrassé.

711. However, to avoid any difficulty, such answers might be changed into YES, SIR OR MADAM, &c. OR NO, SIR OR MADAM, &c.; *oui, monsieur; oui, madame, &c.; non, monsieur; non, madame, &c.*

712. VERY OR VERY MUCH is often used with a verb, and then it must be translated by either *bien, très, or fort*; as,
I think that he is very much to be pitied. *Je pense qu'il est bien à plaindre, or fort à plaindre, or très à plaindre.*

713. From what precedes, it is important to observe that the French never say,

*Si tant** for So much, { but *si* before an adjective, participle or an ad-
verb, and *tant* before a past participle, or *tant de* before a noun.

Très beaucoup for Very much, { but *très* before an adjective. participle
or an adverb, and *beaucoup de* before a
noun; or *beaucoup* without a noun.

Si très for So very, . . . but *si* alone.

Si très beaucoup for So very much, but *si* alone.

714. So MUCH is sometimes used in an answer relating to a quantity of money, and then it is rendered by *tant* when alone, and *tant de* before a noun.

For how much do you sell that?—So *Combien vendez-vous cela?—Tant.*
much,

715. Although *si* is not used before *très*, it is often used before *bien* and *fort*, especially with past participles, but not with adjectives nor adverbs.

He was so very much esteemed that he was elected, *Il était si estimé, or si fort estimé qu'il fut élu.*

716. WHEN, being used after a noun expressing time or date, is generally rendered by *où* or *que*; as,

The day when he set out, . . . *Le jour qu'il partit.*

We are no longer in the time when innocence reigned, *Nous ne sommes plus au temps où l'innocence régnait.*

717. When WHERE is used after a noun as an antecedent it is rendered by *où*; as,

Do you see the house where we go? *Voyez-vous la maison où nous allons?*

* *Si tant* are, however, sometimes used together; but it is only in some familiar expressions that are seldom made use of; as in,

If so be that, . . . *Si tant est que.*

718. But if *WHERE* was not preceded by an antecedent it should be rendered by *là où*, *THERE WHERE*, whether *THERE* is expressed or not; as,

Soldiers and scholars are seldom contented where they are; they generally think that they would be better <i>where</i> they are not,	<i>Les soldats et les écoliers sont rarement contents là où ils sont; ils pensent généralement qu'ils seraient mieux là où ils ne sont pas.</i>
---	---

719. *SOMETIMES* is in French *quelquefois*; but when it is repeated in the same phrase, or used with *AT OTHER TIMES*, it is rendered by *tantôt* repeated; and *AT OTHER TIMES* is also rendered by *tantôt*, unless the first *SOMETIMES* is translated by *quelques fois*, and then the second must be by *d'autres fois*; as in,

<i>Sometimes</i> he is well, <i>sometimes</i> ill, <i>Sometimes</i> I rise early, at <i>other</i> times late,	<i>Il se porte tantôt bien, tantôt mal. Je me lève tantôt de bonne heure tantôt tard, or je me lève quelques fois de bonne heure, d'autres fois tard.</i>
---	---

EXERCISE 235.

Wo to those who esteem riches more than virtue. They will find many friends, but they will have still more enemies. There are many persons who call themselves musicians, who however cannot sing correctly, and who generally play out of tune. When, last night, you presented me your request, it was so dark that I could not see distinctly, and therefore I could not read it. Hail is nothing else but rain, that cold has crystalised before it reached the earth. Nothing is easier than to revenge an offence; nothing is so great as to pardon it; it is the greatest victory that one can gain over himself. The persons who practise virtue are so much above the wicked, that the latter give themselves up to despair when the former glory in their misfortunes.

EXERCISE 232

The reasons of that lawyer were so very good and his arguments so very conclusive, that he gained his cause. Did you hear him?—Yes, I did.—Don't you think he was very eloquent?—Yes, very. That establishment, that I desired so much, cost me so much money that now I regret having bought it. I should like very much to find goods like those; will you tell me where they are to be found?—The place where they manufacture them is out of the city; but I can show you

the house where they ⁴⁷⁵are sold.—Are they not cheaper ⁷¹⁸where they ⁴⁷⁵are manufactured than where you show me?—I do not think so. Do you know whether they sell them ⁷⁰⁶high now?—I do not know; their price varies ⁷¹³very much; sometimes it is low, ⁷¹⁹and at other times it is so very ⁷¹⁹high, ⁷⁰⁹that it is almost impossible to buy any.

CHAPTER XI.

SYNTAX OF NEGATIONS.

720. No, being used absolutely, is in French, *non*.

Will you do it, or no?

Voulez-vous le faire, ou non?

No, I will not.

Non, je ne le veux pas.

721. No or NOT, being used with an adverb, is sometimes, though seldom, rendered by *non*, but generally by *pas* or *non pas*.

No more, *Pas davantage.*

No less than five thousand dollars, *Pas moins de cinq mille dollars.*

Not far from that place, *Pas loin de là, or non loin de là.*

NOT AT ALL is rendered by *point du tout* or *pas du tout*; *point du tout* denying more strongly than *pas du tout*.

722. NOT THAT is rendered by *non que* or *non pas que*, with the next verb in the subjunctive mood; as,

I avoid the court; *not that* I hate society, but I detest flatterers,

Je fuis la cour; non, or non pas que je hâisse la société, mais je déteste les flatteurs.

723. When NO is used with a verb, (see Nos. 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27) it is rendered by *ne*, *ne pas* or *ne point*. *Ne* is the least of the three negations, *ne...point* the strongest, and *ne...pas* is the medium, being stronger than *ne* and less than *ne...point*.

724. *Ne* is generally used without *pas*, with the verbs *pouvoir*, TO BE ABLE, CAN; *savoir*, TO KNOW; *oser*, TO DARE; and *cesser*, TO LEAVE OFF, TO CEASE, &c.

Mr. L. does *not* dare to speak in public, *M. L. n'ose parler en public.*

He does *not* know what he wants, *Il ne sait ce qu'il veut.*

A foolish man does *not* cease to make himself ridiculous, *Un sot ne cesse de se rendre ridicule.*

The minister could *not* resist calumny, *Le ministre ne put résister à la calomnie.*

725. NOTE. After the verbs *pouvoir, savoir, oser, and cesser*, the word *pas* might be expressed ; but if the verb before which *pas* might be expressed should commence by *pa*, not followed by *i, u* or *y*, it is better to omit it. For instance, in the first example of the preceding rule it is better to omit *pas* than to express it before *parler*.

726. The conjunctive expressions *à moins que*, UNLESS ; *de peur que*, LEST ; *de crainte que*, FOR FEAR THAT ; and the verb *empêcher*, TO PREVENT ; always require the negation *ne* before the next verb, which must be in the subjunctive mood, used without *pas* after.

Unless you speak to him,	À moins que vous ne lui parliez.
Lest they should deceive you,	De peur qu'on ne vous trompe.
The rain prevented his going to the concert,	La pluie empêcha qu'il allât au concert.
The defects of Homer have not prevented him from being sublime,	Les défauts d'Homère n'ont pas empêché qu'il ne fût sublime.

727. *Ne* is used before the first verb that follows the conjunction *que* in any comparative of superiority, inferiority or inequality, provided the first part of the comparison, that is, that which precedes *que*, is not interrogative nor negative.

You write better than you speak,	Vous écrivez mieux que vous ne parlez.
You do not write better than you speak,	Vous n'écrivez pas mieux que vous parlez.
Do you write better than you speak ?	Écrivez-vous mieux que vous parlez ?

Explanation. In the first example *ne* is used before *parlez*, that is, before the first verb that follows *que*, because the first part of the comparative phrase is affirmative, that is, without interrogation or negation. In the second, *ne* is not used because the first part of the comparison is negative. And in the third, *ne* is not used because the first part of the comparison is interrogative.

728. *Ne* is used after *que*, before the next verb, when it is preceded by *autre*, OTHER ; *autrement*, OTHERWISE, DIFFERENTLY ; *différent*, DIFFERENT ; *différemment*, DIFFERENTLY ; and similar expressions, provided, as in the preceding rule, the part of the phrase that precedes *que* be not interrogative or negative.

He is quite different from what he was,	Il est tout autre qu'il n'était.
It is differently made than you thought,	Il est fait autrement que vous ne croyez.
Is he quite different from what he was ?	Est-il tout autre qu'il était ?

It is not *differently* made than you *Il n'est pas fait différemment que vous*
thought, *croyez.*

Explanation. In the two first examples, *ne* is used after *autre* and *autrement*, because the first part of the phrase is neither interrogative nor negative. In the two last, *ne* is not used because an interrogation or a negation precedes the *que*.

729. After *craindre*, TO FEAR; *avoir peur*, TO FEAR; *trembler*, TO TREMBLE; *appréhender*, TO APPREHEND; *ne* should be used before the next verb, which must be in the subjunctive without *pas* after it, to express that one does not wish the accomplishment of the action expressed by the second verb; and with *pas* after it, if the accomplishment of that action is desired.

I fear he will come,		<i>Je crains qu'il ne vienne.</i>
I fear he will not come,		<i>Je crains qu'il ne vienne pas.</i>
I fear he will succeed,		<i>J'ai peur qu'il ne réussisse.</i>
I fear he will not succeed,		<i>J'ai peur qu'il ne réussisse pas.</i>

730. But, if *craindre*, *avoir peur*, *trembler*, *appréhender*, were used negatively or interrogatively, *ne* should not be used without *pas*, and *ne...pas* should not be employed to express the non-accomplishment of the action of the second verb.

I do <i>not</i> fear he will come,	<i>Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.</i>
I do <i>not</i> fear he will <i>not</i> come,	<i>Je ne crains pas qu'il ne vienne pas.</i>
Do you fear he will come,	<i>Craignez-vous qu'il vienne.</i>
Do you fear he will <i>not</i> come,	<i>Craignez-vous qu'il ne vienne pas.</i>

731. The verb *nier*, TO DENY; *désespérer*, TO DESPAIR; *disconvenir*, TO DISOWN; *douter*, TO DOUBT; require *ne* before the following verb, which must be in the subjunctive, but only when they are used with a negation.

I do <i>not</i> deny that that is,	<i>Je ne nie pas que cela ne soit</i>
I do <i>not</i> doubt that Mr.C will come,	<i>Je ne doute pas que M. C. ne vienne.</i>
I deny that that will be,	<i>Je nie que cela soit.</i>
I doubt that Mr. C. will come,	<i>Je doute que M. C. vienne.</i>

Explanation. In the two first examples *ne* is used before the second verb, because *nier* and *douter* are with a negation. And in the two last, *ne* is not used because those verbs are without a negation.

732. When the negative conjunctions NEITHER and NOR, are used with several nouns, adjectives or pronouns, they are rendered by *ni*, which must be expressed before every one of them, though, in English, it is only before the first; and the verb, of

which they are either the nominatives or the objects, must be preceded by *ne*.

It was *neither* you, your brother, *Ce n'était ni vous, ni votre frère, ni*
nor your cousin, *votre cousin.*

They were *neither* generous, chari- *Ils n'étaient ni généreux, ni charita-*
table, nor compassionate, *bles, ni compatissants.*

733. When NEITHER OR NOR is used with several verbs, the French use *ne* before every one, and *ni ne* before the last, or *ne* only before the first and *ni ne* before every one of the others.

He *neither* eats, drinks, *nor* sleeps, *Il ne boit, ne mange, ni ne dort, or il*
ne boit, ni ne mange, ni ne dort.

EXERCISE 237.

All the evils have been a long time out of Pandora's box ; but Hope is still in it.—Have you seen the picture of Jerusalem ?—Not yet.—I thought you were to go and see it yesterday ?—No. I thought of going to-morrow, and I think I shall go ; but not before. That man does not dare to speak in public, although he has much more talent than most of the persons who are considered as the best orators in this city. Those, who do not know how to rule their passions, are like vessels that are steered by unskilful pilots. The same feeling that attaches us to our friends makes us apprehend that one day they will cease to love us.—An officer is never perfect, unless he is a good and wise man. Conquests create more enemies than they give subjects. Truth does not as much good in the world as hypocrisy causes evil.

EXERCISE 238.

Nations are weak, unless the citizens are united. We should never trust the man who acts otherwise than he thinks. Is the law of that country different from what it was two years ago ? An avaricious prince does no good to any one ; a prodigal prince generally does good only to the wicked. One should use every thing with moderation, lest privation should be too great. We must often have more courage to correct our defects, than to acknowledge them. The flatterer, who endeavours only to please us, is not less dangerous than the enemy who wishes to ruin us. Philosophers do not deny, that the sea has covered a great part of the inhabited earth. Although manuscripts were very scarce and dear

among the ancients, that did not prevent there being immense libraries.
 —We should be neither ²³prodigal nor ⁷³²penurious ; we should be governed by a prudent economy. The world is more seducing by the pleasures it ⁴¹⁶promises, than by the ⁴¹⁶favours it grants.

CHAPTER XII.

SYNTAX OF PREPOSITIONS.

734. Prepositions are always placed before their object, in French, though they are sometimes placed after it, in English ; as in,

What are you laughing *at* ?

De quoi riez-vous ?

What are you speaking *of* ?

De quoi parlez-vous ?

735. THROUGH is rendered, in French, by *au travers de*, or by *à travers* without *de*.

Through a bush,

Au travers d'un buisson, or à travers un buisson.

Through the field,

Au travers des champs, or à travers les champs.

736. The preposition *vis-à-vis*, OPPOSITE ; *en face*, OPPOSITE ; *proche*, NEAR ; *près*, NEAR ; require the preposition *de* before their object, and if they have several objects together, *de* must be repeated before every one.

Opposite my father's house,

Vis-à-vis de la maison de mon père.

Near the church and the market,

Près de l'église et du marché.

However, in conversation and in familiar style the *de* may be omitted.

737. TOWARDS is in French *vers* or *envers* ; but *vers* is used only relating to places or time, and *envers* when the object of that preposition is also the object of some feeling. *Envers* is used with the expression of feeling, of the disposition of the mind, soul or heart, and *vers* in any other circumstance.

We must be charitable *towards* the poor,

Il faut être charitable envers les pauvres.

You are going *towards* them,

Vous allez vers eux.

He will come *towards* the end of October.

Il viendra vers la fin d'Octobre.

738. BEFORE is translated by *avant*, *avant de*, *avant que*, and *devant* ; by *avant* when it relates to time, by *avant de* before

an infinitive, by *avant que* before a subjunctive mood, and by *devant* when it relates to place.

If you walk *before* me you will certainly arrive *before* me, *Si vous marchez devant moi, certainement vous arriverez avant moi.*

Explanation. The first BEFORE is rendered by *devant*, because it relates to place, you walking before me and I behind you; the second is rendered by *avant* because it relates to time, you being to arrive before the time I shall arrive.

739. SINCE is translated by *depuis* when it is a preposition, and by *depuis que* when it is a conjunction. But as this might not be understood by those who are not familiar with their grammar, it will be better to say, that SINCE is rendered by *depuis* when its object is a noun, not followed by a verb; and by *depuis que* when its object is a verb, or a noun followed by a verb. FROM or FOR, used in the sense of SINCE, or FROM THE TIME, or SINCE THE TIME, are also rendered by *depuis*, and the TO that follows the object of FROM or SINCE, is rendered into French by *jusque*, or *jusques*.

Some years <i>since</i> ,	Depuis quelques années.
<i>Since</i> you saw George,	Depuis que vous avez vu George.
<i>From</i> the east <i>to</i> the west,	Depuis le levant jusqu'au couchant.
<i>Since</i> you went away,	Depuis que vous êtes parti.
<i>For</i> a long time, you have known that I am devoted to you,	Depuis longtemps, vous savez que je vous suis dévoué.

740. Besides *depuis* and *depuis que*, there is another word that is used to translate SINCE; it is *puisque*, which is a conjunction employed when SINCE* is used in the sense of BECAUSE, SEEING THAT, IN AS MUCH AS, &c. ; as,

<i>Since</i> neither love nor the force of reason can persuade you,	<i>Puisque ni l'amour ni la force de la raison ne peuvent vous persuader.</i>
<i>Since</i> it is so,	<i>Puisque c'est ainsi.</i>

741. TILL, UNTIL, and sometimes EVEN, EVEN TO, AS FOR, AS TO, are translated either by the preposition *jusque* or *jusques*, or by the conjunction *jusqu'à ce que*; by *jusque* or *jusques*, when the object of TILL or UNTIL is a noun not followed by any verb; and by *jusqu'à ce que* when the object of TILL or UNTIL is a verb or a noun followed by a verb, which verb must be in the subjunctive, in French.

I shall keep it *till* your return, *Je le garderai jusqu'à votre retour.*

* *Puisque* should be considered elsewhere, were it not on account of the difficulty presented by the choice of the expression to be used to translate SINCE, and which will become more distinct by treating together its different meanings.

I shall keep it *till* you come back, *Je le garderai jusqu'à ce que vous reveniez.*

Will you not remain *until* the end of the discourse of Mr. D. ? *Ne resterez-vous pas jusqu'à la fin du discours de M. D. ?*

Will you not remain *until* Mr. D. has concluded his discourse ? *Ne resterez-vous pas jusqu'à ce que M. D. ait fini son discours ?*

The chain of his watch hung down to his knees, *La chaîne de sa montre pendait jusqu'à ses genoux.*

742. It should be noticed that *jusque* is never used without a preposition after it, which preposition is *à*, if the sense of the phrase does not require any other. Except, however, the adverb *où*, WHERE; *là*, THERE; *ici*, HERE; before which, *jusque* is used without a preposition.

Vice rides triumphant *even* on the throne, *Le vice règne jusque sur le trône.*

The use of the preposition *en* is sometimes difficult for foreigners, on account of its apparent analogy with *dans*, both of which being employed to translate *IN*. They are also used to translate other English prepositions. The following rules are given to remove any difficulty attending the use of those two words.

743. *En* is used to translate *IN* or *BY*, when its object is a verb in the gerund; and *as* also, when employed before a verb, is used in the sense of *IN* before a gerund, in which cases *dans* should be carefully avoided: See No. 156.

In doing, or *by* doing that, you will show your generosity, *En faisant cela vous montrerez votre générosité.*

That man trembles as he walks; (that is, *in* walking,) *Cet homme tremble en marchant.*

744. *Dans* is used when it relates to place or time, and whenever the noun which is its object is employed in a definite sense: (see No. 35) and then it is employed to translate *IN*, *IN-TO*, *WITHIN*.

To be *in* the box, *in* the house, *in* the town, *Être dans la boîte, dans la maison, dans la ville,*

To be in great misery, *Être dans une grande misère.*

745. *En* is used before names of countries that are the object of such verbs as *aller*, TO GO; *envoyer*, TO SEND; *rester*, TO LIVE, &c.; provided the names of those countries have not for initial the definite article, such as *Le Pérou*, PERU; *Le Chili*,

CHILI; *Le Mexique*, MEXICO; &c. with which the preposition *dans* or *à* should be used. *Dans* or *à* should be used also instead of *en* before proper names of cities, towns, villages, &c. which preposition must be repeated before every object.

To go to France,		<i>Aller en France.</i>
To live in England,		<i>Rester en Angleterre.</i>
To send to London,		<i>Envoyer à Londres.</i>

746. *En* is used before a noun that expresses the state or disposition of a person or thing.

To be alive.		<i>être en vie.</i>
A child at nurse,		<i>Un enfant en nourrice.</i>

747. *En* is often used to translate LIKE, AS, before the noun that expresses the manner in which a thing is or will be done, or stands, and often the matter with which it is made, in which case the indefinite article *a* or *an* should not be expressed.

To live like a king,		<i>Vivre en roi.</i>
To behave like a blunderer,		<i>Se conduire en étourdi.</i>
He received me as a friend,		<i>Il me reçut en ami.</i>
That is in my power,		<i>Cela est en mon pouvoir.</i>

748. *En* is used before nouns that express the state into which persons or things are changed, and the place TO or INTO which one passes from another place.

To run from street to street,		<i>Courir de rue en rue.</i>
Narcissus was metamorphosed into a flower,		<i>Narcisse fut changé en fleur.</i>
I shall divide that book into twelve chapters,		<i>Je diviserai ce livre en douze chapitres.</i>
The case is worse and worse,		<i>L'affaire va de mal en pire.</i>

749. *En* is used also to translate BY, TO, FOR, in such phrases as the following:

To act by virtue of a power,		<i>Agir en vertu d'un pouvoir.</i>
To arm for a cruise,		<i>Armer en course.</i>
To pull to pieces,		<i>Mettre en pièces.</i>

750. *En* is used in connection with other words with which it forms idiomatical expressions; as in the following:

To be exposed to all the world,		<i>Être en butte à tout le monde.</i>
To have a grudge against one,		<i>En vouloir à quelqu'un.</i>
To go away,		<i>S'en aller.</i>
To come back again,		<i>S'en revenir.</i>
Above, up stairs,		<i>En haut.</i>

Below, down,	En <i>bas</i> .
Forward,	En <i>avant</i> .
Backward,	En <i>arrière</i> .
Within,	En <i>dedans</i> .
Without,	En <i>dehors</i> .

751. When *IN* has for its object a noun expressing time, it is rendered by *en* when used in the sense of *WITHIN*, and by *dans* when used in the sense of *AFTER*.

I shall go to Baltimore *in* ten days, *J'irai à Baltimore dans dix jours, or en dix jours.*

Explanation. *J'irai à Baltimore dans dix jours* means, that, after ten days have elapsed, I shall go to Baltimore ; and *J'irai à Baltimore en dix jours* means, it will take me ten days to go to Baltimore.

752. In conclusion it may be said of these prepositions, that when *IN* or *INTO* has for its object a noun used in a definite sense, it is generally translated by *dans* ; and when that noun is used in an indefinite sense it is rendered by *en* ; *dans* being never used without being followed by an article. In the dictionary of Boyer, Chambaud, &c. is this : *N.B. This preposition is never used with the plural article les, nor even with the masculine singular le, unless the following substantive begins with a vowel and is followed by a regimen : With the feminine la its use is confined to few phrases.* The following examples will illustrate the difference between the use of *en* and *dans* :

<i>In</i> war or <i>in</i> peace,	En <i>paix</i> ou en <i>guerre</i> ; or dans la <i>paix</i> ou dans la <i>guerre</i> .
<i>In</i> the city,	En <i>ville</i> , or dans la <i>ville</i> .
That young man has never been in society,	Ce jeune homme n'a jamais été en <i>société</i> ; or dans la <i>société</i> : (however, en <i>société</i> is preferable, because the object of <i>in</i> is used in an indefinite sense.)
To go <i>in</i> a carriage,	Aller en <i>voiture</i> ; or dans une <i>voiture</i> .

753. *ON*, is in French *sur*, especially when it is used in the sense of *UPON*.

I rely <i>on</i> you,	<i>Je compte sur vous.</i>
He has written a discourse <i>on</i> that subject,	<i>Il a écrit un discours sur ce sujet.</i>
All our hopes depend <i>on</i> God's bounty,	<i>Toutes nos espérances sont fondées sur la bonté de Dieu.</i>

But sometimes it is not expressed at all in French: see No. 100.

754. Sometimes ON is translated by *à* ; as in,

On the right hand,	À main droite, or simply, à droite.
On foot or on horseback,	À pied ou à cheval.
On purpose,	À dessein, or exprès.
On the contrary,	Au contraire.
On condition,	À condition.
On the south, on the north, &c.	Au sud, au nord, &c.

Sometimes ON is rendered by *de* ; as,

I seized on him,	Je me saisis de lui.
To play on the violin,	Jouer du violon.
On this side,	De ce côté-ci.
On that side,	De ce côté-là.

755. Sometimes ON is rendered by *en* or *dans* ; as in,

On high, from on high,	En haut, d'en haut.
On such solemn occasions,	Dans des occasions si solennelles.

But when ON has for its object a noun expressing time or date, it is never expressed in French : see No. 100.

756. ON is often used with verbs, with which it forms a kind of compound verb, and is rendered by some verb that expresses them both.

My shoes are on,	Je suis chaussé.
To get one's hat on,	Mettre son chapeau.
To play on,	Continuer de jouer.
Lead on,	Conduis-nous.
To go on,	Continuer de marcher, avancer, &c.

757. ON ACCOUNT OF, forms a kind of compound preposition which is rendered, in French, by *à cause de*, and when instead of being followed by the preposition OF, the word ACCOUNT is preceded by one of the possessive personal articles MY, THY, HIS, &c. as in, ON MY ACCOUNT, ON THY ACCOUNT, &c. ON ACCOUNT is generally rendered, in French, by *à cause de*, and MY, THY, HIS, &c. by a corresponding personal substantive pronoun ; as in,

On account of that,	À cause de cela.
On account of that news,	À cause de cette nouvelle.
On my account,	À cause de moi.
On thy account,	À cause de toi.
On her account,	À cause d'elle.
On your account,	À cause de vous.

OF THE REPETITION OF PREPOSITIONS.

758. When several nouns, pronouns, or verbs, are together the objects of either of the prepositions *à*, *to* or *at*; *de*, *of* or *from*; *en*, *in*; although the English preposition is expressed only once, before the first, it must be repeated before every one, in French; as,

He owed his life *to* the clemency
and generosity of the conqueror,

The glory *of* serving and defend-
ing one's country is very great,

The same prejudices are found *in*
Europe, Asia, Africa, and even
in America,

*Il dut la vie à la clémence et à la
magnanimité du vainqueur.*

*La gloire de servir et de défendre
son pays est bien grande.*

*On trouve les mêmes préjugés en Eu-
rope, en Asie, en Afrique, et même
en Amérique.*

759. The other prepositions, especially those of one syllable, are repeated only when their objects do not present any similitude in their meaning; as,

In peace and *in* war, . . .

By strength and skill, . . .

With courage and inhumanity,

Dans la paix et dans la guerre.

Par la force et par l'adresse.

Avec courage et avec inhumanité.

760. But the prepositions should not be repeated, if their objects are almost synonymous expressions; as,

In effeminacy and idleness,

By strength and violence,

With courage and intrepidity,

Dans la mollesse et l'oisiveté.

Par la force et la violence.

Avec courage et intrépidité.

161. Prepositions, in English, are generally employed with either nouns or verbs; but, in French, the only prepositions used with verbs are *à*, *de*, *après*, *par*, *pour*, *sans* and *en*: (see Nos. 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130.) Therefore, when any of the other prepositions should be used, in French, to translate that which is employed before a verb, in English, it is necessary to change the phrase into such a one as can be literally translated, and will convey the sense of the first English phrase. For instance, to translate HE SPOKE *against* PAYING THAT MONEY, —as *contre*, which is the preposition that corresponds with AGAINST, cannot be employed before a verb, the phrase should be changed thus, HE SPOKE *against* THE PAYMENT OF THAT MONEY, and the translation should be, *il parla contre le paiement*

de cet argent. To translate the phrase THEY WERE PLEASED WITH MY MAINTAINING THAT FAMILY, it should be changed thus ; THEY WERE PLEASED THAT I MAINTAINED, or THAT I WAS MAINTAINING THAT FAMILY, *Ils était, or furent contents de ce que j'avais entretenu, or de ce que j'entretenais cette famille.*

EXERCISE 239.

Saint-Louis carried his formidable arms through immense spaces of sea and land. The falls of Niagara are near the boundary of the United-States and Canada. The city of Carthage, situated near the city of Tunis, was destroyed by the Romans, in the one hundred and forty-sixth year before Jesus-Christ. Sabacon, distinguished himself among all the kings of Egypt by his piety, and the mildness of his reign.— This is a sad accident for my creditors, said an officer who had just received a ball through his body. Be prodigal towards the unfortunate, economical in your house, and faithful towards your friends. I expect to be obliged to set out towards the end of next month. Yesterday that man came towards me with an air so proud and so vain, that I did not feel well-disposed towards him. Idolatrous people have towards their idols the same feelings we have towards Deity.

Before playing, the musician examined the instruments that were before him. From the creation of the world to our days, the wonderful order of the universe has never been disturbed. It is by flattering ignorance that many persons acquire a transient reputation ; but it is by doing good to mankind that others acquire glory. That gentleman has seen almost all Europe ; he has travelled in England, France, Italy, Greece, Germany, and Prussia ; and he returned only three weeks since.

EXERCISE 240.

Were I in danger, it seems to me that I should not lose my presence of mind, and that I should get out of it if it were in my power.—The venerable patriarch went from village to village, from town to town, from city to city, to preach the crusades. One shows a true elevation of mind and heart in subduing one's passions, in not being the slave to those of others, and in putting one's self above misfortune.—

Among our enemies, those that are to be feared⁵³¹ most are often the least powerful. Nothing contributes more to the happiness of mankind, than the care that is taken to adorn and strengthen the mind and heart of young persons by wise maxims and good examples.^{475 758 497 & 759} The writings of that preacher are sublime, especially on the subject of the duties of man towards God.⁷³⁷ I have heard, that all his discourses are to be published in two volumes; and that they will be for sale on the twenty-fourth of next month.—However, I have heard that he was unwilling to publish his writings.—I also have heard the same; but he does it on account⁷⁵⁷ of his brother, to whom he gives the profits of his publications.

CHAPTER XIII.

SYNTAX OF CONJUNCTIONS.

762. *Et*, AND, *ni*, NOR OR OR, add to the thought; but *et* does it affirmatively, and *ni* negatively. Whence it follows that *et* is used to connect together whatever belongs to an affirmation, and *ni* whatever belongs to a negation.

He believes that the Earth is a planet *and* that it revolves round the Sun, *Il croit que la Terre est une planète et qu'elle tourne autour du Soleil.*

Mr. A. cultivates letters *and* sciences *M. A. cultive les lettres et les sciences.*
That child is learned *and* modest, *Cet enfant est instruit et modeste,*
He acts slowly *and* prudently, *Il agit lentement et prudemment.*

He does not believe that the Earth is a planet, *nor* that it revolves round the Sun, *Il ne croit pas que la Terre soit une planète, ni qu'elle tourne autour du Soleil.*

Mr. A. does not cultivate letters *nor* sciences, *M. A. ne cultive pas les lettres ni les sciences.*

That child is neither learned *nor* modest. *Cet enfant n'est pas instruit ni modeste.*

He does not act slowly *nor* prudently, *Il n'agit pas lentement ni prudemment.*

763. REMARK. With the conjunction *ni* it is much better to suppress the *pas* and use *ni* before every word that is the object of the negation, especially if that word is not a verb, though it is perfectly correct with a verb; as, *Il ne croit ni que la terre soit une planète ni qu'elle tourne autour du soleil. M. A. ne*

cultive ni les lettres ni les sciences. C'est enfant n'est ni instruit ni modeste. Il n'agit ni lentement ni prudemment.

764. When the preposition *sans*, WITHOUT, has several objects, it is either repeated before every one, and the last is preceded by *et*, AND; or expressed only before the first, and supplied by *ni*, before all the others.

Without joy and without murmur, she seems to obey, Sans joie et sans murmure, elle semble obéir.

Without fear or modesty, without force or virtue, Sans crainte ni pudeur, sans force ni vertu.

765. When THE MORE, THE BETTER, THE LEAST, AS MUCH, are repeated in a phrase, or used in opposition, they are expressed by *plus, mieux, moins, autant*, also repeated, but without the conjunction *et*; as,

The more one reads Racine, the more one admires him, Plus on lit Racine, plus on l'admire.

The less a scholar studies, the less he learns, Moins un écolier étudie, moins il apprend.

The more he grows, the less reasonable he is, Plus il grandit, moins il est raisonnable.

766. The conjunction *que* is employed, in French, to translate THAT, THAN, AS: (see Nos. 111, 112, 113, 114, &c.) and its use is as extensive as the corresponding conjunction, in English.

767. When a phrase is composed of several distinct parts, in which the conjunction *si*, IF, is used, the French express that conjunction only in the first, and supply it with *que* in the others, with the next verb in the subjunctive mood, after *que* only; as,
If she desires that, and if you desire it too, and if I cannot dispose of it, what shall I do? Si elle désire cela, et que vous le désiriez aussi, et que je ne puisse pas en disposer, que ferai-je?

768. *Que* is sometimes used instead of *à moins que*, UNLESS; *sans que*, WITHOUT; *de peur que*, LEST, FOR FEAR THAT; and requires the next verb in the subjunctive mood, with *ne* before it.

I shall never be contented, unless I know it, Je ne serai jamais content que je ne le sache.

We will not go to his house, without having an invitation, Nous n'irons pas chez lui que nous n'ayons une invitation.

Do not go near that dog, lest he should bite you, N'approchez pas de ce chien, qu'il ne vous morde.

Let us make haste, for fear somebody should come, Dépêchons-nous, que quelqu'un ne vienne.

769. *Que* is sometimes used instead of *afin que*, THAT, TO THE END THAT ; *si*, IF ; *dès que*, WHEN, AS SOON AS ; and requires the next verb in the subjunctive mood ; as,

Pray, come hither, <i>that</i> I may tell you something,	<i>De grâce, venez ici, que je vous dise quelque chose.</i>
If he does that, he is lost,	<i>Qu'il fasse cela, il est perdu.</i>
When he takes that medicine, he is sick to death,	<i>Qu'il prenne cette médecine, il est malade à la mort.</i>

770. However, THAT is often used in the sense of TO THE END THAT, and then it is more safe, if not better, to translate it by *afin que* instead of *que* alone, with the next verb in the subjunctive mood.

He punished him <i>that</i> he should not forget his book another time,	<i>Il le punit afin qu'il n'oubliât pas son livre une autre fois.</i>
---	---

771. *Que* is often used instead of *comme*, AS ; *lorsque*, WHEN ; *cependant*, YET, HOWEVER ; *depuis que*, SINCE ; *de sorte que*, SO THAT, and for JUST AS ; with the next verb in the indicative mood ; as,

We set out <i>when</i> it rained as hard as it could pour,	<i>Nous partîmes qu'il pleuvait à verse.</i>
He would see me die, <i>yet</i> he would not be affected by it,	<i>Il me verrait périr, qu'il n'en serait pas touché.</i>
It is but an hour <i>since</i> he went out,	<i>Il n'y a qu'une heure qu'il est sorti.</i>
If you are not good, I shall correct you, <i>so that</i> you will remember it,	<i>Si vous n'êtes pas sage je vous étonnerai, que vous vous en souviendrez.</i>

772. When the conjunction HARDLY is used at the commencement of a phrase, it is rendered by *à peine*, and the conjunction *que* must be used for THAN, WHEN or BUT, and placed after it, not next to it, but next to the following verb, which verb should be in the indicative mood, and if there were several phrases depending on the same conjunction, *que* should be repeated with every one of them.

He had <i>hardly</i> done speaking, <i>when</i> he expired,	<i>À peine eut-il achevé de parler, qu'il expira.</i>
---	---

773. WHETHER used with a verb expressing doubt, is rendered by *si*, with the next verb in the indicative, and often by *que*, with the next verb in the subjunctive ; as,

I doubt <i>whether</i> that is so,	<i>Je doute si cela est ainsi, or Je doute que cela soit ainsi.</i>
------------------------------------	---

774. There are some phrases in which the verb TO BE has for its nominative either a noun or a part of a phrase, and after it something which can be considered as its complement or object; as in, GAMING IS A DANGEROUS PASSION; TO BE A MISER IS A KIND OF SHAME. Then when the nominative is a noun, as in the first example, the phrase may be translated literally; thus, *le jeu est une passion dangereuse*, or by giving to *être* the nominative *ce*, and placing the noun preceded by the conjunction *que* at the end of the phrase; thus, *c'est une passion dangereuse que le jeu*. But when the nominative of *être* is a part of a phrase, it is better to place the verb *être* with *ce* at the beginning, and that which is the nominative of TO BE, or that to which *ce* relates, at the end with *que* before it; as,

To be miserable is a kind of shame, *C'est une espèce de honte que d'être malheureux.*

Trade is an advantageous thing for a nation, *Le commerce est une chose avantageuse à une nation; or C'est une chose avantageuse à une nation que le commerce.*

775. When BECAUSE follows TO BE, it is generally rendered literally by *parce que*; but very often merely by *que*, with the next verb in the subjunctive mood; as,

It is because I did not know that it was his, *C'est parce que, or C'est que j'en savais pas que ce fût à lui.*

776. When AS is preceded by so, *si*, or SUCH, *tel*, it is rendered by *que* preceded by *tel* for SUCH AS, and by *si...que de* for so...AS, with the next verb in the infinitive; as,

I am not so foolish as to believe it, *Je ne suis pas si fou que de le croire.*
Be such as you would be considered, *Soyez tel que vous voulez être estimé.*

777. *Que* is used with the subjunctive mood to translate LET or MAY, when they are either expressed or merely implied at the beginning of a phrase expressing a wish or an imprecation; as,
Let me die, if I know any thing of it, Que je meure si j'en sais quelque chose.
God bless you! (may being understood,) *Que Dieu vous bénisse!*

778. How is often rendered by *que* when it is at the commencement of an interrogative phrase, especially if it is at the same time somewhat exclamative; and, if BUT follows the verb preceded by how, it is rendered by *si*.

How do you know *but* that your father's soul had passed into that creature ? *Que savez-vous si l'âme de votre père n'était pas passée dans cette bête ?*

779. WHAT at the commencement of an interrogative and negative phrase, is often rendered by *que* at the commencement, and *ne...pas* with the first verb; and WHY is sometimes rendered by *que*, and *ne* without *pas*, or literally by *pourquoi*.

What does he not do to grow rich ? *Que ne fait-il pas pour devenir riche ?*

Is there any thing but what you told to deter him from it ? *Que ne lui dites-vous pas pour l'en détourner ?*

Why don't you tell him that ? *Que ne lui dites-vous cela ?*

However, those phrases might be rendered thus :

Quelles choses ne fait-il pas pour devenir riche ?

Y a-t-il quelque chose que vous ne lui ayez dit pour l'en détourner.

Pourquoi ne parlez-vous pas ?

Pourquoi ne lui dites-vous pas cela ?

But these phrases are far less expressive and elegant than the others.

780. As it has been observed, (see No. 761) there are only seven prepositions that can be used before a verb, in French; but there are conjunctions composed of a preposition and *de* or *que*, which might be employed to translate such English prepositions used with a verb, especially when they have in their composition such preposition as corresponds with that of the English. Those conjunctions, some of which require the indicative mood, others the subjunctive mood, and others the present infinitive, are the following :

Conjunctions requiring the indicative mood.

<i>Attendu que,</i>	As, because.
<i>Depuis que,</i>	Since.
<i>Excepté que,</i>	Except.
<i>Jusqu'à ce que,</i>	Till, until.
<i>Outre que,</i>	Besides.
<i>Pendant que,</i>	While, whilst.
<i>Sauf que,</i>	Save, except.
<i>Selon que,</i>	According to, as.
<i>Suivant que,</i>	According to, as.
<i>Vu que,</i>	Seeing, because.

Conjunctions requiring the subjunctive mood.

<i>Avant que,</i>	Before.
<i>Loin que,</i>	Far from.
<i>Moyennant que,</i>	Provided.
<i>Pour que,</i>	For.
<i>Sans que,</i>	Without.
<i>Supposé que,</i>	Suppose.

Conjunctions requiring the present infinitive.

<i>Avant de,</i>	Before.
<i>Loin de,</i>	Far from.
<i>Près de,</i>	Near.

781. These French conjunctions should be employed only when the corresponding English prepositions have for their object either a verb, a noun or pronoun which is the nominative of a verb; as in,

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Since</i> the time of my admission, I have never missed a single meeting, | 1. Depuis l'époque de mon admission, je n'ai pas manqué à une seule réunion. |
| 2. <i>Since</i> I was admitted into the society, I have not missed a single meeting, | 2. Depuis que j'ai été admis dans la société je n'ai pas manqué à une seule réunion. |
| 3. <i>Before</i> the passing of that law, intemperance was very great here, | 3. Avant le passage de cette loi l'intempérance était grande ici. |
| 4. <i>Before</i> the legislature passed that law, intemperance was very great here, | 4. Avant que la législature passât cette loi, l'intempérance était très-grande ici. |
| 5. <i>Before</i> passing that law, the legislature discussed it thoroughly, | 5. Avant de passer cette loi la législature l'a discuté parfaitement, |
| 6. <i>During</i> my living in that place, I was very happy, | 6. Pendant que je restais dans cette maison j'étais très-heureux. |
| 7. <i>During</i> my stay in that house, I was very happy, | 7. Pendant ma résidence dans cette maison j'étais très-heureux. |

Explanation. In the first, third, and seventh examples, the prepositions *depuis*, *avant*, and *pendant*, are employed without *que*, because their objects are neither verbs, nor nouns, nor pronouns, which are the nominatives of verbs. In the second, fourth, and sixth examples, the same prepositions are followed by *que*, because their objects are either verbs, or nouns, or pronouns, which are the nominatives of verbs. In the fifth example, *de* is used after *avant*, because the verb that follows is used without a personal nominative; for, were the English phrase thus: BEFORE THEY PASSED THE LAW, THE LEGISLATURE DISCUSSED IT, the French should be: *Avant qu'elle passât cette loi, la législature la discutait.*

782. In the 6th example, the possessive personal pronoun *MY* is rendered by *je*, as it should be in every similar phrase. It is the same with the other possessive personal articles *THY*, *HIS*, *HER*, *ITS*, *OUR*, *YOUR*, *THEIR*, which must be rendered by the corresponding nominative personal pronouns *tu*, *il*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *ils*, *elles*, whenever they are employed before a verb that must be translated by a corresponding verb; but were the verb to *BE* translated by a corresponding noun, the English possessive articles should be rendered by corresponding French possessive articles, as may be observed in the 7th example.

EXERCISE 241.

There is nothing that men like better to preserve, and that they spare less than their own life. The persons who have no taste for study nor

inclination to labour, are to be pitied. Without experience or reflection one always remains in infancy. The less men are civilized the easier it is to deceive them. A benevolent man is like the sun, which does not trade with his own light; but which lavishes it without ambition or avarice, and which has never exacted any thing from the stars and the earth, since he gave it to them. It may be generally said that the wiser men are, the more they are esteemed; and that the more virtuous they are, the more indulgent they are to the defects of others. If I were rich, and if thou wert poor, I would invite thee to enjoy my fortune with me.

EXERCISE 242.

The government of that country will never permit the importation of the goods of their neighbours, unless a treaty is made. If a man is accused of a crime, and if he is guilty, his conscience is often his most severe accuser. Give me your exercise, that I may correct it. We entered the hall just as he finished his discourse. Why does he not act according to his promise, and why has he not paid the money he engaged to pay for me? He who wishes to deceive, does not appear such as he is; but generally such as he ought to be; and there are many persons that are so unfortunate as to be deceived by such hypocrites.— Come, boy, that I may whip you, said my school-master to me one day. I obeyed immediately, and he was so well satisfied, that he pardoned me, on condition that I should never do again the same thing.

CHAPTER XIV.

SYNTAX OF INTERJECTIONS.

783. Interjections are used to express sudden emotions of the soul. They are mere instinctive cries, the use of which can be determined only by explaining what they are intended to express; they are,

- 1st. For grief or affliction,
- 2d. For joy and desire,
- 3d. For fear,

Ah! aïe! ouf! ahi! hé! hélas!
Ah! bon!
Ah! hé!

4th. For aversion, contempt, disgust,	<i>Fi ! Fi donc !</i>
5th. For derision,	<i>Oh ! he ! zest ! parbleu !</i>
6th. For admiration,	<i>Oh ! comment !</i>
7th. For surprise,	<i>Oh ! ha ! ouais ! bah !</i>
8th. For encouraging,	<i>Ho ça ! ça !</i>
9th. For admonishing,	<i>Holà ! hem ! oh !</i>
10th. For calling,	<i>Holà ! hé !</i>
11th. For silence,	<i>Chut ! st !</i>

784. Besides these exclamative words, French and English phrases are often employed to express sudden emotions of the soul. This is done sometimes by merely using a peculiar kind of emphasis, and at other times by giving to those phrases some peculiar form, in which enter either of the words *que*, *quoi de*, *quel*, *quelle*, *quels*, *quelles*, *comment*, or some interjection. The following examples will show how English exclamative phrases should be rendered in French :

<i>How much</i> you like to talk !	<i>Que vous aimez à parler !</i>
<i>How</i> beautiful it is !	<i>Que c'est beau !</i>
<i>How</i> interesting that lady is !	<i>Que cette dame est intéressante !</i>
<i>How</i> glad I am to see you !	<i>Que je suis aise de vous voir !</i>
<i>How</i> tall that man is !	<i>Qu'il est grand cet homme ! or Que cet homme est grand !</i>
<i>How many</i> fools there are in the world !	<i>Qu'il y a de fous dans le monde ! or Que de fous qu'il y a dans le monde ! or Que de fous n'y a-t-il pas dans le monde !</i>
<i>How much</i> pleasure and trouble he felt at once !	<i>Que de plaisir et de peine à la fois na-t-il pas éprouvés !</i>
<i>What a</i> beautiful boy he was !	<i>Quel bel enfant n'était-il pas ! or Le bel enfant qu'il était !</i>
<i>What</i> interesting books he has !	<i>Les livres intéressants qu'il a ! or Quels livres intéressants n'a-t-il pas !</i>
<i>What a</i> wretch !	<i>Le misérable qu'il est ! or Quel misérable n'est il pas !</i>
<i>What</i> cursed miscreants your Cherokees are !	<i>La maudite canaille que vos Chiroquois !</i>
<i>What a</i> generous woman is she who gave all her property for the relief of the unfortunate !	<i>Qu'elle est généreuse celle qui a donné toute sa fortune pour le soulagement des infortunés ! or Quelle femme généreuse n'est elle-pas celle qui, &c. or Quelle femme généreuse que celle qui a donné toute sa fortune pour le soulagement des infortunés.</i>

EXERCISE 243.

How beautiful the country is, when ⁸⁷it is adorned with the flowers of spring! but how rich ⁸⁷it is, when it is covered with all the fruits of autumn! What a contemptible man is he who made such a proposition! how his conscience would reproach him, if it were susceptible of being moved! How! are you not mistaken in his character and ⁷⁵⁹history? How beautiful and gentle was his conduct, when labour was ⁷⁰⁸so very scarce, that mechanics could not get enough to provide the necessaries of life!—Indeed!—You cannot imagine how benevolent he is, and, what an immense sum of money he then gave to the poor of this city! And you may be assured that whatever he ⁴⁵⁹may have done, he did it with the best intention. Would to God that we had many ^{727&174}men like him among us! How glad I should be! but not more than I ⁷⁰⁸am to have almost done my work.

CHAPTER XV.

GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION OF FIGURES.

785. There is in every language a construction of phrases that is common to all, and in which words are placed in the simplest order; namely, that which is suggested by the mind. In that construction, every word that is necessary for the expression of thought is made use of, without there being any superabundance; and the most perfect concord exists with all the parts of speech that relate to each other. That construction is called grammatical, because it is conformable with the rules of grammar.

But vivacity of imagination, the wish of being more concise, or more harmonious, cause that order not to be strictly followed, and then the construction is called FIGURATIVE.

There are four grammatical figures, the ELLIPSES, PLEONASM, SYLLEPSIS and the INVERSION.

786. ELLIPSES consists in the suppression of certain words that are necessary to make the construction of the phrase full

and complete, but which are not necessary for the expression of the idea ; as in,

Our merit wins for us the esteem of good men, and our good star that of the public, *Notre mérite nous attire l'estime des honnêtes gens, et notre étoile, celle du public.*

There is an ellipsis in this phrase, because *et notre étoile, celle du public* is for *et notre étoile nous attire celle du public*.

But when the ellipsis is made use of, it is necessary that the words that are omitted should be supplied without difficulty.

787. This figure is often made use of in English, when it should be avoided in French ; this is especially the case, when a verb is implied ; as in,

I am told that that man is just and generous ; *If so*, he deserves our consideration.

In this phrase the words *IF so*, are for *IF HE IS so* ; the French should be thus :

On m'a dit que cet homme est juste et généreux ; s'il l'est, il mérite notre considération.

788. PLEONASM is the contrary of ellipsis ; it is a superabundance of words, without which the sense of the phrase might be expressed ; as,

I saw it with mine own eyes, *Je l'ai vu de mes yeux.*

There is a pleonasm in this phrase, because the words *de mes yeux* add nothing to the sense. Pleonasm should be used only when it gives to the phrase more grace, more energy ; but it should be avoided, when the style derives no benefit from its use.

789. SYLLEPSIS consists in the agreement of a word, not with that to which it grammatically relates, but with that to which it relates according to the sense of the phrase ; as in,

A multitude of persons have come, *Une multitude de personnes sont venues.*

There is a syllepsis in this phrase, because *multitude* is the word to which *sont venues* grammatically relates, though they agree in gender, number, and person with *personnes*, to which they relate by implication.

790. INVERSION takes place whenever the words of a phrase are not arranged according to the rules of grammar, which re-

quire that the nominative should be expressed first, then the verb, then the direct object; as,

Already was soaring back towards those mountains in order to save himself, that eagle, whose bold flight had frightened our provinces, *Déjà prenait l'essor, pour se sauver vers les montagnes, cet aigle dont le vol hardi avait d'abord effrayé nos provinces.*

There is an inversion in this phrase, because the nominative, THAT EAGLE, *cet aigle*, is placed after the verb of which it is the nominative.

Inversions should never cause any obscurity in the sense of a phrase, and should be used only when they contribute to the elegance, harmony, and vivacity of the style.

EXERCISE 244.

BEING AN EXTRACT FROM COMBE'S CONSTITUTION OF MAN:—Section iii.

MAN CONSIDERED AS AN ANIMAL, MORAL, AND INTELLECTUAL BEING.

I have adverted to the bodily constitution of man, which is essentially animal; but I observe, in the third place, that man, viewed in regard to his mental constitution, is an animal, moral, and intellectual being. To discover the adaptation of the mental parts of his nature to his external circumstances, we must first know what are his various animal, moral, and intellectual powers themselves. Phrenology gives us a view of them, drawn from observation; and as I have verified the inductions of that science, so as to satisfy myself that it is the most complete and correct exposition of the nature of man which has yet been given, I adopt its classification of faculties as the basis of the subsequent observations. One great advantage presented by Phrenology, is the light which it throws on the *natural* constitution of the mind. Philosophers and divines have long disputed about the number and functions of the human faculties; and while each assumed his own consciousness as the standard of nature, and occupied himself chiefly with observations on its phenomena, as his means of study, there could be no end to their discussions. But the organs of the mind can be seen and felt, and their

size estimated,—and the mental manifestations also that accompany them can be observed, in an unlimited number of instances,—so that, assuming the existence of organs, it is clear that a far higher degree of certainty in regard to the *natural* endowments of the mind may be attained by these means, than by any other previously applied. It is disputed also whether man be now in possession of the same qualities as those with which he was created: but the fact of the organs having been bestowed by the Creator is not open to contradiction, if they exist at all; and if we discover their functions and their uses, and distinguish these from their abuses, we shall obviously obtain clearer views of what God has instituted, and of the extent to which man himself is chargeable with error and perversion, than could be arrived at by the means hitherto employed. Such conclusions, if correctly drawn, will possess an irresistible authority—that of the record of creation itself. If, therefore, any reader be disposed to question the existence of such qualities in man as I am about to describe, he must, to do so consistently, be prepared to deny, on reasonable grounds, that mental organs exist,—or, if he allows their existence, he must establish that the observations of phrenologists in regard to them are incorrect, or their inferences regarding their functions erroneously deduced. According to Phrenology then, the human faculties are the following. The organs are double, each faculty having two, lying in corresponding situations of the hemispheres of the brain.

VOCABULARY.

EXPLANATIONS OF THE ABBREVIATIONS IN THIS VOCABULARY.

n.	noun.	r. v.	reflective verb.	m.s.	masculine singular.
n. m.	noun masculine.	a. v.	active verb.	f. s.	feminine singular.
n. f.	noun feminine.	n. v.	neuter verb.	m.p.	masculine plural.
adj.	adjective.	u. v.	unipersonal verb.	f.p.	feminine plural.
a. & n.	adjective and noun.	p. & a.	participle and adjective.	m.&f.	masculine & feminine.
conj.	conjunction.	car.nu.	cardinal number.	m.f.s.	masculine & feminine singular.
pro.	pronoun.	ord.nu.	ordinal number.	m.f.p.	masculine & fem. plural.
per.pro.	personal pronoun.	prop.n.	proper name.	i.	first conjugation.
adv.	adverb.	sin.	singular.	ii.	second conjugation.
prep.	preposition.	plu.	plural.	iii.	third conjugation.
def.art.	definite article.	exc.	exception.	iv.	fourth conjugation.
ind.art.	indefinite article.	& fol.	and following.		

The NUMERAL FIGURES refer to the paragraphs throughout the book.—p. before a number, refers to page.

A AC

A, or an, ind.art. *un*, m. *une*, f. 41, 119.
to Abandon, a. v. *abandonner*, a. v. i.
Ability, n. *habileté*, f.
Able, adj. *capable*, 64.
—to be able, *être capable*; *pouvoir*, iii. irr. 261.
to Abolish, a. v. *abolir*, ii.
About, prep. *environ*; *sur*.
—to be about setting out, *être sur le point de partir*.
—to be about to do a thing, or to be going to do a thing, *aller faire une chose*, i. irr. p. 185
Above, prep. *par dessus au dessus de*.
Above-all, adv. *surtout*, *principalement*.
Absence, n. *absence*, f.
Absent, adj. *absent*, e, 65.
Absolute, adj. *absolu*, e, 65
Abuse, n. *abus*, m.
Academy, n. *académie*, f.
to Accept, a. v. *accepter*, i.
Accident, n. *accident*, m.
—to meet with an accident, *éprouver un accident*.
to Accompany, a. v. *accompagner*, i.
to Accomplish. a. v. *accomplir*, *finir*, ii.
According to, prep. *selon*, *suivant*.
According as, conj. *selon que*.

AC AD

Account, n. *compte*, m.
—to on account of, *à cause de*, 757.
Accusation, n. *accusation*, f.
to Accuse, a. v. *accuser*, i.
Accuser, n. *accusateur*, m. *accusatrice*, f.
to Acknowledge, a. v. *reconnaître*, iv. irr. 303.
Acknowledgment, n. *reconnaissance*, f.
Acquaintance, n. *connaissance*, f.
—to have an acquaintance, or to be acquainted with one, *connaître quelqu'un*, 303.
to Acquire, a. v. *acquérir*, ii. irr. 207.
to Acquit, a. v. *absoudre*, iv. irr. 288.
to Act, n. v. *agir*, ii.
Act, n. *acte*, m.
Action, n. *action*, f.
Active, adj. *actif*, *ve*, 67.
Actor, n. *acteur*, m.
Actress, n. *actrice*, f.
Adams, pr. n. *Adams*, m.
Adam, pr. n. *Adam*, m.
Adaptation, n. *adaptation*, f.
to Add, a. v. *ajouter*, i.
to Address, a. v. *adresser*, i.
Address, n. *adresse*, f.
Adelaide, pr. n. *Adélaïde*, f.
Adieu, n. *adieu*, m.

AD AL

Adele, pr. n. *Adèle*, f.
 Administration, n. *administration*, f.
 Admirable, adj. *admirable*, 64.
 Admirably, adv. *admirablement*.
 Admiral, n. *amiral*, m. s. *amiraux*, m. p.
 Admiration, n. *admiration*, f.
 to Admire, a. v. *admirer*, i.
 Admirer, n. *admirateur*, m. *admiratrice*, f.
 Admissible, adj. *admissible*, 64.
 Admission, n. *admission*, f.
 to Admit, a. v. *recevoir*, iii. *admettre*, iv. irr. 343.
 Admonition, n. *avis*, m.
 to Adopt, a. v. *adopter*, i.
 Adopted, adj. *adoptif*, *ve*, 67.
 to Adorn, a. v. *orne* ; *parer*, i.
 —adorned with, *orné de*.
 Advice, n. *avis*, m.
 Æneid, n. *Énéide*, f. a poem of Virgil.
 Affability, n. *affabilité*, f.
 Affable, adj. *affable*, 64.
 Affair, n. *affaire*, f.
 Affectation, n. *affectation*, f.
 Affected, p. & a. *dérangé*, e, 65 ; *affecté*, e ;
touché, e, 65.
 Affection, n. *affection*, f.
 Africa, n. *Afrique*, f. 492, 506.
 After, prep. *après* ; *d'après*. I shall do that
after you, but I shall do it *after* this
 model, *Je ferai cela après vous, mais je le*
ferai d'après ce modèle, 780.
 After, adv. *ensuite*.
 After, conj. *après que*, 780.
 Afternoon, n. *après-midi*, f.
 Afterward, adv. *ensuite*.
 Afterward, prep. *après*.
 Again, adv. *encore*.
 Against, prep. *contre*.
 Age, n. *âge*, m. *siècle*, m.
 Aged, adj. *âgé*, e, 65.
 Aggressor, n. *agresseur*, m.
 Agile, adj. *agile*, 64 ; *actif*, *ve*, 67.
 to Agitate, a. v. *agiter*, i.
 Agitation, n. *agitation*, f.
 Ago, adv. *depuis*, *depuis longtemps*, 672.
 to Agree, n. v. *s'accorder*, i. r. v. 187, & fol.
 Agreeable, adj. *agréable*, 64.
 Air, n. *air*, m.
 Alexander, prop. n. *Alexandre*, m.
 Alexis, prop. n. *Alexis*, m.
 Algebra, n. *algèbre*, f.
 —to resolve a problem in algebra, *résoudre*
un problème d'algèbre.
 All, adj. *tout*, e, 65, 77.
 At all, adv. *réellement*.

AL AN

—not at all, adv. *point du tout*.
 Alliance, n. *alliance*, f.
 to Allow, a. v. *accorder*, i. *admettre*, iv. irr. 343.
 Allusion, n. *allusion*, f.
 Almanac, n. *almanach*, m.
 Almighty, adj. & n. *tout-puissant*, *toute-*
puissante.
 Almost, adv. *presque*.
 Alone, adj. *seul*, e, 65.
 Already, adv. *déjà*.
 Also, adv. *aussi*.
 to Alter, a. v. *altérer*, i. 16 ; *changer*, i. 14.
 to Alter, n. v. *changer*, i. 14.
 Although, conj. *quoique*, 109.
 Always, adv. *toujours*.
 Alzire, pr. n. *Alzire*, f.
 Amiability, n. *amabilité*, f.
 Ambassade, n. *ambassade*, f.
 Ambassador, n. *ambassadeur*, m.
 Ambassadors, n. *ambassadeurs*, f.
 Ambition, n. *ambition*, f.
 Ambitious, adj. *ambitieux*, *se*, 68.
 Amendment, n. *amendement*, m.
 America, n. *Amérique*, f. 492, 506.
 American, adj. & n. *Américain*, e, 65.
 Amiable, adj. *aimable*, 64.
 Amiability, amiableness, n. *amabilité*, f.
 Among, amongst, prep. *parmi* ; *entre* ; *dans*
le nombre de or *des* ; *chez*.
 —among other things, *entre autres choses* ;
 —among the Indians, *chez les Indiens*.
 to Amount, n. v. *se monter*, i. r. v. 187 & fol.
 Amount, n. *montant*, m. *somme*, f.
 to Amuse, a. v. *amuser*, i.
 Amusement, n. *amusement*, m.
 An, ind. art. *un*, m. *une*, f. 41, 119.
 Ancestor, n. *aïeul*, m. s. *aïeule*, f. s. 33, 7th.
ancêtres, m. p.
 Ancient, adj. & n. *ancien*, *ne*, 66.
 And, conj. *et*.
 Andiron, n. *chenet*, m.
 Angel, n. *ange*, m.
 Angle, n. *angle*, m.
 Angry, adj. *fâché*, e, 65.
 Animal, n. *animal*, m. 32.
 Animal, adj. *animal*, e, 65.
 Anniversary, n. *anniversaire*, m.
 Anniversary, adj. *annuel*, *le*, 66.
 to Announce, a. v. *annoncer*, i. 13.
 Annual, adj. *annuel*, *le*, 66.
 Annually, adv. *annuellement*.
 Another, adj. *un autre*, m. *une autre*, f.
 —another time, *une autre fois*.
 —one another, each other, *l'un l'autre*, 447 & fo

AN AR

Answer, n. *réponse*, f.
 to Answer, n. v. *répondre* à, iv.
 Antagonist, n. *antagoniste*, m.
 Antecedent, n. *antécédent*, m.
 Anterior, adj. *antérieur*, e, 69, 6th.
 Antipathy, n. *antipathie*, f.
 Antiquity, n. *antiquité*, f.
 Anxiety, n. *anxiété*, f.
 Any, adj. or art. or pron. *chaque* ; *quelque* ;
quelqu'un, *quelqu'une* ; *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*,
de, 44, 94, 438.
 —any thing, *quelque chose*.
 —any other, *tout autre*.
 —any one, with a negation, *personne...ne*.
 Apartment, n. *appartement*, m. *chambre*, f.
 Apology, n. *apologie*, f.
 Apostle, n. *apôtre*, m.
 Apothecary, n. *apothicaire*, m.
 Apparent, adj. *apparent*, e, 65.
 Apparently, adv. *apparemment*.
 to Appear, n. v. *paraître*, iv. irr. 303.
 Appearance, n. *apparence*, f.
 Appetite, n. *appétit*, m.
 to Applaud, n. v. *applaudir*, ii.
 Applause, n. *applaudissement*, m.
 Apple, n. *pomme*, f.
 Application, n. *application*, f.
 to Apply, a. v. *appliquer* à or *sur*, i. *em-*
ployer à, i. 18.
 to Apport, a. v. *nommer*, i.
 Appointment, n. *commission*, f.
 to Appreciate a. v. *apprécier*, i.
 to Apprehend, a. v. *appréhender*, i. 109, 729.
 to Approach, a. v. *approcher* de, i. *s'appro-*
cher de, i. 187 & foll.
 Approach, n. *approche*, f.
 Approbation, n. *approbation*, f.
 Apricot, n. *abricot*, m.
 April, n. *Avril*, m.
 Apron, n. *tablier*, m.
 Arc, n. *arc*, m. *arche*, f.
 Architecture, n. *architecture*, f.
 Ardent, adj. *ardent*, e, 65.
 Ardently, adv. *ardemment*.
 Ardour, n. *ardeur*, f.
 Argument, n. *argument*, m.
 Aristocracy, n. *aristocratie*, f.
 Arithmetic, n. *arithmétique*, f.
 Arm, n. (a limb) *bras*, m. (a weapon) *arme*, f.
 to Arm, a. v. *armer*, i.
 Arms, n. (weapons) *armes*, f. p.
 Army, n. *armée*, f.
 Around, adv. *à l'entour* ; *autour*.

AR AS

Around, prep. *autour* de.
 to Arrange, a. v. *arranger*, i. 14.
 Arrangement, n. *arrangement*, m.
 Arrestation, n. *arrestation*, f.
 to Arrest, a. v. *arrêter*, i.
 Arrival, n. *arrivée*, f.
 to Arrive, n. v. *arriver*, i.
 —to arrive at, *arriver* à. —to arrive at (to
 find out) *découvrir*, ii. irr. 214.
 Arrogance, n. *arrogance*, f.
 to Arrogate, n. v. *s'arroger*, i. r.v. 187, 14.
 Arrow, n. *flèche*, f.
 Arsenal, n. *arsenal*, m. 32.
 Art, n. *art*, m.
 Article, n. *article*, m.
 to Articulate, a. v. *articuler*, i.
 Articulation, n. *articulation*, f.
 Artifice, n. *artifice*, m.
 Artillery, n. *artillerie*, f.
 Artist, n. *artiste*, m.
 Artless, adj. *simple*, 64 ; *naïf*, *ve*, 67.
 As, conj. *comme* ; *que*, 111, 112, 449, 743.
 As much of, or as many of, prep. *autant* de.
 —as much, or as many as, *tant* *que*, *autant* *que*.
 As soon as, conj. *aussitôt* *que*.
 As well as, conj. *aussi* *bien* *que*.
 As though, conj. *comme* *si*.
 As for, prep. *quant* à.
 As to, prep. *quant* à ; *au sujet* de.
 So as to, conj. *comme* *pour*.
 to Ascend, n. v. *monter* à, i.
 to Ascend, a. v. *monter*, i. *gravir*, ii.
 to Ascertain, a. v. *assurer*, i. *s'assurer* de, i. 187
 & following.
 Ashamed, adj. *honteux*, *se*, 63.
 Asia, n. *Asie*, f. 492, 506.
 to Ask, a. v. *demander*, i.
 —to ask for a thing of some one, *demander*
une chose à *quelqu'un*.
 Aspect, n. *aspect*, m.
 to Aspire after, n. v. *aspirer* à, i.
 Assault, n. *assaut*, m.
 to Assault, a. v. *assaillir*, ii. irr. 208 ; *atta-*
quer, i.
 to Assemble, a. v. *assembler*, i.
 to Assemble, n. v. *s'assembler*, i. r.v. 187 & foll.
 Assembly, n. *assemblée*, f.
 Assent, n. *consentement*, m.
 Assiduity, n. *assiduité*, f.
 Assiduous, adj. *assidu*, e, 65.
 Assignment, n. *assignation*, f.
 Assistance, n. *assistance*, f. *secours*, m.
 Assistant, n. *aide*, m.

AS AU

Association, n. *association*, f.
 to Assume, a. v. *prendre*, iv. *admettre*, iv. irr. 343.
 Assurance, n. *assurance*, f.
 to Assure, a. v. *assurer*, i.—to assure some one or a thing, *assurer quelque chose à quelqu'un*.
 Assured, adj. *assuré*, e, 65.
 to Astonish, a. v. *étonner*, i.
 Astonishing, adj. *étonnant*, e, 65.
 Astonishment, n. *étonnement*, m.
 Astronomer, n. *astronome*, m.
 Astronomy, n. *astronomie*, f.
 Asylum, n. *asile*, m.
 At, prep. *d* ; *chez* ; *dans* ; *sur* ; 36, 85, 558.
 At first, adv. *d'abord*.
 At last, adv. *enfin*.
 At this day, adv. *aujourd'hui* ; *d présent*.
 At peace, adv. *en paix*.
 At hand, adv. *à la portée*.
 At a word, adv. *en un mot*.
 Athalie, prop. n. *Athalie*, f.
 Atheneum, n. *athénée*, m.
 Atlas, n. *atlas*, m.
 Atlantic, adj. *Atlantique*, 64.
 Atmosphere, n. *atmosphère*, f.
 Atrocity, n. *atrocité*, f.
 to Attach, a. v. *attacher*, i.
 Attachment, n. *attachement*, m.
 Attack, n. *attaque*, f.
 to Attack, a. v. *attaquer*, i.
 to Attain, a. v. *obtenir*, ii. irr. 238.
 to Attempt, a. v. *tâcher*, i. *essayer*, i. 18.
 —to attempt to do a thing, *essayer de*, or *tâcher de faire une chose*.
 Attention, n. *attention*, f.
 Attentive, adj. *attentif*, ve, 67.
 Attentively, adv. *soigneusement* ; *attentivement*.
 Attitude, n. *attitude*, f.
 to Attract, a. v. *attirer*, i.
 Attraction, n. *attraction*, f.
 Attractive, adj. *attractif*, ve, 67.
 Avarice, n. *avarice*, f.
 Avaricious, adj. *avare*, 64
 Audience, n. *audience*, f.
 Auditory, n. *auditoire*, m.
 to Avert, a. v. *éloigner*, i.
 to Augment, a. v. *augmenter*, i.
 Augmentation, n. *augmentation*, f.
 August, n. *Août*, m.
 Aunt, n. *tante*, f.
 Author, n. *auteur*, m.
 Authoress, n. *femme auteur* f.
 Authority, n. *autorité*, f.

AU BA

Authorisation, n. *autorisation*, f.
 to Authorise, a. v. *autoriser*, i,
 Autumn, n. *Automne*, m. & f. 465.
 Auxiliar, adj. *auxiliaire*, 64.
 to Awake, a. v. *réveiller*, i.
 Axe, n. *hache*, f.
 Azure, n. *azur*, m.
 Azure, adj. *azuré*, e, 65.
 B.
 Babbler, n. *bavard*, m. *bavarde*, f.
 Babe, n. *enfant*, m. & f. 467.
 Bachelor, n. *garçon*, m.
 Back, n. *dos*, m.
 Back, adv. *derrière*.
 to Backbite, a. v. *médire de*, iv. irr. 306.
 Backward, adv. *en arrière*.
 Bad, adj. *mauvais*, e, *méchant*, e, 76, 78.
 Bag, n. *sac*, m.
 Baker, n. *boulangier*, m. *boulangère*, f.
 Ball, n. *balle*, f. (to load a musket.)
 Ball, n. *bal*, m. (dancing assembly.)
 Baltimore, pr. n. *Baltimore*, f.
 Bamboo, n. *bambou*, m.
 Band, n. *bande*, f.
 to Banish, a. v. *banir*, ii.
 Bank, n. (a monied establishment) *banque*, f ;
 (border of the sea or river) *bord*, *rivage*, m.
 Banker, n. *banquier*, m.
 Bankruptcy, n. *banqueroute*, f.
 Banquet, n. *banquet*, m. *festin*, m.
 Barn, n. *grange*, f. *appentis*, m.
 Baron, n. *baron*, m.
 Baroness, n. *baronne*, f.
 Barrel, m. *baril*, m.
 Barricade, n. *barricade*, f.
 Base, adj. *bas*, m. *hasse*, f. 66.
 Bashful, adj. *timide*, 64.
 Basis, n. *base*, f.
 Basket, n. *panier*, m.
 Basket maker, n. *vannier*, m.
 Bath, n. *baïn*, m.
 to Bathe, n. v. *se baigner*, i. 187 & fol.
 Battle, n. *bataille*, f.
 Bay, n. *baie*, f.
 to Be, sub. & aux. v. *être*, iv. irr. (p. 33) 131,
 158, 167, 322, 554, 635, 640, 641, 642, 643,
 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 677, 682, 683
 There to be, u. v. *y avoir*, 167.
 To be becoming, n. v. *seoir*, iii. irr. 273.
 Beautiful, adj. *beau*, m. *bel*, m. *belle*, f. 71.
 Beam, n. *rayon*, m.
 Bean, n. *haricot*, m. *fève*, f.
 Bear, n. *ours*, m. *ourse*, f

BE

to Bear, a. v. *supporter*, i.; *porter*, i.; *rendre*, iv.
 Beard, n. *barbe*, f.
 Beast, n. *bête*, f.
 Beat, n. *coup*, m.
 to Beat, a. v. *battre*, iv. irr. 292.
 Beauty, n. *beauté*, f.
 Because, conj. *parce que*.
 to Become, n. v. *devenir*, ii. irr. 238; *soir*, iii. irr. 273; *convenir à*, iii. irr. 238.
 Becoming, adj. *bienséant*, e, 65.
 Bed, n. *lit*, m.
 —to go to bed, *aller se coucher*.
 Bee, n. *abeille*, f.
 Beef, n. *bœuf*, m.
 Beer, n. *bière*, f.
 Before, prep. *avant*, 738. *devant*.
 Before, adv. *auparavant*.
 Before, conj. *avant que* (with a subj.); *avant de* (with an inf.) 738.
 Beforehand, adv. *d'avance*.
 to Beg, a. v. *demandeur*, i.; *prier*, i.
 Beggar, n. *mendiant*, m.; *mendicante*, f.
 to Begin, a. v. *commencer*, i. 13.
 Begin again, a. v. *recommencer*, i. 13.
 Beginning, n. *commencement*, m.
 Behind, prep. *derrière*.
 Behold, prep. *voici*; *voilà*, 584.
 Being, n. *être*, m.
 Belief, n. *croyance*, f. *foi*, f.
 to Believe, a. v. *croire*, iv. irr. 310.
 to Believe, n. v. *penser*, i.; *présumer*, i.
 Belisarius, prop. n. *Bélisaire*.
 Bell, n. *cloche*, f.
 Bellows, n. *soufflet*, m.
 to Belong, n. v. *appartenir*, ii. irr. 238; *faire partie de*, iv. irr. 323.
 Beloved, adj. *aimé*, e, 65; *chéri*, e, 65; *adoré*, e, 65.
 Below, prep. *sous*; *au dessous de*.
 Belt, n. *ceinture*, f.
 Bench, n. *banc*, m.
 to Bend, a. v. *tendre*, iv.; *plier*, i.
 —to bend a spring, *tendre un ressort*. —to bend a stick, *plier un bâton*.
 to Bend, n. v. *se courber*, i. refl. 187 & fol.
 Beneath, prep. *sous*.
 Beneath, adv. *dessous*; *en bas*.
 Benediction, n. *bénédictio*, f.
 Benefactor, n. *bienfaiteur*, m.
 Benefactress, n. *bienfaitrice*, f.
 Benefit, n. *profit*, m.
 Benevolence, n. *bienveillance*, f.; *bienfaisance*, f.
 Benevolent, adj. *bienveillant*, e, 65; *bienfaisant*, e, 65.

BE BL

Benign, adj. *bénin*, m.; *bénigne*, f. 73.
 Bertrand, prop. n. *Bertrand*, m.
 to Beseech, a. v. *prier*, i.; *conjuré*, i.; *suppléer*, i.; *implorer*, i.
 Beside, or Besides, prep. *outre*.
 Beside, or Besides, adv. *en outre*; *de plus*.
 to Besiege, a. v. *assiéger*, i. 14.
 Best, adj. *meilleur*, e, (used with nouns) 69, 6th.
 Best, adv. *mieux*, (used with verbs only).
 The best, adj. *le meilleur*, m. s.; *la meilleure*, f. s.; *les meilleurs*, m. p.; *les meilleures*, f. p.
 The best, adv. *le mieux*, m. s.; *la mieux*, f. s.; *les mieux*, p.
 to Bestow, a. v. *donner*, i.
 Bet, n. *gageure*, f.
 to Betray, a. v. *trahir*, ii.
 Better, adj. *meilleur*, m.; *meilleure*, f. 69, 6th, (used with nouns).
 Better, adv. *mieux*, (used with verbs).
 —to be better, (relating to health, comfort or beauty) *être mieux*; (in the sense of to be preferable) *valloir mieux*, iii. irr. 277, & c.
 Between, or Betwixt, prep. *entre*.
 Bewitching, adj. *ravissant*, e; *charmant*, e, 65.
 Beyond, prep. *au delà de*.
 Bible, n. *bible*, f.
 to Bid, a. v. *commander*, i.; *ordonner*, i.; —to bid some one, *commander à quelqu'un*.
 Big, adj. *gros*, m.; *grosse*, f. 66.
 Bigness, n. *grosseur*, f.; *grandeur*, f.
 Bilious, adj. *bilieux*, se, 68.
 Bill, n. (an account of a business man) *mémoire*, m.; (of a bird) *bec*, m.
 Bill of exchange, *lettre de change*, f.
 Billet, n. *billet*, m.
 to Bind, a. v. *relier*, i.
 Binder, n. *reliure*, m.
 Biou, prop. n. *Bion*, m.
 Bird, n. *oiseau*, m.
 Birth, n. *naissance*, f.
 Birthday, n. *jour natal*, m.
 Biscuit, n. *biscuit*, m.
 Bishop, n. *évêque*, m.; (at chess) *fou*, m.
 Bit, n. (a piece) *morceau*, m.; (of a bridle) *mors*, m.
 to Bite, a. v. *mordre*, iv.
 Bitter, adj. *amer*, ère, 65.
 Bitterness, n. *amertume*, f.
 Black, n. *noir*, m.; (negroes) *négre*, m.; *né*-
 Black, adj. *noir*, e, 65. [*gresse*, f.
 Blackguard, n. *polisson*, m.; *vaurien*, m.
 to Blacken, a. v. *noircir*, ii.
 Blacksmith, n. *forgeron*, m.
 Blackeyed, adj. *à or aux yeux noirs*, 525, 528.

BL BO

- Blade, n. *lame*, f.
 Blame, n. *blâme*, m.
 to Blame, a.v. *blâmer*, i.
 Blank, adj. *blanc*, m. *blanche*, f. 72.
 Blanket, n. *couverture*, f.
 to Bleed, a.v. *saigner*, i.
 to Bless, a.v. *bénir*, ii. irr. 209.
 Blessing, n. *bénédiction*, f.
 Blind, adj. *aveugle* 64
 to Blind, a.v. *aveugler*, i.
 Blindly, adv. *aveuglement*.
 Bliss, n. *bonheur suprême*, m.
 to Blockade, a.v. *bloquer*, i.; *cerner*, i.;
assiéger, i. 14.
 Blood, n. *sang*, m.
 Bloody, adj. *sanglant*, e, 65.
 Bloom, n. *fleur*, f.
 to Bloom, n.v. *fleurir*, ii.
 to Blow, a.v. (relating to wind) *souffler*, i.
 to Blow, n.v. (relating to flowers) *fleurir*, ii.
 Blue, adj. *bleu*, e, 65.
 Blush, n.v. *rougir*, ii.
 Boarder, n. *pensionnaire*, m. & f.
 Boarding-house, n. *pension*, f.
 to Boast, n.v. *se vanter*, i. r.v. 187 & fol.
 Boaster, n. *farfaron*, m.
 Boat, n. *bateau*, m. 30; *barque*, f.
 Boat-man, n. *batelier*, m.
 Bodily, adj. *corporel*, le, 66.
 Body, n. *corps*, m.
 —every body, *tout le monde*.—nobody, *personne*, ne, 435, 436.
 to Boil, n.v. *bouillir*, ii. irr. 211.
 Boiler, n. *bouilloire*, f.
 Bold, adj. *hardi*, e, 65.
 Bolt, n. (for a door) *verrou*, m.
 Bomb, n. *bombe*, f.
 Bona, prop. n. *Bona*.
 Bone, n. (of any animal except a fish) *os*, m.;
 (of a fish) *arête*, f.
 Bonnet, n. *bonnet*, m.; *chapeau*, x, m. 30.
 Book, n. *livre*, m.
 Boot, n. *botte*, f.
 Border, n. *bord*, m.
 Born, adj. *né*, m.; *née*, f. 65.
 —to be born, *naître*, iv. irr. 345.
 to Borrow, a.v. *emprunter*, i.—to borrow
 some money of a friend, *emprunter de
 l'argent à un ami*.
 Bosom, n. *sein*, m.; *cœur*, m.
 Boston, prop. n. *Boston*, m.
 Both, adj. *tous deux*, *toutes deux*, 436, 609.
 Bottle, n. *bouteille*, f.
 to Bottle, a.v. *mettre en bouteilles*, iv. irr. 343.

BO BU

- Bottom, n. *fond*, m.
 Bound, n. *limite*, f.; *borne*, f.; (a leap) *saut*, m.
 Boundary, n. *limite*, f.; *borne*, f.
 Boundless, adj. *illimité*, e, 65; *sans bornes*.
 Bow, n. *arc*, m.
 Rainbow, n. *arc-en-ciel*, m. 486.
 Box, n. *boîte*, f.; *caisse*, f.
 Boy, n. *garçon*, m.
 Bracelet, n. *bracelet*, m.
 Brain, n. *cerveau*, m. 30.
 Branch, n. *branche*, f.
 Brandy, n. *eau de-vie*, f.
 Brass, n. *airain*, m.; *bronze*, m.; *cuirre*, m.
 Brave, adj. *brave*, 64.
 Bravely, adv. *courageusement*.
 Bread, n. *pain*, m.
 to Break, a.v. *rompre*, iv. irr. 358.
 Breakfast, n. *déjeûné*, m.; *déjeuner*, m.
 to Breakfast, n.v. *déjeuner*, i.
 Breast, n. *poitrine*, f.; *gorge*, f.
 Breath, n. *haleine*, f.; *respiration*, f.
 to Breathe, n. & a.v. *respirer*, i.
 Brick, n. *brique*, f.
 Bridge, n. *pont*, m.
 Bridle, n. *bride*, f.
 Brief, adj. *bref*, m.; *brève*, f. 67.
 Brilliant, adj. *brilliant*, e, 65.
 to Bring, a.v. (in the hands, on the shoulders,
 &c.) *apporter*, i.; (in the sense of to
 lead, to accompany) *mener*, i. 17.
 —to Bring back, a.v. *rapporter*, i.; *ramener*, i.
 Brittle, adj. *fragile*, 64.
 Broad, adj. *large*, 64. 554.
 Broadness, n. *largeur*, f.
 Broadsword, n. *sabre*, m.
 Broken, adj. *rompu*, e, 65; *brisé*, e, 65;
cassé, e, 65.
 Bronze, n. *bronze*, m.
 Brook, n. *ruisseau*, m. 30.
 Brother, n. *frère*, m.
 Brother-in-law, n. *beau frère*, m. 481.
 Brotherhood, n. *fraternité*, f.
 Brown, adj. *brun*, e, 65.
 Brune, prop. n. *Brune*, m.
 Brush, n. *brosse*, f.; *vergette*, f.; (to paint)
pinceau, m.
 Brute, n. *brute*, f.
 Buckle, n. *boucle*, f.
 Bud, n. *bouton*, m.; *bourgeon*, m.
 to Build, a.v. *bâtir*, ii.
 Building, n. *bâtisse*, f. *bâtiment*, m.; *édifice*, m.
 Bull, n. *taureau*, m. 30.
 Bundle, n. *paquet*, m.
 Burden, n. *fardeau*, m. 30.

BU CA

- to Burn, a.v. *brûler*, i.
 to Burst, a. & n. v. *crever*, i.
 to Bury, a.v. (a thing) *enfouir*, ii.—(a corpse)
enterrer. i. or *ensevelir*, ii.
 Burying-ground, n. *cimetière*, m.
 Business, n. *affaire*, f.; *occupation*, f.
 Busy, adj. *occupé*, e, 65.
 But, conj. *mais*, 26, 778.
 Butter, n. *beurre*, m.
 Butterfly, n. *papillon*, m.
 Button, n. *bouton*, m.
 to Buy, a.v. *acheter*, i. 15.
 By, prep. *par*; *devant*; *au près de*.—to pass
by the door, *passer devant la porte*.—to
 pass *by* some one, *passer au près de quel-*
qu'un.
 By and by, adv. *bientôt*; *tout-à-l'heure*.

C CA

- Cabbage, n. *chou*, x, 33.
 Cæsar, prop.n. *César*, m.
 Cake, n. *gateau*, x, 30.
 to Call, a.v. *appeler*, i. 15.
 Calligraphy, n. *calligraphie*, f.
 Calumny, n. *calomnie*, f.
 Camail, n. (a monk's or bishop's ornament)
camail, m. 29.
 Cambridge, prop.n. *Cambridge*, m.
 Camel, n. *chameau*, x, m. 30.
 Can, n.&aux.v. *pouvoir*, iii. irr. 261; *savoir*,
 iii. irr. 267 & fol. 702.
 Canal, n. *canal*, aux, m. 32.
 Canada, prop.n. *Canada*, m. 492, 506.
 Cancer, n. *cancer*, m.
 Candlestick, n. *chandelier*, m.
 Candour, n. *candeur*, f.
 Cane, n. *canne*, f.
 Cannon, n. *canon*, m.
 Connonier, n. *canonnier*, m.
 Canopy, n. *dais*, m.
 Cap, n. *bonnet*, m.
 Capable, adj. *capable*, 64.
 Capacity, n. *capacité*, f.
 Cape, n. *cap*, m.
 Capital, n. (amount of property) *capital*, m.
 Capital, n. (metropolis) *capitale*, f.
 Capital, adj. *capital*, e, 65.
 Capitulation, n. *capitulation*, f.
 Capricious, adj. *capricieux*, se, 68.
 Captain, n. *capitaine*, m.
 to Captivate, a.v. *captiver*, i.
 Card, n. *carte*, f.—a pack of cards, *un jeu de*
cartes.
 Cardinal, n. *cardinal*, aux, m. 32.

CA CH

- Care, n. *soin*, m.
 To take care, n.v. *avoir soin de*; *prendre*
garde à, iv. irr. 353.
 Careful, adj. *soigneux*, se, 68; *circonspect*, e, 65.
 —to be careful to, *avoir soin de*.
 Carefully, adv. *soigneusement*.
 Carpet, n. *tapis*, m.
 Carriage, n. *voiture*, f.; *carrosse*, m.
 Carrot, n. *carotte*, f.
 to Carry, a.v. (in the hands, on the shoulders,
 &c.) *porter*, i.; (in the sense of to lead,
 to accompany) *mener*, i. 17.
 to carry away, a.v. *emporter*, i.; *emmener*, i. 17.
 Cart, n. *char*, m.; *charrette*, f.
 Cartel, n. *cartel*, m.
 Case, n. *cas*, m.—in case that, *au cas que*.
 Cash, n. *argent comptant*, m.
 Cashier, n. *caissier*, m.
 Cask, n. *baril*, m.
 Castle, n. *château*, x, 30.
 to Catch, a.v. *attraper*, i.
 Catholic, adj. *catholique*, 64.
 Cause, n. *cause*, f.
 to Cause, a.v. *causer*, i.; *faire*, iv. irr. 323.
 Cautious, adj. *prudent*, e; *circonspect*, e, 65.
 Cautiousness, n. *précaution*, f.; *attention*, f.
 Cavalry, n. *cavalerie*, f.
 Cayenne, prop.n. *Cayenne*, f.
 to Cease, n.v. *cesser*, i.
 to Celebrate, a.v. *célébrer*, i. 16.
 Celebrated, adj. *célébré*, e, 65.
 Celebration, n. *célébration*, f.
 Celebrity, n. *célébrité*, f.
 Cellar, n. *cave*, f.
 Censure, n. *censure*, f.
 Cent, n. *sou*, m.
 Centre, n. *centre*, m.; *milieu*, x, m. 30.
 Century, n. *siècle*, m.
 Ceremony, n. *cérémonie*, f.
 Certain, adj. *certain*, e, 65; *sûr*, e, 65.
 Certainly, adv. *certainement*.
 Certainty, n. *certitude*, f.
 Chagrin, n. *chagrin*, m.
 Chair, n. *chaise*, f.
 arm chair, n. *fauteuil*, m.
 Chaise, n. *cabriolet*, m.
 Chalice, n. *calice*, m.
 Chamber, n. *chambre*, f.
 Champion, n. *champion*, m.
 Chance, n. *hasard*, m.
 to Change, a.v. *changer*, i. 14.
 to Change, n.v. *changer*, i. 14.
 Change, n. *changement*, m.
 Chapel, n. *chapelle*, f.

CH CI

Chaplain, n. *chapelain*, m.; *aumônier*, m.
 Chapter, n. *chapitre*, m.
 Character, n. *caractère*, m.
 Characteristic, n. *marque*, f.
 Charcoal, n. *charbon*, m.
 to Charge, a.v. *charger*, i. 14. — to charge
with, *charger de*, *accuser de*.
 Charge, n. *charge*, f.; *accusation*, f.
 Chargeable, adj. *accusable*, 64.
 Charitable, adj. *charitable*, 64.
 Charity, n. *charité*, f.
 Charles, prop.n. *Charles*, m.
 Charm, n. *charme*, m.
 to Charm, a.v. *charmer*, i.
 Charming, adj. *charmant*, e, 65.
 Chase, n. *chasse*, f.
 to Chase, a.v. *chasser*, i.
 Chastity, n. *chasteté*, f.
 Cheap, adj. *à bon marché*.
 Cheaper, adj. *à meilleur marché*.
 Cheek, n. *joue*, f.
 Cheerful, adj. *gai*, e; *joyeux*, se, 68.
 Cheerfully, adv. *gaiement*; *avec plaisir*.
 Cheerfulness, n. *gaieté*, f.
 Cheese, n. *fromage*, m.
 Chemistry, n. *chimie*, f.
 to Cherish, a.v. *chérir*, ii.
 Cherry, n. *cerise*, f.
 Chicken, n. *poulet*, m.
 Chief, n. *chef*, m.
 Chief, adj. *principal*, e, 65.
 Chiefly, adv. *principalement*.
 Chieftain, n. *chef*, m.
 Child, n. *enfant*, m.&f. 467.
 Childhood, n. *enfance*, f.
 Chimney, n. *cheminée*, f.
 Chin, n. *menton*, m.
 China, n. (dishes) *porcelaine*, f.
 China, prop.n. *La Chine*, f.
 Chinese, adj.&n. *Chinois*, m.; *Chinoise*, f. 65.
 Chocolate, n. *chocolat*, m.
 Choice, n. *choix*, m.
 Choir, n. *chœur*, m.
 Cholera-morbus, n. *choléra morbus*, m.
 to Choose, a.v. *choisir*, ii.
 Chord, n. *corde*, f.
 Christian, adj.&n. *chrétien*, m.; *chrétienne*, f.
 Church, n. *église*, f.
 Cid, prop.n. *Le Cid*, m.
 Cider, n. *cidre*, m.
 Cincinnatus, prop.n. *Cincinnatus*, m.
 Circle, n. *cercle*, m.
 Circassia, prop.n. *Circassie*, f. 492, 506.
 Circular, adj. *circulaire*, 64.

CI CO

Circular, n. *circulaire*, f.
 Circulation, n. *circulation*, f.
 Circumstance, n. *circonstance*, f.; *rapport*, m.
 Citadel, n. *citadelle*, f.
 Citizen, adj.&n. *citoyen*, m.; *citoyenne*, f. 66.
 Fellow-citizen, adj.&n. *concitoyen*, m.;
concitoyenne, f.
 City, n. *ville*, f.; *cité*, f.
 Civil, adj. *civil*, e, 65.
 Civilisation, n. *civilisation*, f.
 to Civilize, a.v. *civiliser*, i.
 Claim, n. *droit*, m.
 to Claim, a.v. *reclamer*, i; *demande*, i.
 Claret, n. *clairét*, m.
 Class, n. *classe*, f.
 Classification, n. *classification*, f.
 to Clean, a.v. *nettoyer*, i. 18.
 Cleanliness, n. *propreté*, f.
 Clear, adj. *clair*, e, 65; *distinct*, e, 65.
 Clear, adv. *clairement*; *distinctement*.
 Clemency, n. *clémence*, f.
 Clerk, n. *clerc*, m.; *commis*, m.
 Client, n. *client*, m.
 Cloak, n. *manteau*, x, m. 30.
 Clock, n. *pendule*, f.; *horloge*, f.
 o'Clock, n. *heure*, f.
 Clock-maker, n. *horloger*, m.
 Closet, n. *cabinet*, m.
 Cloth, n. *drap*, m.; *étoffe*, f.
 to Clothe, a.v. *vêtir*, ii. 239; *habiller*, i.
 Clothes, n. *habits*, m.p.; *hardes*, f. p.
 Cloud, n. *nue*, f.; *nuage*, m.
 Cloudy, adj. *nébuleux*, se, 68; *couvert*, e, 65.
 Coach, n. *carrosse*, m.; (hackney) *fiacre*, m.
 Coal, n. *charbon*, m.
 Coarse, adj. *gros*, se, 66; *grossier*, ère, 65.
 Coast, n. *côte*, f.; *rivage*, m.
 Coat, n. *habit*, m.
 Great coat, n. *redingote*, f.
 Coaxer, n. *flatteur*, m.; *flatteuse*, f.; *cajo-*
leur, m.; *cajoleuse*, f.
 Code, n. *code*, m.
 Coffee, n. *café*, m.
 Coffee-pot, n. *cafetière*, f.
 Coffee-tree, n. *cafèier*, m.
 Coffin, n. *bière*, f.; *cercueil*, m.
 Coif, n. *coiffe*, f.
 Cold, adj. *froid*, e, 65.
 Cold, n. (relating to temperature) *froid*, m.
 Cold, n. (disease) *rhume*, m.—to take cold,
s'enrhumer, i.r. 187 & fol.
 —to have a cold in the head or the lungs, *a-*
voir un rhume de cerveau ou de poitrine, or
être enrhumé du cerveau ou de la poitrine.

CO

Collar, n. *collet*, m.
 Colleague, n. *collègue*, m.
 to Collect, a.v. *percevoir*, iii.; *réunir*, ii.
 Collection, n. *collection*, f.
 College, n. *collège*, m.
 Colonel, n. *colonel*, m.
 Colonial, adj. *colonial*, e, 65.
 Colony, n. *colonie*, f.
 Colossus, n. *colosse*, m.
 Colour, n. *couleur*, f.
 Column, n. *colonne*, f.
 Comb, n. *peigne*, m.
 to Comb, a.v. *peigner*, i.
 to Come, n.v. *venir*, ii. irr. 238; *revenir*, ii. irr. 238.—come and see, *venez voir*.
 to Come again, n.v. *revenir*, ii. irr. 238.
 to Come in, n.v. *entrer*, i.
 —to come to pass, *arriver*, i.
 Comfort, n. *aise*, m.; *consolation*, f.
 Comfortable, adj. *agréable*, 64.
 Command, n. *commandement*, m.; *ordre*, m.
 to Command, a.v. *commander*, i.; *ordonner*, i.
 Commander, n. *commandant*, m.
 to Commence, a.v. *commencer*, i. 13.
 Commencement, n. *commencement*, m.
 Commendable, adj. *louable*, 64.; *recommanda-*
Commerce, n. *commerce*, m. [ble, 64.
 Commission, n. *comission*, f.
 Committee, n. *comité*, m.
 Commodious, adj. *commode*, 64.
 Common, n. *commune*, f.
 Common, adj. *commun*, e, 65.
 Commonly, adv. *communément*.
 Communication, n. *communication*, f.
 Communion, n. *communion*, f.
 Companion, n. *compagnon*, m.; *compagne*, f.
 Company, n. *compagnie*, f.
 to Compare, a.v. *comparer*, i.
 Comparison, n. *comparaison*, f.
 Compassion, n. *compassion*, f.
 Compassionate, adj. *compatissant*, e, 65.
 Compatriot, n. *compatriote*, m. & f.
 to Complain, n.v. *se plaindre*, iv. irr. & r. 308, 187 & fol.
 Complaisance, n. *complaisance*, f.
 Complaisant, adj. *complaisant*, e, 65.
 Complete, Completed, adj. *complet*, e, 66 exc.
 to Complicate, a.v. *compliquer*, i.
 Complicated, adj. *compliqué*, e, 65.
 Compliment, n. *compliment*, m.
 to Comply with, n.v. *condescendre* d, iv.; *complaire* d, iv. irr. 351.
 —to comply with his orders, *obéir* d ses ordres, ii.

CO

Composition, n. *composition*, f.
 to Compound, a.v. *composer*, i.
 Comrade, n. *camarade*, m.
 to Conceal, a.v. *cacher*, i.
 to Conceive, a.v. *concevoir*, iii.
 to Concern, a.v. *concerner*, i.; *importer* d, i. u.v. 204.
 Concerning, prep. *concernant*; *touchant*.
 Concert, n. *concert*, m.
 Concha, n. *conque*, f.
 Conciliation, n. *conciliation*, f.
 to Conclude, a.v. *conclure*, iv. irr. 299.
 Conclusion, n. *conclusion*, f.
 Conclusive, adj. *concluant*, e, 65.
 Concrete, adj. *concret*, e, 66 exc.
 to Concur, n.v. *concourir*, ii. irr. 213.
 Concurrence, n. *concurrence*, f.
 to Condemn, a.v. *condamner*, i.
 Condemnable, adj. *condamnabile*, 64; *blâmable*, 64.
 to Condescend to, n.v. *condescendre* d, iv.
 Condisciple, n. *condisciple*, m.
 Condition, n. *condition*, f.; *état*, m.
 on Condition, conj. *à condition que*, (with a subj.)
 Conditional, adj. *conditionnel*, le, 66.
 to Conduct, a.v. *mener*, i. 17; *conduire*, iv. irr. 300; *accompagner*, i.
 Conductor, n. *conducteur*, m.
 Confession, n. *confession*, f.
 to Confide in, n.v. *se fier* d, i. r. 187 & fol.
 Confidence, n. *confiance*, f.
 Confident, adj. *confiant*, e, 65; *sûr*, e, 65.
 Conflagration, n. *incendie*, m.
 to Confound, a.v. *confondre*, iv.
 Confused, adj. *troublé*, e, 65; *confus*, e, 65.
 to Congratulate, a.v. *féliciter*, i.
 Congratulation, n. *félicitation*, f.
 Congregation, n. *congrégation*, f.
 Congress, n. *congrès*, m.
 to Connect, a.v. *unir*, ii.; *joindre*, iv. irr. 308.
 Connected, adj. *lié*, e, 65; *uni*, e, 65.
 Connexion, n. *connexion*, f.
 to Conquer, a.v. *vaincre*, iv. irr. 368; *conquérir*, ii. irr. 267.
 Conquest, n. *conquête*, f.
 Conscience, n. *conscience*, f.
 Conscious, adj. *sensible*, 64; *persuadé*, e, 65.
 —to be conscious, *savoir*, iii. irr. 207.
 Consciousness, n. *conviction*, f.; *connaissance intérieure*.
 Consecration, n. *consécration*, f.
 Consent, n. *consentement*, m.; *approbation*, f.
 to Consent to, n.v. *consentir* d, ii. irr. 227.
 Consequence, n. *conséquence*, f.

CO

—In consequence of it—being the object of a verb, or expressing the cause of the action of that verb, may be rendered by *pour cela*; it is generally rendered by *en* placed before that verb;—he was punished in consequence of it, *il en fut puni*, or *il fut puni pour cela*.

Consequently, adv. *conséquemment*.
to Consider, a.v. *considérer*, i. 16.
Considerable, adj. *considérable*, 64.
Consideration, n. *considération*, f.
Consistently, adv. *convenablement*.
Consolation, n. *consolation*, f.
to Console, a.v. *consoler*, i.
Consonant, n. *consonne*, f.
to Conspire, n.v. *conspirer*, i.
Constable, n. *constable*, m.
Constancy, n. *constance*, f.
Constant, adj. *constant*, e, 65.
Constantine, prop.n. *Constantin*, m.
Constantinople, prop.n. *Constantinople*, f.
Constantly, adv. *constamment*; *sans cesse*.
Constituent, n. *commettant*, m.
Constitution, n. *constitution*, f.
Constitutional, adj. *constitutionnel*, le, 66.
Consul, n. *consul*, m.
to Consult, a.v. *consulter*, i.
Consumption, n. *consommation*, f.
Contagious, adj. *contagieux*, se, 68.
to Contain, a.v. *contenir*, ii. irr. 238.
Contemplation, n. *contemplation*, f.
Contempt, n. *mépris*, m.
Contemptible, adj. *méprisable*, 64; *vil*, e, 65.
Content, Contented, adj. *content*, e, 65; *satisfait*, e, 65.
Continent, n. *continent*, m.
Continual, adj. *continuel*, le, 66.
Continually, adv. *continuellement*.
to Continue, a.v. *continuer*, i.
to Contradict, a.v. *contredire*, iv. irr. 306.
Contradicting, adj. *contrariant*, e, 65.
Contrary, adj. *contraire*, 64.
Contrary, n. *contraire*, m.—on the contrary, *au contraire*.
to Contribute, a.v. *contribuer*, i.
Convalescent, adj. *convalescent*, e, 65.
Convenient, adj. *commode*, 64; *convenable*, 64.
Conversation, n. *conversation*, f.
to Convert, a.v. *convertir*, ii.
Cook, n. *cuisinier*, m.; *cuisinière*, f.
to Cook, a.v. *cuire*, iv. irr. 390; *faire cuire*, iv. irr. 323.
Cool, adj. *frais*; *fraîche*, 72.
Copronym, prop.n. *Copronyme*, m.
Copy, n. *exemplaire*, m.; *copie* f.

CO

to Copy, a.v. *copier*, i.; *imiter*, i.
Copy-book, n. *cahier*, m.
Coquetry, n. *coquetterie*, f.
Coquettish, adj. *coquet*, te, 66.
Coral, n. *corail*, m. 33, 3d.
Cord, n. *corde*, f.
Coriolanus, prop.n. *Coriolan*, m.
Corn, n. *maïs*, m.
Corner, n. *coin*, m.
Corporal, n. *caporal*, m. 32.
Corporal, adj. *corporel*, le, 66.
Corpse, n. *corps*, m.
Corpulent, adj. *replet*, e, 66 exc; *gros*, Correct, adj. *correct*, e, 65. [*grosse*, 66.
to Correct, a.v. *corriger*, i. 14.
Correctly, adv. *correctement*—to sing correctly, *chanter juste*.
Correspondent, n. *correspondant*, m.
Corresponding, adj. *correspondant*, e, 65.
to Corrupt, a.v. *corrompre*, iv. irr. 358.
to Cost, n.v. *coûter*, i.
Cotton, n. *coton*, m.
Couch, n. *lit de repos*, m.; *couche*, f.
Cough, n. *toux*, f.
to Cough, n.v. *tousser*, i.
Council, n. *conseil*, m.
Counsel, n. *conseil*, m.; *avis*, m.
Count, n. *compte*, m.
to Count, a.v. *compter*, i.
Countenance, n. *contenance*, f.
Country, n. (a part of the globe) *pays*, m.; (one's own native land) *patrie*, f.; (any place out of the city) *campagne*, f.
Country-house, n. *maison de campagne*, f.
Countryman, n. *compatriote*, m.; *concitoyen*, m.
Couple, n. *couple*, m. & f. 466.
Courage, n. *courage*, m.
Courageous, adv. *courageux*, se, 68.
Courageously, adv. *courageusement*.
Course, n. (the course of a river, &c. a course of studies, &c.) *cours*, m.; (a run, a walk, a race, &c.) *course*, f.
Court, n. *cour*, f.
Cousin, n. *cousin*, m.; *cousine*, f.
to Cover, a.v. *couvrir*, ii. irr. 214.
Cover, n. *couverture*, f.
Cow, n. *vache*, f.
Coward, n. *poltron*, m.; *poltronne*, f.
Cowardly, adj. *poltron*, ne, 66.
Coxcomb, n. *sot*, m.; *fat*, m.
Cracker, n. (hard bread) *biscuit*, m.
Cranium, n. *crâne*, m.
Cravat, n. *cravate*, f.
Crayon, n. *crayon*, m.
Crazy, adj. *fou*, *folle*, 70, 71, 76.

CR DA

- Cream, n. *crème*, f.
 Create, a.v. *créer*, i.; *causer*, i.; *faire*, iv. irr. 323.
 Creator, n. *créateur*, m.
 Creature, n. *créature*, f.
 Credit, n. *crédit*, m.
 Creditor, n. *créancier*, m.; *créancière*, f.
 Credulity, n. *crédulité*, f.
 Creed, n. *croyance*, f.
 to Creep, n.v. *ramper*, i.
 Crew, n. (of a vessel) *équipage*, m.
 Crime, n. *crime*, m.
 Criminal, adj. & n. *criminel*, m.; *criminelle*, f. 66.
 Critic, adj. *critique*, 64.
 Critic, n. *critique*, m.; *censeur*, m.
 Critical, adj. *critique*, 64.
 to Criticise, a.v. *critiquer*, i.
 Crop, n. *recolte*, f.
 Cross, n. *croix*, f.
 to Cross, to go across, a.v. *traverser*, i.
 Crowd, n. *foule*, f.
 Cruel, adj. *cruel*, le, 66.
 Crusade, n. *croisade*, f.
 Crust, n. *croûte*, f.
 to Cry, n.v. *crier*.—to cry out, *crier*, i.
 Cry, n. *cri*, m.
 Crystallize, a.v. *crystalliser*, i.
 Cuckoo, n. *coucou*, m.
 Cucumber, n. *cornichon*, m.
 to Cultivate, a.v. *cultiver*, i.
 Cultivation, Culture, n. *culture*, f.
 Cup, n. *tasse*, f.
 Curate, n. *curé*, m.
 to Cure, a.v. *guérir*, ii.
 Curiosity, n. *curiosité*, f.
 Curious, adj. *curieux*, se, 68.
 Curreant, adj. *courant*, e, 65.
 Current, n. *courant*, m.
 to Curse, a.v. *maudire*, iv. irr. 342.
 Curse, n. *malédiction*, f.
 Curtain, n. *rideau*, x, m. 30.
 Custom, n. *coutume*, f.
 Customer, n. *pratique*, f.
 to Cut, a.v. *couper*, i.; *tailler*, i.—to cut down, *abattre*, iv. irr. 292.

D DA

- Damage, n. *dommage*, m.
 Dame, n. *dame*, f.
 Damp, adj. *humide*, 64.
 Dampness, n. *humidité*, f.
 to Dance, n.v. *danser*, i.
 Dance, n. *danse*, f.
 Dancing-master, n. *maître de danse*, m.
 Danger, n. *danger*, m.

DA DE

- Dangerous, adj. *dangerueux*, se, 68.
 Dangerously, adv. *dangerusement*.
 to Dare, n.v. *oser*, i. 724.
 Darius, prop.n. *Darius*, m.
 Dark, adj. *noir*, e, 65; *obscur*, e, 65; *sombre*, 64.—when dark is used with a name of colour, it is rendered by *foncé*; as, dark green, *vert foncé*.
 Date, n. *date*, f.
 Daughter, n. *filie*, f.—daughter-in-law, *belle-fille*.—grand-daughter, *petite-fille*.
 David, prop.n. *David*, m.
 Day, n. *jour*, m.—at this day, adv. *aujourd'hui*.—every day, *tous les jours*, or *chaque jour*.—next day, (of any day either past or to come) *le lendemain*.—the day after to-morrow, *après demain*.—day before yesterday, *avant-hier*.—the previous day, (of any day either past or to come) *la veille*.—yesterday, *hier*.
 to Dazzle, a.&n.v. *éblouir*, ii.
 Dead, adj. &n. *mort*, m.; *morte*, f. 65.
 Deaf, adj. *sourd*, e, 65.
 Deal, n. *quantité*, f.—a great deal, adv. *beau-*
 Dear, adj. *cher*, e, 65. [coup.
 Death, n. *mort*, f.
 Debility, n. *débilité*, f.; *faiblesse*, f.
 Debt, n. *dette*, f.
 Debtor, n. *débiteur*, m.; *débitrice*, f.
 Deceitful, adj. *trompeur*, se, 69.
 to Deceive, a.v. *décevoir*, iii.; *tromper*, i.
 December, prop.n. *Décembre*, m.
 Decency, n. *décence*, f.
 Decent, adj. *décent*, e, 65.
 to Decide, a.v. *décider*, i.
 Decision, n. *décision*, f.
 Decisive, adj. *décisif*, ve, 67.
 Declaration, n. *déclaration*, f.
 to Declare, a.v. *déclarer*, i.
 to Decline, n.v. *décliner*, i.; *déchoir*, iii. irr. 246.
 Declining, adj. *caduc*, *caduque*, 72.
 to Dedicate, a.v. *dédier*, i.
 to Deduce, a.v. *déduire*, iv. irr. 300.
 Deep, adj. *profond*, e, 65. 554.
 Deepness, n. *profondeur*, f.
 to Defeat, a.v. *défaire*, iv. irr. 323.
 Defect, n. *défaut*, m.
 Defence, n. *défense*, f.
 Defenceless, adj. *sans défense*.
 to Defend, a.v. *défendre*, iv.
 Defendant, n. *défendeur*, m.; *défenderesse*, f.
 Defender, n. *défenseur*, m.
 Deficient, adj. *défectueux*, se, 68.—to be deficient in, *manquer de*; *s'en falloir que*, 256.

DE

Definition, n. *définition*, f.
 Degree, n. *degré*, m. — by degrees, *par degrés*,
peu à peu.
 Deity, n. *divinité*, f.
 Delegate, n. *député*, m.; *délégué*, m.
 to Deliberate, n.v. *délibérer*, i. 16.
 Delicacy, n. *délicatesse*, f.
 Delicate, adj. *délicat*, e, 65.
 Delicious, adj. *délicieux*, se, 68.
 Delight, n. *déllice*, m.; *délices*, f. 461.
 Delightful, adj. *charmant*, e, 65; *délicieux*,
se, 68.
 to Deliver, a. v. (a discourse) *prononcer*, i.
 13; (a person or a thing) *délivrer*, i.
 Demand, n. *demande*, f.
 to Demand, a.v. *demander*, i.
 to Demolish, a.v. *démolir*, ii.
 Demonstrative, adj. *démonstratif*, ve, 67.
 Denial, n. *désaveu*, e, in. 30; *déni*, m.; *refus*, m.
 to Denounce, a.v. *dénoncer*, i. 13.
 to Deny, a.v. *nier*, i.
 to Depart, n.v. *partir*, ii. irr. 232.
 Departure, n. *départ*, m.
 to Depend on or upon, n.v. *compter sur*, i.
 to Depend from, n.v. *dépendre de*, iv.
 Dependence, n. *dépendance*, f.
 to Deprive, a.v. *priver*, i.
 to Descend, n.v. *descendre*, iv.; *issir*, ii. irr. 226.
 to Describe, a.v. *décrire*, iv. irr. 321.
 Description, n. *description*, f.
 to Deserve, a.v. *mériter*, i.
 Design, n. *dessein*, m.
 Desirable, adj. *désirable*, 64.
 Desire, n. *désir*, m.
 to Desire, a.v. *désirer*, i.; *souhaiter*, i.
 Desirous, adj. *désireux*, se, 68.
 to Desist, n.v. *se désister de*, i. re. 187 & fol.
 Despair, n. *désespoir*, m.
 to Despair, n.v. *désespérer*, i. 16.
 Despicable, adj. *méprisable*, 64.
 to Despise, a.v. *mépriser*, i.
 Desponding, adj. *désespéré*, e, 65.
 Despot, n. *despote*, m.
 Despotism, n. *despotisme*, m.
 Dessert, n. *dessert*, m.
 Destination, n. *destination*, f.
 to Destine, a.v. *destiner*, i.
 Destiny, n. *destinée*, f.
 Destitute, adj. *délaissé*, e, 65; *dénué*, e, 65.
 to Destroy, a.v. *détruire*, iv. irr. 300.
 Destruction, n. *destruction*, f.
 Detail, n. *détail*, m.
 to Detain, a.v. *retenir*, ii. irr. 238.
 to Detect, a.v. *découvrir*, ii. irr. 214.

DE DI

Determination, n. *détermination*, f.
 to Determine, a.v. *déterminer*, i.
 to Detest, a. v. *détester*, i.; *haïr*, ii. irr.
 225.
 to Dethrone, a.v. *détrôner*, i.
 to Devote, a.v. *dévouer*, i.; *consacrer*, i.
 Devoted, adj. *dévoué*, e, 65.
 Devotedness, n. *dévouement*, m.
 Dew, n. *rosée*, f.
 Dexterous, adj. *adroit*, e, 65.
 Dialogue, n. *dialogue*, m.
 Diameter, n. *diamètre*, m.
 Diamond, n. *diamant*, m.
 to Dictate, a.v. *dicter*, i.
 Dictation, n. *dictée*, f.
 Dictionary, n. *dictionnaire*, m.
 to Die, n.v. *mourir*, ii. irr. 228.
 to Differ, n.v. *différer*, i. 16.
 Difference, n. *différence*, f.
 Different, adj. *différent*, e, 65; *divers*, e, 65;
autre, 64, 728.
 Differently, adv. *différemment*.
 Difficult, adj. *difficile*, 64.
 Difficulty, n. *difficulté*, f.
 to Diffuse, a.v. *répandre*, iv.
 Dignity, n. *dignité*, f.
 Diligence, n. *diligence*, f.
 Diligent, adj. *diligent*, e, 65.
 Diligently, adv. *diligemment*.
 to Diminish, a.v. *diminuer*, i.
 to Dine, n.v. *dîner*, i.
 Dinner, n. *dîner*, m. *dîné*, m.
 Direct, adj. *direct*, e, 65.
 to Direct, a.v. *diriger*, i. 14.
 Direction, n. *direction*, f.
 Directly, adv. *directement*, *immédiatement*,
tout de suite, à l'instant.
 Director, n. *directeur*, m.
 Disadvantage, n. *désavantage*, m.
 Disadvantageously, adv. *désavantageuse-*
ment.
 Disagreeable, adj. *désagréable*, 64.
 to Disappear, n. v. *disparaître*, iv. irr. 303.
 to Disappoint, a. v. *désappointer*, i.
 Disaster, n. *désastre*, m.
 Discharge, n. (of a duty) *exécution*, f.
 Disciple, n. *disciple*, m.
 Discipline, n. *discipline*, f.
 Discontented, adj. *mécontent*, e, 65.
 Discourse, n. *discours*, m.
 to Discover, a. v. *découvrir*, ii. 214.
 Discovery, n. *découverte*, f.
 Discreet, adj. *discret*, e, 66.
 Discrimination, n. *distinction*, f.

DI DO

to Discuss, a. v. *discuter*, i.
 Discussion, n. *discussion*, f.
 Disdain, n. *dédain*, m. *mépris*, m.
 Disdainful, adj. *âédaigneux*, se, 68.
 Disease, n. *maladie*, f.
 Disgrace, n. *honte*, f. *déshonneur*, m.
 to Disgrace, a.v. *avilir*, ii. *déshonorer*, i.
 Disgust, n. *dégoût*, m.
 Disgusting, adj. *dégoûtant*, e, 65.
 Dish, n. *plat*, m.
 Dishonourable, adj. *déshonorable*, 64.
 Disinterested, adj. *désintéressé*, e, 65.
 to Dislike, a.v. *ne pas aimer*, i. 22.
 to Dismiss, a.v. *renvoyer*, i. 18.
 Disobedience, n. *désobéissance*, f.
 Disobedient, adj. *désobéissant*, e, 65.
 to Dispense, a.v. *dispenser*, i.—to dispense with, *dispenser de*.
 to Display, a.v. *déployer*, i. 18.
 to Displease, a.v. *déplaire à*, iv. irr. 351.
 to Dispose, a.v. *disposer*, i.
 Disposition, n. *disposition*, f.
 Dispute, n. *dispute*, f.
 to Dispute, n.v. s. *disputer sur*, i. re. 187.
 —to dispute whether, *douter si*, i.
 to Dissatisfy, a v. *mécontenter*, i.
 Dissatisfied, adj. *mécontent*, e, 65.
 to Dissolve, a.v. *dissoudre*, iv. irr. 354.
 Distance, n. *distance*, f.
 Distant, adj. *éloigné*, e, 65.
 Distinction, n. *distinction*, f.
 Distinctive, adj. *distinctif*, ve, 67.
 Distinctly, adv. *distinctement*.—to see distinctly, *voir clair*, iii. irr. 282.
 to Distinguish, a.v. *distinguer*, i.
 Distress, n. *détresse*, f.
 to Distribute, a.v. *distribuer*, i.
 to Disturb, a.v. *déranger*, i. 14; *détourner*, i.
 to Dive, n.v. *sonder*, i. a.v.
 to Divert, a.v. *divertir*, ii.
 Divine, n. *théologien*, m.
 Divine, adj. *divin*, e, 65.
 Diviner, n. *devin*, m.
 Divineress, n. *devinresse*, f.
 Divinity, n. *divinité*, f.
 Division, n. *division*, f.
 to Do, a.v. *faire*, iv. irr. 323, 133, 141, 144, 177, 324, 325.
 —to do again, a.v. *refaire*, iv. irr. 323.
 —to do well to, (with a verb) *faire bien de*.
 to do wrong (with a verb) *faire mal de*.
 Docile, adj. *docile*, 64.
 Docility, n. *docilité*, f.
 Doctor, n. *docteur*, m.

DO DU

Doctrine, n. *doctrine*, f.
 Document, n. *document*, m.
 Dog, n. *chien*, m.
 Dogma, n. *dogme*, m.
 Doings, n. *faits*, m. p. *actions*, f. p.
 Doll, n. *poupée*, f.
 Dollar, n. *dollar*, m. *piastre*, f.
 Dolour, n. *douleur*, f.
 Domain, n. *domaine*, m.
 Dome, n. *dôme*, m.
 Domestic, n. *domestique*, m.
 Domination, n. *domination*, f.
 Dominion, n. *état*, m.
 Door, n. *porte*, f.
 Dot, n. *point*, m.
 Double, adj. & n. *double*, 64.
 Doubt, n. *doute*, m.
 to Doubt, a. v. *douter de*, i.
 Doubtful, adj. *douteux*, se, 68.
 Doubtless, adv. *indubitablement* ; *sans doute*.
 Dove, n. *colombe*, f.
 Downfall, n. *chute* f. *décadence*, f.
 Downward, downwards, adv. *en bas*.
 Dozen, n. *douzaine*, f.
 Drag, drag-net, n. *travail*, aux, 33, 3d.
 Drama, n. *drame*, m.
 Dramatic, adj. *dramatique*, 64.
 Drapery, n. *d'aperie*, f.
 to Draw, a.v. (with a pencil or crayon, &c.) *dessiner*, *tracer*, i. 13; (in the sense of deduce) *déduire*, iv. irr. 300.
 Drawer, n. *tiroir*, m.
 Dreadful, adj. *épouvantable*, 64; *redoutable*, 64; *terrible*, 64.
 Dream, n. *songe*, m. *rêve*, m.
 to Dream, n.v. *rêver*, i. ; *songer*, i. 14.
 to Dress, a.v. *habiller*, i.
 Dress, n. *costume*, m. ; *habillement*, m.
 Drink, n. *boisson*, f.
 to Drink, a. v. *boire*, iv. irr. 294.
 Drop, n. *goutte*, f.
 to Drown, a. v. *noyer*, i. 18.
 Drug, n. *drogue*, f.
 Dry, adj. *sec*, m. *sèche*, f. 72.
 —to be Dry (thirsty) *avoir soif* ; *être altéré*, [669].
 Dubuf, prop. n. *Dubuf*, m.
 Duck, n. *canard*, m. ; *cane*, f.
 Dui, prop. n. *Dui*, m.
 Dumb, adj. & n. *muet*, m. ; *muette*, f. 66.
 Dupe, n. *dupe*, f.
 Duration, n. *durée*, f.
 During, prep. *durant* ; *pendant*.
 During, conj. *pendant que* 760, 782.
 Dust, n. *poussière*, f.

DU EL

Dutch, adj. & n. *Hollandais*, m. ; *Hollandaise*, f. 66.
Duty, n. *devoir*, m.

E EL

Each, pro. *chacun*, e, 423, 447.
Each, adj. *chaque*, 59.
Each other, ind.pro. *l'un l'autre*, *l'une l'autre*, 447.
Eagle, n. *aigle*, m.&f. 464.
Ear, n. *oreille*, f.
Early, adv. *de bonne heure*.
to Earn, a.v. *gagner*, i.
Earnestly, adv. *instamment*, avec instance.
Earth, n. *terre*, f.
Earthly, adj. *terrestre*, 64.
Easily, adv. *aisément*.
Easy, adj. *facile*, 64 ; *aisé*, e, 65.
to Eat, a.v. *manger*, i. 14.
Eclipse, n. *éclipse*, f.
Economical, adj. *économique*, 64.
Economy, n. *économie*, f.
Edifice, n. *édifice*, m. *bâtiment*, m.
Edition, n. *édition*, f.
Editor, n. *éditeur*, m.
Educate, a.v. *élever*, i. 15 ; *instruire*, iv. irr.
Education, n. *éducation*, f. [300].
Eel, n. *anguille*, f.
Effect, n. *effet*, m.
Efficacious, adj. *efficace*, 64.
Effort, n. *effort*, m.
Egg, n. *œuf*, m.
Egotism, n. *égoïsme*, m.
Egotist, adj. *égoïste*, 64.
Egypt, prop.n. *Égypte*, f. 492, 506.
Egyptian, adj.&n. *Égyptien*, m. ; *Égyptienne*, f. 66.
Eight, car.nu. *huit*.
Eighteen, car.nu. *dix-huit*.
Eighteenth, ord.nu.&n. *dix-huitième*, 561 & fol.
Eightfold, adv. *huit fois autant*.
Eighth, ord.nu.&n. *huitième*, 561 & fol.
Eightieth, ord.nu.&n. *quatre-vingtième*, 561 & fol.
Eighty, car.nu. *quatre-vingts*, 11.
Either, ind.pro. *l'un ou l'autre*, m. ; *l'une ou l'autre*, f. 444.
Elastic, adj. *élastique*, 64.
Elbow, n. *coude*, m.
Elder, adj. *aîné*, e, 65.
to Elect, a.v. *choisir*, ii. ; *élire*, iv. irr. 341.
Election, n. *élection*, f.
Elegance, n. *élégance*, f.
Elegant, adj. *élégant*, e, 65.

EL EN

Elegantly, adv. *élégamment*.
Elevation, n. *élévation*, f.
Eleven, car.nu. *onze*.—Neither e nor a of the definite article or of any other words is supplied with an apostrophe before *onze*. The same observation is good for *onzième*, eleventh.
Eleventh, ord.nu.&n. *onzième*, 561 & fol. (See eleven.)
Elision, n. *élision*, f.
Ellen, prop.n. *Hélène*, f.
Ellipsis, n. *ellipse*, f.
Elm, elm-tree, n. *orme*, m. ; *ormeau*, x, m. 30.
Eloquence, n. *éloquence*, f.
Eloquent, adj. *éloquent*, e, 65.
Else, pron. *autre* ; *autre chose*.
—to do nothing else, *ne faire rien de plus*, *ne faire que cela*.—to be nothing else, *n'être que*, *n'être rien de plus*.
Else, adv. *autrement*.
to Embark, a.&n.v. *embarquer*, i. ; *s'embarquer*, i. re. 187 & fol.
to Embarrass, a.v. *embarrasser*, i.
Embarrassment, n. *embarras*, m.
Embassador, n. *ambassadeur*, m.
to Embellish, a.v. *embellir*, ii.
to Embrace, a.v. *embrasser*, i.
Emetic, n. *émétique*, m.
Eminent, adj. *éminent*, e, 65.
Emotion, n. *émotion*, f.
Emperess, n. *impératrice*, f.
Emperor, n. *empereur*, f.
Empire, n. *empire*, m.
to Employ, a. v. *employer*, i. 18 ; *se servir de*, ii. irr. 237, r.187 & fol.
Employ, Employment, n. *emploi*, m. ; *occupation*, f.
Employer, n. *maître*, m.
Empress, n. *impératrice*, f.
Empty, adj. *vide*, 64.
Emulation, n. *émulation*, f.
Enamel, n. *émail*, aux, m. 33, 3d.
to Enchain, a. v. *enchaîner*, i.
to Enchant, a.v. *enchanter*, i.
Enchanting, adj. *enchanteur,eresse*, 69, 6th exc.
Enchantment, n. *enchantement*, m.
to Enclose, a. v. *enclore*, iv. irr. 298.
Encore, adv. *encore*.
to Encourage, a. v. *encourager*, i. 14.
Encouragement, n. *encouragement*, m.
End, n. *fin*, f.—to the end that, conj. *afin que*,
to End, a. v. *finir*, ii. [109].
to Endeavour, n. v. *chercher à*, i. *essayer à*, i. 18.

EN ER

Endless, adj. *infini* e, 65; *sans fin*.
 to Endow, a v. *douer de*, i.
 Endowment, n. *dûn*, m.; *avantage*, m.
 to Endure, a.v. *endurer*, i.; *souffrir*, ii. irr. 214.
 Enemy, n. *ennemi*, m.; *ennemie*, f.
 Energetic, Energetical, adj. *énergique*, 64.
 Energy, n. *énergie*, f.
 to Engage, a.v. *occuper*, i.; *engager*, i. 14.
 --to engage in an enterprise, *faire une entreprise*, iv. irr. 323.
 to Engage, n.v. *s'engager*, i. 14. re. 187.
 Engaged, adj. & n. *promis*, e, 65; *fiancé*, e, 65.
 Engagement, n. *engagement*, m.
 Engine, n. *machine*, f.
 Engineer, n. *ingénieur*, m.
 England, n. *Angleterre*, f. 492, 586.
 to Engrave, a.v. *graver*, i.
 Engraver, n. *graveur*, m.
 Engraving, n. *gravure*, f.
 to Enjoin, a.v. *enjoindre*, iv. irr. 308.
 to Enjoy, a.v. *jouir de*, ii.
 Enjoyment, n. *jouissance*, f.
 to Enlarge, a.v. *agrandir*, ii.
 to Enlight, to Enlighten, a.v. *éclairer*, i.
 to Enlist, a.v. *enrôler*, i.
 Enmity, n. *inimitié*, f.
 Enormity, n. *énormité*, f.
 Enough, adv. *assez*; *suffisamment*.
 to Enquire, n.v. *demande*r, i. a.
 to Enrich, a.v. *enrichir*, ii.
 to Enter, n.v. *entrer*, i.
 Enterprise, n. *entreprise*, f.
 Enterprising, adj. *entreprenant*, e, 65.
 to Entertain, a.v. *entretenir*, ii. irr. 238.
 Entertainment, n. *entretien*; (a meal) *repas*.
 Enticement, n. *appât*, m.
 Entire, adj. *entier*, e, 65.
 Entirely, adv. *entièrement*.
 to Entitle, a.v. *intituler*, i.
 to Entreat, a.v. *solliciter*, i.
 Entry, n. *entrée*, f.
 Envious, adj. *envieux*, se, 68.
 Envy, n. *envie*, f.
 to Envy, a.v. *envier*, i.; *porter envie à*, i.
 Epitaph, n. *épitaphe*, f.
 Epoch, n. *époque*, f.
 Equal, adj. & n. *égal*, e, 65, 32.
 Equality, n. *égalité*, f.
 Equivocation, n. *équivoque*, f.; *ambiguïté*, f.
 Era, n. *ère*, f.
 to Erect, a.v. *élever*, i.; *ériger*, i. 14.
 Errand, n. *commission*, f.
 Erroneous, adj. *erroné*, e, 65.
 Erroneously, adv. *faussement*; *erronément*.

ER EX

Error, n. *erreur*, f.
 to Escape, a.v. *échapper à*, i. n.
 Escort, n. *escorte*, f.
 to Escort, a.v. *escorter*, i.
 Escritoir, n. *écritoire*, m.; *bureau*, x, 30.
 Especially, adv. *spécialement*; *surtout*.
 Essay, n. *épreuve*, f.; *essai*, m.
 Essence, n. *essence*, f.
 Essential, adj. *essentiel*, le, 66.
 Essentially, adv. *essentiellement*.
 to Establish, a.v. *établir*, ii.
 Establishment, n. *établissement*, m.
 Estate, n. *état*, m.
 to Esteem, a.v. *estimer*, i.
 Esteem, n. *estime*, f.
 Estimable, adj. *estimable*, 64.
 to Estimate, a.v. *estimer*, i.; *évaluer*, i.
 Eternal, adj. *éternel*, le, 66.
 Eternity, n. *éternité*, f.
 Eugene, prop.n. *Eugène*, m.
 Eulogy, n. *éloge*, m.
 Europe, prop.n. *Europe*, 492, 506.
 Eve, prop.n. *Ève*, f.
 Even, adj. *même*.
 Even as, conj. *comme*.
 Even now, adv. *tout à l'heure*.
 Evening n. (any part of the evening) *soir*, m.;
 (the whole evening) *soirée*, f. —Last evening,
hier au soir.
 Event, n. *événement*, m.
 Ever, adv. *jamais*; *toujours*.
 Ever since, adv. *depuis lors*.
 Every, adj. *chaque*, 59.
 Every one, ind.pro. *chacun*, e, 428, 452, 453.
 Every body, ind.pro. *tout le monde*; *chacun*, a.
 Every thing, n. *tout*, m. (has no plural).
 Evidence, n. *évidence*, f.
 Evident, adj. *évident*, e, 65.
 Evidently, adv. *évidemment*.
 Evil, n. *mal*, *maux*, m. 30.
 Exact, adj. *exact*, e, 65.
 to Exact, a.v. *exiger*, i. 14.
 Examination, n. *examen*, m.
 to Examine, a.v. *examiner*, i.
 Excellence, n. *excellence*, f.
 Excellent, adj. *excellent*, e, 65.
 Except, prep. *excepté*.
 Exception, n. *exception*, f.
 Excess, n. *excès*, m.
 Excessive, adj. *excessif*, ve, 67.
 to Exchange, a.v. *échanger*, i. 14.
 Exchange, n. (place of business) *bourse*.
 to Excite, a.v. *exciter*, i.
 Exclaim, n.v. *s'écrier*, i.

EX EY

Exclusively, adv. *exclusivement*.
 Excusable, adj. *excusable*, 64.
 Excuse, n. *excuse*, f.
 to Excuse, a.v. *excuser*, i.
 to Execute, a.v. *exécuter*, i.
 Execution, n. *exécution*, f.
 Executioner, n. *bourreau*, x, m. 30.
 Executor, n. *exécuteur*, m. *exécutrice*, f.
 Exercise, n. *exercice*, m.
 to Exercise, a.v. *exercer*, 13.
 Exertion, n. *exertion*, f.
 to Exhibit, a.v. *montrer*, i. ; *exhiber*, i.
 Exhibition, n. *exposition*, f.
 Exhortation, n. *exhortation*, f.
 Exile, adj. *exilé*, 65 ; *banni*, e, 65.
 to Exile, a.v. *exiler*, i. ; *bannir*, i.
 to Exist, n.v. *exister*, i.
 Existence, n. *existence*, f.
 to Expect, a.v. *espérer*, i. ; *s'attendre à*, iv.
 r. v. 187 ; *attendre*, iv.
 Expedition, n. *expédition*, f.
 Expeditious, adj. *expéditif*, ve, 67.
 Expense, n. *dépense*, f.
 Experience, n. *expérience*, f.
 to Experience, a.v. *éprouver*, i.
 Experienced, adj. *expérimenté*, e, 65.
 Experiment, n. *essai*, m. ; *épreuve*, f.
 to Explain, a.v. *expliquer*, i.
 Explanation, n. *explication*, f.
 Exploit, n. *exploit*, m.
 Explosion, n. *explosion*, m.
 to Expose, a.v. *exposer*, i.
 Exposition, n. *exposition*, f.
 to Express, a.v. *exprimer*, i.
 Express, n. *exprès*, m. ; *courrier*, m.
 Expression, n. *expression*, f.
 to Extend, a.v. *étendre*, iv.
 Extensive, adj. *étendre*, 65.
 Extent, n. *étendue*, f.
 External, adj. *extérieur*, e, 69, 6th.
 to Extinguish, a.v. *éteindre*, iv. irr. 308.
 Extra, adv. *en sus* ; *de plus*.
 to Extract, a.v. *extraire*, iv. irr. 367.
 Extraordinary, adj. *extraordinaire*, 64.
 Extravagant, adj. *extravagant*, e, 65.
 Extreme, adj. & n. *extrême*, 64.
 Extremely, adv. *extrêmement*.
 Extremity, n. *extrémité*, f.
 Eye, n. *œil*, *yeux*, 33, 6th exc.
 Eyed, adj. *aux yeux*.
 Eye-lashes, n. *cils*, m.p. ; *oil*, m.s.
 Eye-lid, n. *paupière*, f.
 Eylaw, prop. n. *Eylau*, m.

F FE

Fable, n. *fable*, f.
 to Fabricate, a.v. *fabriquer*, i.
 Face, n. *figure*, f. *visage*, m. *face*, f.
 Fact, n. *fait*, m.—In fact, adv. *en effet*.
 Factory, n. *manufacture*, f.
 Faculty, n. *faculté*, f.
 to Fail, n.v. *faillir*, ii. irr. 217. *manquer*, i.
 to Faint, n.v. *s'évanouir*, ii. re. 187.
 Faintly, adv. *faiblement*.
 Fair, adj. *beau*, *bel*, m. *belle*, f. 70, 71, 76.
 Faithful, adj. *fidèle*, 64.
 to Fall, n.v. *tomber*, i. *succomber*, i.
 Fall, n. *chute*, f. *décadence*, f.
 Falls, n. *cataracte*, f.
 False, adj. *faux*, sse, 68.
 Falsehood, n. *fausseté*, f.
 Fame, n. *renommée*, f. *célébrité*, f.
 Famed, adj. *renommé*, e, 65.
 Family, n. *famille*, f.
 Famine, n. *famine*, f.
 Famous, adj. *fameux*, se, 68.
 Fan, n. *éventail*, m. 29.
 Far, adj. *éloigné*, e, 65.
 Far, n. *loin*, m.—How far is it, *combien y a-t-il*.—Far, with a comparative, is rendered by *bien* ; as, That is far more advantageous, *cela est bien plus avantageux*.
 Farewell, n. *adieu*, x, 30.
 Farm, n. *ferme*, f.
 Farmer, n. *fermier*, m. *fermière*, f.
 Farther, adv. *plus loin*.
 Fashion, n. *mode*, f.—After the fashion, *à la mode*.
 Fast, adv. (in the sense of quick) *vite* ; (strongly) *ferme*.
 Fat, adj. *gras*, se, 66.
 Fate, n. *sort*, m.
 Father, n. *père*, m.
 Fatigue, n. *fatigue*, f. *lassitude*, f.
 to Fatigue, a.v. *fatiguer*, i.
 Fault, n. *faute*, f.
 Favour, n. *faveur*, f.
 to Favour, a.v. *favoriser*, i.
 Favourable, adj. *favorable*, 64.
 Favourably, adv. *favorablement*.
 Fear, n. *crainte*, f.
 to Fear, a.v. *craindre*, iv. irr. 308.
 —a thing to be feared, *une chose à craindre*.
 Fearful, adj. *redoutable*, 64.
 Feast, n. *fête*, f.
 Feather, n. *plume*, f.
 February, prop. n. *Février*, m.
 Fecond, adj. *fécond*, e, 65.

FE FI

Feeble, adj. *faible*, 64.
 Feebly, adv. *faiblement*.
 to Feed, a.v. *nourrir*, ii.
 to Feel, a.v. *éprouver*, i. *sentir*, ii. irr. 227.
 (to touch) *toucher*, i.
 Feeling, n. *sentiment*, m.
 Feet, p.n. *pieds*, m.p. *pied*, m.s.
 to Feign, a.v. *feindre*, iv. irr. 308.
 Fellow, n. *compagnon*, m.
 Fellow-citizen, n. *concitoyen*, m. *concitoyenne*, f.
 Fence, n. *palissade*, f.
 to Fence, n.v. *faire des armes*, iv. irr. 323.
 Ferocious, adj. *féroce*, 64.
 Ferocity, n. *férocité*, f.
 Fertile, adj. *fertile*, 64.
 Festival, n. *fête*, f. *jour de fête*, m.
 to Fetch, a.v. *aller quérir*, i. irr. 193.
 —to go and fetch, *aller chercher*; *aller quérir*.
 Fever, n. *fièvre*, f. —to have a fever, *avoir la fièvre*.
 Few, n. & adv. *peu*, m. —few in number, *en petit nombre*. —very few, *très peu*. —de should be used before the following noun; as, few men, *peu d'hommes*, 94.
 Fewer, adv. *moins*; *moins de*, 94.
 Field, n. *champ*, m. —battle field, *champ de*
Fifteen, car.nu. *quinze*. [bataille.
Fifteenth, ord.nu. & n. *quinzième*, 561 & fol.
Fifth, ord.nu. & n. *cinquième*, 561 & fol.
Fiftieth, ord.nu. & n. *cinquantième*, 561 & fol.
Fifty, car.nu. *cinquante*.
 Fig, n. *figue*, f.
 Fig-tree, n. *figuier*, m.
 to Fight, n.v. *se battre*, iv. irr. re. 187, 292.
combattre, iv. irr. 292.
 Figure, n. *figure*, f.
 Filial, adj. *filial*, e, 65.
 to Fill, a.v. *remplir*, ii.
 to Fill up, a.v. (a bottle, a dish, &c.) *remplir*, ii.; (a hole, a ditch, &c.) *combler*, i.; (an office) *occuper*, i.
 Fin, n. *nageoire*, f.
 Final, adj. *final*, e, 65.
 Finally, adv. *enfin*; *finalelement*.
 to Find, a.v. *trouver*, i.
 to Find out, a.v. *découvrir*, ii. irr. 214.
 Fine, adj. (thin) *fin*, e, 65. (beautiful) *beau*,
bel, *belle*, 71, 72, 76.
 Finger, n. *doigt*, m.
 to Finish, a.v. *terminer*, i. *finir*, ii.
 Fire, n. *feu*, x, 30. —Fire arms, *armes à feu*.
 Firm, adj. *ferme*, 64.
 First, adj. *premier*, ère. 65, 565.
 First, adv. *d'abord*.

FI FO

Fish, n. *poisson*, m.
 —flying fish, *poisson volant*.
 Fist, n. *poing*, m.
 Fit, n. *attaque*, f.
 to Fit, n.v. *seoir*, iii. irr. 273, 274.
 Five, car.nu. *cinq*.
 Flag, n. *drapeau*, x, m. 30.
 Flat, adj. *plat*, e, 65.
 to Flatter, a.v. *flatter*, i.
 Flatterer, n. *flatteur*, m. *flatteuse*, f.
 Flattering, adj. *flatteur*, se, 69, 4th exc.
 Flattery, n. *flatterie*, f.
 Flexibility, n. *flexibilité*, f.
 Flexible, adj. *flexible*, 64.
 Flint, n. *vaillou*, x, m. 33.
 Flock, n. *troupeau*, x, m. 30.
 Floor, n. *plancher*, m.
 Flour, n. *farine*, f.
 to Flourish, n.v. *fleurir*, ii. 221.
 Flourishing, adj. (prosperous) *florissant*, e, 65.
 (blooming) *fleurissant*, e, 65.
 Flower, n. *fleur*, f.
 Flute, n. *flûte*, f.
 to Fly, n.v. (with wings) *voler*, i. (run away)
fuir, ii. irr. 222.
 Fly, n. *mouche*, f.
 Fog, n. *brouillard*, m.
 Foliage, n. *feuillage*, m.
 Folio, n. *in-folio*, m. 478.
 to Follow, a.v. *suivre*, iv. irr. 363.
 to Follow, n.v. *s'en suivre*, iv. irr. 363.
 Follower, n. *compagnon*, m.
 Following, adj. *suivant*, e, 65.
 Folly, n. *folie*, f.
 Food, n. *nourriture*, f.
 Fool, n. *sot*, m. *sotte*, f.
 Foolish, adj. *fou*, *fol*, m. *folle*, f. 70, 71, 76.
 Foot, n. *pied*, m. [sot, te, 66.
 Pop, n. *petit-maitre*, m. 481.
 For, prep. *pour*, 749.
 For, conj. *pour que*, 780, 781.
 For, because, conj. *car*, *parce que*.
 For as much as, conj. *autant que*. —to go for
 some thing, *aller chercher quelque chose*.
 to Forbid, a.v. *défendre*, iv.
 to Force, a.v. *forcer*, i. 13.
 Force, n. *force*, f.
 Forehead, n. *front*, m.
 Fore-arm, n. *avant-bras*, m. 488.
 Foreign, adj. *étranger*, e, 65.
 Foreigner, n. *étranger*, m. *étrangère*, f.
 Forerunner, n. *avant-coureur*, m. 488.
 to Foresee, a.v. *prévoir*, iii. irr. 282.
 Foresight, n. *prévoyance*, f.

FO FR

Forest, n. *forêt*, f.
 Forge, n. *forge*, f.
 to Forge, a.v. *forger*, i. 14.
 to Forget, a.v. *oublier*, i.
 to Forgive, a.v. *pardonner*, i.
 Fork, n. (for the table) *fourchette*, f. (for farming, &c.) *fourche*, f.
 Form, n. *forme*, f.
 to Form, a.v. *former*, i.
 Former, adj. *premier*, e, 65. *celui là*, &c. 388.
 Formerly, adv. *autrefois*.
 Formidable, adj. *formidable*, 64.
 to Forsake, a.v. *abandonner*, i.
 Fort, n. *fort*, m.
 Forth, adv. *en avant*—and so forth, *et cætera*.
 to Fortify, a.v. *fortifier*, i.
 Fortnight, n. *quinzaine*, f. *quinze jours*.
 Fortunate, adj. *heureux*, se, 68. *fortuné*, e, 65.
 Fortunately, adv. *heureusement*.
 Fortune, n. *fortune*, f.
 Forty, car.nu. *quarante*.
 Foulques, prop.n. *Foulques*, m.
 Foundation, n. *fondement*, m. *fondements*, m. p.
 (the plural is generally used to express the foundations of buildings).
 Founder, n. *fondeur*, m.
 Fountain, n. *fontaine*, f.
 Four, car.nu. *quatre*.
 Fourteen, car.nu. *quatorze*.
 Fourteenth, ord.nu. *quatorzième*, 561 & fol.
 Fourth, ord.nu. & n. *quatrième*, 561 & fol.
 Fowl, n. *poule*, f. *volaille*, f.
 Fragile, adj. *fragile*, 64.
 Fragility, n. *fragilité*, f.
 Fragment, n. *fragment*, m.
 Frame, n. *cadre*, m.
 France, prop.n. *France*, f. 492, 506.
 Frank, adj. *franc*, che, 72.
 Frankness, n. *franchise*, f. *sincérité*, f.
 Fraternity, n. *fraternité*, f.
 Free, adj. *libre*, 64.
 Freedom, n. *liberté*, f.
 Freely, adv. *librement*.
 French, adj. & n. *Français*, m. *Française*, f.
 Frenchify, a.v. *franciser*, i.
 Frequent, adj. *fréquent*, e, 65.
 to Frequent, a.v. *fréquenter*, i.
 Frequently, adv. *fréquemment*.
 Fresh, adj. *frais*, *fraîche*, 72.
 Fricassee, n. *fricassée*, f.
 Friday, n. *Vendredi* m.
 Friend, n. *ami*, m. *amie*, f.
 Friends, p.n. (in the sense of kindred) *parents*, m.

FR GA

Friendship, n. *amitié*, f.
 Frigate, n. *frégate*, f.
 Fright, n. *frayeur*, f. *peur*, f.
 to Frighten, a.v. *épouvanter*, i. *effrayer*, i. 18.
 Frightful, adj. *affreux*, se, 68.
 From, prep. *de*, 31, 36, 124.
 From, prep. (from the time) *dès*.
 Front, n. *façade*, f.
 Frontal, adj. *frontal*, e, 65.
 Frontier, n. *frontière*, f.
 Frost, n. *gelée*, f.
 Froth, n. *écume*, f.
 Fruit, n. *fruit*, m.
 Fruitful, adj. *fertile*, 64.
 Fruit-tree, n. *arbre-fruitier*, m.
 to Fry, a.v. *frîre*, iv. irr. 329—*faire frîre*, iv. irr. 323.
 Fuel, n. *chauffage*, m.
 Fugitive, adj. & n. *fugitif*, m. *fugitive*, f. 67.
 to Fulfil, a.v. *remplir*, ii.
 Full, adj. *plein*, e, 65.
 Fun, n. *badinage*, m. *divertissement*, m.
 Function, n. *fonction*, f.
 Fund, n. *fonds*, m.
 Funeral, n. *funérailles*, f. p.
 Furious, adj. *furieux*, se, 68.
 Furnace, n. *fourneau*, x, m. 30.
 to Furnish, a.v. *fournir*, ii.
 Furniture, n. *meubles*, m. p. *ameublement*, m.
 Further, adv. *plus loin*.
 Fury, n. *furie*, f.
 Future, adj. *futur*, e, 65.
 Future, n. *futur*, m.—for the future, adv. *d'ici l'avenir*.
 Fy, interj. *fi*; *si donc*!

G GA

Gage, n. *gage*, m.
 Gaiety, n. *gaieté*, f. *gâté*, f.
 to Gain, a.v. *gagner*, i.—to gain a victory, *remporter une victoire*, i.
 Gallant, adj. *gallant*, e, f. 65.
 Gallantry, n. *gallanterie*, f.
 Gallon, n. *gallon*, m.
 Game, n. *jeu*, x, m. 30.
 Gamester, n. *joueur*, m. *joueuse*, f.
 Garden, n. *jardin*, m.
 Garland, n. *guirlande*, f.
 Garniture, n. *garniture*, f.
 Garrison, n. *garnison*, f.
 Garter, n. *jarretière*, f.
 Gate, n. *portail*, m. 29. *porte*, f.
 to Gather, a.v. *cueillir*, ii. irr. 215. [*quête*, f.
 Gathering, n. (of crop) *récolte*, f. (of money,

GA GO

Gauze, n. *gaze*, f.
 Gazette, n. *gazette*, f.
 Gelon, prop.n. *Gélon*, m.
 General, adj. *général*, e, 65.
 General, n. *général*, ux, m. 32.
 in General, adv. *en général*.
 Generally, adv. *généralement*.
 Generality, n. *généralité*, f.
 Generation, n. *génération*, f.
 Generosity, n. *générosité*, f.
 Generous, adj. *généreux*, se, 68.
 Generously, adv. *généreusement*.
 Genesis, n. *Genèse*, f.
 Genlis, prop.n. *Genlis*.
 Gentle, adj. *gentil*, le, 70.
 Gentleman, n. *monsieur*, m.
 Gentlemen, p.n. *messieurs*, m. p.
 Gentleness, n. *douceur*, f. *civilité*, f. *bienveillance*, f.
 Genuine, adj. *véritable*, 64.
 Geography, n. *géographie*, f.
 Geometry, n. *géométrie*, f.—a problem in geometry, *un problème de géométrie*.
 George, prop.n. *George*, m.
 German, adj.&n. *allemand*, m. *allemande*, f.
 Germany, prop.n. *Allemagne*, f. 492, 506.
 Gesture, n. *geste*, m.
 to Get, a.v. *trouver*, i. *gagner*, i.
 to Get out, n.v. *sortir*, ii. irr. 232, 233. *se tirer de*, i. re.v. 187 & fol.
 Gift, n. *don*, m. *présent*, m.
 to Gild, a.v. *dorer*, i.
 Girdle, n. *ceinture*, f.
 Girl, n. *filie*, f.
 to Give, a.v. *donner*, i.
 —to give up one's self to, *s'abandonner à*, i. re. 187.
 Glad, adj. *charmé*, e, 65. *content*, e, 65. *aise*, 64.
 —very glad, *bien aise*.
 Glance, n. *regard*, m. *coup d'œil*, m.
 Glass, n. *verre*, m.
 Glasshouse, n. *verrerie*, m.
 Glorious, adj. *glorieux*, se, 68.
 Glory, n. *gloire*, f.
 to Glory in, n.v. *se glorifier de*, i. re. 187.
 Glove, n. *gant*, m.
 Gluttonous, adj. *gourmand*, e, 65.
 to Go, n.v. *aller*, i. irr. 193—198.
 to Go for, a.v. *aller chercher*.
 to Go away, n.v. *s'en aller*, 199, 200.
 to Go out, n.v. *sortir*, ii. irr. 232.
 Goat, n. *chèvre*, f.
 God, n. *Dieu*, m.—would God! excl. *plût à Dieu!*

GO GR

Goddess, n. *Déesse*, f.
 Godfather, n. *parrain*, m.
 Godmother, n. *marraine*, f.
 Gold, n. *or*, m.
 Good, adj. *bon*, ne, 66, 76, 78.
 Good, n. *bien*, m.
 Good people, p.n. *gens de bien*, 471, 472, 473.
 Goodness, n. *bonté*, f.
 Goods, n. (objects of trade) *marchandises*, p.f. (any property) *biens*, m.
 Goose, n. *oie*, f.
 Gosling, n. *oisin*, m.
 Gospel, n. *évangile*, m.
 Goths, prop.n. *Goths*, m.
 Gourd, n. *gourde*, f.
 Gout, n. *goutte*, f.
 to Govern, a.v. *gouverner*, i.
 Governess, n. *gouvernante*, f.
 Government, n. *gouvernement*, m.
 Governor, n. *gouverneur*, m.
 Gown, n. *robe*, f.
 Grace, n. *grâce*, f. *pardon*, m.
 Grace, prop.n. *Grâce*, f.
 Graceful, adj. *gracieux*, se, 68.
 Grade, n. *grade*, m.
 Grain, n. *grain*, m. (wheat) *blé*, m.
 Grammar, n. *grammaire*, f.
 Grammarian, n. *grammairien*, m. *grammairienne*, f.
 Grammatical, adj. *grammatical*, e, 65.
 Granary, n. *grenier*, m.
 Grandee, n. *grand*, m.
 Grandfather, n. *aïeul*, *aïeux*, m. 33, 7th exc.
 Grandmother, n. *grand'mère*, f. *aïeule*, f.
 Granduncle, n. *grand-oncle*, m.
 to Grant, a.v. *accorder*, i.—God grant! *Dieu [veuille!]*
 Grape, n. *raisin*, m.
 Grape-vine, n. *vigne*, f.
 Grass, n. *herbe*, f.
 Grateful, adj. *reconnaissant*, e, 65.
 Gratitude, n. *reconnaissance*, f. *gratitude*, f.
 Gravy, n. *sauce*, f. *jus*, m.
 to Graze, n.v. *paître*, iv. irr. 349.
 Great, adj. *grand*, e, 65, 76, 78.
 Great deal, adv. *beaucoup*.
 Greatness, n. *grandeur*, f.
 Greece, prop.n. *Grèce*, f. 492, 506.
 Greek, adj.&n. *Grec*, *Grecque*, 72.
 Green, n. *vert*, m.
 Green, adj. *vert*, e, 65—Green poll, *ver-vert*, m.
 —dark green, *vert-foncé*.
 Gridiron, n. *gril*, m.
 Grief, n. *chagrin*, m.
 to Grind, a.v. *moudre*, iv. irr. 344.

GR HA

- Grocery, n. *épicerie*, f.
 Gross, adj. *grossier*, e, 65.
 Ground, n. (earth) *terre*, f.; (principle) *principe*, m.
 to Grow, n.v. *grandir*, ii. *croître*, iv. irr. 314.
 to Grow pale, n.v. *pâlir*, ii —to Gow old, n.v.
 Guard, n. *garde*, f. [vieillir, ii.
 to Guess, a.v. *deviner*, i.
 Guide, n. *guide*, m.
 to Guide, a.v. *guider*, i. *conduire*, iv. irr. 300.
 Guilt, n. *crime*, m.
 Guilty, adj. *coupable*, 64.
 Gum, n. (of the teeth) *gencive*, f.
 Gun, n. *fusil*, m.—single barrelled gun, *fusil à un coup*.—double barrelled gun, *fusil à deux coups*.
 Gun. n. (cannon) *canon*, m.

H HA

- Habit, n. *habitude*, f. (dress) *habit*, m.
 Habitant, n.&adj. *habitant*, e, 65.
 Habitation, n. *habitation*, f.
 Hail, n. *grêle*, f.
 Hair, n. *cheveu*, x, m. 30.
 Half, n. *moitié*, f.
 Half, adj. *demi*, e, 65, 547, 548.
 Half, adv. *à moitié*; *à demi*.
 Hall, n. *salle*, f.
 Halter, n. *licou*, m. 29.
 Ham, n. *jambon*, m.
 Hamlet, n. *hameau*, x, m. 30.
 Hammer, n. *marteau*, x, m. 30.
 Hand, n. *main*, f.
 Beforehand, *forehand*, adv. *d'avance*.
 to Hand, a.v. *transmettre*, iv. irr. 343.—Hand me that, *faites-moi passer cela*, or *donnez-moi cela*.
 Handkerchief, n. *mouchoir*, m.
 Handle, n. *poignée*, f. *anse*, f. *manche*, m.
 to Handle, a.v. *manier*, i.
 Handsome, adj. *beau*, *bel*, m. *belle*, f. 70, 71, 76.
 to Hang, a.v. *pendre*, iv.
 Happily, adv. *heureusement*; *par bonheur*.
 Happiness, n. *bonheur*, m.
 Happy, adj. *heureux*, se, 68.
 Harbour, n. *port*, m. *havre*, m.
 Hard, adj. *dur*, e, 65.
 to Harden, a.&n.v. *durcir*, ii.
 Hardness, n. *dureté*, f.
 Haré, n. *lièvre*, m.
 Harm, n. *tort*, m. *mal*, *maux*, m. 32.
 to Harm, a.v. *nuire* d, n.v. iv. irr. 347.
 Harmonious, adj. *harmonieux*, se, 68.
 Harness, n. *harnais*, m.

HA HI

- Hartford, prop.n. *Hartfort*, m.
 Harvest, n. *moisson*, f. *recolte*, f.
 Hat, n. *chapeau*, x, m. 30.
 to Hatch, n.v. *éclore*, iv. def. 320.
 to Hate, a.v. *hair*, ii. irr. 225.
 Hatred, Hate, n. *haine*, f.
 to Have, aux.v. *avoir*, iii. irr. (p. 30), 167, 192, 240, 634, & fol. 669, 671, 672, 674, 675.
 Hazard, n. *hasard*, m.
 to Hazard, a.v. *hasarder*, i. *risquer*, i.
 He, per.pro. *il*, m.s. *lui*, 87, 88, 426, 427.
 Head, n. *tête*, f.
 Head-dress, n. *coiffure*, f.
 to Heal, n.v. *guérir*, ii.
 Health, n. *santé*, f.
 Healthy, adj. *sain*, e, 65.
 Heap, n. *tas*, m. 28.
 to Hear, a.v. *entendre*, iv.—to hear said, *entendre dire*.
 Heart, n. *cœur*, m.
 Heaven, n. *ciel*, *cieux*, m. 33, 5th exc.
 Heavenly, adj. *divin*, e, 65. *céleste*, 64.
 Heavy, adj. *lourd*, e, 65. *pesant*, e, 65.
 He-cat, n. *matou*, m. 29.
 Hedge, n. *haie*, f.
 Heel, n. *talon*, m.
 Helm, n. *gouvernail*, m. 28.
 to Help, a.v. *servir*, ii. irr. 237. (to assist) *aider* d, i.
 Help, n. *assistance*, f.
 Hemisphere, n. *hémisphère*, m.
 Henceforth, adv. *désormais*.
 Henry, prop.n. *Henri*, m.
 Her, per.pro. *elle*, *la*, *lui*, en, 84, 85, 168, 169, 426.
 Her, pron. adj. *son*, *sa*, *ses*, 49, 85, 532, 533, 534, 535, 782.
 Herculaneum, prop.n. *Herculanum*, m.
 Here, adv. *ici*, 585.
 Hereafter, adv. *désormais*; *à l'avenir*.
 Heretofore, adv. *jadis*; *ci-devant*.
 Hermit, n. *ermite*, m.
 Hermitage, n. *ermitage*, m.
 Hero, n. *héros*, m. 28.
 Hers, poss.pro. *le sien*, *la sienne*, *les siens*, *les siennes*, 373, 379, 380, 381, 600.
 Himself, per.pro. *elle-même*, se, 86, 187, 190.
 Hesitation, n. *hésitation*, f.
 to Hide, a.v. *cacher*, i.
 High, adj. *élevé*, e, 65. *haut*, e, 65, 554.
 High, adj. (high priced) *cher*, e, 65.—to rise highest, *lever le plus*, i.
 Hill, n. *colline*, f. [592, 593.
 Him, per.pro. *lui*, le, 87, 168, 169, 185, 584,

HI HU

Himself, per. pro. *lui-même, se*, 86, 187, & fol.
 to Hint, a.v. *donner à entendre à, i. insinuer, i. suggérer, i.* 16.
 to Hire, a.v. *louer, i.*
 His, poss.adj.& pro. *son, sa, ses, le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes*, 49, 85, 373, 379, 380, 381, 532—600, 782.
 Historian, n. *historien, m.*
 History, n. *histoire, f.*
 Hitherto, adv. *jusqu'à présent; jusqu'ici.*
 Hoe, n. *houe, f.*
 Hogshead, n. *muid, m.*
 to Hold, a.v. *tenir, ii. irr.* 238.
 to Hold one's tongue, n.v. *se taire, iv. irr.* 364, 365, 187.
 Holy, adj. *saint, e*, 65.
 Holy-day, n. *fête, f. jour de fête, m. vacance, f.*
 Homage, n. *hommage, m*
 Home, n. *logis, m. maison, f. demeure, f.* 85.
 Home, adv. *chez soi*, 85.
 Homely, adj. *vilain, e*, 78. *laid, e*, 65.
 Honest, adj. *honnête, 64, 78.*
 Honestly, adv. *honnêtement.*
 Honesty, n. *honnêteté, f.*
 Honey, n. *miel, m.*
 Honour, n. *honneur, m.*
 to Honour, a.v. *honorer, i.*
 Honourable, adj. *honorable, 64.*
 Hope, n. *espérance, f. espoir, m.*
 to Hope, a.v. *espérer, i.* 16.
 Horace, prop.n. *Horace, m.*
 Horrible, adj. *horrible, 64.*
 Horribly, adv. *horriblement.*
 Horse, n. *cheval, aux, m.* 32.
 Hospitable, adj. *hospitalier, e*, 65.
 Hospital, n. *hopital, aux, m.* 32.
 Hotel, n. *hôtel, m.*
 Hour, n. *heure, f.*
 House, n. *maison, f.* 85.
 How, adv. *comment*, 270, 271, 272, 778, 784.
 —How much is that worth? *combien cela vaut-il?*
 However, adv. *cependant, quelque...que, tout...que*, 538.
 Howsoever, adv. *quoique*, 538.
 Human, adj. *humain, e*, 65. *de l'homme.*
 Humanity, n. *humanité, f.*
 Humble, adj. *humble, 64.*
 Humidity, n. *humidité, f.*
 Humility, n. *humilité, f.*
 Humour, n. *humeur, f.*
 Hundred, car.nu.&n. *cent, m.* 11, 12.
 Hundredth, ord.nu.&n. *centième, m.* 561—566.
 Hunger, n. *faim, f.*

HU IM

to Hurt, a.v. *nuire à, iv. irr.* 347. *faire tort à, iv. irr.* 323.
 Hurtful, adj. *nuisible, 64.*
 Husband, n. *mari, m.*
 Hut, n. *hutte, f.*
 Hydraulic, adj. *hydraulique, 64.*
 Hymen, n. *hymen, m. hyménée, m. mariage, m.*
 Hymn, n. *hymne, m. & f.* 473.
 Hyphen, n. *trait d'union, m.* 487.
 Hypocrisy, n. *hypocrisie, f.*
 Hypocrite, n. *hypocrite, m. & f.*
 Hypocritical, adj. *hypocrite, 64.*

I IM

I, per. pro. *je, moi*, 87, 90.
 Ice, n. *glace, f.*
 Idea, n. *idée, f.*
 Idiom, n. *idiome, m. dialecte, m.*
 Idle, a.lj. *paresseux, se*, 68.
 Idleness, n. *oisiveté, f.*
 Idol, n. *idole, f.*
 Idolater, n. *idolâtre, m. & f.*
 Idolatrous, adj. *idolâtre, 64.*
 Idolatry, n. *idolâtrie, f.*
 If, conj. *si, the i is supplied by an apostrophe only before il, he, and ils, they.*
 Ignorance, n. *ignorance, f.*
 Ignorant, adj. *ignorant, e*, 65.
 Ill, adj. *malade, 64.*
 Illness, n. *maladie, f.*
 Illustrate, a.v. *expliquer, i.*
 Illustration, n. *explication, f.*
 Illustrious, adj. *illustre, 64.*
 Image, n. *image, f.*
 to Imagine, a.v. *imaginer, i.*
 to Imagine, n.v. *s'imaginer, i. re.* 187 & fol.
 to Imitate, a.v. *imiter, i.*
 Immediate, adj. *immédiat, e*, 65.
 Immediately, adv. *immédiatement; tout de suite.*
 Immense, adj. *immense, 64.*
 Immensely, adv. *immensément.*
 Immensity, n. *immensité, f.*
 Imminent, adj. *imminent, e*, 65.
 Immoral, adj. *immoral, e*, 65.
 Immorality, n. *immoralité, f.*
 Immortality, n. *immortalité, f.*
 to Immortalize, a.v. *immortaliser, i.*
 Immutable, adj. *immuable, 64.*
 Impatience, n. *impatience, f.*
 Impatient, adj. *impatient, e*, 65.—to be Impatient, *s'impatiser, i. re.* 187 & fol.
 Imperfection, n. *défaut, m. imperfection, f.*
 Imperfectly, adv. *imparfaitement.*
 Imperial, adj. *impérial, e*, 65.

IM IN

Imperious, adj. *impérieux*, *se*, 68.
 Impertinence, n. *impertinence*, f.
 Impetuosity, n. *impétuosité*, f.
 to Implore, a.v. *implorer*, i.
 Importance, n. *importance*, f.
 Important, adj. *important*, *e*, 65.
 Importation, n. *importation*, f.
 Impossible, adj. *impossible*, 64.
 Impossibility, n. *impossibilité*, f.
 Improper, adj. *impropre*, 64.
 to Improve, a.v. *perfectionner*, i.—to improve an opportunity, *profiter d'une occasion*.
 Imprudence, n. *imprudence*, f.
 Imprudent, adj. *imprudent*, *e*, 65.
 Impudence, n. *impudence*, f. *effronterie*, f.
 Impudent, adj. *impudent*, *e*, 65. *effronté*, *e*, 65.
 Impudently, adv. *impudemment*, *effrontément*.
 Impulse, n. *impulsion*, f.
 In, prep. *dans*, *en*, 743 & fol.
 Incapable, adj. *incapable*, 64.
 Inclemency, n. *inclémence*, f.
 Inclination, f. *inclination*, f.—Inclination to, *inclination pour* or *à*.
 to Incline, a.v. *incliner*, i. *pencher*, i.
 Inclined, adj. *enclin*, *e*, 65. *porté*, *e*, 65.—to be inclined, *être enclin*, or *vouloir*, iii. irr. 283.
 Income, n. *revenu*, m.
 Inconstancy, n. *inconstance*, f.
 Inconstant, adj. *inconstant*, *e*, 65.
 Inconvenience, n. *inconvéniement*, m.
 Incorrect, adj. *incorrect*, *e*, 65.
 Incurable, adj. *incurable*, 64.
 to Increase, a.v. *augmenter*, i.
 Increase, n. *augmentation*, f.
 Indebted, adj. *endetté*, *e*, 65.—to be indebted, *devoir*, lii. irr. 247.
 Indeed, adv. *en vérité*.
 Indefatigable, adj. *infatigable*, 64.
 Indefinite, adj. *indéfini*, *e*, 65.
 Independence, n. *indépendance*, f.
 Independent, adj. *indépendant*, *e*, 65.
 Independently, adv. *indépendamment*.
 Indian, adj. & n. *indien*, m. *indienne*, f. 66.
 Indication, n. *indice*, m.
 Indifference, n. *indifférence*, f.
 Indifferent, adj. *indifférent*, *e*, 65.
 Indirect, adj. *indirect*, *e*, 65.
 Indisposed, adj. *indisposé*, *e*, 65.
 Individual, adj. *individuel*, *le*, 66.
 Individual, n. *individu*, m.
 Indolence, n. *paresse*, f.
 Indolent, adj. *indolent*, *e*, 65. *paresseux*, *se*, 68.
 to Induce, a.v. *porter* *à*, i. *déterminer* *à*, i.

IN

Inducement, n. *motif*, m. *objet*, m.
 Induction, n. *induction*, f.
 to Indulge, n.v. *s'abandonner* *à*, i. *se livrer* *à*, i. re. 187.
 Indulgence, n. *indulgence*, f. *bonté*, f.
 Indulgent, adj. *indulgent*, *e*, 65.
 Industrious, adj. *industrieux*, *se*, 68.
 Industry, n. *industrie*, f.
 Inevitable, adj. *inévitabile*, 64.
 Influence, n. *influence*, f.
 to Influence, a.v. *influencer*, i. 13.
 to Inform, a.v. *informer*, i.
 Information, n. *information*, f. *instruction*, f.
 Ingenuous, adj. *ingénu*, *e*, 65. *naïf*, *ve*, 67.
 Ingenuity, n. *industrie*, f. *génie*, m. *adresse*, f.
 Ingrate, adj. & n. *ingrat*, m. *ingrate*, f.
 Ingratitude, n. *ingratitude*, f.
 to Inhabit, a.v. *habiter*, i.
 Inhabitant, n. *habitant*, m. *habitante*, f.
 to Inherit, a.v. *hériter* *de*, i.
 Inheritance, n. *héritage*, m.
 Inhuman, adj. *inhumain*, *e*, 65. *cruel*, *le*, 66.
 to Injure, a.v. *nuire* *à*, iv. irr. 347.
 Injurious, adj. *injurieux*, *se*, 68.
 Injustice, n. *injustice*, f. *iniquité*, f.
 Ink, n. *encre*, f.
 Inkstand, n. *encrier*, m. *écritoire*, f.
 Innmate, n. *habitant*, m. *habitante*, f. *locataire*, m. & f.
 Inn, n. *auberge*, f.
 Innocence, n. *innocence*, f.
 Innocent, adj. *innocent*, *e*, 65.
 Inquisitive, adj. *curieux*, *se*, 68.
 Insane, adj. *fou*, *fol*, m. *folle*, f. 70, 71, 76.
 to Insist, n.v. *insister*, i. with *sur* before a noun and *à* before a verb.
 Insolent, adj. *insolent*, *e*, 65.
 Inspection, n. *inspection*, f.
 to Inspire, a.v. *inspirer*, i.
 Instance, n. *instance*, f. *circonstance*, f.
 Instant, n. *instant*, m. *moment*, m.
 Instead, prep. *au lieu* *de*.
 to Institute, a.v. *instituer*, i.
 Institution, n. *institution*, f.
 Instructor, n. *instituteur*, m. *précepteur*, m.
 Instructor, n. *instructeur*, m.
 Instruction, n. *instruction*, f.
 Instructive, adj. *instructif*, *ve*, 67.
 Instrument, n. *instrument*, m.
 Insubordinate, adj. *insubordonné*, *e*, 65.
 Insufficient, adj. *insuffisant*, *e*, 65.
 Insult, n. *insulte*, f.
 to Insult, a.v. *insulter*, i.
 Intellect, n. *intellect*, m. *entendement*, m.

IN IT

Intellectual, adj. *intellectuel*, *le*, 66; *intelligent*, *e*, 65.
 Intelligence, n. *intelligence*, *f*.
 Intelligent, adj. *intelligent*, *e*, 65.
 Intemperance, n. *intempérance*, *f*.
 Intemperate, adj. *intempérant*, *e*, 65.
 to Intend, a.v. *se proposer*, *i*. re. 187 & fol.
 Intendant, n. *intendant*, *m*.
 Intention, n. *intention*, *f*.
 to Intercede, n.v. *intercéder*, *i*. 16.
 Intercession, n. *intercession*, *f*. *médiation*, *f*.
 to Interdict, a.v. *interdire*, *iv*. irr. 306. *dé-fendre*, *iv*.
 Interest, n. *intérêt*, *m*.
 to Interest, a.v. *intéresser*, *i*.
 Interesting, adj. *intéressant*, *e*, 65.
 Interpreter, n. *interprète*, *m*. & *f*.
 Interrogate, a.v. *interroger*, *i*. 14.
 Interrupt, a.v. *interrompre*, *iv*.
 Intimacy, n. *intimité*, *f*.
 Intimate, adj. *intime*, 64.
 Into, prep. *dans*, *en*, 743 & fol.
 Intolerance, n. *intolérance*, *f*.
 Intrepid, adj. *intrépide*, 64.
 Intrepidity, n. *intrépidité*, *f*.
 Intrigue, n. *intrigue*, *f*.
 to Intrigue, n.v. *intriguer*, *i*.
 to Introduce, a.v. *introduire*, *iv*. irr. 300.
 —to introduce one person to another, *pre-senter une personne à une autre*.
 Introduction, n. *introduction*, *f*.
 to Inundate, a.v. *inonder*, *i*.
 to Inure, a.v. *habituer d*, *i*. *accoutumer d*, *i*. 685.
 Invariable, adj. *invariable*, 64.
 Invasion, n. *invasion*, *f*.
 Inventor, n. *inventeur*, *m*. *inventrice*, *f*.
 Invention, n. *invention*, *f*.
 to Invest, a.v. *investir*, *ii*.
 Invincible, adj. *invincible*, 64.
 Invitation, n. *invitation*, *f*.
 to Invite, a.v. *inviter*, *i*.
 Ireland, prop.n. *Irlande*, *f*. 492, 506.
 Iron, n. *fer*, *m*.
 Irregular, adj. *irrégulier*, *e*, 65.
 Irreligion, n. *irréligion*, *f*.
 Irreligious, adj. *irréligieux*, *se*, 68.
 Irresistible, adj. *irrésistible*, 64.
 Island, n. *île*, *f*.
 It, per.pro. *il*, *elle*, *le*, *la*, *ce*, *cela*, 87, 168 & fol.
 199, 391—394, 595—598.
 Italian, adj. & n. *Italien*, *m*. *Italienne*, *f*.
 Italy, prop.n. *Italie*, *f*. 492, 506.

IT JU

Its, poss.pro. & adj. *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *le sien*, *la sienne*, *les siens*, *les siennes*, 49, 375.
 Itself, per.pro. *lui-même*, *elle-même*, *soi-même*, 86, 187—191.
 Ivory, n. *ivoire*, *f*.
 J JU
 Jacob, prop.n. *Jacob*, *m*.
 James, prop.n. *Jacques*, *m*.
 Jane, prop.n. *Jeanne*, *f*.
 January, prop.n. *Janvier*, *m*.
 Jasmine, n. *jasmin*, *m*.
 Jealous, adj. *jaloux*, *se*, 68.
 Jealously, adv. *avec jalousie*.
 Jealousy, n. *jalousie*, *f*.
 Jenner, prop.n. *Jenner*, *m*.
 Jerusalem, prop.n. *Jérusalem*, *f*.
 Jest, n. *plaisanterie*, *f*.
 to Jest, a.v. *plaisanter*, *i*.
 Jesus-Christ, prop.n. *Jésus-Christ*, *m*.
 Jew, n. *Juif*, *m*.
 Jewel, n. *bijou*, *x*, *m*. 33.
 Jeweller, n. *bijoutier*, *m*.
 Jewess, n. *juive*, *f*.
 Jocose, adj. *badin*, *e*, 65.
 John, prop.n. *Jean*, *m*.
 Joint, n. *jointure*, *f*.
 Joseph, prop.n. *Joseph*, *m*.
 Journal, n. *journal*, *aux*, *m*. 32.
 Journey, n. *voyage*, *m*.
 to Journey n.v. *voyager*, *i*. 14.—to go jour-neying, *aller voyager*.
 Journeyman, n. *ouvrier*, *m*.
 Joy, n. *joie*, *f*.
 Joyous, adj. *joyeux*, *se*, 68.
 Judge, n. *jugé*, *m*.
 to Judge, a.v. *juger*, *i*. 14.
 Judgment, n. *jugement*, *m*.
 Judicious, adj. *judicieux*, *se*, 68.
 Jug, n. *bocal*, *aux*, *m*. 32.
 Juice, n. *jus*, *m*. *suc*, *m*.
 Jules, prop.n. *Jules*, *m*.
 Julia, prop.n. *Julie*, *f*.
 July, prop.n. *Juillet*, *m*.
 June, prop.n. *Juin*, *m*.
 Juror, n. *juré*, *m*.
 Jury, n. *jurés*, *m.p.* *juri*, *m*.
 Just, adj. *juste*, 64.—to have just, *venir de* *ii*. irr. 238.
 Justice, n. *justice*, *f*.
 to Justify, a.v. *justifier*, *i*.
 Juvenile, adj. *jeune*, 64. *de jeunesse*.

K LA

- Keen, adj. *aigu*, *e*, 65.
 to Keep, a.v. *garder*, i.—to Keep silence,
garder le silence; *se taire*, iv. irr. re. 364,
 365, 187.
 Key, n. *clef*, *f*.
 to Kill, a.v. *tuer*, i.
 Kind, adj. *bon*, *ne*, 66. *obligeant*, *e*, 65.
 Kind, n. *sorte*, *f*. *espèce*, *f*. *genre*, *m*.
 Kindle, a.v. *allumer*, i.
 Kindly, adv. *obligeamment*; *avec bonté*.
 Kindness, n. *fauteur*, *f*. *bonté*, *f*.
 King, n. *roi*, *m*.
 Kitchen, n. *cuisine*, *f*.
 Knee, n. *genou*, *x*, *m*. 33.
 Knife, n. *couteau*, *x*, *m*. 30.
 Knight, n. *chevalier*, *m*.
 Knot, n. *nœud*, *m*.
 to Know, a.v. *savoir*, iii. irr. 267—272. *con-*
naître, iv. irr. 303—305.—to Know by sight,
 by name, &c. *connaître de vue*, *de nom*, &c.
 to make Known, a.v. *découvrir*, ii. irr. 214.
faire connaître, iv. irr. 323.
 Knowledge, n. *savoir*, *m*. *connaissance*, *f*.

L LA

- Labour, n. *travail*, *aux*, *m*. 33, 3d exc.
 to Labour, n.v. *travailler*, i.
 Ladder, n. *échelle*, *f*.
 Lady, n. (married) *dame*, *f*. (unmarried) *de-*
moiselle, *f*.
 Lamb, n. *agneau*, *x*, *m*. 30.
 to Lament, a.v. *pleurer*, i.
 Land, n. *terre*, *f*.
 to Land, n.v. *débarquer*, i.
 Landlady, n. *hôtesse*, *f*.
 Landlord, n. *propriétaire*, *m*. *maître*, *m*.
 Language, n. *langue*, *f*. *langage*, *m*.
 Lano, prop.n. *Lano*, *m*.
 Lantern, n. *lanterne*, *f*.
 Large, adj. *grand*, *e*, 65. *gros*, *se*, 66.
 Lassitude, n. *lassitude*, *f*. *fatigue*, *f*.
 Last, adj. *dernier*, *e*, 65, 76. *passé*, *e*, 65.
 Last, adv. (last time) *la dernière fois*.—Last
 evening, *hier au soir*.
 to Last, n.v. *durer*, i.
 Late, adj. (deceased) *feu*, *e*, 65, 549.
 Late, adv. *tard*.
 Lately, adv. *dernièrement*; *depuis peu*.
 Latin, adj. &n. *Latin*, *m*. *Latine*, *f*.
 Latter, adj. *dernier*, *e*, 65. *celui-ci*, &c. 388.
 to Laugh, n.v. *rire*, iv. irr. 355—357.
 Laurent, prop.n. *Laurent*, *m*.
 Lava, n. *lave*, *f*.
 Lavish, adj. *prodigue*, 64.

LA LI

- to Lavish, a.v. *prodiguer*, i. *épancher*, i.
 Lavone, prop.n. *Lavone*, *m*.
 Law, n. *loi*, *f*.
 Lawful, adj. *juste*, 64. *légitime*, 64.
 Lawsuit, n. *procès*, *m*.
 Lawyer, n. *avocat*, *m*.
 to Lay, n.v. (eggs) *pondre*, iv.
 to Lay, a.v. (to place, to put) *poser*, i.—to Lay
 Laziness, n. *paresse*, *f*. [up, a.v. *amasser*, i.
 Lazy, adj. *paresseux*, *se*, 38.
 Lead, n. *plomb*, *m*.
 to Lead, a.v. (to conduct) *mener*, i. 17. *con-*
duire, iv. irr. 300.
 to Learn, a.v. *apprendre*, iv. irr. 353.
 Learned, adj. *instruit*, *e*, 66; *savant*, *e*, 65.
 Lease, n. *bail*, *baux*, *m*. 33, 3d exc.
 Least, adj. *le moindre*, *m*. *la moindre*, *f*. *les*
moindres, *p*. *le plus petit*, *m*. *la plus petite*, *f*.
les plus petits, *m*. *p*. *les plus petites*, *f*. *p*.
 Least, adv. *le moins*.—at Least, *au moins*.
 Leather, n. *cuir*, *m*.
 Leave, n. *permission*, *f*.
 to Leave, a.v. *quitter*, i. *laisser*, i.
 Lecture, n. *lecture*, *f*.
 Leg, n. *jambe*, *f*.
 Legion, n. *légion*, *f*.
 Leisure, n. *loisir*, *m*.—Leisure time, *loisir*,
temps de loisir.
 Lemonade, n. *limonade*, *f*.
 to Lend, a.v. *prêter*, i.
 Lent, n. *carême*, *m*.
 Leon, prop.n. *Léon*, *m*.
 Less, adv. *moins*, 94.—the less as, *d'autant*
moins que.
 Less, adj. *moindre*, 115.
 to Lessen, a.v. *amoindrir*, ii. *diminuer*, i.
 Lesson, n. *leçon*, *f*.
 Lest, conj. *de peur que*, 109, 726
 to Let, a.v. (to leave) *laisser*, i.; (in the sense
 of to lease) *louer*, i.
 Letter, n. *lettre*, *f*.
 Level, n. *niveau*, *x*, *m*. 30.
 Lever, n. *levier*, *m*.
 Lewis, prop.n. *Louis*, *m*.
 Liar, n. *menteur*, *m*. *menteuse*, *f*.
 Liberal, adj. *libéral*, *e*, 65. *généreux*, *se*, 68.
 Liberator, n. *libérateur*, *m*. *libératrice*, *f*.
 Liberty, n. *liberté*, *f*.
 Library, n. *bibliothèque*, *f*.
 License, n. *license*, *f*.
 Lie, n. *mensonge*, *m*.
 to Lie, n.v. (to tell a lie) *mentir*, ii. irr. 227.
 to Lie, n.v. *gésir*, ii. irr. 224.
 Lieutenant, n. *lieutenant*, *m*.

LI LO

Life, n. *vie*, f.
 Light, n. *lumière*, f. (knowledge) *connaissance*, f.
 Light, adj. (clear) *clair*, e, 65. (not heavy,) *léger*, e, 65.
 to Light, a.v. *allumer*, i.
 Lighthouse, n. *fanal*, aux, m. 32. *phare*, m.
 Lightning, n. *éclair*, m.
 Like, adj. *semblable à*, 64. *tel*, *le*, 66.—Like father like son, *tel père tel fils*.
 (the) Like, n. *la pareille*, f. *le semblable*, m. *la*
 Like, conj. *comme*. [*même chose*, .
 to Like, a.v. *aimer*, i. ; *trouver bon*, i.
 to like better, a.v. *préférer*, i. 16, *aimer mieux*, i.
 —to be like, *être comme*, or *ressembler à*, i.
 —How do you like that?—I like it pretty well, *comment trouvez-vous cela?—je le trouve assez à mon goût*.
 Likeness, n. *portrait*, m. *ressemblance*, f.
 Lime, n. *chaux*, f.
 Limit, n. *limite*, f.
 to Limit, a.v. *limiter*, i. *borner*, i.
 Limpid, adj. *limpide*, 64.
 Line, n. *ligne*, f. [*linge*, m.
 Linen, n. (in piece) *toile*, f. (in clothes)
 Link, n. *lien*, m.
 Lip, n. *lèvre*, f.
 Liquid, adj. *liquide*, 64.
 Liquid, n. (any fluid) *liqueur*, f. *liquide*, m.
 Liquor, n. (cordial) *liqueur*, f.
 List, n. *liste*, f.
 to Listen, n.v. *écouter*, i.
 Literal, adj. *littéral*, e, 65.
 Literature, n. *littérature*, f.
 Little, adj. *petit*, e, 65, 76.
 Little, adv. (a piece of any thing) *un peu de*.
 (a few) *peu de*.
 Littleness, n. *petitesse*, f.
 to Live, n.v. *vivre*, iv. irr. 369, 370.
 Liverpool, prop n. *Liverpool*.
 Living, n. *subsistance*, f.
 Living, adj. *vivant*, e, 65.
 Lobe, n. *lobe*, m.
 Lock, n. *serrure*, f.
 to Lodge, a.&n.v. *loger*, i. 14.
 Lodgement, n. *logement*, m.
 Loire, prop.n. *Loire*, f. 492, 506.
 Long, adj. *long*, ue, 72.
 Long, adv. *long temps*.—They have been long, or a long time in my possession, *ils sont depuis long-temps en ma possession*.
 as Long as, conj. *autant que* ; *tant que*.
 Longer, adv. *plus long temps* ; *de plus*.—A few days longer, *quelques jours de plus*.

LO MA

to Look, a.v. *regarder*, i.—to Look for, *chercher*, i.
 to Look like, n.v. *ressembler à*, i.
 Lord, n. *seigneur*, m.
 to Lose, a.v. *perdre*, iv.
 Loss, n. *perte*, f.
 Lot, n. *partage*, m.
 Loud, adj. *haut*, e, 65.
 Louisa, prop.n. *Louise*, f.
 Louis Philip, prop.n. *Louis Philippe*, m.
 to Love, a.v. *aimer*.
 Love, n. *amour*, m.&f. 461.
 Lovely, adj. *aimable*, 64.
 Low, adj. *bas*, se, 66.
 Lucy, prop.n. *Lucie*, f.
 Luke, prop.n. *Luc*, m.
 Lucky, adj. *heureux*, se, 68.
 Lungs, n. *poumons*, m.
 Lyceum, n. *lycée*, m.
 Lying, n. *mensonge*, m.
 Lying, adj. (situated) *situé*, e, 65.
 Lying, adj. (who tells lies) *menteur*, m.
menteuse, f. *qui ment*.
 Lyon, prop.n. *Lyon*.

M MA

Mr. (before a proper name) *monsieur*, m.s.
 Machine, n. *machine*, f.
 Mad, adj.&n. *fou*, *fol*, *folle*, 70, 71, 76.
 Madame, n. *madame*, f.
 Madman, n. *fou*, m.
 Madwoman, n. *folle*, f.
 Madness, n. *folie*, f.
 Magistrate, n. *magistrat*, m.
 Magnetism, n. *magnétisme*, m.
 Magnificence, n. *magnificence*, f. *splendeur*, f.
 Magnificent, adj. *magnifique*, 64.
 Magpie, n. *pie*, f.
 Mahogany, n. *acajou*, m. ; *bois d'acajou*.
 Maid, n. *filles*, f.
 Maid, Maid-servant, n. *servante*, f.
 Main, adj. *principal*, e, 65. *grand*, e, 65, 76.
 Majority, n. *majorité*, f.
 to Make, a.v. *faire*, iv. irr. 323, 684, & fol.
rendre, iv.—to make a treaty, *conclure un traité*.
 Malicious, adj. *malin*, igne, 72.
 Mail, n. *mail*, m.
 Man, n. *homme*, m.—good Man, *homme de bien*.
 to Manifest, a.v. *manifeste*, i.
 Manifestation, n. *manifestation*, f.
 Mankind, n. *genre humain*, m. *les hommes*, m.
 Manner, n. (way) *manière*, f.
 Mauners, n. *mœurs*, f. p.

MA ME

Manufacture, n. *manufacture*, f.
 to Manufacture, a.v. *fabriquer*, i.
 Manuscript, n. *manuscrit*, m.
 Many, adv. *beaucoup de*, 94.—Great many, *beaucoup de*, 94.—How many, *combien de*, 94.
 Marble, n. *marbre*, m.
 Marine, n. (navy) *marine*, f.
 Mark, n. *marque*, f.
 to Mark, a.v. *marquer*, i.
 Market, n. *marché*, m.
 Marriage, n. *mariage*, m.
 Married, adj. *marié*, e, 65.
 to Marry, a.v. *marier*, i. *épouser*, i. *unir*, ii. *se marier avec*.—That minister married them, *ce ministre les maria*, or *les unit*.—My brother married his cousin, *mon frère épousa sa cousine*, or *se maria avec sa cousine*.
 Mars, prop. n. *March*, m.
 Marsh, n. *marais*, m.
 Marshy, adj. *marécageux*, se, 63.
 Martyr, adj. & n. *martyr*, m. *martyre*, f.
 Mary, prop. n. *Marie*, f.
 Masculine, adj. *masculin*, e, 65.
 Mason, n. (a house builder) *maçon*, m.
 Mason, n. (free-mason) *franc-maçon*, m.
 Mast, n. *mât*, m.
 Master, n. *maître*, m. *monsieur*, m.
 Master-piece, n. *chef-d'œuvre*, m.
 Materials, n. *matériaux*, m.p.
 Mathematical, adj. *mathématique*, 64.
 Mathematics, n. *les mathématiques*, f.pl.
 Matter, n. *matière*, f.—no Matter ! *n'importe !*
 Mature, adj. *mûr*, e, 65.
 Maxim, n. *maxime*, f.
 May, prop. n. *Mai*, m.
 May, n.v. (for to be possible) *pouvoir*, iii. irr. 261, 264. When MAY is the mere sign of the subjunctive mood, it is not rendered in French. See Models of Verbs, subjunctive mood.
 Mayor, n. *maire*, m.
 Me, per. pro. *moi*, me, 81, 169 & fol.
 Meadow, n. *prairie*, f. *pré*, m.
 Meal, n. *repas*, m.
 Mean, adj. *bas*, se, 66. *moyen*, ne, 66.
 Means, n. *moyen*, m.—By all means, *sans doute ; sans faute*.—By no means, *nullement ; point du tout*.
 to Mean, n.v. *vouloir dire*, iii. irr. 233.
 Meaning, n. *signification*, f.
 Measure, n. *mesure*, f.
 to Measure, a.v. *mesurer*, i.

ME MI

Meat, n. *viande*, f.
 Mechanic, n. *ouvrier*, m. *artisan*, m.
 Mediator, n. *médiateur*, m. *médiatrice*, f.
 Medical, adj. *médical*, e, 65.
 Medicament, n. *médicament*, m. *remède*, m.
 Medicine, n. *médecine*, f. *remède*, m.
 Mediocrity, n. *médiocrité*, f.
 Mediterranean sea, p.n. *la Méditerranée*, f.
 to Meet, n.v. (a person) *rencontrer*, i. (to receive) *recevoir*, iii. (to meet with an accident) *éprouver un accident*, i. ; (to assemble) *s'assembler*, i. ref. v. 187 & fol.
 Meeting, n. *rencontre*, f. *réunion*, f. *assemblée*, f.
 Melon, n. *melon*, m.
 to Melt, a.v. *fondre*, iv
 Member, n. *membre*, m.
 Memorable, adj. *mémorable*, 64.
 Memory, n. *mémoire*, f.
 Menagerie, n. *ménagerie*, f.
 to Mend, a.v. *raccommoder*, i.
 Mental, adj. *intellectuel*, le, 66. *spirituel*, le, 66. *de l'esprit*.
 Mentally, adv. *mentalement ; de mémoire*.
 Mention, n. *mention*, f.
 to Mention, a.v. *mentionner*, f.
 Merchant, n. *marchand*, m. *marchande*, f. *négociant*, m.
 Meridian, n. *méridien*, m. *midi*, m.—post meridian, *après midi*.
 Merit, n. *mérite*, m.
 to Merit, a.v. *mériter*, i.
 Merope, pro. n. *Méroepe*, f.
 Mess, n. *mets*, m.
 Messrs, p.n. *messieurs*, m. *MM.*
 Metal, n. *métal*, aux, m. 32.
 Middle, n. *milieu*, m.
 Middling adj. *moyen*, ne, 66.
 Midnight, adv. *minuit*.
 Midst, adv. *milieu*, m.
 Might, n. *pouvoir*, m.
 Might, aux. v. (for to be possible) *pouvoir*, iii. irr. 261—264. When used merely as the sign of the subjunctive mood, it is not rendered in French. See Models of verbs.
 Mignonette, n. *réséda*, m.
 Mildly, adv. *doucement ; avec douceur*.
 Mildness, n. *douceur*, f.
 Mile, n. *mille*, m.
 Military, adj. *militaire*, 64.
 Militia, n. *milice*, f.
 Milk, n. *lait*, m.
 Mill, n. *moulin*, m.
 Miller, n. *meunier*, m. ; *meunière*, f.
 Milliner, n. *modiste*, f.

MI MO

Million, car. nu. *million*, m.
 Milton, prop.n. *Milton*, m.
 Mind, n. *esprit*, m.
 Mine, n. *mine*, f.
 Mine, poss.pro. *le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes*, 373, 379—381, 600.
 Mineral, n. *minéral*, aux, m. 32.
 Mineralogy, n. *minéralogie*, f.
 Miniature, n. *miniature*, f.
 Minister, n. *ministre*, m.
 Ministerial, adj. *ministériel*, le, 66.
 Minority, n. *minorité*, f.
 Minute, n. *minute*, f. (not thick) [*mince*, 64.
 Minute, adj. *petit*, e, 65, 76; *menu*, e, 65.
 Miracle, n. *miracle*, m.
 Mischievous, adj. *malin*, gne, 72.
 Miser, n. *avare*, m.&f.
 Miserably, adv. *misérablement*.
 Misery, n. *misère*, f.
 Misfortune, n. *malheur*, m. *infortune*, f.
 Miss, n. (without article) *mademoiselle*, f.; (with an article) *demoiselle*.—a miss, *une*
 Missionary, n. *missionnaire*, m. [*demoiselle*.
 Mistake, n. *faute*, f.
 to Mistake, n.v. *se tromper*, i.re 187.—to be mistaken *in*, *se tromper* sur.
 Mistress, n. *maîtresse*, f.
 to Mix, a.v. *mêler*, i.
 Model, n. *modèle*, m. *exemple*, m.& f. 468.
 to Moderate, a.v. *modérer*, i. 16.
 Moderation, n. *modération*, f.
 Modern, adj. *moderne*, 64.
 Modest, adj. *modeste*, 64.
 Modestly, adv. *modestement*.
 Modesty, n. *modestie*, f.
 to Modify, a.v. *modifier*, i.
 Moment, n. *moment*, m.
 Monarch, n. *monarque*, m.
 Monarchy, n. *monarchie*, f.
 Monday, prop.n. *Lundi*, m.
 Money, n. *argent*, m.
 Monster, n. *monstre*, m.
 Monstrous, adj. *monstrueux*, se, 68.
 Month, n. *mois*, m. 28.
 Monument, n. *monument*, m.
 Moon, n. *lune*, f.
 Moonlight, n. *clair de lune*, m.
 Moral, adj. *moral*, e, 65.
 Morality, n. *morale*, f.
 Morally, adv. *moralement*.
 More, adv. *plus*, 94, 103, 113, 765.—The more as, *d'autant plus que*.—I have no more money, *je n'ai plus d'argent*.

MO MY

Morning, n. *matin*, m.
 Morrow, n. *demain*.—to-Morrow, adv. *de-main*.—After to-morrow, *après demain*.—On the morrow, *le lendemain*.
 Mortal, adj.&n. *mortel*, m. *mortelle*, f.
 Mortality, n. *mortalité*, f.
 Mortally, adv. *mortellement*.
 Most, adj. *le plus, la plus, les plus*, 119, 530, 531.—The most, adv. *le plus*, 531.
 Mother, n. *mère*, f.—Grandmother, *grand'mère*, f.
 Motion, n. *motion*, f.
 Motive, n. *motif*, m.
 to Mount, a.v. *monter*, i.
 Mountain, n. *montagne*, f.
 Mouth, n. *bouche*, f.
 to Move, a.v. *mouvoir*, iii.irr. 257.
 to Move, a.v. (to affect) *toucher*, i.
 Mozart, prop.n. *Mozart*, m.
 Mrs. (abbreviation) *madame*, f. *Mme*.
 Much, adv. *beaucoup*, 94.—As much as, adv. *autant de*.—As much as, conj. *autant que*.—How much, *combien*.—How much! excl. *que...de! combien!* 784.—So much, *tant*.
 Mud, n. *boue*, f.
 Muddy, adj. *boueux*, se, 68.—to be muddy, *y avoir de la boue*, 167.—It is very muddy, *il y a beaucoup de boue; il fait très-crotté*, 682.
 Muff, n. *manchon*, m.
 Mulberry-tree, n. *mûrier*, m.
 to Multiply, a.v. *multiplier*, i.
 Multitude, n. *multitude*, f.
 Municipal, adj. *municipal*, e, 65.
 Murder, n. *assassinat*, m.
 Muro, prop.n. *Muro*, m.
 Muscle, n. (in anatomy) *muscle*, m.
 Museum, n. *musée*, m.
 Music, n. *musique*, f.
 Musician, n. *musicien*, m. *musicienne*, f.
 Muslin, n. *mousseline*, f.
 Must, (to be necessary) *falloir*, iii. irr. 253 & fol.
 Mustard, n. *moutarde*, f.
 Mutiny, n. *sédition*, f. *révolte*, f.
 to Mutiny, n.v. *se révolter* i. re. 187.
 Mutton, n. *mouton*, m.
 My, poss.adj. *mon, ma, mes*, 47, 53, 85, 532, 782.
 Myrtle, n. *myrte*, m.
 Myself, per.pro. *moi-même*, me, 86, 190.
 Mysterious, adj. *mystérieux*, se, 68.
 Mystery, n. *mystère*, m.

N NE

Nada, prop.n. *Nada*, m.&f.
 Nado, prop.n. *Nado*, m. [ongle, m.
 Nail, n. (of iron, &c.) *clou*, m. (of the hand)
 Name, n. *nom*, m.
 to Name, a.v. *nommer*, i.
 Nancy, prop.n. *Nancy*, f.
 Nape, n. *nuque*, f.
 Napkin, n. *serviette*, f.
 Napoleon, prop.n. *Napoléon*, m.
 Narrow, adj. *étroit*, e, 65.
 Nation, n. *nation*, f.
 National, adj. *national*, e, 65.
 Natural, adj. *naturel*, le, 66.
 Naturally, adv. *naturellement*.
 Nature, n. *nature*, f.
 Navy, n. *marine*, f.
 Near, prep. *près de*.
 Nearly, adv. *presque*.
 Necessary, adj. *nécessaire*, 64.—To be necessary, *être nécessaire*; *falloir*, iii. irr. 253 & fol.
 Necessaries, n. p. *nécessités*, f. p. *choses nécessaires*, f. p.
 Necessity, n. *nécessité*, f.
 Neck, n. *cou*, m.
 Necklace, n. *collier*, m.
 Need, n. *besoin*, m.
 —to be in need of, *avoir besoin de*; *falloir*, iii. irr. 253 & fol.
 to Need, a.v. *avoir besoin de*; *falloir*, iii. irr. 253 & fol.
 Needle, n. *aiguille*, f.
 Negation, n. *négarion*, f.
 to Neglect, a.v. *négliger*, i. 14.
 Neglect, n. *négligence*, f.
 Negligence, n. *négligence*, f.
 Negligent, adj. *négligent*, e, 65.
 Negociate, a.v. *négozier*, i.
 Negociation, n. *négociation*, f.
 Negro, n. *negre*, m. *negresse*, f.
 Neighbour, n. *voisin*, m. *voisine*, f.
 Neighbouring, adj. *voisin*, e, 65.
 Neighbourhood, n. *voisinage*, m.
 Neither, conj. *ni*, 732, 733.
 Neither, adv. *non plus*.—I neither, *ni moi non plus*.
 Neither, ind.pro. *ni l'un, ni l'autre, ni l'une, ni l'autre, ni les uns, ni les autres, ni les unes, ni les autres*, 445.
 Nephew, n. *neveu*, x, m. 30.
 Nerve, n. *nerf*, m.
 Nervous, adj. *nerveux*, se, 68.
 Nestor, prop.n. *Nestor*, m.
 Net, n. *filet*, m.

NE NU

Neuilly, prop.n. *Neuilly*, m.
 Never, adv. *jamais*; *ne...jamais*, 23.
 Nevers, prop.n. *Nevers*, m.
 Nevertheless, conj. *cependant*.
 New, adj. (not worn out) *neuf*, ve, 67. (of late date) *nouveau, nouvel*, m. *nouvelle*, f. 70, 71, 76.
 News, n. (some particular news) *nouvelle*, f. (in general) *nouvelles*.
 Newspaper, n. *journal*, aux, m. 32.
 New-York, prop.n. *New-York*, m.
 Next, adj. *prochain*, e, 65, 78. *voisin*, e, 65.
 —next day, *le lendemain*.
 Next, adv. *ensuite*.
 Niece, n. *nièce*, f.
 Night, n. *nuît*, f. *soir*, m.—Yesterday night, *hier au soir*, or *hier soir*.
 Nine, car.nu. *neuf*.
 Nineteen, car.nu. *dix-neuf*.
 Nineteenth, ord.n. *dix-neuvième*, 561 & fol.
 Ninetieth, ord.nu. *quatre-vingt-dixième*, 561
 Ninety, car.nu. *quatre-vingt-dix*. [& fol.
 Ninth, ord.n. *neuvième*, 561 & fol.
 No, adv. *non, ne, pas*, 22 & fol. 720 & fol.
 —No more, adv. *pas davantage*.—No matter, *n'importe*.
 No, adj. *aucun*, e; *pas un, pas une*, 60, 138
 Nobility, n. *noblesse*, f.
 Noble, adj. *noble*, 64.
 Nobody, n. *personne*, 435, 436.
 Noël, prop.n. *Noël*, m.
 Noise, n. *bruit*, m.
 None, adj. *aucun*, e, 65, 433—435.
 Nonsense, n. *absurdité*, f.
 Noon, n. *midi*, m.—Afternoon, *après midi*, f.
 Nor, conj. *ni*, 445, 732, 733.
 North, n. *nord*, m.
 Nose, n. *nez*, m.
 Nosegay, n. *bouquet*, m.
 Not, adv. *non, ne...pas*, 22 & fol. 720 & fol.
 Not only adv. *non seulement*.
 Note, n. *note*, f.
 Nothing, n. *rien*, 23 & fol. 454.
 Notice, n. *avis*, m.
 to Notice, a.v. *remarquer*, i.
 Notwithstanding, conj. *nonobstant, malgré*.
 Noun, n. *nom*, m.
 Novel, n. *nouvelle*, f. *roman*, m.
 November, prop.n. *Novembre*, m.
 Now, adv. *maintenant, d'présent*.—Now and then, *de temps en temps, quelquefois*.
 Nowhere, adv. *nulle part*.
 Number, n. *nombre*, m. *numéro*, m.
 Numerous, adj. *nombreux*, se, 68.

NU ON

Nurse, n. (of an infant) *nourrice*, f. (of a sick person) *garde malade*, m.&f.
 Nut, n. (a fruit) *noix*, f. (of a vice) *écrou*, f.
 Nymph, n. *nymphé*, f.

O ON

Oak, n. *chêne*, m.
 Obedience, n. *obéissance*, f.
 Obedient, adj. *obéissant*, e, 65.
 to Obey, a.v. *obéir* à, ii.
 Object, n. *objet*, m.
 to Object, a.v. *objecter*, i.
 Objection, n. *objection*, f.
 Obligation, n. *obligation*, f.
 to Oblige, a.v. *obliger*, i. 14.
 Oblige'd, adj. *obligé*, e, 65. *redevable*, 64.
 Obscure, adj. *obscur*, e, 65.
 Observation, n. *observation*, f.
 to Observe, a.v. *observer*, i. *remarquer*, i.
 Obstacle, n. *obstacle*, m.
 Obstinacy, n. *opiniâtreté*, f. *obstination*, f.
 Obstinate, adj. *opiniâtre*, 64.
 to Obtain, a.v. *obtenir*, ii. irr. 233.
 Obviously, adv. *évidemment*.
 Occasion, n. *occasion*, f.
 Occupation, n. *occupation*, f. *emploi*, m.
 to Occupy, a.v. *occuper*, i.
 Ocean, n. *l'Océan*, m.
 October, prop.n. *Octobre*, m.
 Odious, adj. *odieux*, se, 68.
 Odour, n. *odeur*, f.
 Of, prep. *de*, 31, 36.
 Offence, n. *offence*, f.
 to Offend, a.v. *fâcher*, i.
 Offended, adj. *fâché*, e, 65.
 Offer, n. *offre*, f. *proposition*, f.
 to Offer, a.v. *offrir*, ii. irr. 214.
 Office, n. *place*, f. *charge*, f. *office*, m.
 Officer, n. *officier*, m.
 Often, Oft, adv. *souvent*; *fréquemment*.
 Oh! interject. *O! oh!*
 Oil, n. *huile*, f.
 Old, adj. *vieux*, *vieil*, m. *vieille*, f. 68, exc.
 Old man, n. *vieillard*, m.
 On, prep. *sur*, 100, 753 & fol.
 Once, adv. *une fois*.—At once, *à la fois*.
 One, car.nu. *un*, m. *une*, f. 1.
 One, ind pro. *on*, 87, 429, 607.
 One's, poss.pron. (one's own) *son*, *sa*, *ses*, 607.
 One's-self, per.pro. *soi*, *soi-même*, se, 86, 190, 589, 590.
 Onion, n. *ognon*, m. *oignon*, m.
 Only, adj. *seul*, e, 65.
 Only, adv. *seulement*, 26.

OP OW

to Open, a.v. *ouvrir*, ii. irr. 214.
 to Open, n.v. *s'ouvrir*, ii. irr. 214. re. 187.
 —open to contradiction, *contestable*.
 Opening, n. *ouverture*, f.
 Opera, n. *opéra*, m.
 Operation, n. *opération*, f.
 Opinion, n. *opinion*, f. *sentiment*, m. *avis*, m.
 Opium, n. *opium*, m.
 Opponent, n. *adversaire*, m.
 Opportunity, n. *occasion*, f.
 to Oppose, a.v. *opposer*, i.
 to Oppose, n.v. *s'opposer* à, i. re. 187.
 Opposite, prep. *vis-à-vis* de.
 Opposition, n. *opposition*, f.
 to Oppress, a.v. *opprimer*, i.
 Opulence, n. *opulence*, f.
 Opulent, adj. *opulent*, e, 65.
 Or, conj. *ou*.—Or else, *ou bien*.
 Oracle, n. *oracle*, m.
 Orange, n. *orange*, f.
 Orange-tree, n. *oranger*, m.
 Orator, n. *orateur*, m.
 Orchard, n. *verger*, m.
 Orchestra, n. *orchestre*, m.
 Order, n. *ordre*, m.—In order that, conj. *pour que*, (with subj. mood).—In order to, prep. *pour*, 128.
 to Order, a.v. *ordonner*, i.
 Ordinary, adj. *ordinaire*, 64.
 Organ, n. (instrument) *orgue*, m.&f. 461. (of the senses, or of the people) *organe*, m.
 Origin, n. *origine*, f.
 Ornament, n. *ornement*, m.
 Orthography, n. *orthographe*, f.
 Other, ind.pro. *autre*, *autres*, 447, 728.
 Others, ind.pro. *autrui*, 448.
 Otherwise, adv. *autrement*, 728.
 Ought, aux. (when it expresses duty) *devoir*, iii. irr. 247 & fol.
 Our, poss.adj. *notre*, *nos*, 50, 85, 782.
 Ours, poss.pro. *le nôtre*, *la nôtre*, *les nôtres*, 376, 381, 600.
 Ourselves, per.pron. *nous-mêmes*, *nous*, 86, 190.
 Out, adv. *dehors*, *hors*.
 Out of, prep. *hors de*.—Out of sight, *hors de vue*.
 Outhouse, n. *appentis*, m. *hangar*, m.
 Over, prep. *par-dessus*, *sur*.
 Overjoyed, adj. *enchanté*, e, 65.
 to Overwhelm, a.v. *accabler*, i.—to Overwhelm with, *accabler de*.
 to Owe, a.v. *devoir*, iii. irr. 247 & fol.—to Owe still, a.v. *redevoir*, iii. irr. 247 & fol.
 —Owing to, *à cause de*.

OW PA

- Owl, n. *hibou*, x, 33, exc. *chat-huant*, 481.
 Own, adj. *propre*, 64. When own is used with *MY*, *THY*, &c. it is not rendered in French, except in an emphatical manner.
 Owner, n. *propriétaire*, m.&f.
 Ox, n. *bœuf*, m.
 Oyster, n. *huître*, f.

P PA

- Pace, n. *pas*, m.
 Pack, n. *paquet*, m.
 Pack of cards, n. *jeu de cartes*.
 Page, n. (of a book) *page*, f. (of a king) *page*, m.
 Pail, n. *seau*, x, m. 30.
 Pain, n. *peine*, f. *doubleur*, f.
 Paint, n. *peinture*, f.
 Painter, n. *peintre*, m.
 Painting, n. *tableau*, x, m. 30.
 Pair, n. *paire*, f. *couple*, m.&f. 466.
 Palace, n. *palais*, m.
 Paladin, n. *paladin*, m.
 Pale, adj. *pâle*, 64.
 To grow pale, n.v. *pâlir*, ii.
 Pandora, prop.n. *Pandore*, f.
 Paper, n. *papier*, m.
 Paragraph, n. *paragraphe*, m.
 Parasol, n. (against the sun) *parasol*, m. (against rain) *parapluie*, m.
 Pardon, n. *pardon*, m. *grâce*, f.
 to Pardon, a.v. *pardonner*, i.
 Parents, n. *parents*, m.
 Paris, prop.n. *Paris*, m.
 Parish, n. *paroisse*, f.
 Parishioner, n. *paroissien*, m. *paroissienne*, f.
 Parlour, n. *salon*, m.
 Parrot, n. *perroquet*, m.
 Part, n. (a piece) *partie*, f. (in a play) *rôle*, m. (one's own share) *portion*, f. *part*, f.
 Particular, adj. *particulier*, e, 65.
 Particulars, n. (particularities) *détails*, m. p.
 Particularly, adv. *particulièrement*.
 Partisan, n. *partisan*, m.
 Partner, n. *associé*, m. *associée*, f.
 Partnership, n. *association*, f.
 Partridge, n. *perdreix*, f.
 Party, n. (of individuals, or a part of any thing) *partie*, f. (in politics) *parti*, m.
 to Pass, a.v. *passer*, i. a.&n. 635 & fol.
 Passage, n. (across the sea) *traversée*, f. (in any other sense) *passage*, m.
 Passion, n. *passion*, f.
 Past, adj. *passé*, e, 65.
 Pasture, n. *pâturage*, m.

PA PE

- Paternal, adj. *paternel*, le, 66
 Patience, n. *patience*, f.
 Patiently, adv. *patiemment*.
 Patriarch, n. *patriarche*, m.
 Patriot, n. *patriote*, m.
 Paul, prop.n. *Paul*, m.
 to Pay, a.v. *payer*, i. 18.
 Pay, n. *paie*, f.
 Payment, n. *paiement*, m.
 Pea, n. *pois*, m. 28.
 Peace, n. *paix*, f. 28.
 Peaceful, adj. *paisible*, 64.
 Peach, n. *pêche*, f.
 Peach-tree, n. *pêcher*, m.
 Pear, n. *poire*, f.—Pear-tree, n. *poirier*, m.
 Pearl, n. *perle*, f.
 Peasant, n. *paysan*, m. *paysanne*, f.
 Peevish, adj. *querelleur*, se, 69, 4th exc.
 Pen, n. *plume*, f.
 Penalty, n. *châtiment*, m. *peine*, f.
 Pencil, n. (to write with, or draw) *crayon*, m.
 to Penetrate, a.&n.v. *pénétrer*, i. 16.
 Penitence, n. *pénitence*, f.
 Penknife, n. *canif*, m.
 Pennsylvania, prop.n. *Pensilvanie*, f. 492, 506.
 Pension, n. *pension*, f.
 Pentagon, n. *pentagone*, m.
 Penurious, adj. *avare*, 64.
 People, n. (a nation) *peuple*, m. (folks) *personnes*, f. *gens*, 470—472.—Good people, *honnêtes gens*, *gens de bien*.
 Pepin, prop.n. *Pepin*, m.
 Pepper, n. *poivre*, m.
 to Pepper, a.v. *poivrer*, i.
 to Perceive, a.v. *apercevoir*, *s'apercevoir de*, iii. re. 187 & fol.
 Percussion, n. *percussion*, f.
 Perfect, adj. *parfait*, e, 65.
 to Perfect, a.v. *perfectionner*, i.
 Perfection, n. *perfection*, f.
 Perfectly, adv. *parfaitement*.
 Perfidious, adj. *perfide*, 64.
 to Perform, a.v. *exécuter*, i.
 Perhaps, adv. *peut-être*; (before a verb) *peut-être que*.
 Period, n. (of time) *période*, f.—(a point) *point*, m.
 Permission, n. *permission*, f.
 Permit, n. *permis*, m.
 to Permit, a.v. *permettre*, iv. irr. 343.
 Pernicious, adv. *pernicieux*, se, 68.
 Peroration, n. *péroration*, f.
 Perpetrate, a.v. *commettre*, iv. irr. 343.
 Persecution, n. *pésecution*, f.

PE PL

Persecutor, n. *persécuteur*, m. *persécutrice*, f.
 Perseverance, n. *persévérance*, f.
 Perseverant, persevering, adj. *persévérant*, e.
 Person, n. *personne*, f. [65; constant, e, 65.
 Personal, adj. *individuel*, le, 66. *personnel*, le, 66.
 Perversion, n. *perversion*, f.
 Peter, prop. n. *Pierre*, m.
 Pewter, n. *étain*, m. [enne, f.
 Phœnician, adj. & n. *Phénicien*, m. *Phénici-*
 Phenomenon, n. *phénomène*, m.
 Philadelphia, prop. n. *Philadelphie*, f.
 Philosopher, n. *philosophe*, m.
 Philosophy, n. *philosophie*, f.
 Phrase, n. *phrase*, f.
 Phrenology, n. *phrénologie*, f.
 Piano-forte, n. *piano-forté*, m.
 to Pickle, a.v. *confire*, iv. irr. 301.
 Pickpocket, n. *filou*, m. 29.
 Picture, n. *tableau*, x, m. 30. *portrait*, m.
 Pie, n. *pâté*, m.
 Piece, n. *morceau*, x, m. 30.
 to Pierce, a.v. *percer*, i. 13.
 Piercing, adj. *perçant*, e, 65.
 Piety, n. *piété*, f.
 Pigeon, n. *pigeon*, m.
 Pillow, n. *coussin*, m. *oreiller*, m.
 Pilot, n. *pilote*, m. [cheville, f.
 Pin, n. (for dress) *épinge*, f. (in mechanics)
 Pipe, n. (to smoke with) *pipe*, f. (for the
 stove, or other purposes) *tuyau*, x, m. 30.
 Pirate, n. *pirate*, m.
 Pistil, n. *pistil*, m.
 Pistol, n. *pistolet*, m.
 to Pity, a.v. *plaindre*, iv. irr. 308.
 —To be pitied, *être à plaindre*.
 Place, n. *lieu*, x, m. 30. *endroit*, m. *place*, f.
rang, m. —In the first, second, &c. place,
en premier, second, &c. lieu.
 to Place, a.v. *placer*, i. 13. *mettre* iv. irr. 343.
 Plain, n. (level ground) *plaine*, f.
 Plaintiff, n. *demandeur*, m. *demanderesse*, f.
 Plan, n. *plan*, m.
 Planet, n. *planète*, f.
 Plant, n. *plante*, f.
 to Plant, a.v. *planter*, i.
 Plantation, n. *plantation*, f.
 Plate, n. *assiette*, f.
 Plato, prop. n. *Platon*, m.
 to Play, a.v. *jouer*, i. —To play on the flute,
 &c. *jouer de la flûte, &c.*
 Playful, adj. *folâtre*, 64.
 to Plead, n.v. *plaider*, i.
 Pleasant, adj. *agréable*, 64.
 Pleasantly, adv. *agréablement*.

PL PR

to Please, a.v. *contenter*, i. *plaire à*, iv. irr. 351.
 Pleasure, n. *plaisir*, m.
 Pocket, n. *poché*, f.
 Poet, n. *poète*, m.
 Poetic, adj. *poétique*, 64.
 Poetry, n. *poésie*, f. [strument) *pointe*, f.
 Point, n. *point*, m. (the end of any acute in-
 Pointed, adj. *pointu*, e, 65.
 Poison, n. *poison*, m.
 to Poison, a.v. *empoisonner*, i.
 to Polish, a.v. *polir*, ii.
 Polite, adj. *poli*, e, 65.
 Politely, adv. *poliment*.
 Political, adj. *politique*, 64.
 Politician, n. *politique*, m.
 Politics, n. *politique*, f.
 Poll, n. *liste*, f. *rôle*, m. —Green-poll, *ver-vert*, m.
 Pond, n. *étang*, m.
 Poor, adj. *pauvre*, 64.
 Poor, n. *les pauvres*, p.m. *le pauvre*, s.m.
 Pope, n. *pape*, m.
 Poplar, n. *peuplier*, m.
 Popular, adj. *populaire*, 64.
 Population, n. *population*, f.
 Populous, adj. *peuplé*, e, 65.
 Pork, n. *porc*, m.
 Portrait, n. *portrait*, m.
 to Possess, a.v. *posséder*, i. 16. *avoir*, iii. irr. p. 30.
 Possession, n. *possession*, f.
 Possibility, n. *possibilité*, f.
 Possible, adj. *possible*, 64.
 Post, n. (a piece of wood or stone, &c.) *po-*
teau, x, m. 30. (a military station) *poste*, m.
 (the post-office) *poste*, f.
 Post-office, n. *poste*, f.
 Posterity, n. *postérité*, f.
 to Postpone, a.v. *différer*, i. 16. *remettre*, iv.
 irr. 343. *Différer* requires *jusques*, and
remettre requires *à* before their object.
 Pot, n. *pot*, m. —Tea-pot, *théière*, f.
 Potato, n. *pomme de terre*, f. 486.
 Potentate, n. *potentat*, m.
 Pound, n. *livre*, f.
 Powder, n. *poudre*, f.
 Power, n. *pouvoir*, m. *force*, f.
 Powerful, adj. *puissant*, e, 65.
 Practice, n. *pratique*, f.
 to Practise, a.v. *pratiquer*, i.
 Praise, n. *louange*, f. *éloge*, m.
 to Preach, a.v. *prêcher*, i.
 Preacher, n. *prédicateur*, m.
 Preceding, adj. *précédent*, e, 65.
 Precious, adj. *précieux*, se, 68.
 Precisely, adv. *précisément*.

PR

Precision, n. *précision*, f.
 Predecessor, n. *prédécesseur*, m.
 Prefect, n. *préfet*, m.
 Prefecture, n. *préfecture*, f.
 to Prefer, a.v. *préférer*, i. 16. *aimer mieux*, i.
 Preferable, adj. *préférable*, 64.
 Prefixed, adj. *préfix*, e, 68, exc.
 Preparation, n. *préparatif*, m.
 to Prepare, a.v. *préparer*, i.
 Presence, n. *présence*, f.—Presence of mind,
présence d'esprit.
 Present, adj. *présent*, e, 65.
 Present, n. *présent*, m. *cadeau*, x, m. 30.
 at Present, adv. *à présent*, *maintenant*.
 to Present, a.v. *présenter*.—To present some
 one with a thing, *présenter une chose à*
quelqu'un, *offrir*, ii. irr. 214.
 Preserve, n. *confiture*, f.
 to Preserve, a.v. (to keep) *conserver*, i.
 to Preside, n.v. *présider*, i.
 —To preside over, *présider à*, i.
 President, n. *président*, m.
 Press, n. *presse*, f.
 to Press, a.v. *presser*, i.
 to Pretend, a.&n.v. *prétendre*, iv.
 Pretension, n. *prétention*, f.
 Pretty, adj. *joli*, e, 65.
 Pretty, adv. *assez*.—Pretty well, *assez bien*.
 to Prevail, n.v. *l'emporter sur*, i. *prévaloir*,
 iii. irr. 265.
 to Prevent, a.v. (to hinder) *empêcher*, i. (to
 anticipate) *prévenir*, ii. irr. 238.
 Previous, adj. *antérieur*, e, 69, 6th exc.—The
 day previous, *la veille*, f.
 Previously, adv. *auparavant*.
 Price, n. *prix*, m.
 Pride, n. *orgueil*, m.—To take pride in, *se*
piquer de, i. re. 187. *s'enorgueillir de* ii re.
 187 & fol. [187 & fol.
 to Pride one's self, n.v. *s'enorgueillir*, ii. re.
 Priest, n. *prêtre*, m.
 Prince, n. *prince*, m.
 Princess, n. *princesse*, f.
 Principally, adv. *principalement*.
 Principle, n. *principe*, m.
 to Print, a.v. *imprimer*, i.
 Prison, n. *prison*, f.
 Prisoner, n. *prisonnier*, m. *prisonnière*, f.
 —Prisoner at the bar, *accusé*, m. *accusée*, f.
 Privation, n. *privation*, f.
 Privilege, n. *privilège*, m.
 Prize, n. *prix*, m.
 Probable, adj. *probable*, 64.
 Probably, adv. *probablement*.

PR PU

Problem, n. *problème*, m.
 Procession, n. *procession*, f.
 to Proclaim, a.v. *proclamer*, i.
 to Procure, a.v. *procurer*, i. (for one's self) *se*
procurer, i. re. 187.
 Prodigious, adj. *prodigue*, 64.
 to Produce, a.v. *produire*, iv. irr. 300.
 Produce, n. *produit*, m. *revenu*, m.
 Product, n. *production*, f. *produit*, m.
 Production, n. *production*, f. *fruit*, m.
 Professor, n. *professeur*, m.
 Profit, n. *profit*, m.
 Profitable, adj. *profitable*, 64.
 Profitably, adv. *d'une manière avantageuse*;
avantageusement.
 Profound, adj. *profond*, e, 65.
 to Prohibit, a.v. *défendre*, iv.
 Project, n. *projet*, m.
 to Project, a.v. *projeter*, i. 15.—to Project, (to
 gush out, to protrude) *saillir*, ii. irr. 235, 236.
 Promise, n. *promesse*, f.
 to Promise, a.v. *promettre*, iv. irr. 343.
 to Promote, a.v. *avancer*, i. 13. *augmenter*, i.
faire fleurir, iv. irr. 323.
 Promotion, n. *promotion*, f.
 Pronoun, n. *pronom*, m.
 to Pronounce, a.v. *prononcer*, i. 13.
 Pronunciation, n. *prononciation*, f.
 Proof, n. *preuve*, f. (of a print) *épreuve*, f.
 to Propagate, a.v. *propager*, i. 14.
 Propensity, n. *inclination*, f.
 Property, n. *propriété*, f.
 Prophet, n. *prophète*, m.
 to Propose, a.v. *proposer*, i.
 Proposition, n. *proposition*, f.
 Prose, n. *prose*, f.
 Proselyte, n. *prosélyte*, m. & f.
 Prospect, n. *perspective*, f.
 to Prosper, n.v. *prosperer*, i. 16.
 Prosperous, adj. *prospère*, 64.
 to Protect, a.v. *protéger*, i. 14, 16.
 Protection, n. *protection*, f.
 Protector, n. *protecteur*, m. *protectrice*, f.
 Proud, adj. *orgueilleux*, se, 68.
 to Prove, a.v. (by argument or fact) *prouver*, i.
 to Prove, a.v. (to experience) *éprouver*, i.
 to Provide, n.v. *pourvoir*, iii. irr. 259. *fournir*, ii.
 —to Provide for, *pourvoir à*, *fournir à*.
 Provided, adj. *pourvu*, e, 65.
 Provided that, conj. *pourvu que*, 109.
 Province, n. *province*, f.
 Provision, n. *provision*, f.
 Provocation, n. *provocation*, f.
 Prudence, n. *prudence*, f.

PR RA

Prudent, adj. *prudent*, *c*, 65.
 Prussia, prop.n. *Prusse*, *f*. 492, 506.
 Public, adj. *public*, *que*, 72.
 Public, n. *public*, *m*.
 Publication, n. *publication*, *f*.
 to Publish, a.v. *publier*, *i*.
 Publisher, n. *éditeur*, *m*.
 Puerile, adj. *puéril*, *c*, 65.
 Punctual, adj. *ponctuel*, *le*, 66; *exact*, *c*, 65.
 Punctuality, n. *ponctualité*, *f*.
 Punctually, adv. *ponctuellement*.
 to Punish, a.v. *punir*, *ii*.
 Punishment, n. *punition*, *f*. *peine*, *f*. *châtiment*, *m*.
 Pupil, n. (of the eye) *prunelle*, *f*. (a student)
 Purchase, n. *achat*, *m*. [*élève*, *m*. & *f*.
 Pure, adj. *pur*, *c*, 65.
 Purse, n. *bourse*, *f*.
 to Pursue, a.v. *poursuivre*, *iv*. irr. 363.
 Pursuit, n. *poursuite*, *f*.
 to Push, a.v. *pousser*, *i*.
 to Put, a.v. *mettre*, *iv*. irr. 343.

Q QU

Quadruped, n. *quadrupède*, *m*.
 Quality, n. *qualité*, *f*.
 Quantity, n. *quantité*, *f*.
 Quarrel, n. *querelle*, *f*. [*se*, 69, 4th.
 Quarrellous, Quarrelsome, adj. *querelleur*,
 Quarter, n. *quartier*, *m*.—Quarter of an hour,
 Queen, n. *reine*, *f*. [*quart d'heure*.
 to Quench, a.v. *étancher*, *i*. *diminuer*, *i*.
 Question, n. *question*, *f*.
 to Question, a.v. (to doubt) *révoquer en doute*, *i*.
 Quick, adj. *vif*, *ve*, 67. *prompt*, *c*, 65.
 Quick, Quickly, adv. *vite*, *promptement*.
 Quicksilver, n. *mercure*, *m*. *vif-argent*, *m*.
 Quiet, adj. *tranquille*, 64.
 to Quit, a.v. *quitter*, *i*.
 Quotation, n. *citation*, *f*.

R RE

Rabbit, n. *lapin*, *m*.
 Racine, prop.n. *Racine*, *m*.
 Radical, adj. *radical*, *c*, 65.
 Rage, n. *rage*, *f*.
 Raguse, prop.n. *Raguse*, *m*.
 to Raguse, a.n. & v. (to cheat, to betray) *raguser*, *i*. *trahir*, *ii*. *tromper*, *i*. *décevoir*, *iii*.
 Rain, n. *pluie*, *f*.
 to Rain, n.v. *pleuvoir*, *iii*. irr. 258.
 Rainbow, n. *arc-en-ciel*, *m*. 486.
 Rainy, adj. *pluvieux*, *se*, 68.
 to Raise, a.v. (to educate) *élever*, *i*. 17. (to lift up) *lever*, *i*. 17.

RA RE

Rank, n. *rang*, *m*.
 Rapidity, n. *rapidité*, *f*. *vitesse*, *f*.
 Rapport, n. *rapport*, *m*.
 Rare, adj. *rare*, 64.
 Rash, adj. *inconsidéré*, *c*, 65. *téméraire*, 64.
 Rather, adv. *plutôt*.
 Ravenna, prop.n. (a city) *Ravenna*, *f*.
 to Reach, a.v. *atteindre*, *iv*. irr. 308. *arriver à*, *i*.
 to Read, a.v. *lire*, *iv*. irr. 341.
 Reader, n. *lecteur*, *m*.
 Ready, adj. *prêt*, *c*, 65.
 Real, adj. *réel*, *le*, 66.
 Reality, n. *réalité*, *f*.
 to Realize, a.v. *réaliser*, *i*.
 to Reap, a.v. *recolter*, *i*. *moissonner*, *i*.
 to Rear, a.v. *lever*, *i*. *élever*, *i*. 17.
 Reason, n. *raison*, *f*.—It is or that is the reason why, *c'est pourquoi*, *c'est pour cette raison que*.
 Reasonable, adj. *raisonnable*, 64. *modéré*, *c*, 65.
 Reasonably, adv. *raisonnablement*.
 to Receive, a.v. *recevoir*, *iii*.
 Recent, adj. *récent*, *c*, 65.
 Recently, adv. *récemment*.
 Reception, n. *réception*, *f*.
 Reciprocal, adj. *réci-proque*, 64.
 Reciprocally, adv. *réci-proquement*.
 Reciprocity, n. *réci-procité*, *f*.
 to Recite, a.v. *réciter*, *i*.
 to Recommend, a.v. *recommander à*, *i*.
 Recommendable, adj. *recommandable*, 64.
 Recommendation, n. *recommandation*, *f*.
 Record, n. *registre*, *m*. *histoire*, *f*.
 to Recover, a.v. *recouvrer*, *i*.
 Red, adj. & n. *rouge*, *m*.
 Re-election, n. *réélection*, *f*.
 to Reflect, a. & n.v. *réfléchir*, *ii*.
 Reflection, n. *réflexion*, *f*.
 Reform, Reformation, n. *réforme*, *f*.
 to Refuse, a.v. *refuser*, *i*.
 Regard, n. *égard*, *m*.—in Regard to, *à l'égard de*, 757.
 Regarding, prep. *concernant*.
 Regiment, n. *régiment*, *m*.
 Regret, n. *regret*, *m*.
 to Regret, a.v. *regretter*, *i*.
 Regular, adj. *régulier*, *c*, 65.
 Regularity, n. *régularité*, *f*.
 Regularly, adv. *régulièrement*.
 to Regulate, a.v. *régler*, *i*. 16.
 Regulation, n. *réglement*, *m*.
 Reign, n. *régne*, *m*.
 to Reign, n.v. *régner*, *i*. 16.
 to Relate, a.v. *raconter*, *i*. *rapporter*, *i*.

RE

Relation, n. *relation*, f. (kindred) *parent*, m.
parente, f.
 —In relation to, *par rapport à, à l'égard de*.
 to Relieve, a.v. *soulager*, i. 14.
 Religion, n. *religion*, f.
 Religious, adj. *religieux*, *se*, 68.
 Reluctance, n. *répugnance*, f.
 to Remain, n.v. *rester*, i. *demeurer*, i.
 Remainder, n. *reste*, m.
 Remark, n. *remarque*, f. *observation*, f.
 to Remark, a.v. *remarquer*, i. *observer*, i.
 Remarkable, adj. *remarquable*, 64.
 Remedy, n. *remède*, m.
 to Remedy, a.v. *remédier à*, i. *réparer*, i.
 to Remember, a.v. *se souvenir de*, ii. irr. 238.
 re. 187. *se rappeler*, i. 15. re. 187.
 Remi, prop.n. *Rémi*, m.
 Remote, adj. *éloigné*, *e*, 65. *reculé*, *e*, 65.
 to Render, a.v. *rendre*, iv.
 to Renounce, a.v. *renoncer à*, i. 13. [*nom*, m.
 Renown, n. *renommée*, f. *réputation*, f. *re-*
 Rent, n. (hire) *loyer*, m.
 Rent, n. (income) *rente*, f.
 Repast, n. *repas*, m.
 to Repeat, a.v. *répéter*, i. 16.
 to Replace, (to place again) a.v. *remplacer*, i.
 13. (to substitute) *remplacer*, i. 13.
 Reply, n. *réponse*, f.
 to Reply, a.v. *répondre*, iv.
 Report, n. *rapport*, m. (what is said, or a
 Repose, n. *repos*, m. [*noise*] *bruit*, m.
 Reprimand, n. *réprimande*, f.
 Reproach, n. *reproche*, m.
 to Reproach, a.v. *reprocher*, i.—To reproach
 a person of some thing, *reprocher une chose*
à une personne.—To reproach one, *faire*
des reproches à quelqu'un.
 Republic, n. *république*, f. [*caine*, f.
 Republican, adj. & n. *républicain*, m. *républi-*
 Reputation, n. *réputation*, f.
 Request, n. *requête*, f.
 to Request, a.v. *prier*, i. *demander*, i.—To
 request a thing of a person, *demander une*
chose à une personne.—To request a person
 to do a thing, *prier une personne, or deman-*
der à une personne de faire une chose.
 to Require, a.v. *demander*, i. See the pre-
 ceding example. *requérir*, ii. 207.
 Research, n. *recherche*, f.
 Reservoir, n. *réservoir*, m.
 to Reside, n.v. *demeurer*, i.
 Residence, n. *résidence*, f.
 to Resist, a.v. *résister à*, i.
 to Resolve, a.v. *résoudre*, iv. irr. 354.

RE RO

Respect, n. *respect*, m.
 to Respect, a.v. *respecter*, i.
 Restitution, n. *restitution*, f.
 to Restore, a.v. *rendre*, iv. (to put in the same
 state) *rétablir*, ii. [iv. irr. 363.
 to Result, n.v. *résulter*, i. 205. *s'en suivre*,
 Result, n. *résultat*, m.—To be the result, *ré-*
sulter, 205. [*sumer*, i.
 to Resume, a.v. *reprendre*, iv. irr. 353. *ré-*
 to Return, n.v. (to a distant place) *retourner*, i.
 (where the speaker is) *revenir*, ii. irr. 238.
 Return, n. *retour*, m.
 to Revenge, a.v. *venger*, i. 14.—To revenge,
 or to take revenge of an offence, *se venger*
d'un affront, re. 187.
 Revenge, n. *vengeance*, f.
 Revengeful, adj. *vengeur*, *eresse*, 69, 6th exc.
vindictif, *ve*, 67.
 to Revere, a.v. *révérer*, i. 16.
 Reverence, n. *vénération*, f. *révérence*, f.
 Reverend, adj. *révérénd*, m.
 Revolt, n. *révolte*, f.
 to Revolt, n.v. *se revolter*, i. re. 187.
 Revolution, n. *révolution*, f.
 Reward, n. *récompense*, f.
 to Reward, a.v. *récompenser*, i.
 Ribbon, n. *ruban*, m.
 Rice, n. *riz*, m.
 Rich, adj. *riche*, 64.
 Richard, prop.n. *Richard*, m.
 Riches, n. *richesse*, f.
 Richly, adv. *richement*.
 Ridiculous, adj. *ridicule*, 64.
 Right, n. *droit*, m.—To be right, or to be in
 the right, *avoir raison*.
 Righteous, adj. *juste*, 64.
 Rigid, adv. *rigide*, 64. *sévère*, 64.
 Rigour, n. *rigueur*, f.
 Rigorous, adj. *rigoureux*, *se*, 68.
 Ring, n. *bague*, f.
 to Ring, a.v. (a bell) *sonner*, i.
 Ripe, adj. *mûr*, *e*, 65.
 to Rise, n.v. (one's self) *s'élever*, i. 17. re. 187
 to Rise, n.v. (to ascend) *monter*, i.
 to Rise, n.v. (to ferment) *lever*, i. 17.
 Rival, n. *rival*, *aux*, m. 30. *rivale*, f.
 River, n. *rivière*, f.
 to Roast, a.v. *rôtir*, ii.
 Robber, n. *voleur*, m. *voleuse*, f.
 Robbery, n. *vol*, m.
 Robe, n. *robe*, f.
 Robust, adj. *robuste*, 64.
 Rock, n. *roc*, m. *rocher*, m. *roche*, f.
 Rogue, n. *coquin*, m. *coquine*, f.

RO SA

Roguish, adj. *fripon*, *ne*, 66. *espiègle*, 64.
 Roman, adj.&n. *Romain*, m. *Romaine*, f.
 Romance, n. *roman*, m.
 Rome, prop.n. *Rome*, f. [*toit*, m.
 Roof, n. (of the mouth) *palais*, m. (of a house)
 Room, n. (to lodge in) *chambre*, f. (space)
 Root, n. *racine*, f. [*place*, f.
 Rose, n. *rose*, f.
 Rose-bush, n. *rosier*, m.
 Rose-bud, n. *bouton de rose*.
 Rosy, adj. *vermeil*, *le*, 66.
 Roughness, n. *rudesse*, f.
 Round, adj. *rond*, *e*, 65.
 to Round, a.v. *arrondir*, ii.
 Round, prep. *autour de*.
 Rousseau, prop.n. *Rousseau*, m.
 to Rub, a.v. *frotter*, i.
 Rudder, n. *gouvernail*, m.
 Ruin, n. *ruine*, f.
 to Ruin, a.v. *ruiner*, i. *perdre*, iv.
 Ruined, adj. *perdu*, *e*, 65.
 Ruinous, adj. *ruineux*, *se*, 68.
 Rule, n. *règle*, f.
 to Rule, a.v. *gouverner*, i.
 Ruler, n. *chef*, m.
 to Run, n.v. *courir*, ii. irr. 213.—To run away,
fuir, ii. irr. 222. *s'enfuir*, ii. irr. 222. re. 187.
 Russia, prop.n. *Russie*, f. 492, 506.
 Russian, adj.&n. *Russe*, 64.

S SA

Sabacón, prop.n. *Sabacón*, m.
 Sacrifice, n. *sacrifice*, m.
 to Sacrifice, a.v. *sacrifier*, i.
 Sad, adj. *triste*, 64. *fâcheux*, *se*, 68.
 Saddle, n. *selle*, f.
 Safe, adj. *sûr*, *e*, 65.
 Safety, n. *sûreté*, f.
 to Sail, n.v. *faire voile*, iv. irr. 323.
 Sailor, n. *matelot*, m. *marin*, m.
 Saint, adj.&n. *saint*, m. *sainte*, f.
 Saint-Louis, prop.n. *Saint-Louis*, m.
 Salad, n. *salade*, f.
 Sale, n. *vente*, f.—To be for sale, *être à vendre*.
 Salem, prop.n. *Salem*, m.
 Salt, n. *sel*, m.
 to Salt, a.v. *saler*, i.
 Salvation, n. *salut*, m.
 Same, adj. *même*, 64.—The same, or the same
 thing, *la même chose*.—The same as, conj.
de même que.—The same, adv. *de même*.
 Sand, n. *sable*, m.
 Sand-box, n. *sablier*, m.

SA SE

Satisfaction, n. *satisfaction*, f.
 Satisfactory, adj. *satisfaisant*, *e*, 65.
 to Satisfy, a.v. *satisfaire*, iv. irr. 323. *contenter*, i.
 Saturday, n. *Samedi*, m.
 Sauce, n. *sauce*, f.
 Saucer, n. *soucoupe*, f.
 Savage, adj. &n. *sauvage*, 64.
 to Save, a.v. *sauver*, i.
 Saw, n. *scie*, f.
 to Saw, a.v. *scier*, i.
 Saw, pret. of to see.
 to Say, a.v. *dire*, iv. irr. 316.
 Scale, n. (of an animal) *écaille*, f. (to weigh
 with) *balance*, f. (a ladder) *échelle*, f.
 Scarce, adj. *rare*, 64.
 Scarce, Scarcely, adv. *rarement*, *à peine*.
 Scarecrow, n. *épouvantail*, m.
 Scholar, n. *élève*, m. & f. *écolier*, m. *écolière*, f.
 School, n. *école*, f.
 Science, n. *science*, f.
 Scientific, Scientifical, adj. *scientifique*, 64.
 Scientifically, adv. *scientifiquement*.
 Scissors, n. *ciseaux*, m. p.
 to Scold, a. &n. v. *gronder*, i.
 Scotland, prop.n. *Écosse*, f. 492, 506.
 Screen, n. *écran*, m. [*chou*, m.
 Screw, n. *vis*, f. 28.—Cork screw, *tire bou-*
Sea, n. *mer*, f.
 Seal, n. *cachet*, m. *sceau*, *x*, m. 30.
 to Search, a & n.v. *examiner*, i. *chercher*, i.
 Search, n. *recherche*, f.
 Season, n. *saison*, f.—To be in season, *être*
Seat, n. *siège*, m. [*d temps*.
 to Seat, a.v. *asseoir*, iii. irr. 242, 243.
 Second, ord. nu. *second*, *e*, 65, 561 & fol.
 Secret, n. *secret*, m. [*deuxième*.
 Secretary, n. *secrétaire*, m.
 Secretly, adv. *secrètement*, *en secret*.
 Section, n. *section*, f. [*sécurité*, f.
 Security, n. (a respondent) *caution*, f. (safety)
 to Seduce, a.v. *séduire*, iv. irr. 300.
 Seducing, adj. *séduisant*, *e*, 65.
 to See, a.v. *voir*, iii. irr. 282.—To see again,
revoir, iii. irr. 282.
 Seed, n. *graine*, f. *semence*, f.
 to Seek, a.v. *chercher*, i.—To seek after,
chercher, i. [*irr. 303*.
 to Seem, n.v. *sembler*, u.v. 166. *paraître*, iv.
 to Seize, a.v. *saisir*, ii. *se saisir de*, ii. re. 187.
 Seldom, adv. *rarement*.
 Select, Selected, adj. *choisi*, *e*, 65.
 to Select, a.v. *choisir*, ii.
 Self, adj. & pron. *même* ; *selves*, *mêmes*.

SE SH

to Sell, a.v. *vendre*, iv.
 Senate, n. *sénat*, m.
 to Send, a.v. *envoyer*, i. irr. 201.—To send for, *envoyer chercher*, *envoyer quérir*.
 Seneca, Seneca, prop. n. *Sénèque*, m.
 Sensation, n. *sensation*, f.
 Sense, n. *sens*, m.
 Senseless, adj. *insensible*, 64.
 Sensibility, n. *sensibilité*, f.
 Sensibly, adv. *sensiblement*.
 Sensitive, adj. *sensible*, 64.
 Sentence, n. *sentence*, f.
 to Separate, a.v. *séparer*, i.
 Separately, adv. *séparément*.
 Separation, n. *séparation*, f.
 September, prop. n. *Septembre*, m.
 Seraglio, n. *sérail*, m.
 Sergeant, n. *sergent*, m.
 Series, n. *série*, f. *suite*, f.
 Serious, adj. *sérieux*, *se*, 68.
 Sermon, n. *sermon*, m.
 Serpent, n. *serpent*, m. [servante, f.
 Servant, n. *domestique*, m. & f. *serviteur*, m.
 to Serve, a. & n. v. *servir*, ii. irr. 237.
 Service, n. *service*, m.
 Serviceable, adj. *serviable*, 64.
 Set, n. *assortiment*, m.
 to Set, a. v. *poser*, i. *placer*, i. 13. *établir*, ii.
 to Set down, a. v. *asseoir*, iii. irr. 242, 243.
 to Set out, n. v. *partir*, ii. irr. 232.
 Settee, n. *sofa*, m.
 to Settle, a. v. (one's concerns) *régler*, i. 16.
 Settlement, n. (a place) *établissement*, m. (of business) *règlement*, m.
 Seven, car. nu. *sept*.
 Sevenfold, adv. *sept fois*.
 Seventeen, card. nu. *dix-sept*.
 Seventeenth, ord. nu. & n. *dix-septième*, 561 & fol.
 Seventh, ord. nu. & n. *septième*, 561 & fol.
 Seventieth, ord. nu. & n. *soixante et dixième*, 561 & fol.
 Seventy, card. nu. *soixante et dix*.
 Several, adj. *plusieurs*, 43. pp. 320, 321.
 Severe, adj. *sévère*, 64.
 Severely, adv. *sévèrement*; *rudement*.
 to Sew, a. v. *coudre*, iv. irr. 307.
 to Shake, a. v. *secouer*, i.
 Shame, n. *honte*, f.
 Shameful, adj. *honteux*, *se*, 68.
 Share, n. *portion*, f. *part*, f.
 to Share, a. v. *partager*, i. 14.
 Sharp, adj. *aigu*, *e*, 65.
 Shaving, n. *copeaux*, *x*, m. 30.
 Shawl, n. *châle*, m.

SH SI

She, per. pro. *elle*, f. 87, 88, 426, 427.
 to Shear, a. v. *tondre*, iv.
 to Shed, a. v. *répandre*, iv. *verser*, i.
 Sheep, n. *brebis*, f.
 Sheet, u. (for a bed) *drap*, m. (of paper, or of any other thing) *feuille*, f.
 Shelf, *tablette*, f.
 Shell, n. *coquille*, f.
 Shelter, n. *abri*, m.
 Shelves, p. n. *tablettes*, f. p.
 Sheriff, n. *shérif*, m.
 to Shine, n. v. *briller*, i. *luire*, iv. irr. 370.
 Ship, n. *bâtiment*, m. *vaisseau*, *x*, m. 30.
 Shire, n. *comté*, m.—Shire-town, *chef-lieu*, m.
 Shoe, n. *soulier*, m. [484.
 Shop, n. *boutique*, f.
 Shore, n. *côte*, f. *rivage*, m.
 Short, adj. *court*, *e*, 65.
 to Shorten, a. v. *accourcir*, ii.
 Should, when changeable into OUGHT, is rendered by *devoir*, 248.
 Shoulder, n. *épaule*, f.
 Shovel, n. *pelle*, f.
 to Show, a. v. *montrer*, i. *faire voir*, iv. irr. 323.
 Shower, n. *ondée*, f. *pluie*, f. *averse*, f.
 to Shut, a. v. *fermer*, i.
 Sick, adj. & n. *malade*, m. & f.
 Sickness, n. *maladie*, f.
 Side, n. *côté*, m.—Side-walk, n. *trottoir*, m.
 Sigh, n. *soupir*, m.
 to Sigh, n. v. *soupirer*, i.
 Sight, n. *vue*, f.
 Sign, n. (a gesture, or mark) *signe*, m. (a to Sign, a. v. *signer*, i. [mark] *marque*, f.
 Signature, n. *signature*, f.
 Signification, n. *signification*, f.
 to Signify, a. v. & n. *signifier*, i.
 Signification, n. *signification*, f.
 Silence, n. *silence*, m.
 Silent, adj. *silencieux*, *se*, 68.—To be silent, *être silencieux*, or *se taire*, iv. irr. 364, 365.
 Silk, n. *soie*, f.
 Silks, p. n. *soieries*, f. p.
 Silkworm, n. *ver à soie*, m. 486.
 Silver, n. *argent*, m.
 Silver-plate, n. *argenterie*, f. *vaisselle d'argent*, f.
 Similar, adj. *pareil*, *le*, 66. *semblable*, 64.
 Simple, adj. *simple*, 64.
 Simplicity, n. *simplicité*, f.
 Simply, adv. *simplement*.
 Sin, n. *péché*, m.
 to Sin, n. v. *pécher*, i. 16.
 Since, prep. *depuis*, 739, 740.
 Since, conj. *depuis que*, *puisque*, 739, 740.

SI SM

—Long Since, adv. *depuis long-temps*.
 Sincere, adj. *sincère*, 64.
 Sincerely, adv. *sincèrement*.
 Sinful man,—woman, adj. *pécheur*, m. *pécheresse*, f. *méchant*, e, 65.
 to Sing, a.v. *chanter*, i.
 Singer, n. *chanteur*, m. *chanteuse*, f.
 Single, adj. *seul*, e. 65.—A single one, *un seul*, m. *une seule*, f.—To be single, (not married) *être garçon*, m. *être fille*, f.
 Sinner, n. *pécheur*, m. *pécheresse*, f.
 Sister, n. *sœur*, f.—Sister-in-law, *belle-sœur*, f.
 to Sit, a.v. *asseoir*, iii. irr. 242, 243.
 Sitting, n. *séance*, f. *session*, f.
 Situate, adj. *situé*, e, 65. *placé*, e, 65. *sis*, e, 65.
 Situation, n. *situation*, f. *place*, f.
 Six, car. nu. *six*.
 Sixteen, car. nu. *seize*.
 Sixteenth, ord. nu. & n. *seizième*, 561 & fol.
 Sixth, ord. nu. & n. *sixième*, 561 & fol.
 Sixtieth, ord. nu. & n. *soixantième*, 561 & fol.
 Sixty, car. nu. *soixante*.
 Size, n. *volume*, m. *grosseur*, f. *grandeur*, f. (animal size) *taille*, f.
 Sketch, n. *esquisse*, f. *ébauche*, f.
 Skilful, adj. (mentally or mechanically) *habile*, 64. (mechanically) *adroit*, e, 65.
 Skilfully, adv. *adroitement*.
 Skin, n. *peau*, z, f. 30.
 Skull, n. *crâne*, m.
 Sky, n. *ciel*, *cieux*, m. 33, 5th exc.
 to Slander, a.v. *calomnier*, i.
 Slander, n. *calomnie*, f.
 Slanderer, n. *calomniateur*, m. *calomnatrice*, f.
 Slaughter, n. *carnage*, m.
 to Slaughter, a.v. *tuer*, i. *massacrer*, i.
 Slave, n. *esclave*, m. & f.
 Slavery, n. *esclavage*, m.
 Sleep, n. *sommeil*, m.
 to Sleep, n.v. *reposer*, i. *dormir*, ii. irr. 216.
 Sleepy, adj. *assoupi*, e, 65.
 Sleeve, n. *manche*, f.
 Slight, adj. (in size) *petit*, e, 65, 75. (feeble) *faible*, 64.
 Slight, n. *mépris*, m. *dédain*, m.
 to Slight, a.v. *mépriser*, i. *ne pas faire cas de*, iv. irr. 323.
 Slightly, adv. *faiblement*, *peu*, *légèrement*.
 Slow, adj. *lent*, e, 65.
 Slowly, adv. *lentement*.
 Slowness, n. *lenteur*, f.
 Slumber, n. *sommeil*, m.
 Small, adj. *petit*, e, 65, 76.
 Smell, n. (the sense) *odorat*, m. (odour) *odeur*, f.

SM SO

to Smell, a.v. *sentir*, ii. irr. 227.
 Smile, n. *souris*, m. 28. *sourire*, m.
 to Smile, n.v. *sourire*, iv. irr. 355.
 Smoke, n. *fumée*, f.
 to Smoke, a. & n.v. *fumer*, i.
 Smooth, adj. *uni*, e, 65.
 to Smooth, a.v. *unir*, ii. *polir*, ii.
 Snare, n. *piège*, m.
 Snow, n. *neige*, f.
 to Snow, n.v. *neiger*, u.v. 166.
 Snuffers, p. n. *mouchettes*, f.p.
 So, adv. & conj. *ainsi*, *aussi*, *si*, *le*, 112, 169, 176, 608, 657, 713 & fol.
 So many, adv. *autant de*.—So very, *si*, 708.
 —So as to, *comme pour*, *de manière à*.—So that, conj. *de sorte que*.—So much, *tant*, *tant de*, 713 & fol.—And so forth, adv. *et cætera*, *et ainsi du reste*.
 Sociable, adj. *social*, e, 65. *sociable*, 64. *doux*, [ce, 68, exc.
 Society, n. *société*, f.
 Soft, adj. *mou*, *mol*, m. *molle*, 70, 71, f. 76.
 to Soften, a.v. *amollir*, ii. *adoucir*, ii.
 Softly, adv. *doucement*.
 Softness, n. *mollesse*, f. *douceur*, f.
 Soil, n. (ground) *terrain*, m. *sol*, m.
 to Soil, a.v. *sallir*, ii.
 Soldier, n. *soldat*, m.
 Sole, adj. *seul*, e, 65.
 Solemn, adj. *solemnel*, le, 66.
 Solemnity, n. *solemnité*, f.
 Solid, n. *solide*, m.
 Solid, adj. *solide*, 64.
 Solidity, n. *solidité*, f.
 Some, adj. *quelque*, *quelques*, 42. [442, 443.
 Some, art. & pro. *du*, *dela*, &c. *en*, 44, 172,
 Somebody, Some one, pro. *quelqu'un*, m. *quelqu'une*, 438, 442, 443.
 Something, n. *quelque chose*, f. 474.
 Sometimes, adv. *quelquefois*, *tantôt*, 719.
 Somewhere, adv. *quelque part*.—Somewhere else, *quelqu'autre part*.
 Son, n. *fil*, m.—Son-in-law, *beau-fils*, m.—Grand-son, *petit-fils*, m.
 Song, n. *chanson*, f.
 Soon, adv. *bientôt*, *tôt*.—So soon, adv. *si tôt*.—So soon as, *aussi tôt que*.—Soon after, *bientôt après*.
 Sooner, adv. *plus tôt*.
 Sore, n. *mal*, *maux*, m. 33.—Sore eyes, *mal aux yeux*.—Sore throat, *mal à la gorge*.
 Sorrow, n. *chagrin*, m.
 Sorry, adj. *fâché*, e, 65.
 Sort, n. *sorte*, f. *espèce*, f.
 Soul, n. *âme*, f.

SO ST

ST

Sound, n. (probe) *sonde*, f.
 Sound, n. (noise) *son*, m.
 Sound, adj. *bon*, *ne*, 66. *sain*, *e*, 65.—Sound sleep, *profond sommeil*.
 Soup, n. *soupe*, f.
 Source, n. *source*, f.
 South, n. *le sud*, m. *le midi*, m.
 to Sow, a.v. (a field) *semer*, i. 15.
 to Sow, a.v. (a piece of cloth) *coudre*, iv. irr. 307.
 Space, n. *espace*, m.
 Spade, n. *bêche*, f.
 Spain, prop. n. *Espagne*, f. 492, 506.
 Spanish, adj. & n. *Espagnol*, m. *Espagnole*, f.
 to Spare, a.v. *ménager*, i. 14. *épargner*, i.
 Spark, n. (from fire) *étincelle*, f.
 Spatterdashes, n. *guêtres*, f.p. *guêtre*, f.s.
 to Speak, n.v. *parler*, i.—To stop speaking, *se taire*, iv. irr. 364, 365
 Special, adj. *spécial*, *e*, 65. *particulier*, *e*, 65.
 Specially, adv. *spécialement*, *particulièrement*, *surtout*.
 Spectacle, n. (a show) *spectacle*, m.
 Spectacles, n. (to help the sight) *lunettes*, f.p. *lunette*, f.s.
 Spectator, n. *spectateur*, m. *spectatrice*, f.
 to Speculate, n.v. *spéculer*, i.
 Speculation, n. *spéculation*, f.
 Speech, n. (a discourse) *discours*, m. (the faculty of speaking) *parole*, f.
 to Spend, a.v. (relating to time) *passer*, i.; (to property) *dépenser*, i.
 Sphere, n. *sphère*, f.
 Spider, n. *araignée*, f.
 to Spill, a.v. *répandre*, iv. *verser*, i.
 Spine, n. (the back bone) *épine du dos*, f.
 Spirit, n. *esprit*, m.
 Spiritual, adj. *spirituel*, *le*, 66. *intellectuel*, *le*, 66.
 Spit, n. (to roast with) *broche*.
 Spite, n. *dépit*, m.—In spite of, prep. *malgré*, *en dépit de*.
 to Split, a.v. *fendre*, iv.
 to Spoil, a.v. *gâter*, i.
 Spoon, n. *cuiller*, f.
 Sport, n. *divertissement*, m.
 to Sport, n.v. *s'amuser*, i. re.v. 187.
 Spot, n. (stain) *tâche*, f. (a place) *endroit*, m.
 to Spread, a.v. *répandre*, iv.
 Sprig, n. *rejeton*, m.
 Spring, n. (season) *printemps*, m.
 Spring, n. (elastic power) *ressort*, m.
 Spring, n. (of water) *source*, f.
 Squall, n. *coup de vent*, m.
 to Squeeze, a.v. *presser*, i. *serrer*, i.
 Stable, n. *écurie*, f.

Stalk, n. *tige*, f.—Stalk of wheat, *épi de blé*.
 Standard, n. (a flag) *étendard*, m. (a thing to go by) *règle*, f. *modèle*, m.
 Star, n. (any heavenly body) *astre*, m. (an apparently small luminous heavenly body, and its representation, also a fish) *étoile*, f.
 to Start, n.v. (to tremble) *tressaillir*, ii. irr. 208. (to set out) *partir*, ii. irr. 232.
 State, n. *état*, m.—United States, *États-unis*,
 Stationary, adj. *stationnaire*, 64. [m.p.
 Statue, n. *statue*, f.
 Stature, n. *stature*, f. *taille*, f.
 to Stay, n.v. *rester*, i.
 to Steal, a.v. *voler*, i.
 Steep, adj. *escarpé*, *e*, 65.
 Steeple, n. *clocher*, m.
 to Steer, a.v. *gouverner*, i.
 Siff, adj. *raide*, 64.
 Still, adv. *encore*.
 Stitch, n. *point*, m.
 to Stitch, a.v. *coudre*, iv. irr. 307.
 Stock, n. *provision*, f. *capital*, m.
 Stocking, n. *bas*, m.
 Stomach, n. *estomac*, m.
 Stone, n. *pierre*, f.
 Stool, n. *tabouret*, m.
 to Stop, a.v. (to prevent going on) *arrêter*, i. (to suspend) *suspendre*, iv.—To stop talking or speaking, *se taire*, iv. irr. 364, 365.
 to Stop, n.v. (one's self) *s'arrêter*, i. re.v. 187.
 Store, n. *magasin*, m.—To have in store, (for the occasion) *avoir en réserve*.
 Storm, n. *orage*, m. *tempête*, f.
 Story, n. *conte*, m. *histoire*, f.
 Stove, n. (to warm a room) *poêle*, or *poêle*, m.
 Strange, adj. *étrange*, 64.
 Stranger, n. *étranger*, m. *étrangère*, f.
 Straw, n. *paille*, f.
 Strawberry, n. *fraise*, f.
 Street, n. *rue*, f.
 Strength, n. *force*, f.
 to Strengthen, a.v. (to invigorate) *fortifier*, i. (to make more solid) *consolider*, i.
 to Strike, a.v. *battre*, iv. irr. 292. *frapper*, i. *fêrir*, ii. irr. 220.
 Striking, adj. *frappant*, *e*, 65.
 String, n. *corde*, f.
 to Strive, n.v. *s'évertuer à*, i. re.v. 187.
 Strong, adj. *fort*, *e*, 65.
 to Strut, n.v. *se carrer*, i. re.v. 187.
 Student, n. *étudiant*, m.
 Studious, adj. *studieux*, *se*, 68.
 Study, n. *étude*, f.
 to Study, a.v. *étudier*, i.

ST SU

Stuff, n. (cloth) *étoffe*, f.
 to Stuff, a.v. (to cram) *farcir*, ii.
 to Stun, a.v. *étourdir*, ii.
 Stupid, adj. *stupide*, 64. *lourd*, e, 65.
 Style, n. *style*, m.
 Subaltern, n. *subalterne*, m.&f. [*guer*, i.
 to Subdue, a.v. *soumettre*, iv. irr. 343. *subju*-
 Subject, n. *sujet*, m.
 Subject, adj. *soumis*, e, 65. *sujet*, te, 66.
 to Subject, a.v. *subjugu*, i. *soumettre*, iv. irr.
 to Subjugate, a.v. *subjugu*, i. [343.
 Sublime, adj. *sublime*, 64.
 Submissive, adj. *soumis*, e, 65.
 to Submit, a.v. *soumettre*, iv. irr. 343.
 to Subscribe, a.v. *souscrire* d, iv. irr. 321.
 Subscription, n. *souscription*, f.
 Subsecutive, adj. *subséquent*, e, 65.
 Subtraction, n. *soustraction*, f. *déduction*, f.
 to Succeed, n.v. *réussir*, ii
 Succeeding, adj. *suivant*, e, 65.
 Success, n. *succès*, m.
 Successful, adj. *heureux*, se, 68.
 Successively, adv. *successivement*.
 Succour, n. *secours*, m. *assistance*, f.
 to Succour, a.v. *secourir*, ii. irr. 213. *assister*, i.
 Such, pro. *tel*, m. *telle*, f.—No such thing,
rien de tel.—Such a one, *un tel*, m. *une telle*,
 f. 449—451.
 Sudden, adj. *soudain*, e, 65.
 Suddenly, on a sudden, adv. *soudainement*,
tout-à-coup.
 to Suffer, n.v. (some pain) *souffrir*, ii. irr. 214.
 to Suffer, a.v. (to endure) *supporter*, i. (to
 allow or permit) *permettre*, iv. 343.
 Suffering, n. *souffrance*, f.
 to Suffice, n.v. *suffire*, iv. irr. 361, 362.
 Sufficient, adj. *suffisant*, e, 65.—To be suffi-
 cient for, *suffire* d, 361, 362.
 Sugar, n. *suc*, m.
 Sugar-dish, n. *sucrier*, m.
 Sugar-plum, n. *dragée*, f. [sons] *suite*, f.
 Suit, n. (of things) *assortiment*, m. (of per-
 Suit at law, in law, n. *procès*, m.
 to Suit, a.&n.v. (to be suitable) *convenir*, ii.
 irr. 238. *seoir*, iii. irr. 273, 274.
 Sum, n. *somme*, f.—To make sums, (in arith-
 metic) *faire des règles*, iv. irr. 323.
 Summer, n. *été*, m.
 Summit, n. *sommet*, m.
 Sun, n. *soleil*, m.
 Sunday, prop. n. *Dimanche*, m.
 *Sunset, *coucher du soleil*, m.
 to Sup, n.v. *souper*, i.

SU TA

Superfluity, n. *superfluité*, f.
 Superfluous, adj. *superflu*, e, 65.
 Superior, adj.&n. *supérieur*, m. *supérieure*, f.
 Superiority, n. *supériorité*, f.
 Supper, n. *soupe*, m. *souper*, m.
 Supply, n. *secours*, m.
 to Supply, a.v. *fournir*, ii.—To supply one
 with something, *fournir quelque chose à*
 Support, n. *soutien*, m. [*quelqu'un*.
 to Support, a.v. *soutenir*, ii. irr. 238.
 to Suppose, a.v. *supposer*, i.
 Suppose that, conj. *supposé que*, 109.
 Supreme, adj. *suprême*, 64.
 Sure, adj. *sûr*, e, 65. *certain*, e, 65.
 Surgeon, n. *chirurgien*, m.
 Surgery, n. *chirurgie*, f. [irr. 368.
 to Surmount, a.v. *surmonter*, i. *vaincre*, iv.
 to Surprise, a.v. *surprendre*, iv. irr. 353.
 Surprising, adj. *étonnant*, e, 65. *surprenant*,
 e, 65.
 to Surround, a.v. *entourer*, i. *environner*, i.
 Susceptibility, n. *susceptibilité*, f.
 Susceptible, adj. *susceptible*, 64.
 Suspect, adj. *suspect*, e, 65.
 to Suspect, a.v. *soupçonner*, i.
 Suspicion, n. *soupçon*, m.
 Suspicious, adj. *soupçonneux*, se, 68.
 to Sustain, a.v. *soutenir*, ii. irr. 238.
 to Sweep, a.v. *balayer*, i. 18.
 Sweet, adj. *doux*, ce, 68, exc.
 to Sweeten, a.v. *adoucir*, ii.—To sweeten
 (with sugar) one's tea or coffee, *sucrer son*
thé ou son café.
 Sweetmeat, n. *confitures*, f.p. *sucreries*, f.p.
 to Swim, n.v. *nager*, i. 14.
 Swoon, n. *évanouissement*, m. *syncope*, f.
 to Swoon, n.v. *s'évanouir*, ii. re.v. 187.
 Sword, n. *épée*, f.—Small sword, n. *épée*, f.
 —Broad sword, n. *sabre*, m.
 Syllable, n. *syllabe*, f.
 Sympathy, n. *sympathie*, f.
 Syracuse, prop. n. *syracuse*, f.
 System, n. *système*, m.

T TA

Table, n. *table*, f.
 to Take, a.v. *prendre*, iv. irr. 353.—To take
 some one to a place, *mener quelqu'un à*
un endroit.—To take place, (to happen)
avoir lieu.—To take offence at a thing, *se*
fâcher d'une chose, re. 187 —To take cold,
s'enrhumer, i. re. 187.
 Tale, n. *conte*, m.

TA TH

Talent, n. *talent*, m.
 to Talk, n.v. *parler*, i.—To stop talking, *se taire*, iv. irr. 364, 365.
 Talk, n. *entretien*, m. *conversation*, f.
 Tall, adj. *grand*, e, 65, 76, 78. *haut*, e, 65.
 Tame, adj. *apprivoisé*, e, 65. *doux*, ce, 68, exc.
 Tapestry, n. *tapisserie*, f.
 to Tarnish, a.v. *ternir*, ii.
 to Tarry, n.v. *séjourner*, i. *rester*, i. *demeurer*, i.
 Tart, n. *tarte*, f.—Small tart, n. *tartelette*, f.
 Task, n. *tâche*, f.
 Taste, n. *goût*, m.
 to Taste, a.&n.v. *goûter*, i.
 Tax, n. *taxe*, f. *impôt*, m.
 to Tax, a.v. *taxer*, i.
 Tea, n. *thé*, m.
 Tea-pot, n. *théière*, f.
 to Teach, a.v. *enseigner*, i.
 Teacher, n. *précepteur*, m. *instructeur*, m. *maître*, m. *maîtresse*, f.
 Tear, n. *larme*, f.
 to Tear, a.v. *déchirer*, i.
 to Tease, a.v. *tourmenter*, i.
 Tedious, adj. *ennuyant*, e, 65.
 Teeth, n. (plural of tooth) *dents*, f.p. *dent*, f.s.
 to Tell, a.v. *dire*, iv. irr. 316 & fol.
 Temper, n. (relating to persons) *tempérament*, m. *humour*, f.
 Temperance, n. *tempérance*, f.
 Tempest, n. *tempête*, f.
 Temple, n. *temple*, m.
 to Tempt, a.v. *tenter*, i.
 Temptation, n. *tentation*, f.
 Ten, car.nu. *dix*.
 Tenant, n. (of a house) *locataire*, m.&f.
 Tender, adj. *tendre*, 64.
 Tenderly, adv. *tendrement*.
 Tenderness, n. *tendresse*, f.
 Tenth, ord.nu.&n. *dixième*, 561 & fol.
 Term, n. *terme*, m.
 to Terminate, a.v. *terminer*, i.
 Terrestrial, adj. *terrestre*, 64.
 Terrible, adj. *terrible*, 64.
 Territory, n. *territoire*, m.
 Terror, n. *terreur*, f.
 Tester, n. (of a bed) *ciel de lit*, m. 33, 5th exc.
 to Testify, a.&n.v. *témoigner*, i. *attester*, i.
 Testimonial, n. *preuve*, f. *certificat*, m.
 Testimony, n. *témoignage*, m.
 Tete-a-tete, n. *tête-à-tête*, m. 487.
 Text, n. *texte*, m.
 Than, conj. *que*, de, 103, 113, 114.
 to Thank, a.v. *remercier*, i.
 Thankful, adj. *reconnaissant*, e, 65.

TH

Thanks, p.n. *graces*, f.p. *remerciements*, m.p.
 That, demonstr.adj. *ce*, m.s. *cet*, m.s. *cette*, f.s. 55, 382 & fol.
 That, demonstr.pro. *celui*, m.s. *celle*, f.s. *cela*, 382, 383 & fol. 418 & fol.
 That, rel.pro. *qui*, m.&f. *que*, m.&f. *quoi*, m. *lequel*, m.s. *laquelle*, f.s. *lesquels*, m.p. *lesquelles*, f.p. 407 & fol. 601 & fol.
 That, conj. *que*, *afin que*, *pour que*, 109, 766 & fol.
 So that, conj. *si bien que*, *de sorte que*, *tellement que*.—At that time, adv. *alors*.—That way, *par là*.—That is, prep. *voilà*, 584 & fol.
 The, def.art. *le*, m.s. *la*, f.s. *l'*, m.&f.s. *les*, m.&f.p. 35 & fol. 491 & fol.
 Theatre, n. *théâtre*, m.
 Thee, per.pro. *toi*, te, 84, 85, 169 & fol.
 Theft, n. *vol*, m.
 Their, poss.adj. *leur*, m.&f.s. *leurs*, m.&f.p. 52, 85, 532, 782.
 Theirs, poss.pro. *le leur*, m.s. *la leur*, f.s. *les leurs*, m.&f.p. 378.
 Them, per.pro. *eux*, m.p. *elles*, f.p. *les*, *leur*, 84, 169 & fol. 185.
 Themselves, per.pro. *eux-mêmes*, m.p. *elles-mêmes*, f.p. *se*, 86, 190 & fol.
 Then, adv. *alors*.
 Then, conj. *donc*.
 Theology, n. *théologie*, f.
 Theory, n. *théorie*, f.
 There, adv. *là*, *y*, *en cela*, 169.—Here and there, *ça et là*.—There to be, *y avoir*, 167, 584 & fol.
 Therefore, adv.&conj. *c'est pourquoi*, *donc*, *en conséquence*.
 Therewith, adv. *avec cela*.
 These, demonstr.adj.&pro. *ces*, m.&f.p. 55, 56. *ceux-ci*, m.p. *celles-ci*, f.p. 385 & fol. 418 & fol.
 They, per.pro. *ils*, m.p. *elles*, f.p. 87, 88, 393.
 Thick, adj. *épais*, se, 66, 554, 555.
 Thickness, n. *épaisseur*, f.
 Thief, n. *voleur*, m. *voleuse*, f.
 to Thieve, n.v. *voler*, i.
 Thieves, p.n. *voleurs*, m.p. *voleuses*, f.p.
 Thievish, adj. *voleur*, se, 69, 4th.
 Thine, poss.pro. *le tien*, *la tienne*, *les tiens*, *les tiennes*, 374, 379, 380.
 Thing, n. *chose*, f.—Above all things, adv. *surtout*, *principalement*.
 to Think, a.&n.v. *penser*, i. (to believe) *croire*, iv. irr. 310 & fol.
 —To think of a thing, *penser à une chose*.
 Third, ord.nu.&n. *troisième*, 561 & fol.
 Thirst, n. *soif*, f. [avoir soif, 669.
 Thirsty, adj. *altéré*, e, 65.—To be thirsty,

TH TO

'Thirteen, car.nu. *treize*.
 Thirteenth, ord.nu.&n. *treizième*, 561 & fol.
 Thirtieth, ord.nu.&n. *trentième*, 561 & fol.
 Thirty, car.nu. *trente*.
 This, demoust. adj. *ce, m.s. cet, m.s. cette*, f.s. 55, 56. [384 & fol.
 This, demonst.pro. *celui*, m.s. *celle*, f.s. *ceci*.
 This way, adv. *par ici*.—This time, adv. *à présent, maintenant, aujourd'hui*.
 This is, *voici*, prep. 584 & fol.
 Thither, adv. *là, y*, 169, 174.
 'Tho', conj. *quoique*, 109.
 Thomas, prop.n. *Thomas*, m.
 Those, demonst.adj.&pro. *ces*, m.&f.p. *ceux-là, m.p. celles-là, f.p.* 55, 56, 385 & fol. 418 & fol.
 Thou, per.pro. *tu, toi*, 87, 88.
 Though, conj. *quoique*, 109.—Though as, (with indic.) *comme f.*
 Thought, n. *pensée, si*.
 'Thousand, car.nu. *mille*, 9, 566.
 Thousandth, ord.nu.&n. *millième*, 561 & fol.
 Thread, n. *fil*, m.
 to Thread, n. *enfiler*, i.
 Threat, n. *menace*, f.
 to Threat, to Threaten, a.v. *menacer*, i. 13.
 Threatening, adj. *menaçant*, e, 65.
 Three, car.nu. *trois*.
 Thrice, adv. *trois fois*.
 Throat, n. *gorge*, f. *gosier*, m.
 Throne, n. *trône*, m.
 Through, prep. *par, à travers, au travers de*, 735.
 to Throw, a.v. *jeter*, i. 15. *répandre*, iv.
 Thumb, n. *pouce*, m.
 Thunder, n. *orage*, m. *tonnerre*, m.
 Thursday, prop.n. *Jeudi*, m.
 Thus, adv. *ainsi*.
 Thy, poss.adj. *ton*, m.s. *ta*, f.s. *tes*, m.&f.p. 47, 53, 85, 532, 782.
 Thysself, per.pro. *toi-même, te*, 86, 190.
 Ticket, n. *billet*, m.
 to Tie, a.v. *attacher*, i.
 Tie, n. *lien*, m.
 Till, prep. *jusqu'à, jusques à*, 741, 742.
 Till, conj. *jusqu'à ce que*, 780, 781.
 Time, n. *temps*, m.—Leisure time, *temps de loisir*.—At this time, *à présent, maintenant*.—At that time, *alors*.—Time to come, *avenir*.
 Timorous, adj. *timide*, 64.
 to Tire, a.v. *fatiguer*, i. *lasser*, i.
 Tired, adj. *fatigué*, e, 65.
 To, prep. *à, jusque, jusques*, 31, 744.—From here to there, *d'ici là, or depuis ici jusques là*.

TO TR

—as to that, *quant à cela*.
 To-day, adv. *aujourd'hui*.
 To-night, adv. *ce soir*.
 To-morrow, adv. *demain*.
 Together, adv. *ensemble*.
 Tolerably, adv. *assez, passablement*.
 Tomahawk, n. *casse-tête*, m. 488.
 Tonge, p.n. *pincettes*, f.p.
 Tongue, n. *langue*, f.
 Tonquin, prop. *Tunquin*, m, 492, 506.
 Too, adv. (too much) *trop*, (also) *aussi*.
 —too much, too many, *trop*, 94.
 Tool, n. *outil*, m.
 Tooth, n. *dent*, f.
 Top, n. *sommet*, m. *pointe*, f.
 Torment, n. *tourment*, m.
 to Torment, a.v. *tourmenter*, i.
 Totally, adv. *totalemt*.
 to Touch, a.v. *toucher*, i.
 Tournament, n. *tournois*, m.
 Touraine, prop.n. *Touraine*, f. 492, 506.
 Toward, Towards, prep. *vers, envers*, 737.
 Tower, n. *tour*, f.
 Town, n. *ville*, f.
 Trace, n. *trace*, f.
 to Trace, a.v. *tracer*, i. 13.
 Tractable, adj. *traitable*, 64.
 Trade, n. *commerce*, m. *métier*, m.
 to Trade, n.v. *commercer*, i. 13. *trafiquer*, i.
 Traduction, n. *traduction*, f.
 Traffic, n. *trafic*, m.
 Tragedy, n. *tragédie*, f.
 Tragical, adj. *tragique*, 64.
 To train, a.v. (to drag along) *traîner*, i. (to teach) *dresser*, i.
 Trait, n. *trait*, m.
 Traitor, n. *traître*, m.
 Traject, n. *trajet*, m. *passage*, m.
 Tranquil, adj. *tranquille*, 64.
 Tranquillity, n. *tranquillité*, f.
 Transaction, n. *transaction*, f.
 Transient, adj. *passager*, e, 65.
 to Translate, a.v. *traduire*, iv. irr. 300.
 Translation, n. (from a language) *traduction, f* (from a place) *translation*, f.
 Translator, n. *traducteur*, m.
 Trave, n. *travail*, m.
 to Travel, n.v. *voyager*, i. 14.
 Travel, n. *voyage*, m.
 Traveller, n. *voyageur*, m. *voyageuse*, f.
 Treacherous, adj. *perfide*, 64.
 Treason, n. *trahison*, f.
 Treasure, n. *trésor*, m.
 to Treat, a.v. *traiter*, i.

TR TY

to Treat, n.v. *traiter de*, i.
 Treaty, n. *traité*, m.
 Tree, n. *arbre*, m.
 to Tremble, n.v. *trembler*, i.
 Trembling, adj. *tremblant*, e, 65.
 Trial, n. (at law) *jugement*, m. *procès*, m.
 Trial, n. (experiment) *épreuve*, f.
 Tribe, n. *tribu*, f.
 Tribunal, n. *tribunal*, *aux*, m. 32.
 Trifle, n. *bagatelle*, f.
 Trimming, n. *garniture*, f.
 Trinity, n. *trinité*, f.
 Triumph, n. *triomphe*, m.
 to Triumph, n.v. *triompher*, i.
 Troops, p.n. *troupes*, f.p.
 to Trouble, a.v. *troubler*, i.
 Trouble, n. (pain) *peine*, f. (care) *souci*, m.
 Troublesome, adj. *fâcheux*, se, 68.
 True, adj. *vrai*, e, 65.
 Trumpet, n. *trompette*, f.
 Trunk, n. (chest) *malle*, f.
 Trust, n. *confiance*, f.
 to Trust, n.v. *se fier à*, i.refl. 187.
 Truth, n. *vérité*, f.—To speak the truth, *dire la vérité*, iv.irr. 316.
 to Try, a.v. *essayer*, i. 18. *éprouver*, i.
 to Try, a.v. (to judge) *juger*, i. 14.
 to Try, a.v. (to attempt) *essayer*, i. 18. *chercher à*, i.
 Tuesday, n. *Mardi*, m.
 Tulip, n. *tulipe*, f.
 Tumbler, n. (to drink with) *verre*, m.
 Tune, n. *ton*, m. *air*, m.—Out of tune, *faux*, m. *fausse*, f.
 Tunis, prop.n. *Tunis*, m.
 Turkey, n. *dindon*, m.
 Turkish, adj. *turc*, m. *turque*, f. 72.
 Turkey, prop.n. *Turquie*, f. 492, 506.
 to Turn, a.v. *tourner*, i.
 to Turn, n.v. *se tourner*, i.refl. 187.
 Turnip, n. *navet*, m.
 Twelfth, ord.nu. *douzième*, 561 & fol.
 Twelve, card.nu. *douze*.—Twelve o'clock, (at noon) *midi*.—Twelve o'clock, (at night) *minuit*.
 Twentieth, ord.nu. *vingtième*, 561 & fol.
 Twenty, card.n. *vingt*.
 Twin, n. *jumeau*, x, m. 30. *jumelle*, f.
 to Twist, a.v. *tordre*, iv.
 Two, card.nu. *deux*.
 Type, n. *type*, m. (for printing) *caractères*, m. p.
 Tyranny, n. *tyrannie*, f.
 Tyrant, n. *tyran*, m. *despote*, m.

U UN

Umbrel, Umbrella, n. (for the rain) *parapluie*, m. (for the sun) *parasol*. (ladies small umbrella) *umbrelle*, f.
 Unable, adj. *incapable*, 64.
 Unalterable, adj. *inaltérable*, 64.
 Unanimous, adj. *unanime*, 64.
 Unavoidable, adj. *inévitabile*, 64.
 Unchangeable, adj. *immuable*, 64. *inaltérable*, 64.
 Uncle, n. *oncle*, m.
 Uncommon, adj. *rare*, 64. *extraordinaire*, 64.
 Unconstitutional, adj. *inconstitutionnel*, le, 66.
 Under, prep. *sous*, *dans*.—Under the necessity, *dans la nécessité*.
 Under, adv. *dessous*.
 to Undergo, n.v. *subir*, ii. *endurer*, i. *souffrir*, ii.irr. 214.
 to Understand, a.v. *entendre*, iv. *comprendre*, iv.
 Understanding, n. *entendement*, m.
 to Undertake, a.v. *entreprendre*, iv.irr. 353.
 Undertaking, n. *entreprise*, f.
 to Undo, a.v. *défaire*, iv.irr. 323.
 Undoubtedly, adv. *indubitablement*.
 Uneasy, adj. *inquiet*, e, 66, exc.
 Unexpected, adj. *inattendu*, e, 65.
 Unfaithful, adj. *infidèle*, 64.
 Unfit, adj. *impropre à*, 64.
 Unfortunate, adj. *malheureux*, se, 68. *infortuné*, e, 65.
 Unfortunately, adv. *malheureusement*.
 Ungrateful, adj. *ingrat*, e, 65.
 Unhappiness, n. *malheur*, m.
 Unhappy, adj. *malheureux*, se, 68.
 Unhealthy, adj. *malsain*, e, 65.
 Uninteresting, adj. *ennuyeux*, se, 68.
 Union, n. *union*, f.
 to Unite, a.v. *unir*, ii.
 United-States, prop.n. *États-Unis*, m. 492, 506.
 Universal, adj. *universel*, le, 66.
 Universality, n. *universalité*, f.
 Universe, n. *univers*, m.
 University, n. *université*, f.
 Unjust, adj. *injuste*, 64.
 Unjustly, adv. *injustement*.
 Unknown, adj. *inconnu*, e, 65. *étranger*, e, 65.
 Unless, con. *à moins que*, 109, 726, 727. *à moins de*, (before an infinitive).
 Unlimited, adj. *infini*, e, 65. *illimité*, e, 65.
 Unmerciful, adj. *impitoyable*, 64.
 Unmercifully, adv. *impitoyablement*.
 Unpardonable, adj. *impardonnable*, 64.
 Unquiet, adj. *inquiet*, e, 66, exc.
 Unskilful, adj. *inhabile*, 64.

UN VE

- Unsuccessful, adj. *malheureux*, *se*, 68. *sans succès*.
 Until, prep.&conj. *jusqu'à ce que*, *jusqu'à*,
 Unusual, adj. *rare*, 64. *extraordinaire*, 64.
 Unwilling, adj. *pas enclin*, *e*, 65.—To be unwilling, *ne vouloir pas*, iii. irr. 283, 22.
 Upon, prep. *sur*.—Upon this, Thereupon, adv. *là dessus*.
 Upper, adj. *supérieur*, *e*, 69, 6th.
 to Urge, a.v. *prier*, i. *solliciter*, i. *presser*, i.
 Urgent, adj. *urgent*, *e*, 65. *pressant*, *e*, 65.
 Us, per.pro. *nous*, 84, 169 & fol.
 Use, n. *usage*, m.—To make use of a thing, *employer une chose*, i. 18. or *se servir d'une chose*, ii. irr. 237, refl. 187.
 to Use, a.v. *employer*, i. 18. *se servir de*, ii. irr. 237, refl. 187.
 Useful, adj. *utile*, 64.
 Usefulness, n. *utilité*, f.
 Useless, adj. *inutile*, 64.
 Usual, adj. *usuel*, *le*, 66.—As usual, *à l'accoutumée*, *comme à l'ordinaire*.
 Usually, adv. *ordinairement*.
 Utensil, n. *ustensile*, m.
 Utility, n. *utilité*, f.

V VE

- Vacation, n. (holy day) *vacance*, f. *vacances*, [f.p.]
 Vaccine, n. *vaccine*, f.
 Vague, adj. *vague*, 64.
 Vain, adj. *vain*, *e*, 65.—In vain, adv. *en vain*.
 —To be in vain for, *avoir beau*, 674.
 Validity, n. *validité*, f.
 Valley, n. *vallée*, f. *vallon*, m.
 Valour, n. *valeur*, f.
 Valuable, adj. *précieux*, *se*, 68.
 Value, n. *prix*, m. *valeur*, f.
 to Value, a.v. *évaluer*, i. (to esteem) *estimer*, i.
 Vandal, prop.n. *Vandale*, m. & f.
 Vanity, n. *vanité*, f.
 to Vanquish, a.v. *vaincre*, iv. irr. 368.
 Vapour, n. *vapeur*, f.
 Variable, adj. *variable*, 64.
 Variety, n. *variété*, f. *diversité*, f.
 Various, adj. *divers*, *e*, 65.
 to Vary, n.v. *varier*, i. *changer*, i. 14.
 Vase, n. *vase*, m.
 Vassal, n. *vassal*, m. *vassale*, f.
 Vast, adj. *vaste*, 64.
 Veal, n. *veau*, *x*, m. 30.
 Vegetable, n. *végétal*, *aux*, 32.
 Vegetable, adj. *végétal*, 64. *végétal*, *e*, 65.
 Vegetation, n. *végétation*, f.
 to Vegetate, n.v. *végéter*, i. 16.

VE VO

- Vein, n. *veine*, f.
 Velocity, n. *vélocité*, f.
 Velvet, n. *velours*, m.
 Vendome, prop.n. *Vendôme*.
 Venerable, adj. *vénérable*, 64.
 Veneration, n. *vénération*, f.
 Vent-hole, n. *soupirail*, *aux*, m. 33 3d exc.
 to Venture, a.v. *risquer*, i. *aventurer*, i.
 Verb, n. *verbe*, m.
 Verification, n. *vérification*, f.
 to Verify, a.v. *vérifier*, i.
 Vernet, prop.n. *Vernet*, m.
 Verse, n. *vers*, m.
 Vertumnus, prop.n. *Vertumne*, m.
 Very, adv. *très*, 708 & fol.
 Very much, adv. *beaucoup*.
 Vessel, n. *bâtiment*, m. *navire*, m. *vaisseau*,
 Vest, n. *veste*, f. *gilet*, m. [x, m. 30.]
 Vesuvius, prop.n. *Vésuve*, m. 492.
 to Vex, a.v. *vexer*, i.
 Vial, n. *fiolle*, f.
 Vice, n. (in character) *vice*, m. (an iron tool) *étai*, *x*, m. 30.
 Vicinity, n. *voisinage*, m.
 Victim, n. *victime*, f.
 Victorious, adj. *victorieux*, *se*, 68.
 Victory, n. *victoire*, f.
 View, n. *vue*, f.
 to View, a.v. *considérer*, i. 16.
 Vigilant, adj. *vigilant*, *e*, 65.
 Vigour, n. *vigueur*, f.
 Vile, adj. *vil*, *e*, 65.
 Village, n. *village*, m.
 Vine, n. *vigne*, f.
 Vinegar, n. *vinigre*, m.
 Vineyard, n. *vigne*, f.
 to Violate, a.v. *violer*, i.
 Violence, n. *violence*, f.
 Violet, n. *violette*, f.
 Violin, n. *violon*, m.
 Virgil, prop.n. *Virgile*, m.
 Virginia, prop.n. *Virginie*, f. 492.
 Virtue, n. *vertu*, f.
 Virtuous, adj. *vertueux*, *se*, 68.
 Visit, n. *visite*, f.
 to Visit, a.v. *visiter*, i.
 Viz. adv. *savoir*.
 Vocabulary, n. *vocabulaire*, m.
 Voice, n. *voix*, f.
 Volatile, adj. *volatil*, *e*, 65.
 Volume, n. *volume*, m. *tome*, m.
 Voluntary, adj. *volontaire*, 64.
 Vote, n. *voix*, f. *suffrage*, m.
 to Vote, a.&n.v. *voter*, i. *choisir*, ii.

W WE

Waistcoat, n. *gilet*, m.
 to Wait, a.&n.v. *attendre*, iv.—To wait for one, *attendre quelqu'un*.
 Walk, n. (for pleasure) *promenade*, f. (for business) *course*, f. (travelling) *marche*, f.
 to Walk, n.v. (for pleasure) *se promener*, i. 17. refl. 187. (not for pleasure) *marcher*, i.—to Walk five or ten miles, *faire cinq ou dix milles*, iv. irr. 323.
 Wall, n. *mur*, m. *muraille*, f.
 to Waltz, n.v. *valser*, i.
 Walnut, n. *noix*, f.
 Want, n. *besoin*, m.—For want of, *faute de*.
 to Want, a.&n.v. *falloir*, iii. irr. 253 & fol. (to desire) *désirer*, i. *demander*, i.
 War, n. *guerre*, f.
 Warehouse, n. *magasin*, m.
 Ware-wolf, n. *loup-garou*, m. 481.
 Warm, adj. *chaud*, e, 65.—To be warm, (relating to the feeling of persons) *avoir chaud*, 669.
 to Warm, a.v. *chauffer*, i.
 Warmness, Warmth, n. *chaleur*, f.
 to Warn, a.v. *avertir*, ii.
 Warning, n. *avis*, m. *avertissement*, m.—To give warning, *avertir*, ii.
 to Warrant, a.v. *garantir*, ii.
 to Wash, a.v. *laver*, i.
 Washerwoman, n. *blanchisseuse*, f.
 Washing, n. *blanchissage*, m.
 Washington, prop. n. *Washington*, m.
 to Waste, a.v. *détruire*, iv. irr. 300 ; *prodiguer*, i.
 Watch, (pocket clock) n. *montre*, f. (guard) *garde*, f. *guet*, m.
 to Watch, a.v. *garder*, i. *veiller*, i.
 Watchful, adj. *vigilant*, e, 65.
 Water, n. *eau*, x, f. 30.
 to Water, (plants, or the ground) a.v. *arroser*, i.
 Wave, n. *vague*, f. *lame*, f.
 Wax, n. *cire*, f.
 Way, n. (road) *chemin*, m.—This way, adv. *par ici*.—That way, adv. *par là*.
 Way, n. (manner) *manière*.—In this or that manner, *de cette manière*.
 We, per. pro. *nous*, 87, 90.
 Weak, adj. *faible*, 64.
 to Weaken, a.v. *affaiblir*, ii.
 Weakness, n. *faiblesse*, f.
 Wealth, n. *bien*, m. *richesse*, f.
 to Wear, a.v. *porter*, i.
 Wearied, adj. *fatigué*, e, 65.
 Weather, n. *temps*, m.

WE WH

Wedding, n. *noce*, f. *mariage*, m.
 Wednesday, n. *Mercredi*, m.
 Week, n. *semaine*, f.
 to Weep, a.&n.v. *pleurer*, i.
 Weight, n. *poids*, m.
 Welcome, adj. *bien venu*, e, 65.
 to Welcome, a.v. *accueillir*, ii. irr. 215. *recevoir avec bonté*, iii.
 Welfare, n. *bien-être*, m.
 Well, adv. *bien*.—As well as, *aussi bien que*.
 Well ! exc. *eh bien ! très-bien ! bien !*
 Well, n. *puits*, m.
 Well-bred, adj. *bien élevé*, e, 65.
 West, n. *Ouest*, m.
 Wet, adj. *humide*, 64, 682.
 Wharf, n. *quai*, m.
 What, rel. pro. *quoi, ce qui, ce que*, 418 & fol.
 What, interr. pro. *quel*, m. s. *quelle*, f. s. *quels*, m. p. *quelles*, f. p. *que*, 57, 58, 395 & fol.
 What, interj. *quoi !*—What a noise ! *quel bruit ! or que de bruit !*
 Whatever, pro. *quelque, tout ce qui, tout ce que*, 458, 459, 536, 537.
 Whatever, or Whatsoever, conj. *quoique*, 109, [456].
 Wheat, n. *blé*, m.
 Wheel, n. *roue*, f.
 When, adv. *lorsque, quand*.
 Whence, adv. *d'où*.
 Whenever, adv. *toutes les fois que*.
 Where, adv. *où*.—Any where, *en quelque endroit que ce soit*.—Every where, *partout*.
 Wherefore, adv. *c'est pourquoi*.
 Wherever, adv. *partout où*.
 Whether, conj. *si*, 773.
 Which, rel. & interr. pro. *que, lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*, 395 & fol. 407 & fol. 601 & fol.
 Which, interr. adj. *quel, quelle, quels, quelles*, 57, 58, 601 & fol.
 Whilst, adv. *tandis que, pendant que*.
 Whip, n. *fouet*, m.
 to Whip, a.v. *fouetter*, i.
 Whisker, n. *favori*, m.
 Whiskered, adj. *à favoris*.
 White, adj. *blanc, che*, 72.
 to Whiten, a.v. *blanchir*, ii.
 Whiteness, n. *blancheur*, f.
 Who, rel. & interr. pro. *qui, que, lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*, 407 & fol. 601 & fol.
 Whoever, pro. *qui que ce soit qui or que, quiconque*, 455 & fol.
 Whole, n. *tout*, m.—Upon the whole, *après tout*.
 Wholesome, adj. *sain*, e, 65.

WH WO

Whom, rel.&interr.pro. *qui, que, lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*, 407 & fol. 601 & fol.
 Whomsoever, pro. *quiconque, qui que ce soit que*, 455 & fol.
 Whose, rel.pro. *dont; de qui; duquel de laquelle, desquels, desquelles*, 407 & foll. 601 & foll.
 Why, adv. *pourquoi; que*, 779.
 Wicked, adj. *méchant, e*, 65.
 Wicked, n. *méchant, m*.
 Wickedness, n. *méchanceté, f*.
 Wide, adj. *large*, 64, 554.
 to Widen, a.v. *élargir, ii*.
 Widow, n. *veuve, f*.
 Width, n. *largeur, f*.
 Wife, n. *épouse, f. femme, f*.
 Will, n. *volonté, f*.
 Will, (last) n. *testament, m*.
 to Will, a.v. *vouloir, iii. irr.* 277 & foll.—To be willing, *vouloir, iii. irr.* 277 & foll.
 Willingly, adv. *volontiers*.
 to Win, a.v. *gagner, i. remporter, i. se concilier, i. refl.* 187.
 Wind, n. *vent, m*.
 Windmill, n. *moulin à vent, m*.
 Window, n. *fenêtre, f*.
 Windy, adj. *venteux, se*, 68.—To be windy, *faire du vent*, 682.
 Wine, n. *vin, m*.
 Wing, n. *aile, f*.
 Winning, adj. *attrayant, e*, 65. *charmant, e*, 65.
 Winter, n. *hiver, m*.
 Wisdom, n. *sagesse, f*.
 Wise, adj. *sage*, 64.
 Wise, n. *sage, m*.
 Wisely, adv. *sagement*.
 Wish, n. *désir, m. souhait, m*.
 to Wish, a.v. *désirer, i. souhaiter, i.*—To wish for something, *désirer quelque chose*, 679.
 Wit, n. *esprit, m*.
 With, prep. *avec*, 124.
 Within, prep. *dans*.
 Without, prep. *sans*.
 Witness, n. *témoïn, m*.
 Witticism, n. *bon-mot, m*. 481.
 Witty, adj. *spirituel, le*, 66.
 Wo, interj. *malheur à!*
 Wolf, n. *loup, m. louve, f*.
 Woman, n. *femme, f*.
 Women, p.n. *femmes, f.p*.
 Wonder, n.v. *merveille, f*.
 to Wonder, n.v. *être étonné, e*, 131.
 Wonderful, adj. *étonnant, e*, 65.

WO YE

Wonderfully, adv. *admirablement*.
 Wood, n. *bois, m*.
 Wooden, adj. *de bois*.
 Wool, n. *laine, f*.
 Woollen, adj. *de laine*,—Woollen cloth, n. *drap, m*.
 Word, n. *mot, m. parole, f*.
 Work, n. *œuvre, f. ouvrage, m. travail, aux, m.* 33 3d exc.
 to Work, n.v. *travailler, i*.
 Workman, n. *ouvrier, m*.
 Workwoman, n. *ouvrière, f*.
 Workshop, n. *atelier, m*.
 World, n. *monde, m*.
 Worn out, adj. *usé, e*, 65.
 Worse, adj. *pire, 64. plus mauvais, e*, 66, exc. 115.
 Worship, n. *culte, m. adoration, f*.
 to Worship, a.v. *adorer, i*.
 Worst, adj. *le, la pire, le plus mauvais, le plus méchant*, 118, 652, 653.
 Worth, n. *prix, m*.
 Worth, adj. *digne de*, 64.—To be worth, *valoir, iii. irr.* 277 & fol.
 Worthy, adj. *digne, digne de*, 64.
 Wound, n. *blessure, f*.
 to Wound, a.v. *blessar, i*.
 Wrist, n. *poignet, m*.
 to Write, a.&n.v. *écrire, iv. irr.* 321.
 Writing, n. (composition) *écrit, (hand-writing) écriture, f*.
 Wrong, adj. *faux, sse*, 68, exc.—Wrong side outward, *d l'envers*.
 Wrong, n. *tort, m*.—To be wrong, (in the sense of being mistaken) *se tromper, i. refl.* 187. (in the sense of being in fault) *avoir tort*.
 Wrong, adv. *mal, à tort*.

X

Xerophagy, n. *xérophagie, f*.

Y YE

Yard, n. (place adjoining a house) *cour, f*.
 Yard, n. (measure) *verge, f*.
 Year, n. *an, m. année, f*. [*an* implying only EPOCH, and *année* implying DURATION].
 Yellow, adj. &n. *jaune, m*.
 Yes, adv. *oui*.
 Yesterday, adv. *hier*.—Yesterday evening, *hier au soir*.—Yesterday morning, *hier matin*.—The day before yesterday, *avant hier*.
 Yet, conj. *cependant*.

415224
 L.C.
 19
 6809-

YE YO

Yet, adv. *encore*.
 to Yield, a.v. (to produce) *produire*, iv. irr. 300.
 to Yield, a.v. (to concede) *céder*, i. 16.
 You, per.pro. *vous*, 84, 87, 88, 169 & fol.
 Young, adj. *jeune*, 64.
 Your, poss.adj. *votre, vos*, 51, 85, 782.
 Yours, poss.pro. *le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres*,
 374, 379, 380.
 Yourself, per.pro. *vous-même*, 86, 190. m. & f. s.

YO ZO

Yourselves, per.pro. *vous-mêmes*, m. & f. p.
 86, 190.

Youth, n. (young age) *jeunesse*, f. (young
 folks) *jeunes gens*, m.

Z

Zeal, n. *zèle*, m.

Zealous, adj. *zélé*, e, 65.

Zealously, adv. *avec zèle*.

Zone, n. *zone*, f.

THE END.

Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: Sept. 2006

Preservation Technology
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 113 434 1

